



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

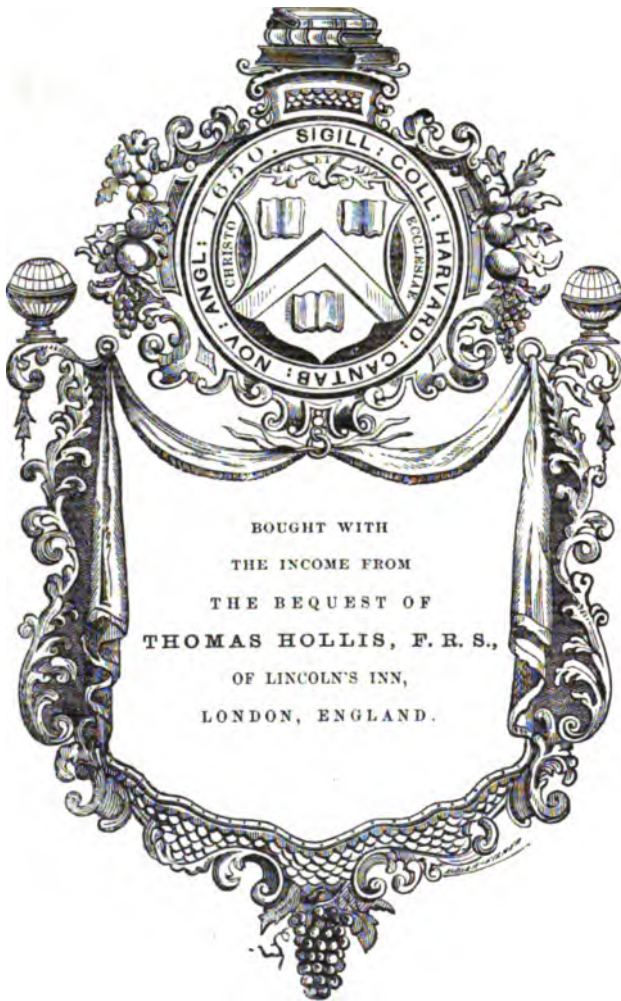
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Br 88.74











0

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI  
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

LXXXV.

37

**THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS**  
**OF**  
**GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND**  
**DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.**

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER  
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

---

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished ; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,*  
*December 1857.*

---

---

**HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS  
HISTORIA ANGLORUM.**

---



*ms. — can't find the name*

HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS  
HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

---

THE  
HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH,

BY  
HENRY, ARCHDEACON OF HUNTINGDON,

FROM A.C. 55 TO A.D. 1154,

IN EIGHT BOOKS.

EDITED

BY  
THOMAS ARNOLD, M.A.,  
OF UNIV. COLL., OXFORD.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S  
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:  
LONGMAN & Co., PATERNOSTER ROW; TRÜBNER & Co., LUDGATE HILL;  
ALSO BY  
PARKER & Co., OXFORD; AND MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE;  
A. & C. BLACK, AND DOUGLAS & FOULIS, EDINBURGH;  
AND A. THOM, DUBLIN.

1879.

Bu 98.74  
~~Brid. Hist, 574~~

1880, Jan. 21.  
Hallisford.

Printed by  
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

## CONTENTS.

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	i-lxvi
ERRATA - - - - -	- lxvii
PROLOGUS - - - - -	- 1
LIB. I. DE REGNO BRITANNORUM - - -	- 5
„ II. DE ADVENTU ANGLORUM - - -	- 37
„ III. DE CONVERSIONE ANGLORUM - - -	- 66
„ IV. DE REGNO ANGLORUM - - -	- 103
„ V. DE BELLIS DACORUM - - -	- 137
„ VI. DE ADVENTU NORMANNORUM - - -	- 173
„ VII. DE REGNO NORMANNORUM - - -	- 213
„ VIII. - - - - -	- 255
 APPENDIX :	
A. PASSAGES IN THE HENGWRT MS. RELATING TO THE DESCENDANTS OF EDMUND IRONSIDE -	295
B. EPISTOLA AD WALTERUM DE CONTEMPTU MUNDI	297
GLOSSARY - - - - -	- 323
INDEX - - - - -	- 327



---

## INTRODUCTION.

---



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE *Historia Anglorum* of Henry of Huntingdon was first printed by Sir Henry Savile in 1596, in the volume entitled, *Rerum Anglicarum Scriptores post Bedam præcipui*. Previous editions of the *Historia Anglorum*. Since that time no complete edition has appeared in this country. Savile's collection was reprinted at Frankfort in 1601. In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (1848) Mr. Petrie, who, as a rule, did not print any portion of the chronicles contained in that volume which passed the limit of 1066, reproduced, out of the eight books published by Savile, the following:—Books i., ii.; Book iv. (except the proceedings of the Council of Heathfield with which it opens); Book v.; Book vi., to the end of the battle of Hastings. Mr. Petrie omitted the third book, which is hardly more than an abridged re-arrangement of portions of Beda's *Historia Ecclesiastica*, as not possessing sufficient historical value to be printed. Had Mr. Petrie lived to complete his design, the remainder of our author's history would doubtless have appeared in the second volume of the *Monumenta*. As it was, the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* remained a colossal fragment, incorporating a number of other fragments; but the profound and patient investigation, of which the results are embodied in the Preface and Prolegomena, can never cease to command the gratitude and merit the attention of students.

§ 2. Wharton in his *Anglia Sacra* (1691) printed the epistle to Walter, *De Contemptu Mundi*, which Henry included in the eighth book of the later editions of his

History. The same epistle is printed in D'Achery, *Spicilegium*, viii. 178. Portions of the History, as printed by Savile, extending to nearly the entire work, are to be found in Bouquet (*Recueil des Historiens des Gaules et de la France*, 1786; vols. xi. and xiii.). Finally the Abbé Migne, using Savile's text, has reprinted in his *Patrologiæ Cursus Completus* (vol. 195, 1854) the eight books of the History, and also the epistle *De Contemptu Mundi*.

The present  
edition.

§ 3. The present edition does not contain more than has been printed by the Abbé Migne. In order to explain and justify the exclusion of two books (all but the epistle *De Contemptu*), numbered in some MSS. viii. and ix., in others ix. and x.—Book ix. being in every case that which treats *De Miraculis*—which undoubtedly formed part of the work according to the author's final plan, it will be necessary to distinguish between the different editions which he brought out in his lifetime, and also to examine the contents of these two books with some minuteness.

§ 4. In an able paper on Henry of Huntingdon by Dr. F. Liebermann, of Berlin, in the *Forschungen zur Deutschen Geschichte* for 1878, a paper characterised by true German thoroughness, much light is thrown on all points connected with the various editions of the *Historia Anglorum*. Henry, who had been made an archdeacon by Robert Bloet, bishop of Lincoln, some years before his death in 1123, was requested, or rather bidden, ("jussu tuo,") by the new bishop, Alexander of Blois, to write a history of the English nation from the earliest period, founding it on the Ecclesiastical History of Bede and the native chronicles ("chronica in antiquis reservata librariis,") and bringing it down to modern times. Henry was probably engaged on the work between the years 1125 and 1130, and the project seems to be glanced at by William of Malmesbury in a well-known passage at the end of his *Gesta Regum*, where he says, "Si quis,

" sicut jam susurrari audio, post me scribendi de tali-  
 " bus munus attentaverit, mihi debeat collectionis  
 " gratiam, sibi habeat electionis materiam."

§ 5. This first edition was brought down to the end of 1129 (vii. § 40); it is represented by two MSS., one known as the Hengwrt MS., in the possession of Mr. Wynne, of Peniarth, Merionethshire, the other, a much later copy, in the library of All Souls College, Oxford. In these MSS. the mention of Carlisle among the English bishoprics (i., § 5), which occurs in all the other copies, is wanting, and the dioceses are accordingly reckoned at sixteen instead of seventeen. The see of Carlisle was founded in 1133; this edition must therefore have come out before that date. The Prologue to Bishop Alexander ("Cum in omni," etc.), which heads nearly all the later copies, is wanting in these two; yet it must not be supposed that it was a later addition. For in the Epilogue ("Hic est annus qui," etc.), which they both contain, the exact words of a passage in the Prologue ("ad ipsam morum puritatem . . . . . resiliuimus,") are quoted. The absence of the Prologue must therefore be due to some other cause, perhaps to the "abbreviating" spirit which was so powerful in transcribers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

The author's  
 first publi-  
 cation of  
 his History.

§ 6. The next edition came down to 1135, that is, to the end of the reign of Henry I.; it is named in various MSS., but not now, so far as I can ascertain, exactly represented by any. One of the Cottonian MSS. in the British Museum (Vesp. A. xviii.) does indeed stop at this point; but the initial rubric names 1145 as the date of composition; moreover the scribe, after giving the passage ("Scripsit autem," see below, § 13) designed to introduce, and which in other MSS. does actually introduce, the three epistles of the book *De Summitatibus*, breaks off short with the words "Primæ igitur [epistolæ] exemplar hoc est," and here the MSS. ends. It seems clear therefore that Vesp. A. xviii. is merely an unfinished

The edition  
 of 1135.

copy of the edition of 1143, and does not represent that which originally stopped at 1135. For one of the three epistles described in the paragraph "Scripsit autem," that to Warinus, was, as internal evidence shows, written in 1139, and could not have been noticed in an edition of the History dated in 1135. Yet that such an edition did appear, the rubric date, 1135, prefixed to at least four MSS. (A<sup>5</sup>, C<sup>2</sup>, C<sup>3</sup>, F), of which one is in the British Museum, two at Cambridge, and one at Paris), seems to render certain; although in point of fact these MSS. carry the history down to various dates between 1139 and 1154. They are probably, as to the earlier portion of them, copies from MSS. of the edition of 1135 which do not now exist. In that edition, the Prologue and Epilogue, as I conceive, continued to appear without variation, the Epilogue being only removed to the end of the additional matter inserted in Book vii. between the years 1130 and 1135, and the words "annus tricesimus" altered to "annus tricesimus quintus."<sup>1</sup>

The edition  
of 1139.

§ 7. A third edition appeared in 1139, bringing the narrative of events down to the end of 1138. This is represented by a MS. in the Museum (Addit. 24,061) and another in the Advocates' Library at Edinburgh.<sup>2</sup> But no change appears as yet to have been made in the plan of the work; Book vii. was merely enlarged by the addition of a few pages, bringing down the narrative to the consecration of Archbishop Theobald in January 1139, which afterwards formed the opening portion of Book viii. The second of the MSS.<sup>3</sup> above mentioned does not contain the books *De Summitatibus* and *De*

<sup>1</sup> For a description of the Epilogue, see below, § 12.

<sup>2</sup> Marked 33. 5. 4.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Addit. 24,061 does contain them, but as it is of late date, and avowedly a compilation, I am inclined, though with some hesita-

tion, to the belief that it was made up from several copies of the History, representing various editions, and does not faithfully represent the edition of 1139, which in my judgment did not contain those books.

*Miraculis.* The Epilogue seems to have been omitted in this edition, probably in consideration of the increased length of the seventh book.

§ 8. Some years now elapsed, and before the next appearance of the History, the archdeacon had resolved to increase its bulk by incorporating with it several letters, on subjects more or less historical, which he had addressed within the last ten or twelve years either to the king or to personal friends, and adding a new book on Miracles, which would in a certain sense be supplementary to his third book, *De Conversione Anglorum*. This fourth edition may have been prepared in 1145; I know not how otherwise to account for the appearance of this rubric date in a number of MSS. (A<sup>2</sup>, A<sup>4</sup>, A<sup>6</sup>, S, F<sup>3</sup>), not one of which terminates exactly with that year. There is indeed a MS. in the Advocates' Library, which Dr. Liebermann (*Forschungen*, p. 277, note) names as terminating in this year; but I am inclined to think that he is mistaken.<sup>1</sup> The point to which he really brought this fourth edition on its first appearance, I believe to have been that indicated by the Paris MS. 6042, and several others, namely, a period in the twelfth year of Stephen's reign when the country was enjoying comparative peace, and when in the Lincoln diocese, bishop Alexander, who had happily returned from his journey to Rome in the previous year (1146, had just re-opened his minster after the repairs made necessary by the fire of 1124, arrayed now in such beauty, that "nullius ædificii structuræ circa fines Angliæ cederet." According to this view the original last words of this edition were "animi peri-

<sup>1</sup> The MS. (Adv. Libr. A., 5. 38) certainly at present terminates with the words "circa fines Angliæ cederet" at the end of Henry's annal for 1145. But the writing comes down to the foot of the verso of the last leaf, which itself is but

an isolated fragment, being preceded by a hiatus extending to five or six folios; there is therefore no reason to suppose that the MS. is not defective after this leaf as well as before it.

" cula non reformidantis fuerit," (Book viii., § 25). The various copies which extend a little beyond this date, ending either with the notice of the English crusading expedition of 1148, ("venerat ex Anglia," viii., § 27), or with the account of the installation of the new bishop of Lincoln ("jucunditate spirituali," viii., § 28), may all be considered as belonging to the fourth edition. In framing it the archdeacon proceeded thus. He increased the number of historical books from seven to eight, making the last book commence at the death of Henry I., and eking out its otherwise slender dimensions by putting long speeches, after the manner of Livy, in the mouths of leading generals on either side before the battle of Lincoln. But between this last book and the seventh, he now inserted two new books, viii. and ix. The first was made up of the old Epilogue to the History, which, if our conjecture in a previous paragraph be right, had not appeared since the edition of 1135, followed by three "Epistolæ," one to Henry I. on the succession of kings and emperors in the various monarchies of the world; the second to "Warinus a Briton," giving a brief account of the British kings from Brutus to Cadwallader, taken from Geoffrey of Monmouth; the third to one "Walterus," in which he descants on the emptiness of human greatness, illustrating his theme by not uninteresting biographic notices of a number of eminent persons, in church and state, whom they had both known. The ninth book, "De Miraculis," is a narrative of miracles of English saints, culled out of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, followed by a list of sanctuaries where intelligence might be obtained, and books read, respecting the miracles of saints who had lived since the time of Beda, and ending with an account of a miracle said to have been performed by an anchorite then living, St. Wulfric.

§ 9. From this description it must be evident that Henry, when he incorporated this mass of new matter in his *Historia Anglorum*, was acting rather in the

The two  
additional  
books.

interest of his own literary reputation than in that of historical science. He had written the three Epistles at various times, and rightly thought that if they were inwoven into the tissue of his *Historia*, they would be more likely to go down to posterity than if each were allowed to stand alone on its independent merits. As to the ninth book, it is a piece of what we now call "book-making." To collect and put together scattered notices from Beda, and to arrange them in regular order, was a piece of light and pleasant labour, better suited to the easy-going temper of the archdeacon than the serious and independent researches which had charms for the robust intellect of a Malmesbury or a Matthew Paris. That the composition of this book formed part of his original plan there is no reason to doubt; for the same prolusive references to it which occur in copies of the later editions are found also in *All Souls*, xxxi., a MS. representing the edition of 1130, and recognizable (although itself a late transcript) as faithfully representing that edition by the non-mention in it of incidents, such as the erection of the see of Carlisle, which happened after that date. There is, however, no evidence, manuscript or other, which should induce us to believe that this book was ever actually annexed to the History before the appearance of the edition of 1145. Nor, though it be granted that it entered into the original plan of the History, should the fact make us question the discretion of Sir Henry Savile the first editor, who, on account of their slight historical importance, excluded the ninth as well as the eighth book from his *editio princeps* of the author's chief work. Mr. Petrie, if he had lived to edit the remainder of Henry of Huntingdon, would certainly have taken the same course; he even forebore to print Book iii., which Savile allowed to stand in his edition, on the ground that it was almost wholly borrowed from Beda. No part of the eighth book has been ever printed but the epistle to Walter; this, on

account of its curious descriptions of contemporary persons, has been, as we have seen, printed by Wharton, D'Achery, and recently by the Abbé Migne.

The last  
edition, that  
of 1154.

§ 10. Finally, a fifth edition of the *Historia* brought the narrative down to 1154, so as to make it terminate with the death of Stephen. There is, as may be seen on reference to the passage, some evidence that the author did not intend to stop here, but contemplated the addition of a new book, which would have probably embraced the events of the first five or six years of the reign of Henry II. As this design, if entertained, was never carried out, it seems reasonable to infer that Henry, who must have been at least seventy years old at the time of Henry's accession, died soon after the event which he had so enthusiastically welcomed. This last edition is represented by the excellent MS. at Corpus College, Cambridge (C<sup>s</sup>), which is in a hand of the twelfth century, by another Cambridge MS. in the Public Library, and by the well-written, though late text in the British Museum, Reg. 13. B. vi. Other MSS., *e.g.*, All Souls, xxxvi., and Arundel, 46, are named by Dr. Liebermann as representing the fifth edition. These, however, as I shall presently show, belong to a class apart: they are copies of a historical work, intermediate in point of time between Huntingdon and Hoveden, which some unknown writer compiled towards the end of the twelfth century out of the Durham book<sup>1</sup> and the *Historia Anglorum*, and called "a chronicle of Marianus Scotus."

§ 11. In order to show exactly what a reader loses by the omission of Books viii. and ix. (always excepting Epistle iii., which will be found at page 297,) from an edition of the *Historia*, I proceed to give an analysis of their contents, in the course of which, when I come upon any passage which seems to possess independent value, I shall quote it in Henry's own words. There is, how-

---

<sup>1</sup> See below, § 36.

ever, one other point connected with editions that must be first considered, namely, whether the arrangement of the books seen in the Lambeth MS. No. 118 may be considered to have been made by Henry himself, or with his authority. In that MS., which is on good parchment and well executed, and in a hand of the early thirteenth or late twelfth century, the eight historical books succeed each other without interruption; they are followed by the two books "De Miraculis" and "De Summitatibus," after which follow two books of "Epigrams," which are numbered xi. and xii. It might appear at first sight that the archdeacon aimed at securing immortality for his poetical Epigrams, as for his prose epistles, by incorporating them in one work with his History. But on closer examination this notion is found not to be tenable. In the prefatory remarks introducing each book of Epigrams, Henry speaks of the division of the work, "hoc opus," into eight books, as in the case of his work "De Amore;" he gives a mystical reason for the adoption of the number eight; but adds that the present two books, as consisting of "Epigrammata Seria," may well be distinguished from the preceding six, "a sex precedentibus," which contained his "Epigrammata Jocunda." Now we know from Leland<sup>1</sup> that Henry wrote eight books of Epigrams, eight books "De Amore," and eight books "De Herbis,"<sup>2</sup> though not one of the three works has reached us in its entirety. It seems, therefore, that the compiler of this MS., a man who had his own views as to the editorial function, in pursuance of which he has inserted the "Laws of Canute," filling nearly eleven folios, in the sixth book (§ 16) of Henry's History,—having the volume

The right  
arrange-  
ment of the  
books.

<sup>1</sup> *Commentarii de Scriptoribus Britannicis.*

<sup>2</sup> Of these three works, so far as I can ascertain, nothing now remains but the two books of Epigrams contained in the Lambeth

and other more recent MSS. The first of these two was edited by Mr. Wright from the Lambeth MS. for the Master of the Rolls among the works of the "Satirical Poets of the Twelfth Century."

of Epigrams by him, and taking the hint from Henry's own words ("Nonnullos tamen a sex præcedentibus hos " duos disjuncturos scio,")—subjoined the two books of Epigrammata Seria to the ten books of the History, and included them in a common numeration. All other MSS. which have the same arrangement derive it, I believe, at more or fewer removes, from the Lambeth MS.

Analysis of  
Books viii.  
and ix.

§ 12. But to return to the books De Summitatibus and De Miraculis. The former begins with the Epilogue, reduced to the form which it bore in the edition of 1135. "Hic est annus qui comprehendit scriptorem, annus " tricesimus quintus regni gloriosi et invicti regis " Anglorum Henrici, annus LXIX. ab adventu Norman- " norum, gentis temporibus excellentissimæ nostris, in " Angliam; annus ab adventu Anglorum in Angliam " DCCII.; ab adventu Britannorum ad hanc eandem " insulam inhabitandam II. M. et CC. et LXV.; annus ab " initio mundi V. M. et CCC. et XVII.; annus gratiæ " MCXXXV.<sup>1</sup> Hic est igitur annus ille a quo scriptor " historiæ suam voluit ætatem a sequentibus compu- " tari. Quia vero librum ingredientibus nos ad morum " puritatem quandoque resilituros promisimus,<sup>2</sup> ex hac " etiam computatione quanti simus inspiciatur." With some eloquence of language he proceeds to ask, what has become of the kings, nobles, bishops, &c., who lived in the first millenary after Christ, "circa CXXXV.<sup>3</sup> annum," i.e. in the age of the Antonines? What do we who live now know or care about any of them? Addressing the bishop his patron, he says, "Dic et tu, laudabilis " præsul Alexander, ad quem historiam præsentem " dirigimus, de pontificibus qui tunc temporibus fue- " runt, quid tibi videatur." Then turning upon him-

<sup>1</sup> MCLXIII., H. O<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> See the Prologue, p. 3 of this edition.

<sup>3</sup> CLXIII., H. O<sup>2</sup>.

self,—“Dic, Henrice, dic, hujus auctor historiæ, qui fuerint illius temporis archidiaconi. Quilibet eorum, sive fuerit nobilis vel ignobilis, clarus vel fama obscurus, laudabilis vel infamis, elatus vel oppressus, sapiens vel indiscretus, quid refert? Si aliquis eorum causa laudis et gloriæ aliquid laboris præsumpserit, cum jam nulla possit super eo esse memoria, major quam super equo vel asello suo, cur in vanum miser animum suum affixit?” And you, he proceeds, who will be living at the same period of the third millenary, *i.e.* A.D. 2135, what will you think of us? Will you know or care (for instance) about Henry the Archdeacon, and this history which he wrote? Some might object that it was idle to look forward to another millenary, since the end of the world was near at hand. But this view he combats, relying on the opinion of Herbert de Losinga, bishop of Norwich, whom he had heard say, that according to the best judgment he could form, “the truth would last longer than the type, the light than the shadow, the thing signified than the indication, the time of grace than the time of law.” Those who firmly believed that the world would last not more than a thousand years after Christ’s passion, had been proved to be in error. The author finally comes to the pious conclusion that the only true glory is “in Deo;” “hanc cum adeptus fueris, habes; mundanam cum adeptus fueris, ut aqua vase terebrato defluit, et nihil habes.”

§ 13. So far the old Epilogue, now become the Introduction to the eighth book. In the paragraph which follows, beginning “*Scriptis autem*,” the archdeacon describes his three Epistles, and adds that the insertion of them here would be neither incongruous nor useless, while to read them would be neither a waste of time nor disagreeable. The first Epistle follows, addressed to Henry I.; it must have been written between 1131 and 1135, for it contains an allusion to the meeting between the king and pope Innocent II. at Chartres, which took

Epistle i.

place in the first-named year. Beginning with Peleg the son of Eber he traces the line of patriarchs to Abraham; then passing on through legislators, judges, and kings, he ends with Zedechias, with whom he says the "kingdom of the Jews" terminated. The successions of kings in the four great monarchies mentioned by the prophet Daniel are then given. The Babylonian monarchy ended with Baltasar, the Persian with Darius; the Grecian monarchy, beginning with Alexander, he traces through the line of the Ptolemies down to Cleopatra. The succession of emperors in the Roman monarchy he takes to have commenced with Julius Cæsar, and ended with Constantine Copronymus in the middle of the eighth century, under whom Rome became decrepit, and could no longer help either herself or others; "*domina gentium facta est ancilla barbarorum.*" The thread of sovereignty then passes to the Franks, in the person of Pippin the deliverer of Rome; whence it is traced through Charlemagne to Henry the Fowler and the Othos, then to the succeeding emperors ending with Conrad of Hohenstaufen. No mention is made of the new foundation of the "holy Roman Empire," through the coronation of Otho I. Of Conrad, it is said, "*Vixit annos II., nondum tamen Romam venit.*" Conrad succeeded Lothair the Saxon in 1138; this notice of him could not therefore have been in the original epistle, but was first inserted in 1140. The letter then concludes with some moral reflexions.

Epistle ii.

§ 14. The second epistle, to Warinus, can be regarded from two different sides, an advantage not often enjoyed in the case of mediæval writings, from the side of the writer, and from that of the literary friend at whose suggestion and with whose aid it was written. Henry's own account is given at the opening of the epistle itself; it is as follows:<sup>1</sup>—"Quæris a me, Warine Brito, vir

<sup>1</sup> MS. Arundel, 48, f. 129.

"comis et facete, cur patriæ nostræ gesta narrans, a temporibus Julii Cæsaris inceperim, et florentissima regna quæ a Bruto usque ad tempus Julii fuerunt omiserim. He pleads in reply that when he wrote the History this gap was unavoidable, from the lack of materials, but proceeds: "Hoc tamen anno, qui est ab incarnatione Domini MCXXXIX., cum Romam proficiscer cum Theobaldo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, apud Beccum, ubi idem archiepiscopus abbas fuerat, scripta rerum prædictarum stupens inveni. Siquidem Robertum de Torinneio, ejusdem loci monachum, virum tam divinatorum quam sæcularium librorum inquisitorem et coacervatorem studiosissimum, ibidem conveni. Qui cum de ordine historiæ de regibus Anglorum a me editæ me interrogaret, et id quod a me quærebat libens audisset, obtulit mihi librum ad legendum de regibus Britonum, qui ante Anglos nostram insulam tenuerunt; quorum excerpta, ut in epistola decet, brevissime scilicet, tibi, dilectissime, mitto."<sup>1</sup>

§ 15. Robert de Thorigny, then a monk at Bec, afterwards abbot of the famous monastery of St. Michel *du Peril de Mer*, describes his dealings with Henry in his own way. In the preface to the Chronicle, coming down to 1186, which he wrote as an Appendix or continuation to that of Sigebert of Gemblours,<sup>2</sup> Robert,

<sup>1</sup> This passage is here printed as it stands in the MSS. of Robert de Monte's Chronicle, one of which (Bod. 212) is in the Bodleian Library. See Pertz, *Germania*, vol. vi. But in several English MSS. (e.g., A, A<sup>5</sup>, A<sup>3</sup>), and possibly in all, the passage stands as follows:—  
"Hoc tamen anno, cum Romam proficiscerer, apud Beccensem abbatiam scripta rerum prædic-

"tarum stupens inveni, quorum excerpta, ut in epistola decet . . . mitto." It will be observed that the words "quorum excerpta" suit the abridged better than the extended form of the passage. Can the more precise and detailed account of the meeting have been inserted by Robert himself?

<sup>2</sup> Pertz, *Germania*, vol. vi.

who was at the time a simple monk of Bec, says that, finding the work of Sigebert to be extremely defective, so far as the history of England and Normandy was concerned, he had resolved to do his best to supply the omissions. But a part of the history of England, that which related to the ancient kings of the Britons before the time of Julius Cæsar, ran back, according to the testimony of recent historians (he was thinking of the *Historia Britonum* of Geoffrey of Monmouth), into such a remote antiquity, that if he were to intercalate it according to chronological sequence in the chronicle of Sigebert, it would come in amongst the writing of Eusebius and St. Jerome, which Sigebert had utilised for the early portion of his work. This was not to be thought of; so to treat writers of such high authority would be indecent in the highest degree, yet how otherwise could the desired knowledge about the British kings be given to his readers? A letter which had been written by his friend Henry the Archdeacon some years before furnished a way out of the difficulty:—

“ Ut satisfaciam curiosis, huic prologo subjiciam unam  
 “ epistolam Henrici archidiaconi, in qua breviter enu-  
 “ merat omnes reges Britonum a Bruto usque ad Cad-  
 “ wallonem, qui fuit ultimus potentum regum Britonum,  
 “ fuitque pater Cadwalladri, quem Beda Cedwallam  
 “ vocat. Quam epistolam, sicut in ea reperitur, cum  
 “ Romam idem Henricus pergeret, me ei præbente  
 “ copiam exemplaris totius historiæ Britonum, apud  
 “ Beccum excerpsit.”

It is needless to remark that this epistle, which is a brief epitome of the famous work by Geoffrey of Monmouth, has not the smallest historical value. In his mania for abbreviation, Henry even cuts down the fourteen rather fine lines in the original, which give the prayer of Brutus and the oracular answer of Diana, to six! He concludes with these words:—“ Hæc sunt quæ tibi brevibus

"promisi. Quorum si prolixitatem desideras, librum  
 "grandem Galfridi Arturi,<sup>1</sup> quem apud Beccum inveni,  
 "quæras; ubi prædicta diligenter et prolixè trac[ta]ta  
 "videbis. Vale." Geoffrey's "liber grandis," which  
 the dedication to Robert Earl of Gloucester, in which  
 Henry I. is spoken of as dead, proves to have been  
 published after 1135, may have appeared not more than  
 a year, or even less, before Henry's visit to Bec in 1139  
 yet it is singular that it should have remained wholly  
 unknown to him till then; for it would seem natural  
 that one of the earliest copies should have found its way  
 to the Bishop of Lincoln, Geoffrey's early patron;<sup>1</sup> and  
 the bishop might be expected to place it at once in the  
 hands of Henry, his chosen historiographer. That our  
 author should peruse the "speciosa miracula" of the  
*Historia Britonum* with amazement ("stupens inveni"),  
 is not surprising; Robert de Monte, a man of far shrewder  
 and sounder judgment, must have shared in the feeling;  
 yet in neither was it coupled with the least incredulity.  
 The time was come for the passion and imagination of  
 the Celtic race to take captive its rough Teutonic con-  
 querors; Leir and Gorboduc were thenceforth to be held  
 for as veritable kings as Alfred or William Rufus; the  
 name of Britain and all things British were to be rescued  
 from opprobrium; and the former domination of British  
 kings to be held as part of a predestined scheme of  
 providential guidance, under which one wave of con-  
 querors succeeded another, not by virtue of any inherent

<sup>1</sup> The addition of "Arthur" to  
 the name of Geoffrey of Monmouth  
 is thus explained by William of  
 Newbury, writing about the end of  
 the twelfth century: "agnomen  
 "habens Arturi pro eo, quod fabu-  
 "las de Arturo, ex priscis Britonum  
 "figmentis sumptas et ex proprio  
 "auctas, per superductum Latini  
 "sermonis colorem honesto hic-

"toris nomine palliavit." Gi-  
 raldus Cambrensis also (quoted in  
 Morley's *English Writers*, i. 498)  
 mentions Geoffrey with the same  
 addition to his name in his *Wal-  
 lia descriptio*. This passage in  
 Henry's epistle to Warinus is, I  
 believe, the earliest instance of the  
 use of the by-name.

race-superiority, but in punishment for the "sins" of their predecessors. It was in vain that William of Newbury and other writers protested against this readiness to accept fiction for history. The literary creations of the Celtic genius, though unsatisfactory to the dry intellect, made many of the deepest chords in the moral and spiritual nature of Normans, Franks, and Englishmen thrill responsively; and the results were gradually seen in a political fusion and a moral equality, which no effort or formed design on the part of the Celtic bards could ever have accomplished.

Epistle iii. § 16. Concerning the third Epistle, as it will be found in print in the Appendix, nothing need be said here. With it Henry closed his eighth book.

Book ix. § 17. Book ix. opens with a list of the nineteen saints whose miracles are related in it, beginning with S. Oswald and ending with S. Wilfrid. All these names occur in Beda. The short preface which follows contains a kind of protest against false miracles, or miracles not supported by sufficient evidence. "*Mihi autem si narrentur hujusmodi miracula, nec aperte contradixero, nisi aperte frivola sint, nec constanter affirmavero, nisi notissimis indiciis et probatissimis personis ad plenum roborari perspexero.*" This caution, he proceeds, has induced him to admit hardly any other miracles than those related by the Venerable Bede, "*cujus auctoritas firmissima est;*" not that many wonderful and glorious saints had not lived in the succeeding times, but because "*eorum gesta vel auctore carent certo, vel quantum Dei servus Beda, probato.*" After referring to a few passages, scattered over the first six books of his History, in which he had spoken of the miracles of St Alban, St. Germain, and others, he proceeds to treat of the miracles of the nineteen saints above referred to in a series of short articles, the materials for which are almost wholly taken from Beda. In the notice of S. Etheldreda, the patron saint of Ely, the following passage

occurs :—"Temporibus autem nostris cum ibidem Symeon  
 " abbas ecclesiam mirandi operis incepisset, transtulit  
 " corpus ejus sanctissimum in novam ecclesiam Ricar-  
 " dus susceptor ejus, ultimus abbatum ejusdem loci ;"  
 (the see of Ely was founded in 1109) "exinde enim  
 " statuti sunt ibi episcopi. Tunc igitur inventa est a  
 " viris probatissimis integra corpore et pulcherrimi  
 " coloris. Quod verum esse constanter affirmamus.  
 " Dicitur etiam quod hominem quendam qui ad eccle-  
 " siam ejus causa religiosi habitus suscipiendi confuge-  
 " rat, cum regis placitatores eum inde extractum causa  
 " pecuniæ in carcere posuerunt apud Londoniam, ipsa  
 " virgo præsens, compedibus ubi grossiores erant scis-  
 " sis, mirande liberavit. Nullus autem viventium eo  
 " modo compedes confringere poterat. Susceptus igi-  
 " tur homo ille, nomini Bricstan, cum compedibus suis  
 " mirificatis a venerabili Matilde regina et ab omni  
 " clero et populo Londoniæ, cum processione trium-  
 " phali. Ille autem rediens honorifice susceptus est in  
 " ecclesia beatæ virginis. Compedes autem ejus pen-  
 " dent impresentiarum coram altari, ingredientibus visu  
 " et tactu admirandæ." The story of this Bricstan is  
 related at greater length in the sixth book of Ordericus  
 Vitalis. In a previous sentence of the same article  
 Henry describes Cambridge as, "civitacula desolata quæ  
 " vocatur Grantecestre."

§ 18. What follows, to the end of the book, relates to <sup>Modern</sup> more modern saints, and is of considerable interest. <sup>saints.</sup>  
 The chief portions of this passage are here sub-  
 joined :—

"Igitur omnia fere miracula quæ Beda magnus auc-  
 " tor suo inseruit operi, disperse quidem secundum  
 " temporis distinctionem, nos coagulata continuavimus.  
 " . . . . . Nec minus antiquiori-  
 " bus effulsere moderni, quod si quis libratim exami-  
 " nare pertentet, petat ecclesias ex eorum nominibus

“dedicatas, ubi mirabilium virorum mirabilia gesta<sup>1</sup>  
 “videbit. Quis enim Cantuariæ metropolis ecclesiam  
 “venerabilem petens, et Dunstani patris sanctissimi  
 “numerosa legens magnalia magnopere non miretur?  
 “et in laudes Sancti Sanctorum gratulabundus non  
 “erumpat? Clarissima gesta, clarissima dicta tanti  
 “patris amplectens eructare poterit: Mirabilis Deus  
 “in sanctis suis.

“Quis Wintoniensem videns ecclesiam, et patris Adel-  
 “woldi lucidissima gesta revolvens, non laudet Patrem  
 “qui solus per se et suos operatur miracula? O quot  
 “ecclesias præsul iste Deo instituit! quot congrega-  
 “tiones regularibus disciplinis insignivit! quot im-  
 “pietatis incendia rore Sancti Spiritus extinxit! Illic  
 “quoque sancti patris Swithuni laudes videbis. Qui  
 “fortissimi regis Egbricti assidens et pius Adelwulfi  
 “filii ejus ædificator fuit; Adelwulfus vero de clericatu  
 “translatus ad regnum, concessu Leonis papæ, pontifi-  
 “cavit eum feliciter. Tertio anno vero Adelberti regis-  
 “filii Adelwulfi vir sanctus decessit cum gloria. Ibi  
 “etiam Birini præsulis Dorkecestræ, quæ modo sedes  
 “ad Lincolniam translata est, miracula magna videbis.

§ 19. “Sireburnam vero petens Aldelmi ejusdem loci  
 “episcopi miracula cernes, quæ modo sedes ad Sales-  
 “biriam translata est. Cernes ibi magnos magni patris  
 “triumphos, et in Dei laudes triumphatoris erumpes.

“Kynelmi vero martyrium clandestinum leges apud  
 “Winchelescumbe.<sup>2</sup> Hic fuit filius regis Merciorum  
 “Kynulfi, qui cum xxiii. annos regnasset, anno gra-  
 “tiæ dcccxix. decessit. Martyrium vero Kenelmi filii  
 “ejus revelatum est coelitus Romæ Silvestro juniore  
 ‘papæ.

<sup>1</sup> “Gesta” seems to be equivalent to the “scripta gloriosa,” preserved in the different churches, of

which he had spoken at the commencement of the book.

<sup>2</sup> *Winkelescumbe*, G.

"Mylbergæ vero virginalem videbis vitam apud  
 "Winlocam; quæ fuit filia Merwaldi filii regis Pendæ  
 "et Domneve<sup>1</sup> filiæ Eormenredi filii regis Eadbaldi  
 "Cantuariæ. Milgitha<sup>2</sup> vero soror ejus in finibus Nord-  
 "himbrorum quiescit. Mildrithæ vero tertiæ sororis  
 "cœlibem vitam in insula Teneth reperies.

"Rumaldi vitam videbis mirandam apud Bukinge-  
 "ham super flumen Use.

§ 20. "Neoti vero vitam laudabilem videre poteris  
 "super flumen prædictum, scilicet Use, decurrens usque  
 "in Huntendune-syra, ubi corpus ejus sanctissimum  
 "pausat. Splenduit tempore regis Aluredi et Marini  
 "papæ.

"Yvonis autem super idem flumen procurrens vitam  
 "vises<sup>3</sup> venerandam. Ibi namque gloriosum corpus  
 "revelatum est lustris post obitum ejus, tempore regis  
 "longævi Adelredi, qui xxxvii. annis regnavit. Nec  
 "longe distat a nostræ memoriæ temporibus.

"Rameseye vero, quæ super paludes sita est, ex præ-  
 "dicto flumine progredientes, et corpora et vitam Edel-  
 "redi<sup>4</sup> et Edelbricti reperies. Qui filii Ermenredi, filii  
 "Ebaldi regis Cantuariæ, clam martyrizati sunt, et  
 "magno miraculo inventi.

"Apud Burgum vero, quod super easdem pulcherrimas  
 "paludes situm est, pausant duæ sanctæ virgines ger-  
 "manæ, Kyneburga, Kyneswitha,<sup>5</sup> sorores regum Pedæ  
 "et Wlferi et Adelredi. Tibba virgo sancta præ-  
 "dictarum cognata quiescit ibidem.

"Sanctus vero Gutlacus in eadem palude vernantis-  
 "sima quiescit apud Croilande. Hic in diebus fuit  
 "III. regum Merce, scilicet Ethelredi filii Pende et  
 "Kenredi cognati ejus, qui utrique monachi effecti  
 "sunt, et Chelredi filii Adelredi fortissimi regis, et  
 "tempore Adelbaldi. Obiit anno gratiæ DCCC. et xv.

<sup>1</sup> Winneve, G.

<sup>2</sup> Milgitha, G.

<sup>3</sup> vides, G.

<sup>4</sup> Aelredi, G.

<sup>5</sup> Kynethytha, G.

Cf. Malm.  
Gest. Pont.  
p. 308.

§ 21. "Sancta Werburga apud Cestriam quiescit.  
" De qua cum multa dicantur, unum quod egregium  
" est et inauditum non tangere non possum. Scribi-  
" tur enim quod aucas silvaticas, quarum copia gran-  
" dis frumentum suum virens depascendo exterminabat,  
" includi fecerit in domo quadam quasi domesticas.  
" Quas cum mane vocatas emittere pararet, vidit unam  
" deesse. Quam cum a famulis comestam rem per-  
" quirens audisset, 'Afferte,' inquit, 'mihi plumam et  
" 'ossa comestæ.' His allatis, præcepit Domini excelsi  
" sponsa ut integra esset et viva, et factum est ita.  
" Anseribus igitur applaudentibus et acclamantibus  
" pro sociæ amissæ reditu, præcepit ne in sempiter-  
" num introiret in campum illum aliqua spes illarum  
" participantis. Recesserunt omnes incolumes, et quod  
" virgo præcepit observatum est usque in hunc diem.

" Sancta vero Wifilda, filia regis Eadgari, spretis  
" sponsalibus pro Deo sponso, Berkinge fuit abbatissa,  
" et ibidem sepulta, ubi virgines sanctæ miracula ejus  
" videntes sponsum laudant virginum. De sancta qui-  
" dem Edelburga loci ejusdem abbatissa prædiximus  
" quanta Beda.

" Sancta Editha filia regis Edgari Wiltoniæ pausat,  
" et ibidem splendida virginis leguntur miracula.

" Hos de multo sanctorum numero brevitati studen-  
" tes perstrinximus, qui per loca distincta splendorem  
" salutiferum Britanniae Magnæ quasi cœli luminaria  
" decentissime administrant. Multos namque præteri-  
" mus, quorum nomina et gesta in ecclesiis ex eorum  
" nomine Deo dicatis luculenter irradiant. Felix An-  
" glia, tantorum patrum tantis insignita splendori-  
" bus!

§ 22. "Sed quæret aliquis, Cum priscis temporibus  
" tot sancti tot innotuere miraculis, miramur obnixè  
" quod temporibus nostris nec aliqua miraculorum in-  
" terlucet scintilla, nec famæ tenuis aliqua super his  
" agilitas intervolut. Unde videtur, vel quod plura

“ dicantur quam fuerunt, vel omnino mundus a Deo  
 “ jam sit aptatus. Cui respondemus: Omnino quidem  
 “ a Deo aptata tempora non concedimus nostra, sed  
 “ valde pejorata, et vitiorum caligine flebiliter obnu-  
 “ bilata. Novit tamen Deus qui sunt ejus, et in hu-  
 “ milibus, qui paucissimi sunt, Excelsus habitat. Fiunt  
 “ igitur miracula tempore nostro rarissima, sed quoque  
 “ clarissima. Unde de quodam cui adhuc vitalis super-  
 “ est spiritus memoriale sanctissimum et clarissimum  
 “ communicabo.

§ 23. “ In provincia quæ vocatur Dorsete, apud vil-  
 “ lam quæ vocatur Haselberge, degit quidam Dei ser-  
 “ vus Wlfricus nomine, officio sacerdos, conversatione  
 “ anachorita. Hic lorica carnem proximam semper ad-  
 “ hibens, ut ejus motus intempestos cohiberet, a domino  
 “ suo terreno novam poposcit, quia sua sudore suo  
 “ jam pæne demolita et dissarcita videbatur. Quam  
 “ cum eo præsentem induisset, longitudini ejus infensus,  
 “ ne sub veste quiddam compareret, arrepta forcipe,  
 “ sub gressibus et in manicarum vestibulis ferrum com-  
 “ paginatum quasi lineam texturam dissecuit; rursus-  
 “ que forcipem apponens, si quid inæquale erat, sine  
 “ mora, sine difficultate, Dei servus abscidit. Quod  
 “ videns dominus ejus, inestimabili gaudio repletus ad  
 “ pedes sancti corruit. Vir Domini pudibundus erec-  
 “ tum conjuravit, ne alicui visa revelaret. Res tamen  
 “ celari non potuit. Nam plerique religiosi ejusdem  
 “ lorice sanctissimæ annulos habere se gaudent, et  
 “ fama celebris regni totius partes circumquaque per-  
 “ lustravit. Quod miraculum huic operi cauto et ex-  
 “ quisito non interposuisses, nisi qualiter Sanctus  
 “ Papa Gregorius quæ de patre Benedicto vel aliis  
 “ sanctis narrat; partem ab aliquo fratre religioso se  
 “ audisse commemorat, partem se a pluribus valde  
 “ probatis. Hoc autem non solum testantur hi qui

The ancho-  
rite of Ha-  
selberge.

<sup>1</sup> demolita, A<sup>5</sup>.

“loricæ sectiones viderunt, vel qui ejus sermonem aptabilem præsentiamque delectabilem petierunt, vel qui vitam religiosorum libenter et ipsi religiosi perquirunt, verum omni populo divulgatum est, et omnium commune notorium.

“Et jam hic de gloriosis operibus Dei liber nonus explicit.”

The above extracts contain all of the eighth and ninth books that could be deemed on any ground worthy of preservation; and the analysis just given is sufficient perhaps to account for the judgment passed upon them by all previous editors, no less than by the present one, that they do not deserve to be printed *in extenso*.

Life of the  
the author.

§ 24. The contents of the present volume, together with the reasons why they are neither more nor less bulky than they are, having been stated, it is time to inquire what particulars have come down to us concerning the life of the author, and to see whether a comparison of documents will furnish us with any additional light. The life of Henry of Huntingdon has been written by Capgrave in the fifteenth century, by Leland, Bale, and Pits in the sixteenth, by Cave in the seventeenth, and lastly by Tanner in the eighteenth. An article by Mr. Wright in the *Biographia Litteraria* (Norman period), though it evinces a greater acquaintance with Huntingdon MSS. than had been possessed by previous writers, does not add materially to our knowledge. The life by Capgrave, who was the nearest to the time, is the most meagre of all. It is in the work *De Illustribus Henricis*, edited some years ago for the Master of the Rolls. After citing from the eighth book the passage “Hic est annus qui comprehendit scriptorem,” Capgrave extracts from the epistle “De Contemptu Mundi” the account of the manner in which Bishop Remigius organized the diocese of Lincoln into seven archdeaconries, adds Henry’s speculations as to the probable duration of the world, and that is all.

§ 25. The evident predilection with which Henry speaks of the fen country ("pulcherrimæ paludes"), his exact acquaintance with the churches that lay on and near the river Ouse (above § 20, and Book v., § 25), and his knowledge of the traditions of the district (vi., § 6), make it almost a certainty that he was a native either of Cambridgeshire or Huntingdonshire. As he speaks of Aldwin, the abbot of Ramsey, as "dominus meus," it may perhaps be inferred that his father, whose name was Nicholas, held land of the abbey; if so, Henry was probably born on some part of the abbatial domain. The date of his birth cannot well be fixed later than 1084.<sup>1</sup> That his father was not settled in Lincoln before 1092, the year in which bishop Remigius died, may be inferred from Henry's explicit statement that he had never seen that prelate. But Nicholas must have gone to Lincoln soon after the accession of Robert Bloet, for Henry was still a little boy, "puerulus," when first taken into Bloet's household. Remigius had removed his see from Dorchester, near Oxford, to Lincoln about 1080, being moved to make the selection by the populousness, wealth, and importance of the town, as an "emporium hominum terra marique venientium."<sup>2</sup> With great energy he had organised his large diocese from its new centre, dividing it into seven archdeaconries, creating a chapter of dean and canons consisting of the most learned and able men whom he could find, appointing many other officials, and building a cathedral on the castle hill.<sup>3</sup> Some encouragement held out to Nicholas by bishop Remigius may very likely have been the cause of his removing to Lincoln. He was in holy orders, and when recording his death in 1110 Henry calls him "the star of the clergy," *stella cleri*. It is impossible to say whether

Energy of  
bishop  
Remigius.

<sup>1</sup> He mentions archbishop Lanfranc, who died in 1089, among those whom "oculis nostris inspe-

"poribus nostris." (*De Con-*  
*temptu*, § 15.)

<sup>2</sup> Malm., *Gesta Pontif.*, § 177.

<sup>3</sup> See below, Book vi., § 41.

he was a married priest, or only took orders after his wife's death. The latter is perhaps the more probable supposition, considering the decided stand taken both by Lanfranc and St. Anselm against the marriage of clerics, and the unlikelihood that a married priest could have held the, not tolerated merely, but distinguished position at the time of his death which Henry's words seem to assign to his father. If his mother were dead and his father a priest, Henry's introduction at a very early age into the household of bishop Bloet would be naturally accounted for, and might be compared with the act of the priest Odelirius in giving up his boy, the little Ordericus, to the monks of St. Evroult, to be brought up by them.

§ 26. The wealth of the see of Lincoln at this time was very great, and the palace of Robert Bloet was more like the court of a princely feudatory than the modest abode of a primitive bishop. Henry admits that he was dazzled by the brilliant scenes which daily passed under his eyes, and drank in deeply the spirit of worldliness. Seeing from his boyhood worldly splendour and luxury studied and displayed in bishop Bloet's household, how, he asks his friend Walter, was he in youth likely to despise them? Among the inmates of the palace was Richard, a natural son of Henry I., whose education had been entrusted to the bishop; Henry intimates that, in spite of the slur on his birth, he was the object of much deferential homage to himself and others.<sup>1</sup> This Richard was afterwards drowned in the White Ship. Henry was probably taught to regard himself as already enrolled in the ranks of the clergy from the time when he entered the episcopal household. If our conjecture as to the date of his birth be accepted, it may be further assumed that he was ordained priest before the end of the first decade of the twelfth century.

---

<sup>1</sup> *De Contemptu*, § 5.

In 1110 his father Nicholas died.<sup>1</sup> It has been thought that he might be the same Nicholas who is mentioned in the *De Contemptu* as having been succeeded by Henry himself in the archdeaconry of Huntingdon, nor is the supposition wanting in plausibility.<sup>2</sup> Of his life for the next twelve or thirteen years, to the death of bishop Bloet, one single fact is recorded; it is that, once when, in the last year of Bloet's episcopate, Henry was sitting next him at dinner, he observed the bishop weeping, and, upon asking the cause, was told that he wept to see his servants clad now in woollen, not as formerly in silken, garments, owing to the poverty which the fines unjustly levied upon him in the king's court had occasioned.

Henry is  
appointed  
archdeacon  
of Hunting-  
don.

§ 27. Alexander of Blois, who succeeded Bloet in the see of Lincoln in 1123, was a prelate of considerable learning; it was to him that Geoffrey of Monmouth dedicated his version of the Prophecies of Merlin, declaring at the same time that the task could have fallen into no fitter hands than the bishop's own, were it not that the important duties which his station

<sup>1</sup> *Hist. Angl.* vii., § 27.

<sup>2</sup> Henry says (*De Cont.*, § 4) that about the time when Nicholas the archdeacon died, Cambridge-shire was transferred from his jurisdiction, and included in another see. The transfer was consequent on the erection of the diocese of Ely, which was finally accomplished in 1109, Hervé the Breton having been consecrated the first bishop of the see in that year. The objections to the view that Henry succeeded his father in 1110 are, that he must have been rather young for such a post, and that his own words ("ego jam archidiaconus ejus," *De Cont.*, § 2), when describing an

incident which took place in 1122, seem more naturally to refer to a recent appointment than to one dating so far back as 1110. On the other hand, bishop Bloet may have had such confidence in and affection for a clerk brought up from boyhood in his household, as to overlook the immaturity of his age; and it is unquestionable if we closely examine the words used in § 4, that the curtailment of the archdeaconry (which certainly happened in 1109), the death of Nicholas, and the appointment of Henry to succeed him, are described as events connected together in point of time.

He visits  
Rome.

imposed upon him left him no leisure for such occupations. The new bishop was the nephew of Roger the powerful bishop of Salisbury, and deeply engaged like his uncle in the plots and counterplots which filled the turbulent reign of Stephen. Bale and Pits aver that Henry accompanied the bishop to Rome; they refer probably to his visit in 1144, but as Henry says nothing about it, and they give no authority for the statement, it is probably unfounded. It is certain that the bishop encouraged Henry to write his history, as has been already mentioned. In 1139, when Theobald, who had just been consecrated to the see of Canterbury, went to Rome for his pall, Henry accompanied him, under what circumstances, or with what objects, we are wholly ignorant. On this occasion he visited Bec, where Theobald had been abbot, made the acquaintance of Robert de Monte, whom he probably supplied with a copy of the edition of his History which terminated in 1135, and obtained materials for his Epistle to Warinus. From this point, beyond the evidence which his History supplies that he was living at the accession of Henry II. in 1154, not a tittle of biographical information has come down to us. The concluding words of the Corpus MS., "Explicit liber X<sup>us</sup>, hic incipit liber undecimus de "Henrico juniore," coupled with the preceding sentence (which is found also in Reg. 13. B. vi.) "Et jam regi "novo novus liber donandus est," make it probable that he lived far enough into the reign of Henry II. to contemplate the addition of a new book to his History. No author has recorded the year of his death. What looks like positive evidence that he was living in 1155, and has been so accepted by Dr. Liebermann, cannot, I think, be safely relied upon.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In § 15 of the Epistle to Walter, Henry names the bishops of fourteen sees who were sitting at the time at which he wrote, and also their predecessors, so far as they came within his remembrance.

§ 28. As an author Henry distinguished himself in His works. his youth by writing epigrams and poetry of various kinds. Leland<sup>1</sup> speaks of a poem, *De Amore*, in eight books, and another of equal length, *De Herbis*, as being still extant in the sixteenth century. To these Henry seems to allude in the lines—

Henricus tibi certa gerens, epigrammata primum,  
Prælia mox Veneris, gramina deinde tuli.<sup>2</sup>

The Epistle was written in 1135, and in the copy of it contained in the Corpus MS. all the episcopal notices correspond with that date; that is, not one bishop is named as sitting whose election took place after 1135. When, however, this Epistle was incorporated in the History, on the appearance of the edition of 1145, Henry thought fit to revise the episcopal notices, so that in their altered form they correspond to the year 1145. Many new names occur which we had not in the list of 1135, but no bishop (with one apparent exception) is named as sitting who was elected after 1145. Thus "William" (of Santa Barbara) is named as the sitting bishop of Durham, who, having been elected in 1143, did not appear in the earlier list; on the other hand, not Robert de Chesney, who was elected in 1148, but Alexander, figures as the sitting bishop of Lincoln. The apparent exception is in the case of Exeter, of which Henry says, "Excestræ vero sedit Robertus nuper mortuus et pridem cæcus; nunc vero nepos ejus." The entry in the earlier version is, "Excestræ vero sedit Robertus, qui nondum est mortuus, sed pridem cæcus." The bishop of Exeter, who became blind, was William de Warlewast;

his nephew Robert, after being dean of Salisbury, was elected bishop of Exeter in 1155; if this Robert, therefore, is the person referred to, Henry cannot have written this notice earlier than 1155. But it seems to me simpler to suppose that Henry confounded the two Roberts, who were both about this time deans of Salisbury and bishops of Exeter. The first Robert was elected to the see in 1138, and died in 1155. He was *not* the nephew of the blind bishop; but Henry, who had already misnamed the latter Robert, and whose information about what happened so far west, was probably liable to much inaccuracy, may easily have fallen into the error of supposing that the bishop Robert sitting in 1145 was Robert Warlewast. If we take a different view, how can we account for the occurrence of the name of no *other* bishop who was elected after 1145? The conclusion to which I come, this being the only trace of a presumably later date that can be found in his writings, is, that we have no evidence whatever as to the duration of Henry's life after the accession of Henry II.

<sup>1</sup> *Commentarii de Scripturibus Britannicis.*

<sup>2</sup> Page 320.

Leland also credits him with books *De Aromatibus* and *De Gemmis*, in which he imitated, with no great success, "a certain modern poet Macer;" and with a little treatise *De Ponderibus et Mensuris*; finally, with a volume *De Lege Domini*, addressed to the monks of Peterborough. Bale<sup>1</sup> further credits him with a "Historia perbrevis," which is perhaps the "Abbreviatio," of which there is a copy in Reg. 13. A. xviii. All the works above named, with the exception of two books of Epigrams, and (possibly) of an abridgment of his History, which is valueless, appear to have perished. In Harl. 64, between the paragraph "Scripsit autem" (*ante*, § 13), and the epistle to King Henry, occurs a fragment (inc. "Orbis a rotunditate," expl. "appellavit Adam"), which the 17th century editor and supplementer of that MS. calls "Fragmentum libri Henrici Huntingdonensis De Creatione et Distinctione Mundi." It is written in a hand of the 14th century, and fills only three columns of the MS. It is of no importance in itself, and there is but slender ground for attributing it to Henry.

Manuscripts  
of the *Historia Anglorum*.

§ 29. The following, it is believed, is a complete list of the extant MSS. of the *Historia Anglorum*, arranged according to their age. I have retained the designation A for the MS. (Arundel, 48), which Mr. Petrie took as the basis of the edition published in the *Monumenta*, and have given it to all MSS. of the work preserved in London libraries, distinguishing them by numbers. Similarly MSS. kept at Oxford are designated O; at Cambridge, C; in Scottish libraries, S; in French libraries, F.

1. C<sup>3</sup>. - C.C.C.C. 280<sup>2</sup> - XII. cent.

<sup>1</sup> *Summarium*, f. 83.

<sup>2</sup> This interesting MS. is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, to which institution it was bequeathed by archbishop Par-

ker. It is probable that it formerly belonged to the monastery of St. Augustine, Canterbury. It is accurately and clearly written; a good working copy, in short, of a

- |       |                                       |            |            |
|-------|---------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| 2.    | - Savile <sup>1</sup>                 | -          | XII. cent. |
| 3. F. | - Bibl. Nat. Paris, 6042 <sup>2</sup> | XII. cent. |            |
| 4. H. | - Hengwrt, 101 <sup>3</sup>           | -          | A.D. 1196. |

book which a great monastery, while it set no special store upon it, would desire to have on its shelves. It bears the rubric date 1195, and was doubtless copied, as to its earlier portion, from a MS. of the edition of that date; it contains, however, at the end all that the latest edition of the History contained.

<sup>1</sup> I have not succeeded in tracing this MS., which passed to a purchaser giving the—perhaps fictitious—name of “Huntingdon” at the Savile sale in 1862 for the sum of 240*l*. I am inclined to suspect that as Sir T. D. Hardy made two MSS. out of one in the case of Nos. 15 and 21, so he has done in the present case, and that the MS. Philipps, No. 31, is identical with this MS. Savile. In the Savile sale catalogue the MS. is said to end in 1174, and to be a ‘contemporary MS. on vellum, finely written by an English scribe, with painted capitals . . . . .’ “*sæc. XII.*”

<sup>2</sup> There are some inaccuracies in the account given by the late Sir Thomas Hardy of this MS. in his *Descriptive Catalogue*, &c. (ii. 273). M. Delisle, in his excellent work on “Robert de Torigny,” has shown that this is not, as Sir Thomas Hardy supposed, the identical copy of the History sent by Henry to Robert de Monte. That reached only to 1135, according to Robert’s own statement in the preface to his Chronicle; subsequently, however, he must have obtained a copy coming down to 1147, for to this

point the extracts from Henry given in his work (Pertz, vol. vi.) extend. Of this later copy Robert, after he became abbot of Mont St. Michel, in 1154, caused a transcript to be made for the library of that monastery; and it is this transcript, according to M. Delisle, which we possess in No. 6042. This MS. ends with the words “non reformi-  
“*dantis fuerit*” (Book viii., § 25). It is a mistake to say that “the narrative ends at the foot of a page;” there is a not inconsiderable blank space on the page below the words just quoted; hence there is no ground for thinking that the MS. is imperfect. Like all representative copies of the editions of 1145 and 1154, it contains, between the reigns of Henry I. and Stephen, the *De Summitatibus* and the *De Miraculis*, as Books viii. and ix.

<sup>3</sup> This curious MS. represents (above, § 5) the first edition. It is thus dated at the end, “*Ab incarnatione Domini annus mxcvi.*, ab invasione Normannorum cxxx., . . . . a martirio beati Thomæ xxvi.” It is written in a fine bold hand, with initial letters showing much taste and beauty of execution, yet it abounds in clerical errors to an unusual degree. Between the fourth and fifth books is a copy, in a hand of the end of the twelfth or beginning of the thirteenth century, of the Epistle of Prester John to Manuel, the emperor of Constantinople; it is a better and older text than that printed by Oppert (*De Presbyter Johannes in Sage*

- |                     |                                 |                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 5. F <sup>4</sup> . | - Bibl. Pub. Rouen <sup>1</sup> | - XII. or XIII. cent. |
| 6. A.               | - Arundel, 48 <sup>2</sup>      | - XII. or XIII. cent. |
| 7. A <sup>6</sup> . | - Lambeth, 118 <sup>3</sup>     | - XII. or XIII. cent. |
| 8. A <sup>7</sup> . | - Lambeth, 327 <sup>4</sup>     | - XII. or XIII. cent. |

und Geschichte. Berlin, 1864). After the colophon is a list of archbishops of Canterbury, which originally ended with "Willelmus" [Curbuil]. A later hand has added "Teodbaldus, Thomas, Ricardus, "Baldewinus, Hubertus."

<sup>1</sup> Of this MS., which I have not been able to examine, there is an account in Hardy's *Descr. Catalogue*, ii. p. 270. It was probably a copy made for the abbey of Jumèges (to which it formerly belonged) of Paris 6042. It ends at the same point as that MS.

<sup>2</sup> This MS. has been used as the basis of the present edition (as of that in the *Monumenta*) down to its termination in 1148 with the words "jocunditate spirituali." On p. 2 an ancient footnote says, "Hic liber est ecclesiæ Sanctæ Mariæ de Suwica." Hence it may be identified with the copy used by Leland, from which extracts are given in his *Collectanea*, vol. ii. p. 306. For Leland's copy ended, as Arundel 48 ends, with the consecration of Robert de Querceto as bishop of Lincoln, and he tells us that it was lent to him by the "canonici Sudovicani," near Porchester. A priory of Augustinian canons was founded by Henry I. at Porchester in 1133, and soon after removed to Southwick, which is called "Suwyka" in an inspeimus dated in the fifty-third year of Henry III. Their church was dedicated to St. Mary (*Monasticon*, vi. 243). It is a good text, though

not written with quite so much care and accuracy as the *Corpus MS.* The scribe appears to have had a curious fancy for changing the order of the words where it could be done without altering the sense; scores of instances of this might be detected on a careful comparison of this with other leading MSS. There is a change of hand at f. 161a, near the beginning of the tenth book.

<sup>3</sup> This MS. is in the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth. It is wrongly described in the catalogue as of the 14th century; I should be disposed to date it at the end of the 12th or quite early in the 13th century. It ends at the same point as Arundel 48. The date assigned to the composition of the history in the initial rubric is 1145. This is a fine MS., written and ornamented in a superior manner. The *Historia Anglorum* is followed by the "Decreta Willelmi Regis," and these by the "Leges Sti. Edwardi Regis;" a genealogy of the dukes of Normandy concludes the volume, and the scribe writes—

"Complevi, totum scripsi, librum—  
"que peregi,  
"Et solus totum; sit summo gratia Regi."

The History is in twelve books; ix. and x. being *De Miraculis* and *De Summitatibus*, and xi. and xii., the serious Epigrams.

<sup>4</sup> An ill-used and much discoloured MS., also at Lambeth.

9. G. - Grosvenor<sup>1</sup> - XIII. cent.  
 10. S. - Adv. Libr. Edinb. A. 5. XIII. cent.  
       38.<sup>2</sup>  
 11. S<sup>2</sup>. - Adv. Libr. Edinb. 33. XIII. cent.  
       5. 4.<sup>3</sup>  
 12. C. - Cambr. Univ. Libr. XIII. cent.  
       G. g. II. 21.<sup>4</sup>

It has ten books, arranged in the order of Arundel 48, not that of Lambeth 118. It ends in the middle of 1148, at the words "venerat ex Anglia."

<sup>1</sup> This text, the property of the Duke of Westminster, who has kindly placed it in my hands during the preparation of the present edition, is evidently a copy of Arundel 48, all the clerical errors of which it reproduces with curious fidelity. Like its prototype, it contains a drawing of Baldwin Fitzgilbert addressing Stephen's troops before the battle of Lincoln; but this has fewer figures than the other.

<sup>2</sup> This MS. is somewhat poor in execution; it bears the rubric date 1145, and ends with that year; though, as we have seen (§ 8), it is impossible to be certain, in the absence of a definite *explicit*, that it did not once extend further. There is a hiatus from the words "leges apud Winchelcumbæ" in the ninth book (see above, § 19), to "In eo quippe termino," Book viii., § 20.

<sup>3</sup> This MS. seems to be of about the same age as the last. At the top of the first page a fifteenth century hand has written, "Chronica Anglorum optime abbreviata per

"Henr. Hunt. Archid." Then follows, in an earlier hand, "Liber patris domini Johannis Exoniensis episcopi, qui eum celaverit, anathema sit." This text was included in the precious collection of MSS. made by Sir John Balfour in the seventeenth century, and given by him to the Advocates' Library at Edinburgh. It is important as being one, and the best, of the two extant MSS. which represent the edition of 1139. The copyist must have been a great lover of brevity, or rather his employers must have been so; for the quotations from Eutropius in the first book, and several of the poetical effusions in the seventh, are omitted. The eighth and ninth books of later editions are of course wanting, because their incorporation in the history did not take effect till the issue of the edition of 1145. There is no foundation for the statement respecting this MS. in Sir T. Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue* (ii. 271), that "a portion of the seventh book and the whole of the eighth are wanting."

<sup>4</sup> This MS. represents the edition of 1145; it has no special feature of interest. It ends at the same place as Paris 6042, in 1147.

13. C<sup>2</sup>. - Cambr. Univ. Libr. XIII. cent.  
I. i. ii. 3.<sup>1</sup>
14. C<sup>4</sup>. - St. John's Coll. Cambr. XIII. cent.  
G. 16. 6.<sup>2</sup>
15. A<sup>5</sup>. - Addit. 24,061<sup>3</sup> - XIV. cent.
16. A<sup>6</sup>. - Lambeth, 179<sup>4</sup> - XIV. cent.
17. O. - Laud, 564<sup>5</sup> - XIV. cent.
18. A<sup>2</sup>. - Reg. 13. B. vi.<sup>6</sup> - XIV. cent.

<sup>1</sup> The volume which contains this copy of the *Historia* begins with and principally consists of Malmesbury's *Gesta Regum*. The *Historia* is written in a small but compact and well formed hand of the thirteenth century. This MS. contains the entire work down to 1154, including Books viii. and ix. It is possible that this may be a copy of the Corpus MS. (C<sup>3</sup>).

<sup>2</sup> This MS., which I have not examined, is said to be of the thirteenth century, and to terminate in 1145.

<sup>3</sup> A poorly executed text, in folio, with the rubric date 1135. It closes with the election of Theobald to the primacy at the end of 1138, and is hence considered by Dr. Liebermann to represent the edition of 1139. After "Expliciunt chronica Henrici Huntindonensis," the scribe proceeds, "Incipit continuatio . . . a diversis compilatoribus extracta." The continuation fills about thirty-four folios, and comes down to 1202. With great deference for the opinion of Sir Thomas Hardy, I should judge this to be a text of the early fifteenth, not the fourteenth century.

<sup>4</sup> This is a MS. written late in the fourteenth century; I believe it to be a transcript, with abridg-

ments, of Lambeth 118. As in that MS., the eight historical books succeed each other continuously; the history ends with the election of Robert de Querceto; Book ix. is entirely omitted, while of Book x. the Epistle to Walter alone is given, as if the transcriber thought the other Epistles not worth copying.

<sup>5</sup> This MS. is defective at the beginning to the extent of two lines, besides the Prologue. It begins with the words, "multi et diversi generis terra et mari." At the end it is damaged, and the leaves become progressively illegible. There is a great hiatus towards the middle of the volume; it extends from the words "institutione formatus rex" (Book iii., § 36) to "Sidroc senem," in the middle of the sixth section of the fifth book. This MS. ended in 1148, but whether at "venerat ex Anglia" or at "jocunditate spirituali" is a point which, owing to the damaged condition of the last leaves, it is scarcely possible to determine. Of Book viii. it contains only the Epilogue and the paragraph, "Scripsit autem." Book ix. is wanting.

<sup>6</sup> This is a useful and intelligently written text. It formerly belonged to a Dominican friar, as appears from an entry in a fifteenth

19. S<sup>3</sup>. - Hunt. Libr. Glasg.<sup>1</sup> - XIV. cent.  
 20. A<sup>4</sup>. - Vesp. A. xviii.<sup>2</sup> - XV. cent.  
 21. - Savile<sup>3</sup> - XIV. cent.  
 22. C<sup>5</sup>. - Trin. Coll. Cambr. R. 5. XIV. cent.  
 42.<sup>4</sup>

century hand on the spare leaf at the end, "Thomas Newark frater "Prædicatorum ordinis." Like the Corpus MS. it contains the entire history to 1154, and has the same words at the end of the tenth book, "Etiam regi novo," &c. (see above, § 27). It bears the rubric date, 1145. After "Jocunditate spirituali," Book viii., § 28, a fifteenth century writer has inserted the words "Multi libri non habent plus." A short epitome of the later history down to Edward IV. follows the work of Huntingdon; it ends thus:—

"Edwardus quartus modo reg-  
 nat, filius hujus,  
 Belliger, invictus, in scripturis  
 quoque doctus."

<sup>1</sup> This is one of the MSS. collected, chiefly in England, by the celebrated surgeon, John Hunter, and bequeathed to his museum, which is now in the charge of the University of Glasgow. It is a text of little importance, and contains many bad and impossible readings. It omits Books viii. and ix., and ends in 1147, like C. and F., at the words "non reformidantis fuerit."

<sup>2</sup> This MS., which must have been omitted by inadvertence from the list of Huntingdon MSS. in Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue* (ii. 269), might perhaps be of the end of the fourteenth, but I am more inclined to assign it to the fifteenth century. It is unfinished, having only the first seven books to the death of Henry I., and the

opening of the eighth, breaking off at the end of the paragraph, "Scrip-  
 sit autem." (See above, § 13.) It bears the rubric-date, 1145.

<sup>3</sup> This is described in the sale catalogue of the Savile MSS. as being a "fine MS. on vellum by an English scribe," and as having a continuation to A.D. 1200. It was bought by Mr. Boone for 175*l*. [A recent examination of Addit. 24,061 (No. 15) shows that it was bought at the Savile sale. It cannot be doubted, therefore, although Sir Thomas Hardy enters them separately in his catalogue, that No. 21 and No. 15 refer to the same MS.]

<sup>4</sup> Mr. W. Aldis Wright has kindly examined this MS. for me. It is in a hand of the fourteenth century. The rubric-date is 1145. After the rubric occur the words, "Liber fratris Roberti de Popultone, precii 10. s." This friar Popultone, or Popiltoun, as has been well pointed out by Dr. Liebermann, was probably the friar of the same name who lived in the early part of the fourteenth century, and wrote, or caused to be written, a considerable portion of the volume, Paris 4126, described at p. 170, vol. ii. of Hardy's Catalogue. It contains eleven books, the last consisting of Epigrams, arranged in the same order as in Lambeth 118. The History, as in Arundel 48 and many other MSS., ends in 1148, with the installation of Robert de Querceto.

23. O<sup>2</sup>. - All Souls, xxxi.<sup>1</sup> - XV. cent.  
 24. - Vatican, Christina, XV. cent.  
       587.<sup>2</sup>  
 25. - Harl. 64<sup>3</sup> - Two hands.  
 26. - Bibl. Nat. Paris, 6043<sup>4</sup> XVI. cent.

<sup>1</sup> This MS. belongs to the second half of the fifteenth century. It would be of no importance but for the fact that it is the only text, besides Hengwrt 101, which represents the edition of 1130. Its readings agree so exactly with those of Hengwrt 101, that I am inclined to think it is a transcript of it. This agreement is the more striking when it is found to extend to a curious version of the Epilogue (noticed above, § 12 note<sup>1</sup>), according to which, after the writer has spoken of the year, "qui comprehendit scriptorem," as the "*tricesimus*" of Henry I., i.e., 1130, he proceeds to designate it as "the year of grace 1163," to which date he adheres in several subsequent mentions of the year which occur in the same passage. I do not see how this can be otherwise explained than as the freak of a copyist, who, being engaged in 1163 on a transcript of the edition of 1130, chose to insert the date at which he himself was writing, instead of that which he found in his original. It is perplexing, however, to find Edmund the chaplain, who seems to have been the writer of the Hengwrt MS. (see the end of Book iv.), copying this absurd date without comment in his own transcript, which, as we have seen, was made in 1196. It is less difficult to understand how the writer of the All Souls MS., supposing him to have had Hengwrt 101 before him, a text already two cen-

turies and a half old, might have copied exactly what he found there, without caring to correct by other copies the inconsistency of the dates.

At the end of the Epilogue there is a rubric, "*Hæc sunt nomina regum Christianorum in Anglia.*" A short historical epitome follows, ending with the death and burial of Henry III. in 1272.

<sup>2</sup> The contents of this MS. appear to agree with those of Lambeth 118. See Hardy's *Catalogue*.

<sup>3</sup> This is a copy of the History, more or less abbreviated; the earlier books are bound up confusedly. The first part of the MS. is in a hand of the fourteenth century, the remainder in one of the seventeenth.

<sup>4</sup> This text, which is on paper, is perhaps a copy of the Rouen MS. No. 5. It has the book, "*De Summitatibus*," but when the scribe comes to Book ix., after giving the list of saints (*ante*, § 17), he says, "*Ista miracula omisi brevitatis causa, tum quia longe clariora et admirabiliora perlegi in Gallia.*" The MS. ends, like Paris 6042, in 1147; a continuation to 1159 follows, by Robert de Monte, or, perhaps, abridged from his Chronicle. The colophon is as follows:—"Robertus abbas historicus Henrici regis familiaris causam ejus perfectius egit et scripsit similiter, et monachus Andreas ejus temporis equalis author."

27. - Bibl. Nat. Paris, 6044<sup>1</sup> XVI. cent.  
 28. - Addit. 21,088<sup>2</sup> - XVI. cent.  
 29. - Routh<sup>3</sup> - Paper, XVI. cent.  
 30. A<sup>4</sup>. - Reg. 13. C. ii.<sup>4</sup> - Paper, XVII. cent.  
 31. - Phillipps, 8079<sup>5</sup>.  
 32. - Sidn. Suss. Coll. Cambr.,  
       733.<sup>6</sup>  
 33. - Stonyhurst.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is a large folio, on paper, in a hand of the early sixteenth century. It exactly resembles Lambeth 118 in every point, and was, I have no doubt, transcribed from it. For instance, the Laws of Canute occur at the same place in the Sixth book (§ 17); the work is in twelve books, succeeding each other in the same order; and the same mistake ("spiraculi" for "spirituali") occurs in the concluding words.

<sup>2</sup> This text, beautifully written on paper in a hand of the late sixteenth century, "is a transcript made by a Frenchman for Daniel Rogers, a friend of Camden," (Hardy's *Catalogue*). Its contents and arrangement appear to be precisely the same with those of Lambeth 118 and Paris 6044, from one or the other of which it was probably transcribed.

<sup>3</sup> Of this MS., which now belongs to the University of Durham, the description in the Routh sale-catalogue agrees almost exactly with that which Sir T. D. Hardy gives of Addit. 21,088.

<sup>4</sup> An exquisitely written copy, in a hand of the seventeenth century. It arranges the books in the same order as Lambeth 118, and its con-

tents appear to agree exactly with those of that MS., of which it was probably a transcript.

<sup>5</sup> The date of this MS., of which I know nothing but from the description in Hardy's *Catalogue*, is not there given; probably it is of the fourteenth or fifteenth century. It ends in 1147.

<sup>6</sup> This MS. is written in a hand of the first half of the fifteenth century. According to information received, it appears to be incomplete, having only the first seven books and part of the eighth, down to the end of the Epistle to Henry I.

<sup>7</sup> This text, unknown to Sir T. D. Hardy, is described in the Appendix to the Second Report on Historical Manuscripts, p. 145. It appears to be in a hand of the thirteenth century. At the end of Book vii., "a note follows in an early hand to the effect that three chapters are here wanting." By these are probably meant the Epilogue and Epistles i. and ii. of the eighth book. Epistle iii., that to Walter, is given entire, and also Book ix. This MS. ends at the words, "jocunditate spirituali," (viii., § 27).

Rejected  
MSS.

§ 30. Fifteen MSS., which are reckoned among Huntingdon MSS. in Hardy's Catalogue, are excluded from the above list for various reasons. Two (Gray's Inn 9, and Reg. 13. A. xviii.) are abridgments of the "*Historia*," not the "*Historia*" itself; six are merely copies of one or other of the Epistles in the book, "*De Summitatibus*," and three are fragments. Four MSS. remain (Bodl. 521, All Souls XXXVI., Arundel 46, and Cambr. Univ. Libr. D. d. 17), which have always been hitherto accounted Huntingdon MSS., and of which even the penetrating eye of Dr. Liebermann (doubtless for want of sufficient time for their complete investigation) did not detect the true character. These are not texts of the *Historia Anglorum*, but of a composite work, compiled probably in some northern monastery about 1180, and called a "*Cronica Mariani Scoti*." It is difficult to fix the precise meaning of this expression. Marianus, the Irish recluse, had, in the solitude of his cell, first at Fulda, and afterwards at Meitz, written a *Chronicon Universale* from the beginning of the world nearly to his own death, in 1082 or 1083. This work immediately attained to great popularity. Recognising this fact, Florence of Worcester, when he undertook to write a Latin history of Britain, thought it his best plan to insert notices of British affairs at the proper dates in the chronicle of Marianus to the point where it terminates; after which he continues it in his own way for nearly 40 years. The work now in question is simply a compilation, of which the beginning and end are taken from Henry of Huntingdon, while the intervening portion is the Durham book, the "*Historia post Bedam*," which forms the basis of the *Pars Prior* of Hoveden. The compiler calls it a chronicle of Marianus Scotus, perhaps merely as a testimony of respect to an eminent historian; possibly, however, because a considerable portion of the Durham book is

extracted from Florence of Worcester, whose work was as yet regarded only as an enlargement and continuation of the Chronicon of Marianus.<sup>1</sup>

§ 31. This Durham book is a strange piece of patch-work, of which Professor Stubbs, in the preface to his edition of Hoveden, has unravelled the method of composition. Both it, and the Marianist work just mentioned, are important links in the chain of historical writing which connects Beda's great work with the *Historia Major* of Matthew Paris. The confusion which has hitherto prevailed between the Marianist work and Huntingdon's history is enough to justify the following attempt to exhibit clearly the lines along which the annalistic energy of the country developed itself in the four centuries and a half following the death of Beda.

1. The *Historia Ecclesiastica*, terminating in 731.

The filiation  
of Chroni-  
cles.

2. The *Northumbrian Annals*. The proper name of these seems to have been <sup>2</sup> *Gesta veterum Northanhymbrorum*. They were intended as an attempt to supply a continuation of Beda, particularly as regarded northern affairs, and were probably compiled by a Northumbrian writer early in the ninth century; but whether he wrote at Hexham, York, or Lindisfarne we have no means of determining.<sup>3</sup> It has been thought that he derived most of his information about continental affairs from the letters written by Alcuin from the court of Charlemagne to his English friends. These annals terminate abruptly in 803.

<sup>1</sup> "Our early writers," says Sir T. D. Hardy, "frequently refer to "Marianus Scotus, meaning Florence of Worcester, and sometimes the continuation of Florence, as low as the middle of the twelfth century, nearly 100 years after the death of Marianus." Florence says himself, under the birth-year of Marianus, A.D. 1028,

J 204.

"Eodem anno natus est Marianus  
"Hibernensis probabilis Scotus;  
"cujus studio et labore hæc chronica præcellens de diversis libris  
"est coadunata."

<sup>2</sup> See *Richard of Hexham* (edited by Canon Raine for the Surtee Society), p. 60.

<sup>3</sup> *Hoveden* (Stubbs), p. xxix.

3. The Winchester Chronicle, represented by the well-known manuscript A belonging to Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. An early edition of this Chronicle terminated at A.D. 855, and another at A.D. 891. See Mr. Earle's Introduction (*Two Saxon Chronicles*).

4. Asser's Life of Alfred. This biography by the bishop of St. David's covers the period from 849, the year of Alfred's birth, to 893, where it suddenly breaks off. It is based, as to the public events recorded in it, on the Winchester Chronicle.

5. A continuation of the Northumbrian annals, made in the tenth century by a monk of Chester-le-Street (see a. 899 and a. 934 in Simeon of Durham) at the time when the body of St. Cuthbert rested there, and brought down to A.D. 957. This writer makes large use of Asser, and when Asser's notices of public events fail him, in 877, he resorts, but very sparingly, to the Winchester Chronicle.

6. The Chronicon ex Chronicis of Florence, a monk of Worcester. This excellent writer drew the materials for that portion of his work which relates to English affairs from Bede, the Worcester Chronicle, the Lives of Saints, and Asser's Life of Alfred. He brought down his Chronicle to 1117, the year before his death.

The Hex-  
ham book.

§ 32. 7. The Hexham book. Some canon of Hexham, writing about 1120 or even later, took a copy of the Northumbrian Annals (No. 1), and interpolated large additions in it, his chief object being to glorify the saints of Hexham, Acca, and Alcmund. Thus we have a long account of the miracles of the former under the year 740, and of the apparitions of the latter under the year 781. In addition to these, the Hexham writer prefixed to his work a legend of southern origin, composed, there is reason to believe, at Wakering in Essex,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The burial of the young princes at Wakering is mentioned (M.H.B. p. 648), and miracles are related as having been performed at their tombs. But their relics were translated from Wakering to Ramsey in

which relates the "Passio Sanctorum Ethelberti atque Ethelredi," the great grandsons of Æthelbert the first Christian king of Kent. Some hagiological connexion between Hexham and Wakering could probably be discovered by careful search, which would account for the incorporation of this southern legend in a work representing northern feelings and northern interests. Long excerpts from Beda, relating to the abbots of Wearmouth and Jarrow and to the state of things in Northumbria shortly before his death, are also inserted. To these is added his poem on the Day of Judgment, perhaps because it was addressed to Acca, a Hexham bishop. The original rubric of the Northumbrian Annals, which may be read in the Pars Prior of Hoveden, and was to the following effect, "In exordio hujus operis genealogiam regum Northanhymbrorum libet demonstrare," was altered rather clumsily by the Hexham writer, in order to make it refer to the Kentish legend which he prefixed to his work; it now ran, "In exordio h. o. genealogiam regum [Cantuariorum strictim prælibavimus; nunc] Northanhymbrorum, etc."

§ 33. 8. The *Historia de Regibus Anglorum et Dacorum* by Simeon of Durham. In this work Professor Stubbs (Preface to Hoveden, p. xxxi) is inclined to trace the handiwork of yet another labourer, some Durham monk namely, who compiled the work as it stands down to 1120, leaving to Simeon only the few years of contemporary history from 1120 to 1129. But, with deference to so high an authority, I cannot but think that the hypothesis of successive editions, stopping at various dates, will sufficiently explain the fact that the compiler of the "Durham book" presently to be described knew nothing of Simeon's history beyond the year 1121, without our being forced to evoke a phantom

---

991 (Preface to M. H. B. p. 89); this "Passio," therefore, which seems to have been one of a series

of saints' lives, and was perhaps used as a sermon, must have been written before that date.

writer from the monastic cemetery of whom absolutely nothing is known. But there is another very perplexing question, namely, whether Simeon really incorporated the Hexham book (that is, the Northumbrian Annals recast and enlarged) in his *Historia*, or only those Annals in their original and genuine form. The rubric in the sole existing MS. (C.C.C. Cambr. 139), ascribing the *Historia* in the form in which it has come down to us, (that is, as incorporated with the Hexham book,) to Simeon, is not sufficient evidence to make us feel certain on the subject. On the whole it seems to me more likely that an ecclesiastic, like Simeon, thoroughly identified with the church of Durham and St. Cuthbert, would have used the simple form of the Annals for his compilation, than that he would have gone out of his way to use a version swollen and padded out, so to speak, with the praises of the saints of Hexham. It is perhaps significant that in the volume containing this unique MS. the piece that follows it is John of Hexham's continuation of Simeon, and among those that precede it is Richard of Hexham's chronicle. The volume is redolent of Hexham influences, and I strongly suspect that some Tyneside hand substituted, when making a copy of Simeon's work, the Hexham version of the Annals for the simpler form which Simeon himself had used.

§ 34. Whether we assume that Simeon made use of the Hexham book (No. 7) or the Annals pure and simple (No. 2) for the first part of his compilation, the course which he pursued in the remainder of his work is plainly discernible. He joined the Annals to the continuation by the monk of Chester-le-Street (No. 5), thus bringing down the history to A.D. 957. To these he added a chronicle of his own compiling, borrowed for the most part from the recently published work of Florence of Worcester, and coming down, in the latest edition of it, to 1129. He did not, however, commence at 957, but went back to 848, the year of the birth of Alfred, a

course which involved a great deal of repetition, since Florence (on whom he relied) drew the facts of Alfred's career, no less than the monk of Chester-le-Street, from Asser's biography. Why Simeon pursued a plan so very inartistic, it is perhaps now vain to inquire. There are, however, some curious additions, which are neither found in the older chronicle nor in Florence, *e.g.*, the account of John Scotus Erigena, borrowed from Malmesbury's Life of St. Aldhelm, and some insertions bearing on the possessions of St. Cuthbert, and the circumstances under which they were first granted.

9. Huntingdon's *Historia Anglorum*, the editions of which appeared at various dates between 1130 and 1154.

§ 35. 10. The Durham book, or the "*Historia Saxonum* The Durham book. " *vel Anglorum post obitum Bedæ*." Professor Stubbs, in the preface to his edition of Hoveden, has minutely analysed the composition of this work, which forms the basis of Hoveden's *Pars Prior*. It would seem that the monks of Durham, desiring to have a handy and compendious chronicle of English affairs from the death of Beda to their own time, and not being entirely satisfied either with the work of their own Simeon, or with that of Huntingdon, commissioned one of their number between the years 1150 and 1160<sup>1</sup> to compile from the above-named writers such a work as would suit their purpose. They did not care for the British portion of the History, nor even for the English part of it antecedent to Beda; hence the first three books of Huntingdon and part of the fourth were to be eschewed. The compiler began with the Northumbrian Annals (No. 2), and followed them from 734 to 803. Then he turned to Henry of Huntingdon (iv., § 18), whose narrative he

<sup>1</sup> Under the year 1074, Severinus, abbot of St. Mary's, York, who died in 1161, is spoken of as alive at the

time of writing. (Hardy, ii. 252, *note*.)

borrowed almost verbatim from 752<sup>1</sup> to the notice of the sack of Winchester by the Danes in 860. Being now close upon Alfred's reign, it seems to have occurred to him that Henry's narrative was somewhat too meagre for a period so important; he accordingly abandons it, and takes to the second part of Simeon's compilation, that from 848 to 1129, in which not only the life of Alfred, but the whole tissue of events for the next two hundred and sixty years, is given with considerably greater fulness of detail than Henry allows himself. At the same time he does not confine himself to Simeon's second part, but combines with it many details taken from No. 5, corrects his narrative by reference to Asser, Eadmer, and Florence, adds to it various contributions of his own, chiefly relating to Durham and St. Cuthbert, and brings this part of his work down to 1121. The edition of Simeon's history which he was using evidently went no farther. Then he returns to Huntingdon, and annexes his narrative almost word for word from 1121 (vii. § 33), to 1148, stopping in the middle of the year at the words "*Pars autem eorum maxima venerat ex Anglia.*" His edition of Henry must have ended at this point. The Durham book is represented by several MSS., among which are one in the King's library, and St. John's Coll. Oxf. 97.

The Marianist book.

§ 36. 11. The Marianist work.—That the Durham book just described was worked up entire into the texture of

<sup>1</sup> He goes back to 752 for this reason. With the exception of an incidental mention of Brihtric, no king of Wessex had figured in the Annals which he has been copying from 754 till just before its termination; they are devoted to the acts of Northumbrian and Mercian kings. To give greater completeness to his work, therefore, the Durham writer resolves to annex

from Henry the story of the reigns of the kings of Wessex during the same period. He returns, therefore, to the West-Saxon king last mentioned in the Annals, namely, Cuthred, and takes up his story as told by Huntingdon in the eleventh year of his reign, apparently because it contains the highly coloured narrative of the battle of Burford.

Hoveden's history, was made clear by Prof. Stubbs ; but that it also entered largely into the composition of another historical work, earlier than Hoveden, has not hitherto been observed. This is the work claiming the name of Marianus, of which, as mentioned at a previous page,<sup>1</sup> at least four MSS. exist. Speaking generally, it is an amalgam of Henry of Huntingdon and the Durham book. The compiler probably wrote between 1170 and 1180, that is, after the appearance of the Durham book, but before Hoveden. If one may judge from his method of procedure, he thought that as a general history the Durham book still left much to be desired, and he resolved to amend it. He seems to have regarded Henry as too diffuse for general purposes in the earlier portions of the Anglo-Saxon history, but in other places too concise. At the same time he does not approve of beginning at the death of Beda, as if the country had had no history before then. Accordingly he takes up the first book of Henry (omitting the prologue), so as to commence with Julius Cæsar, and transcribes it pretty faithfully. Books ii. and iii. he greatly abridges, incorporating parts of the latter in the former. Proceeding to Book iv., still abridging, he comes to the reign of Cuthred of Wessex, and his contest with the rebel Edelhun in 750. He has now arrived at the point where the Durham writer began to make use of Henry, as already explained ; and he would probably consider that by his method of condensation he had preserved the flower of the early history, as given by Henry, while rejecting the refuse ; whereas the Durham man, till 750, would not profit by him at all. The Marianist now, taking up the Durham book, which only obliges him to a slight recoil, namely to 732, uses it up from end to end without contraction, taking or leaving Henry or Simeon just as his model does. But as he intends to bring down

---

<sup>1</sup> p. xliv.

his work to the end of the reign of Stephen, he does not stop at 1148, but, omitting only the paragraph about the election of Robert de Querceto, proceeds with the last edition of Henry from "Anno xiv. Henrico nepoti" (§ 29) to the end of the work at "intrante revixi." Thus beginning and concluding his compilation with Henry, it is no wonder that the Marianist has hitherto been confounded with the historian. Roger of Hoveden also used the Durham book, but not having, it would seem, access to the latest edition of Henry, inserted for the years 1148-1154 only a few meagre notices, some of which he took from the Chronicle of Melrose.

Henry's orthography.

§ 37. *Orthography*.—Henry used no particular pains to spell the Saxon names which occur in his history correctly or consistently. The copy of the Saxon chronicle which he habitually used was one resembling E. (the Peterborough Chronicle); where E. failed him, as in the royal genealogies, he used a copy resembling either C. (Abingdon MS.) or G.<sup>1</sup> His proper names resemble in form those in G. more than those in any other MS. Sometimes, not often, Henry preserves more correct forms than some or all of the MSS. of the Chronicles can show. This arises where he has not been led astray by that frequent source of error, the confusion of *p* with the Anglo-Saxon character for *w*. These characters are so alike, or became so alike after the Conquest, that the copyists and translators of Saxon MSS. were continually confusing them. Thus so careful

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Earle thinks that this MS. (of which only three leaves now survive, but which is fortunately preserved to us in Wheloc's edition Cambridge, 1648) is only a servile reproduction of A, copied from it "in the eleventh century at Christ Church, Canterbury, at the time they received A from Winchester." But, if so, it would surely

have contained the fine annal 1070, not to speak of other Kentish notices, instead of which G. ends at 1001, where the Winchester Chronicle originally ended. It seems to me far more likely that G. is a copy made from A at Winchester, before the latter was removed by Lanfranc's order to Canterbury.

a writer as the scribe of C.C.C.C. 280, writes "Cedes" "Cadpallensium" (iii., § 34), though he had written "Cadwallam" just before, because he mistakes the Anglo-Saxon *w* that he is copying for *p*. The same explanation accounts for the "Pybba" (Penda's father), of most of the Chronicles, whereas Henry has "Wibba" (ii., § 31), which is the true reading. Again the *w* is probably right, and the *p* wrong, in "Wincanheale" (Finchale), where the Chronicles have "Pincanheale," and in "Wettelmus," the "Pechthelm" of Beda. The mistake, however, occasions erroneous readings in Henry oftener than in the Chronicles; thus he has "Picciorum," "Plenting," "Meamparorum," "Eapa," "Speon," for "Wicciorum," "Wlencing," "Meanwarorum," "Eawa," "Sweon."

§ 38. *Sources*.—There is not often much difficulty in tracing the sources whence Henry drew his information. In the First book he relies on Eutropius, Aurelius Victor, Nennius, and Beda (*De Ratione Temporum* and *Hist. Eccles.*); he also shows some acquaintance with the works of St. Jerome and Gregory the Great. In the Second book he has scarcely anything that cannot be traced to Nennius, Beda, or the Chronicles. After parting with Beda, he relies on the Chronicles almost exclusively. At first sight he appears to borrow certain statements from Geoffrey of Monmouth, *e.g.*, the paternity of Helena, the mother of Constantine (I. § 37). But an examination of dates shows this to be impossible. The *Historia Britonum*, as is evident from expressions used in the prologue addressed to Robert of Gloucester, did not appear till after 1135. But all the passages which we might be inclined to attribute to an acquaintance with Geoffrey occur in the earliest, no less than in the later editions of the *Historia Anglorum*; that is, Henry wrote them before 1133, at a time when it is most improbable that he should have even heard of the "liber grandis Galfridi Arturi." There is indeed no reason for

Sources of  
his history

our scrupling to believe that he saw the book in 1139 for the first time, which is the natural meaning of his words; see above, § 14. When therefore we find Henry naming Coel, king of Colchester, as the father of Helena, and meet with the same statement in Geoffrey of Monmouth, we must not infer any communication between the two, but suppose that both had access to the same local tradition.<sup>1</sup> To local tradition also, as embodying a dim recollection of the fact which had struggled on through the mouths of men across seven centuries, may possibly be ascribed the statement (ii. § 1), not found elsewhere, that Hengist soon after his landing advanced against the Picts and Scots, and defeated them at Stamford. Stamford lies within that fen-district which was Henry's native country, and about which whatever he says is usually vivid and precise. The story about the brave man of Balsham (a village near Cambridge), who defended himself against a whole Danish army (vi., § 6), may much more confidently be considered a genuine local tradition, since it happened less than 80 years before Henry's birth.

The Chroni-  
cles.

§ 39. From the death of Beda to 1125 or 1126 Henry's great authority is the Saxon Chronicle. "Chronicles" is, of course, a more correct expression, because, along with a large common store of records, the chronicle kept at each great monastery had much that was peculiar to the part of England where it was situated, or to the interests of the monastery itself. Henry seems to have

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Liebermann was good enough to draw my attention to a *Historia fundationis* of the monastery of St. John at Colchester, printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon* (iv., p. 607), and written (if an appreciation of the internal evidence founded on a hasty perusal may be relied on) not long after 1130, in which, though Coel is not named,

Helena is identified with Colchester,  
 " Traditur Helenam . . . .  
 " ex hac civitate natam et educa-  
 " tam, quæ quanti fuerit vel eo  
 " conjicitur, quod Constantius Con-  
 " stantini magni genitor triennio  
 " dicitur hanc obsedissee, nec ob-  
 " tinuisse nisi . . . . per  
 " Helenæ nuptias."

been familiar with several of these varying versions, for he speaks of "compiling," that is, laying under contribution "*chronica in antiquis reservata librariis*," and of what he had been able to find "*in scriptis veterum diligenti scrutinio collectis*." Connecting these statements with what he says in Book ix. of the numerous monasteries where men might read legends of the saints, implying, as I think, that he had himself visited many of them, we may perhaps conjecture that his *modus operandi* was, to visit monasteries which contained chronicles, (Peterborough, Abingdon, Worcester, perhaps also Canterbury and Winchester,) and excerpt what each had peculiar to itself. However this may be, it is certain that the chronicle which he ordinarily used was the Peterborough redaction, represented by the MS. E.; of this he very likely had a copy. It is difficult to decide what date he made use of E. According to Mr. Earle,<sup>1</sup> that MS. is written in one hand down to the end of A.D. 1121; the second hand takes up the events of the next ten years, stopping at the end of 1131. Where the resemblances between Henry and the chronicler, in the history of these ten years, are too close to be the result of accident, which was the original authority and which the copyist? Henry brought out his first edition in 1130; the work of the second writer in E. includes 1131; it might seem therefore that the notices which they have in common must have been taken by the Peterborough writer from Henry. But this does not seem to me very likely; the historical labour of compiling a new chronicle seems to have been undertaken at Peterborough about 1121,<sup>2</sup> some years

---

<sup>1</sup> *Two Saxon Chronicles*, p. xliii.

<sup>2</sup> It was rendered necessary, according to the reasonable and probable theory of Mr. Earle, by the destruction of the monastery of

Peterborough by fire in 1116. The library perished along with the other buildings, and it is exceedingly probable that a copy of the Chronicle was then lost.

before Henry began his history, and having been once undertaken, it seems likely that it would be continued year after year for some time. If Henry, while working at his history in 1128 and 1129, had a transcript of E. before him, that transcript would probably come down to 1125 or 1126; and so far the close resemblances between the two works actually extend. After 1126 there is not, I think, any agreement between the two narratives so close as to force us to believe that one is anywhere taken from or founded upon the other. In the few passages from the chronicles which Henry could not have found in E., *e.g.*, in the genealogies of kings, he seems to have consulted either C. or G. The former he might have seen at Abingdon, the latter at Winchester. A certain resemblance in forms (*e.g.* *Wyba*, to Henry's *Wybba*, where *Ā.* has *Pybba*; a. 755) tends to support the inference that G. rather than *Ā.* itself was consulted by Henry; but the presumption is slight; and as he was sufficiently well acquainted with Archbishop Theobald in 1139 to travel in his company to Rome, it is possible that he may have been often at Canterbury, and had free access to the library, in which *Ā.* then was. Compare what he says of Canterbury in Book ix. (above, § 18.)

Other  
sources.

§ 40. Other sources may be—

1. A historical work, now lost, compiled at St. Albans; compare iv. 21, *note*, and § 23, *note*.

2. Some Franco-Norman annals, now lost. Extracts from a work of this nature, in Latin, are scattered through E. from 769 to 1062. Some notices which E. did not use, but which occasionally meet us in extant annals similar to the compilation here supposed, were adopted by Henry; such is the "*Carolus eo anno Romam ivit*" of 780 (iv., § 14), compared with the "*Karolus Romam vadit*" of the *Chronica S. Steph. Cadomensis* (Duchesne, *Script. Norm.*, p. 1015). Compare also the Rouen Annals, printed in Labbe's *Bibliotheca*, vol. i., p. 364.

3. The *Historia Ramesiensis*.—A connexion may be traced between this work and the *Historia Anglorum* (e.g. in the use of the remarkable phrase “cæde despecta” in both narratives when describing the battle of Assingdon, and in their agreement respecting the banquet at York (vi., § 28) after the battle of Stanford-bridge); but to decide positively which writer borrowed from the other would require a closer examination of the *Historia Ramesienses* than I have been able to give it. If, as may be inferred from the notice in Hardy’s Catalogue (vol. i., p. 632), the Ramsey monk wrote his entire work during the rule of abbot Walter, then we may feel certain that he borrowed from Henry, and not *vice versa*; for Walter was abbot between 1133, and 1160; and Henry’s first edition, as has been so often stated, appeared in 1130.

4. *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum, seu Tudebodus abbreviatus*.<sup>1</sup> Tudebodus (Tuebœuf), a priest of Civray, in Poitou, accompanied the Christian army on the first crusade, and wrote an account of what he saw, which terminates at the victory of Ascalon in August 1099. His work seems to have appeared about 1110. It was followed almost immediately by the work bearing the above title, which, though by an unknown writer, was far more successful than the book which it abbreviated. This work, and no other, was Henry’s authority for his brief sketch of the Crusade. Use was also made of it by Robert le Moine, Baudry, and Guibert de Nogent, all historians of the Crusades. It is not wholly an abbreviation, for it gives the full names of many Christian knights (e.g., Everardus de Puisat, Achardus de Mont-Merloy, Robertus de Ansa, Usuardus de Nulsione, &c.), who are not specified in the work of Tudebodus. Henry’s sketch is a meagre abridgment of

---

<sup>1</sup> *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades*, published by the Académie | des Inscriptions (*Historiens Occidentaux*, vol. iii.).

the *Gesta Francorum*, and does it great injustice. A MS. of the *Gesta* is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

5. A list and genealogy of the kings of France, from Antenor to Louis VI.; this is inserted in Book vii., § 38.

It would be difficult to prove that Henry had been indebted for any statement in his history to the writers who immediately preceded him, *e.g.*, to Simeon, Florence, Malmesbury, and Eadmer. Yet there are statements under the years 1123, 1124, and 1125 relating to the deaths and elections of bishops of Bath, Worcester, and Chichester, all of which, not being found in the Chronicle, he *might* have taken from the continuator of Florence. On the whole, it seems to me probable that he did so take them. Dr. Liebermann will not allow him (p. 283, *Forschungen*) to have had any knowledge of the Norman historians; but this is slightly overstated. The definite historical allusions to antecedent events which Henry inserts in the speech which Duke William is supposed to deliver before the battle of Hastings certainly imply some acquaintance with one or both of the works by Dudo of St. Quentin and William of Jumièges. On the other hand, he seems to have had no acquaintance whatever, though he often travels over the same ground, with the voluminous chronicle of Ordericus.

§ 41. The remaining sources from which Henry derived his materials may be classed as,—1, personal experience; 2, oral information; 3, floating popular talk; 4, imagination. At the beginning of the seventh book he tells the reader that he is now about to treat of matters “which either we saw ourselves, or heard from those who saw them.” But this promise is scantily fulfilled. The Peterborough Chronicle is still his main reliance through four-fifths of the seventh book; and when we come to the eighth, the narrative of nineteen

eventful years, in the course of which he must have seen and suffered so much, is compressed within disappointingly narrow limits. The only events which he appears to describe as an eyewitness are those connected with great ecclesiastical solemnities at Lincoln (viii., §§ 23, 28, &c.), and the vexatious proceedings of Stephen while residing at Brampton, near Huntingdon, in 1136. From oral information he must have derived nearly everything contained in the eighth book (except the long speeches!) and a good deal in the seventh book. From the floating tales and legends which passed from mouth to mouth, he picked up the celebrated story about Canute commanding the tide to rise no higher, and the striking anecdotes about Siward the great Earl of Northumbria. Lastly, he drew upon his own imagination for the details of numerous battles, of which he found the mere result, and not always that, stated in his authorities. For examples of this embellishing turn, see the account of the battle in which Labienus fell (i., § 12), or of the battle at Stamford (ii., § 1), or Crayford (ii., § 4), or of the siege of Anderida (ii., § 10). The apparent circumstantiality of the narrative formerly misled historical inquirers, but the worthlessness of such additions is now recognised. A good case in point is at Book iv., § 5. Two lines in the Chronicle, saying that Mul was burnt in Kent, and twelve men with him, and that afterwards, in the same year Kent was ravaged by Ceadwalla, are expanded by Henry into twenty-one lines. At first sight it looks as if something new were obtained; for Henry says that Mul was sent by Cedwalla on a raid into Kent, with some very brave youths as his followers, at his own request. But when we look further into the matter, and observe that every precise naked fact is taken from the Chronicle, and that Henry supplies not one which was not there already, we see that such details as the above are the mere figments of Henry's imagination,—fruits of his mode of conceiving about given circumstances,—and that he

Personal experience.

Invention.

had really no other source of information than we have. Dr. Liebermann supports a similar conclusion by an array of fifteen considerations, the cumulative effect of which is overwhelming.

§ 42. But may there not be sources which lie beneath the surface of the history, and betray their presence by a certain colouring in particular passages, or by the occasional mention of a pregnant fact not vouched for elsewhere? It has been thought that Henry, who cites—but not, unfortunately, in the original—many tags of Saxon verse, and sayings current in his day,<sup>1</sup> might have had before him considerable popular poems,—*Volkslieder*,—in the vernacular, which have long since perished, and that by help of these he worked in the decorative details with which his battle-narratives abound. Dr. Liebermann examines this view carefully, but in the end decisively rejects it. Henry's knowledge of Latin is far superior to his knowledge of Anglo-Saxon; the stylistic ornamentation of his battle-pieces is, therefore, naturally of classic, not Teutonic origin; and this fact is enough by itself to demonstrate its unreality. With greater probability it has been urged that in Henry's statement (Book iv., § 25.) that Ecgferth, the son of Offa of Mercia, was consecrated in 785 to be king "*Kentensis provinciae*," while the Chronicles only say that he was "*to cyninge gehalgod*,"—there appears a trace of an independent source, whence we derive the knowledge of an important fact. But when we examine this statement, and test it by other accounts, its improbability becomes evident. Malmesbury (*Gesta Regum*, i. 1) says distinctly that a native king, Alric the son of Wihtried, was reigning in Kent from 760 till 794. He speaks in the same place of his defeat by the Mercians, clearly referring to the battle of Otford in 774. Moreover in the *Vita Offæ II.*, ascribed to Matthew Paris,

---

<sup>1</sup> Book ii., §§ 30 and 34; Book iii., §§ 34 and 39.

which certainly does rest on ancient records and other sources of information now lost, Kent is not named among the twenty-three shires which were included within Offa's dominions, and it is expressly said that Ecgferth was consecrated "rex Merciorum," and aided his father in his government to the end of his life. Again, with regard to the anecdotes about Siward, and the versions given by Henry of the death of Godwin and the quarrel between Harold and Tosti, there is no need to assume that he derived or cared to derive them from any more trustworthy source than popular rumour.

§ 43. *Chronology*.—For the portion of his history anterior to the Conquest, Henry, though he takes care to locate his facts in a chronological framework, gives himself less than ordinary trouble to make it accurate. His blunders and confusions are continual; hence it is not worth while to investigate his dates seriously, because the historical student cannot, at least in this part of the history, rely on one of them, unless confirmed by more accurate writers. In order to illustrate this, and at the same to clear up what appears, until his manner of proceeding has been detected, as tangled a chronological skein as can anywhere be found, I shall examine his arrangement of the events of the reign of Edward the Elder (Book v. §§ 14–17). Henry's  
chronology.

As far as A.D. 906, the fifth year of Edward, all goes smoothly. "In the following year," anno sequente, says Henry, the king sent a West-Saxon and Mercian army into Northumbria; but this expedition really took place in 910. The events of two other successive years are recorded, and then the entry for 913 is dated "in the ninth year of Edward." Why? Simply because Henry has only taken account of the events of three years between 906, Edward's fifth year, and the end of 912; hence he calls the next year, 913, Edward's ninth year. Again (§ 16) 918 is called the eleventh year of Edward,

because the events of only one year were recorded in the chronicle which he was here copying between 913 and 918. But all this is nothing compared to the entanglement which follows. Two Chronicles, B. and C., after following the course of events, in company with the other chronicles, as far as 918, return to 896, and, after entering blank years from that date to 901 inclusive, commence at 902 a series of notices relating exclusively to the affairs of Mercia and the career of Æthelfleda, Alfred's daughter, the energetic "lady" of that province. These they carry down to 919. Henry, who must have been using B. or C., or a MS. resembling them (E. being remarkably meagre for the reign of Edward), comes to the place where the chronicler retraces his steps, and, not observing the fact, goes on with the Mercian narrative, as if it was entirely subsequent to the events of 918. He therefore calls 902 (the first year named in the episode) the twelfth year of Edward, because he had erroneously called the last year described, 918, the eleventh year. He then gives the events entered under five years, and, treating these five entries as if they were equivalent to five regnal years (whereas in fact they are spread over eight years), he calls 911, the year of the sixth entry, the *eighteenth* year of Edward. Proceeding then regularly with the entries which he found in B. or C. for each of the eight years terminating with 919, he consistently calls the last-named year the twenty-sixth year of Edward; and yet he had himself (§ 14) given the length of his reign as twenty-four years! But this "reductio ad absurdum" does not strike him, so slight is the tenacity of his mind. After this analysis it must be obvious that Henry is not to be deemed an authority on a question of dates, unless with regard to events which were within the range of his own memory. Where these were concerned he does not seem to have been prone to confound the order of their occurrence; his chronology of the reigns of Henry I. and Stephen

is sufficiently accurate; we only desire that the material to which it is applied were more copious.

§ 44. If, in consideration of so much carelessness and inaccuracy, such extreme brevity, so evident a disposition to flinch from the research and fulness of statement which become a historian, the reader is disinclined to rate the merits of Henry and the *Historia Anglorum* very highly, I know not that I should be able to differ from him. Henry had some of the qualifications of a good historian, but lacked others. He was ambitious, but not laborious; literary, but not exact; intelligent, but not penetrating. He formed large projects, but was too indolent to execute them satisfactorily. His knowledge of the course of events, even in his own day, seems to have been very scanty. When it comes to moralizing he is copious enough; it is when he ought to describe a complex transaction in full detail, so as to make it live before his readers, that he is so terribly curt and perfunctory. It is probable that as archdeacon of Huntingdon, immersed in the endless petty details and often trivial if not harassing proceedings of an archidiaconal court,<sup>1</sup> he was less favourably placed for obtaining information than if, like Malmesbury or Ordericus, he had been a studious monk in a large, wealthy, and hospitable monastery. At these great houses men were always coming and going, princes, envoys, bishops, monks, artists, poets, soldiers; for, as has often been observed, they were the hotels of the middle age. In the "fraitour" at recreation time the talk must often have been of the most animated and instructive character, such as might supply a thoughtful and capacious mind with historical material in abundance. On the other hand, Henry's duties must have often taken him

General estimate.

---

<sup>1</sup> For a humorous sketch of the duties of an "arcedekne" in the fourteenth century (they must have been much the same in the twelfth), see the opening of the *Freres Tale* in Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales*.

to Lincoln, a place of relatively great importance in those days, as a centre of culture and civilizing effort.

Poetical  
pieces.

§ 45. The poetical pieces scattered up and down in the History, and becoming almost inconveniently numerous in the seventh book, were probably considered by the author to improve and embellish his work greatly. Modern readers peruse these effusions with indifference or pass them by altogether. Henry's hexameters are not always without spirit und polish; take, for instance, those on the death of Alfred, which, though we might have preferred a critical discussion of the great king's life and character, are written with vigour and good taste. Yet even here his besetting carelessness manifests itself, for we have the first syllable of *jugi* ("jūgis aquæ fons") twice made short.

Henry's  
national  
and political  
feelings.

§ 46. Like Malmesbury, Henry appears to be without race prejudice; he shows no scorn of the vanquished with the Normans, and no bitterness against the conquerors with the English. He must have been Norman on the father's side, for both Henry and Nicholas are names which came to England from Normandy. The Anglo-Norman kings were in his eyes the legitimate heirs and appointees of the Saxon Bretwaldas; thus, after naming Edgar (Book ii., 23) as the tenth Bretwalda, he adds, "et hæredes ejus post eum usque ad hunc diem." His political notions were simple, and suggested by the circumstances of the time; a strong monarchy, aided by a council of loyal earls, and bishops full of the ecclesiastical, not the secular, spirit, was his ideal of government; in no other way, he thought, than through the grasp of a firm hand on the reins of power could the centrifugal tendencies of the Norman barons, who would each have liked to make himself a little king on his own fief, be effectually repressed. Stephen's hand was not firm, nor his title sound; the deplorable anarchy which resulted paints itself to some extent in our author's eighth book, though in more

vivid colours in contemporary historians; hence the joy and exultation with which he hails the prospect of a strong government under Henry of Anjou. Constitutional ideas, theories of popular representation, of check and counter-check, had not yet emerged; the present grievance was, not that the regal power was abused, but that it could not be freely and vigorously used.

Henry's Latinity, though not without solecisms, such as "repudiata . . . sorore, . . . *aliamque ducens*" (ii., § 37) "*gratia legendi*," "*causa brevitatis*," &c., is perhaps above the average Latin writing of his time. There is in him little of the pedantry which disfigures the style of Malmesbury, or of the clumsiness with which Simeon and the monk of Ramsay express themselves. He is not seldom, it must be owned, tumid and rhetorical; yet, on the whole, he writes with the freedom and good sense of an experienced man of the world.

In conclusion, I have to express my thanks and acknowledgments for effectual aid freely given me by many persons, while the work of this edition has been in progress. From Dr. Liebermann I have received many valuable suggestions, independently of the light thrown on the whole subject by his article in the *Forschungen zur Deutschen Geschichte*. To the Rev. S. S. Lewis of Corpus College, Cambridge, and Mr. Garnett of the British Museum, with whom, while consulting the chief MSS. of our author, I have come frequently into contact, I am indebted for repeated acts of furtherance and co-operation. Every facility was afforded me by Mr. Bradshaw, the university librarian at Cambridge, by the authorities of the Advocates' Library at Edinburgh, and by Dr. Dickson, professor of Divinity at the university of Glasgow, when I sought to collate or examine the MSS. of Huntingdon's history preserved in the public libraries of those cities. M. Leopold Delisle, the guardian of the MSS. in the Bibliothèque Nationale, treated me with similar courtesy, when with the same object in view

I visited Paris. My thanks are due on the same ground to Mr. Buchanan, fellow of All Souls College, Oxford, and Mr. Kershaw, the librarian at Lambeth Palace. It is with pleasure that I make this acknowledgment of information and assistance received on various points from the Rev. H. O. Coxe, Bodley's librarian, Professor Stubbs, and Mr. W. A. Wright, fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Finally, I have to thank the Duke of Westminster for granting me the use of his MS. of Henry of Huntingdon, and Mr. Wynne of Peniarth for allowing the curious Hengwrt MS., of which he is the owner, to remain at the Bodleian Library for the full time required to make a complete collation.

---

## ERRATA.

---

The following various readings should have been noted on pages 9 and 10 :—

Page 9, line 4, *triginta tres*, H, O<sup>2</sup>.

„ 10, „ 10, *quinta* . . . . *Carlul*, desunt in H. et O<sup>2</sup>.

„ „ „ 12, *sexdecim*, H., O<sup>2</sup>.

„ „ „ 17, *quatuor*, H., O<sup>2</sup>; *Una*, H., O<sup>2</sup>.

„ „ „ 18, *alia*, H., O<sup>2</sup>; *tertia*, H., O<sup>2</sup>.

„ „ „ 19, Post *Clamorgan* addunt H. et O<sup>2</sup>, *quarta apud Sanctum Assaf*.

„ „ „ 21-23, *Tempore autem* . . . . *amisi* desunt in H. et O<sup>2</sup>.

---

„ 199, margin, for *Harfagr* read *Hardrada*.



HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS  
HISTORIÆ ANGLORUM  
LIBRI OCTO.

---

PROLOGUS AD ALEXANDRUM EPISCOPUM LINCOLNI-  
ENSEM.

Hor. Od. i.  
83, 14. CUM in omni fere literarum studio dulce laboris leni-  
men et summum doloris solamen, dum vivitur, insitum  
considerem, tum<sup>1</sup> delectabilius et majoris prærogativa  
claritatis historiarum splendorem amplectendum credi-  
derim. Nihil namque magis in vita egregium, quam  
vitæ calles egregie indagare et frequentare. Ubi  
autem floridius nitescit virorum fortium magnificentia,  
prudentium sapientia, justorum judicia, temporatorum  
modestia, quam in rerum contextu gestarum? Audi-  
vimus quidem quid Homericam laudans historiam  
Flaccus intimaverit, dicens:

Epist. i. 2, 2. " Qui quid sit pulchrum, quid turpe, quid utile,  
" quid non,  
" Plenius et melius Chrysippo et Crantore dicit."

Crantor siquidem et Chrysippus, circa doctrinam morum  
philosophantes, multis codicibus desudaverunt: Home-  
rus autem velut spectaculo<sup>2</sup> eliquans prudentiam Uli-  
sis, fortitudinem Agamemnonis, temperantiam Nestoris,

---

<sup>1</sup> tamen, A.

| <sup>2</sup> speculo, A. A<sup>2</sup>.

justitiam Menelai; et e contra imprudentiam Ajacis, debilitatem Priami, intemperantiam Achillis, injustitiam Paridis, honestum et utile, et his contraria, lucidius et delectabilius philosophis historiando disseruit. Sed quid in alienis moramur? Vide quo modo Sancta doceat Historia morum instituta, dum Abrahæ justitiam assignat, Moysi fortitudinem, Jacob temperantiam, Joseph prudentiam: et contra, dum Achab injustitiam, Oziæ invaliditatem, Manasse intemperantiam, Roboam imprudentiam demonstrat. Præsertim, O Deus bone, quantæ humilitatis fax est, quod sanctus Moyses, Deum se protegentem et ulciscentem ut ab hostibus suis averteret, thuris odorationem cum fratre admovens, in medium periculi<sup>Numer. xvi. 46.</sup> terribilis se iniecit, et pro Maria se blasphemante<sup>Numer. xii. 13.</sup> lachrymas effudit, et pro malevolis semper orando sudavit! Quantæ benignitatis lux est, quod David maledictis, injuriis Simei, et blasphemis læsus, et irritatus ab eo vehementer, unum et persequentem et debilem, armatus et comitatus et fortissimus contra<sup>1 Reg. ii. 8.</sup> feriri prohibuit; et postea, victor et regno restitutus, ultionem fieri in eum non permisit? Sic etiam in rebus gestis omnium gentium et nationum, quæ utique Dei judicia sunt, benignitas, munificentia, probitas, cautela, et his similia, et contraria, non solum spirituales ad bonum accendunt et a malo repellunt, sed et<sup>1</sup> sæculares ad bona sollicitant et in malis muniunt. Historia igitur<sup>2</sup> præterita quasi præsentia visui repræsentat; futura ex præteritis imaginando dijudicat. Habet quidem et præter hæc illustres transactorum notitia dotes, quod ipsa maxime distinguat a brutis rationabiles: bruti namque homines et animalia unde sint nesciunt, genus suum nesciunt, patriæ suæ casus et gesta nesciunt, immo nec scire volunt. Quorum, homines quidem illos infeliciores judico; quia quod

The uses  
and dignity  
of history.

<sup>1</sup> etiam, A. A.<sup>2</sup>

| <sup>2</sup> A. A.<sup>2</sup>; deest, Sav.

bestiis ex creatione, hoc illis ex propria contingit inanitione; et quod bestię si vellent non possent, hoc illi nolunt cum possint. Sed de his jam transeundum est, quorum mors et vita sempiterno dotanda est silentio. Hęc ergo considerans, hujus regni gesta et nostrę gentis origines jussu tuo, pręsul Alexander, qui flos et cacumen regni et gentis esse videris, decurrenda suscepi: tuo quidem consilio Bedę venerabilis Ecclesiasticam, qua potui, sequutus Historiam, nonnulla etiam ex aliis excerpens auctoribus, inde chronica in antiquis reservata librariis compilans, usque nostrum ad auditum et visum pręterita repręsentavi. In quo scilicet opere, sequenda et fugienda lector diligens dum invenit, ex eorum imitatione et evitatione, Deo cooperante, melioratus, mihi fructum afferet exoptabilem; plerumque etenim ad ipsam morum puritatem juxta callem directum historię resilivimus. Nihil autem sine divina invocatione incipientes, Deo invocato incipiamus:

The author undertook the work at the request of the bishop of Lincoln: statement of his authorities.

Adonai, Opifex, Pastor, Susceptio nostra,  
 Principium rerum, Vegetatio, Finis earum,  
 Hoc opus aspira, deduc finique, precamur.  
 Hoc opus in patribus quod es ipse Parens operatus,  
 Judicio grandis, et regna levansque premensque,  
 Judicio nunc occulto, nunc vero patenti;  
 His pęnas dum complerent sua crimina tardans,  
 His pęnas cum complerent sua crimina librans.  
 Quicquid enim reges, quicquid populi meditantur,  
 Ut faciant, si perficiunt, fieri facis illud,  
 Pacificansque malumque citans<sup>1</sup> testante propheta,  
 Ens solus, tantusque manens, quantus voluisti:  
 Ex quo, per quem sunt, in quo sunt omnia solo.  
 Tuque pater patrię, princeps a rege secundus,  
 Pręsul Alexander, si quę perscripsimus apta,

Ess. xlv. 7.

<sup>1</sup> *creans*, A. A<sup>2</sup>.

Laude tua niteant, minus apta precamur ut aptes.  
Hic reges populosque vides, quos alea fati  
Extulit et pressit, sed ab his metire futura.  
Aspice, magne pater, quo devenere potentes :  
Aspice quam nihili sit honor, lux, gloria mundi.

---

# HENRICI HUNTENDUNENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

## LIB. I. DE REGNO ROMANORUM IN BRITANNIA.<sup>1</sup>

Bed. i. 1.

§ 1. BRITANNIA igitur beatissima est insularum, fœ- Description  
of Britain.  
cunda frugibus et arboribus, copiosa rivis et nemoribus,  
jucunda volucrum et ferarum venatibus, ferax avium  
multi et diversi generis terra et mari, et fluviis; alendis  
autem mira pecoribus et jumentis, ut Hibernia.<sup>2</sup> Unde

c. 22.

Solinus: "Ita pabulosa in quibusdam locis est Brit-  
tania, ut pecua, nisi interdum a pastibus arceantur,  
ad periculum agat satietas." <sup>a</sup> Fluvius vero abundat  
valde piscosis, fontibus præclara copiosis: et quidem præcipue  
isicio redundat et anguilla; abundat et vitulis marinis; nec  
non et halecia et ostrea mire in ea redundant, et  
varia conchyliorum genera: inter quæ sunt et musculæ, quibus  
sæpe inclusam margaritam omnis quidem coloris optimam in-  
veniunt, rubicundam scilicet et hyacinthinam, purpuream  
et prassinam, sed maxime candidam; nec desunt cochleæ,  
quibus tinctura coccinei coloris conficitur; cujus rubor pul-  
cherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet injuria plu-  
viarum pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior.  
Capiuntur et sæpe delphines et balenæ: unde Juvenalis,

Sat. X., 14.

"Quantum Delphinis balæna Britannica major."

Venis etiam metallorum æris redundat, ferri scilicet, stanni,  
et plumbi, nec non et argenti, sed rarius. Advehitur  
autem argentum a proxima parte Germaniæ per Rhe-

<sup>1</sup> Titulus hic in F. reperitur.

| <sup>2</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>; desunt hæc verba in Sav.

<sup>a</sup> Solinus says this of Ireland, not of Britain.

num pro mira fertilitate piscium et carnum, lanæ pretiosissimæ et lactis, armentorumque absque numero; ut major ibi videatur copia argenti, quam in Germania: unde omnis moneta ejus argento puro conficitur. Gignit etiam lapidem gagatem plurimum optimumque. Est autem nigrogemmeus et ardens: igne accensus serpentes fugat, attritu calefactus adplicita detinet æque ut succinum. Fontes etiam salinarum habet: adsunt et fontes calidi, et ex eis fluvii balnearum calidorum omni ætati et sexui, per distincta loca juxta solum cuique modum, accommodi. "Aqua enim," ut S. Basilius dicit, "fervidam qualitatem recipit cum per certa quædam metalla transcurrit, et fit non solum calida sed et ardens."\*

Hexæmeron, Homil. in, iv. 6.

§ 2. Hæc autem insularum nobilissima, cui quondam nomen Albion fuit, postea vero Brittannia, nunc autem Anglia, inter Septentrionem et Occidentem sita est: octingentis millibus longa, et ducentis millibus lata, exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promonteriorum tractibus, quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragies octies septuaginta quinque millia compleat. Habet autem ab Oriente Germaniam et Daciam, ab Occidente Hiberniam, a meridie Galliam Belgicam; cujus proximum littus transmeantibus aperit civitas quæ dicitur Rutubi portus, a gente Anglorum nunc corrupte Reptacester vocata, interposito mari a Gessoriaco Morinorum gentis littore proximo, trajectu millium quinquaginta, sive, ut quidam scripserunt, stadiorum quadringentorum quinquaginta. Gallia autem Belgica a Belvaci nobilissima quondam urbe Galliæ dicta est: quæ provincia nunc in duas divisa videtur: in eam scilicet quæ vocatur Pontica, et in eam quæ vocatur Normannia, ubi modo Normanni, gens nova sed validissima, degunt. Habet autem a Septentrione, unde oceano infinito patet, Orcadas insulas novem, de quarum ultima, Thule,<sup>1</sup> dictum est: "Tibi serviat ultima Thule." Cum autem plurimas insulas habeat Brittannia, tres majores habet;

Virg. Georg. l. 30.

<sup>1</sup> Tile, A.

\* ἤδη δὲ καὶ θερμότερας ἐκ μεταλλῶν ποιότητος κατὰ τὴν διέξοδον προσλαβόνσα [θάλασσα], ἐκ τῆς ἀντὴς τοῦ κινουντος ἀτμίας ζέουσα γίνεται, ὥς τὰ πολλὰ, καὶ πυρρόδης.

unam Orcadas, de quibus dictum est; aliam Man, vel Euboniam, quæ in umbilico maris inter Hiberniam et Britanniam sita est: tertiam Wicht, quæ australis est, et vergit contra Normannos et Armoricos, qui nunc Britanni dicuntur: sicut in proverbio dicebatur antiquo, quando de iudicibus et regibus sermo fiebat: "Judicabit Britanniam cum tribus insulis."

Bed. i. l.

§ 3. Erat autem et civitatibus quondam viginti octo nobilissimis insignita, præter castella innumera, quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, ac seris erant instructa firmissimis. Civitatum autem nomina hæc erant Brittanice: Kair-Ebrauc, id est, Eboracum; Kair-Chent, id est, Cantuaria; Kair-Gorangon, id est, Wigornia; Kair-Lundene, id est, Lundonia; Kair-Legion,<sup>1</sup> id est, Leiceastria; Kair-Collon, id est, Coleceastria; Kair-Glou, id est, Glouceastria; Kair-Cei, id est, Ciceastria; Kair-Bristou; Kair-Ceri, id est, Cireceastria; Kair-Guent, id est, Winceastria; Kair-Grant, id est, Granteceastria, quæ modo dicitur Cantebrigia;<sup>2</sup> Kair-Lion, quam vocamus Carleuil; Kair-Dauri, id est, Doreceastria; Kair-Dorm, id est, Dormeceastre, quæ sita in Huntendonensi provincia super flumen quod vocatur Nen, penitus destructa est; Kair-Loitchoit, id est, Lincolnia; Kair-Merdin, quæ nunc quoque sic vocatur; Kair-Guorcon; Kair-Cucerat; Kair-Guortigern; Kair-Urnac; Kair-Celemion; Kair-Meguaid; Kair-Licelid; Kair-Peris, id est, Porcestre; Kair-Legion,<sup>3</sup> in qua fuit archiepiscopus tempore Brittonum, nunc autem vix mœnia ejus comparent ubi Usca<sup>4</sup> cadit in Sabrinam; Kair-Draiton; Kair-Mercipit; Kair-Segent, quæ fuit super Tamesin non longe a Redinge, et vocatur Silcestre. Hæc erant nomina civitatum tempore Romanorum et Brittanorum.<sup>5</sup>

Its chief offices.

<sup>1</sup> *Lirion*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Grantebrigia*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Lerion*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Osca*, A.

<sup>5</sup> Nennius first names the 28 towns of Roman Britain mentioned by Beda. From one or other MS. of Nennius, (including in the list

It has been visited with the plagues of five invasions,—by the Romans, the Picts and Scots, the English, the Danes, and the Normans.

The Saxon Heptarchy.

§ 4. Quinque autem plagas ab exordio usque ad præsens immisit ultio divina Britanniae, quæ non solum visitat fideles, sed etiam dijudicat infideles: primam per Romanos, qui Britanniam expugnaverunt, sed postea recesserunt; secundam per Pictos et Scottos, qui gravissime eam bellis vexaverunt, nec tamen obtinuerunt; tertiam per Anglicos, qui eam debellaverunt et obtinent; quartam per Dacos, qui eam bellis obtinuerunt, sed postea deperierunt; quintam per Normannos, qui eam devicerunt, et Anglis impræsentiarum dominantur. Quando autem Saxones hanc terram sibi subjugaverunt, reges septem statuerunt, regnisque nomina pro libitu imposuerunt. Primum regnum vocatum est Cent: secundum Sudseax, in quo sita est Ciceastria: tertium Westseax, cujus caput erat Wiltonia, quæ nunc data est sanctimonialibus,\* in quo sunt urbes Winceastria, Salesburia, et plures aliæ: quartum regnum Estseax, quod non diu<sup>1</sup> duravit, sed cæteris regnis subjugatum est: quintum Eastangle, in quo sunt provinciæ quæ vocantur Nordfolc et Sudfolc:

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, Sav.

the Vatican codex which bears the name of Marcus Anachoreta,) Henry has taken all the names in his list but four,—Kair-Cei, Kair-Grant, Kair-Dorm, and Kair-Lice-lid. These four seem to have suggested themselves to his mind as the names of places where extensive Roman remains were still visible in his day; viz., Chichester, Cambridge, Castor, and Lichfield(?). He may have purposely altered the Grauth or Grant of Nennius to Grant, in order to identify it with a place so familiar and so close to him as Grantchester or Cambridge. The remains of the great Roman station at Durobrivæ on the Nen (Itiner. Anton.), now Castor, but

called Dormeceaster in the 12th century, must have often been seen by him; similarly on visits to Lichfield he may have noticed the ruins of the Roman station at Etocetum. Six of the towns named by Nennius, Manchguid, Pensavelcoith, Guintwig, Luadiit, Custeint, and Grauth (unless the last be Grant,) Henry has omitted, apparently because he could make nothing of them. His "Cucerat" appears to be miswritten for Caratauc, i.e., Cair-Caradoc, or Salisbury. See Geoff. of Monm., vi. 15; viii. 9.

\* The famous nunnery of Wilton was founded in the time of Egbert, and enriched by Alfred and Edgar.

sextum Merce, in quo est Lincolnia, et aliæ complures: septimum Nordhumbre, in quo est Eboracum. Postquam autem reges Westseax cæteris prævaluerunt et monarchiam obtinuerunt, terras per triginta quinque provincias sibi dividerunt; quarum situs et nomina, quamvis inhabitantibus notissima sint, non tamen pigeat subscribere. Deveniet enim forsitan, ut quemadmodum nomina civitatum prædicta, quæ olim grata et excelsa erant, modo in barbariem et risum vertuntur, ita et<sup>1</sup> decursu temporum, quæ modo notissima sunt, incognita et incredibilia fiant. Unde patet quam misere et frustra nominis nostri famam incolæ provinciarum appetamus, cum nec ipsarum urbium vel provinciarum nomina durare possint.

§ 5. Prima igitur provincia est Cent, in qua est archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, et episcopus Roveceastriæ; secunda est Sudseax, in qua est episcopus Ciceastriæ; tertia Suthrie; quarta Hamtesyre, in qua est episcopus Winceastriæ; quinta Bercsyre; sexta Wiltesyre, in qua est episcopus Salesberie; septima est Dorsete; octava Sumersete, in qua est episcopus Badhe, vel Acemanecestriæ; nona Devenesyre, in qua est episcopus Exceastriæ; decima Cornuallie;<sup>2</sup> undecima Eastseax; duodecima Midleseax, in qua est episcopus Lundoniæ; tertiadecima Sudfolc; quattadecima Northfolc, in qua est episcopus Norwiciæ; quintadecima Cantebrigesyre,<sup>3</sup> in qua est episcopus Ely; sextadecima Lincolesyre, cujus caput est Lincolnia, cui subjacent septem aliæ provinciæ, scilicet provincia Leiceastriæ, et Hamtoniæ, et Huntendonæ, et Herteford, Bedeford, Bukingeham, Oxeneford; extenditur enim episcopus Lincolnæ a magno flumine Humberæ usque

Names of  
the English  
counties and  
bishoprics.

<sup>1</sup> etiam, A.

<sup>2</sup> Cornugallia, A.

<sup>3</sup> Grantebrigesyre, A.; Kantebrigesire, A<sup>2</sup>.

ad flumen Tamesis; vigesima quarta est Gloucestresyre; vigesima quinta est Wirecastresyre, in qua est episcopatus Wigorniae; vigesima sexta Herefordsyre, in qua est episcopatus Herefordiae; vigesima septima Salopsyre; vigesima octava Ceastresyre, in qua est episcopatus Ceastriae; vigesima nona Warewic; trigesima Stafford; post trigesimam, prima est Dereby; secunda Notingham; tertia Everwicesyre, in qua est archiepiscopatus Eboraci; quarta est Northumberland, cui praest episcopus Dunolmiae;<sup>1</sup> quinta, illa regio in qua est novus episcopatus Carluil. "Syra" vero Anglice, Latine dicitur provincia. Igitur septemdecem episcopatibus insignita nostro tempore florescit Anglia. Urbes vero multo plures sunt quam episcopatus, ut Glouueceastria, Leiceastria, Oxenefordia, et aliae plures episcopis carentes. Sed in occidentali parte Britanniae, quae vocatur Wallia, tres supersunt episcopatus. Unus apud Sanctum David; alius apud Bangor;<sup>2</sup> tertius apud Clamorgan. Sunt tamen hi tres nullarum urbium episcopi propter desolationem Walliae, quae sola devictis remansit Britannis. Tempore autem nostro recepit episcopus S. David pallium a papa, quod scilicet fuerat olim apud Kairlegion; sed statim tamen amisit.

The Welsh  
bishopricks.

British  
rivers.

§ 6. Urbes autem praedictae amoenis insitae locis super flumina coruscant fertilia et pulcherrima. Sunt autem duo flumina caeteris clariora, Tamesis et Sabrina, quasi duo brachia Britanniae, per quae sibi suas et alienas effert et infert divitias. Proprie vero proprium Britanniae est, ut incolae ejus in peregrinationem tendentes, omnibus gentibus cultu et sumptu clariores, ex hoc unde sint, dignosci possunt. Cum autem tot rebus abundet Britannia, vineae quoque fertilis est, sed raro; ut habeant, qui divitias ejus emendas appetunt,

<sup>1</sup> *Dunelmia*, A.

| <sup>2</sup> *Pangor*, A.

secum quod inferant. De cujus laude quidam <sup>a</sup> ita Panegyrio  
Britann. scripsit:

" Illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata.  
" Glebis, lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis,  
" Quas regit ille Deus, spumanti cujus ab ore  
" Profluit oceanus."

Et paulo post:

" Testes Londoniæ ratibus, Wintonia Baccho,  
" Hereforda grege, Wirecestria fruge redundans,  
" Batha <sup>2</sup> lacu, Salesbira feris, Cantuaria pisce,  
" Eboracum silvis, Excestria clara metallis,  
" Norvicium Dacis, Hibernis Cestria, Gallis  
" Cicestrum, Norwagieniis Dunelma propinquans.  
" Testis Lincolniæ gens infinita decore,  
" Testis Ely formosa situ, Roucestria visu."

Nec tacendum arbitror quod temperie gratissima, et Its temperate and agreeable climate. ideo inhabitantibus saluberrima sit Brittannia. Cum enim inter Septentrionem et Occidentem sita sit, frigus, quod recipit a Septentrione, temperat calor, quem recipit a sole occidente. Nunquam autem in ea aliquos arripuit ignis sacer, sed a Galliis allati ibi solent

Bed. i. 1.

sanari. Et quia prope septentrionalem mundi verticem jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet, ita ut in medio sæpe tempore noctis in inquisitionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneant vespertinum, an jam advenerit matutinum; utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad Orientem boreales per plagas redeunte: unde etiam plurimæ longitudinis habet dies æstate, sicut et noctes contra in bruma, sole nimirum tunc Lybicas in partes redeunte, id est, horarum decem et octo. Plurimæ item brevitatis noctes æstate, et dies habet in bruma: hoc est, sex solummodo æquinoctialium horarum; cum in Armenia, Macedonia, Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ regionibus longissima dies sive nox quindecim, brevissima novem, compleat horas.

Cf. Nennius,  
76.

§ 7. Quatuor autem sunt, quæ mira videntur in Marvels in Britain. Anglia. Primum quidem est, quod ventus egreditur de

<sup>1</sup> *Badha*, A.

<sup>2</sup> Henry himself, apparently.

cavernis terræ in monte qui vocatur Pec, tanto vigore, ut vestes injectas repellat et in altum elevatas procul ejiciat. Secundum est, apud Stanenges; ubi lapides miræ magnitudinis in modum portarum elevati sunt, ita ut portæ portis superpositæ videantur: nec potest aliquis excogitare qua arte tanti lapides adeo in altum elevati sunt, vel quare ibi constructi sunt. Tertium est apud Chederhole;<sup>1</sup> ubi cavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe ingressi sint, et ibi magna spatia terræ et flumina pertransierint, nunquam tamen ad finem evenire potuerunt. Quartum est, quod in quibusdam partibus pluvia videtur elevari de montibus, et sine mora per campos diffundi.

Roads.

Tantæ autem gratiæ inhabitantibus fuit Brittannia, quod quatuor in ea calles a fine in finem construerent regia sublimatos autoritate, ne aliquis in eis inimicum invadere auderet. Primus est ab Oriente in Occidentem, et vocatur Ichenild;<sup>2</sup> secundus est ab Austro in Aquilonem, et vocatur Erningestrete: tertius est ex transverso a Dorobernia in Cestriam, scilicet ab Euroaustro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem, et vocatur Watlingestræte: quartus, major cæteris, incipit in Catenes et desinit in Totenes, scilicet a principio Cornugalliæ in finem Scottiæ; et hic callis vadit ex transverso a Zephro Australi in Eurum Septentrionalem, et vocatur Fossa, tenditque per Lincolniam. Hi sunt quatuor principales calles Angliæ, multum quidem spatiosi, sed nec minus speciosi,<sup>3</sup> sanciti edictis regum, scriptisque verendis legum.

Flor. Wig.  
a. 1013.

Languages.

§ 8. Quinque autem linguis utitur Brittannia: Brittonum Bed. i. 1. videlicet, Anglorum, Scottorum, Pictorum, et Latinorum, quæ doctrina scripturarum, cæteris omnibus est facta communis: quamvis Picti jam videantur deleti, et lingua eorum ita omnino destructa, ut jam fabula videatur, quod in veterum scriptis eorum mentio invenitur. Cui autem non comparet amorem cœlestium, et horrorem terres-

<sup>1</sup> Chedernhole, A.

<sup>2</sup> Ichenild, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> A.; speciose, Sav.

trium, si cogitet non solum reges eorum, et principes et populum deperiisse, verum etiam stirpem omnem et linguam et mentionem simul defecisse? Et si de aliis mirum non esset, de lingua tamen, quam unam inter cæteras Deus ab exordio linguarum instituit, mirandum videtur.

§ 9. Huc usque de situ et habitu Britanniae, licet de multis pauca dixerimus, dicta sufficiant. Nunc a quibus et quo tempore primum inhabitata fuerit dicendum est: quod in Beda non inventum, in aliis auctoribus reperi. Scripserunt enim a Dardano principium emanasse Brittonum. Dardanus autem pater fuit Troii, Troius autem pater Priami et Anchisæ, Anchises pater Æneæ, Æneas pater Ascanii, Ascanius pater Silvii. Silvius autem cum uxorem duxisset, et prægnans esset; prædixit magus quidam filium, unde prægnans erat, interfecturum patrem suum. Occiso igitur mago pro vaticinatione illa, natus est filius, et vocatus est Bruto, Post multum vero intervallum, dum ipse luderet cum pueris, ictu sagittæ occidit patrem, non industria sed casu. Quamobrem expulsus ab Italia, pervenit in Galliam, ibique condita civitate Turonorum, quæ vocatur Turonis, invasit tractum Armoricanum. De tractu autem Armoricano huc adveniens, australes sibi partes insulæ ingentis vendicavit, et ex nomine suo Britanniam vocavit, Dicunt autem illi auctores, quod quando Bruto regnabat in Britannia, Hely sacerdos judicabat Israel, et Posthumus sive Silvius filius Æneæ regnabat apud Latinos, cujus nepos erat Bruto. Post intervallum vero octoginta annorum, contigit gentem Pictorum de Scythia . . . . . oceanum ingressam, circumagente flatu ventorum, extra fines Britanniae Hiberniam pervenisse, ejusque septentrionales oras intrasse, atque inventa ibi gente Scottorum, sibi quoque in partibus illis sedes petisse, nec impetrare potuisse. . . . . Dixerunt itaque Scotti: " Nos ambos insula hæc non caperet, sed . . . . . novius insulam esse aliam non procul<sup>1</sup> a nostra contra ortum

Nennius,  
3-5.

The first inhabitants were Trojans, led by Bruto, the great-grandson of Æneas.

Next came the Picts, from Scythia.

Bed. i. l.

<sup>1</sup> A.; longe, Sav.

“solis, quam sæpe lucidioribus diebus de longe aspicere sole-  
mus; hanc adire si vultis, habitabilem vobis facere valetis :  
“vel si quis resistere voluerit, nobis auxiliariis utimini.” Ita-  
que petentes Britanniam Picti, habitare per septentrionales  
insulæ partes coperunt: nam austrinas Brittones occupaverunt.  
Cumque uxores Picti non habentes peterent eas a Scottis, ea  
solum conditione dare consenserunt, ut ubi res veniret in du-  
bium, magis de fœminea regum prosapia quam de masculina  
regem sibi eligerent: quod usque hodie apud Pictos constat esse  
servatum.

§ 10. Hæc sunt quæ a scriptis veterum traduntur de  
adventu Brittonum in partem illam terrarum quæ  
Brittannia vocatur, et de adventu Pictorum in insulam  
eandem. Quæ quamvis insula sit, cum maximi sit  
spatii, non minoris excellentiæ est quod insula est,  
cum totus mundus insula sit. Sed quia vulgo dicitur,  
“Vento pluvia, et risus dolori miscetur;” ob præro-  
gativas ipsius Brittanniæ divitias, omnium circumadja-  
centium in se livorem et invidiam movit. Quamobrem  
sæpe expugnata, sæpiissime vero impugnata est. Proce- Bed. i. 1.  
dente namque tempore venerunt et<sup>1</sup> Scotti ab Hibernia  
in Britanniam, duce Renda, qui in Pictorum parte, vel  
amicitia vel ferro, sedes sibi, quas hactenus habent, vendicarunt:  
a quo videlicet duce . . . . . Dalreudini vocantur, nam  
lingua eorum “Dal” partem significat. Dicendum est igitur  
paucis de Hibernia: quod quamvis de proposito non sit,  
prope tamen est, et ad laudem Dei Omnipotentis hoc  
scribere apponam.

Thirdly, the  
Scotts, from  
Ireland.

Description  
of Ireland.

§ 11. Hibernia enim post Britanniam omnium insu- Bed. i. 1.  
larum optima est: quæ quamvis Brittanniæ divitiis  
cedat, latitudine tamen sui status, et salubritate ac serenitate  
aerum multum ei prestat: quæ sicut contra aquilonem brevior  
est, ita in meridiem se trans illius fines plurimum protendens,  
usque contra Hispaniæ septentrionalia, quamvis magno æquore  
interjacente, pervenit. . . . . Nunquam aut raro ibi  
nix plnsquam triduana remanet. Nemo propter hyemem aut  
fœna secat æstate, aut stabula fabricat jumentis. Nullum  
ibi reptile videri solet, nullus serpens vivere valet; nam sæpe  
illo de Britannia allati serpentes, mox ut, proximante terris

<sup>1</sup> etiam, A.

navigio, odore aeris illius attacti fuerint, intereunt. Quin<sup>1</sup> potius omnia quæ de eadem insula sunt, contra venenum valent: denique quibusdam vidimus a serpente percussis rasa folia codicum quæ de Hibernia fuerunt, et ipsam rasuram aquæ immersam, ac potui datam, talibus protinus totam vim veneni grassantis, totum inflati corporis absumpsisse ac sedasse tumorem. Mirabili igitur dono Deus hanc ditavit insulam, multitudinemque sanctorum ad ejus tuitionem in ea constituit: præterea lacte et melle ditavit, vinearumque non expertem, venatu pisorum et volucrum, cervorum et caprearum insignivit. Hæc autem proprie patria Scottorum est. Si quis autem scire voluerit quo tempore primum habitata fuerit, de hoc nihil apud venerabilem Bedam; sed apud quendam auctorem reperi, quod Ægyptiis in Mari Rubro submersis, illi qui superfuerant, expulerunt a se quendam nobilem Scyticum qui apud eos degebat, ne dominium super eos invaderet: at ille expulsus, diu circuiens per Africam, pervenit cum familia ad aras Philistinorum, et per lacum Salinarum venerunt inter Russicadam et montana Syriæ, et venerunt per flumen Malua, transieruntque per Mauritaniam, et ad columnas Herculis navigarunt Tyrrhenum mare, et pervenerunt usque ad Hispaniam, et ibi per annos habitaverunt multos, et progenies eorum multiplicata est valde. Inde autem venerunt Hiberniam, post mille et duos annos a transitu Israel per Mare Rubrum. Brittones tamen occuparunt prius Britanniam; Brittones namque in tertia mundi ætate Britanniam, Scotti in quarta venerunt Hiberniam. Hæc cum non certissima sint, hoc tamen certum est, quod ab Hispania Hiberniam venerunt, et inde pars eorum egressa, tertiam in Britannia Brittonibus et Pictis gentem addiderunt: nam et pars eorum<sup>2</sup> quæ ibi remansit, adhuc eadem utitur lingua, et Navarri vocantur. Est autem sinus maris permaximus qui antiquitus gentem Brittonum a Pictis secernebat, qui ab Occidente in terras longo spatio erumpit, ubi est civitas Brittonum munitissima usque hodie, quæ vocatur Aldclud;<sup>3</sup> ad

The first inhabitants, who were of Scythian extraction, but long settled in Spain, came to Ireland 1,002 years after the Exodus of the children of Israel.

Nenn. 9.

Bed. l. l.

<sup>1</sup> A.; Cum, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A.; deest, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> Aldclid, A.

cujus videlicet sinus partem septentrionalem Scotti, quos diximus, advenientes, sibi locum patriæ fecerunt.

A.C. 60.  
Caesar's first  
invasion of  
Britain.

§ 12. Julius vero Cæsar primus Romanorum Brittan- Bed. i. 2.  
niam bello laccessivit, LX. annos ante Incarnationem Domini

nostri, anno ab Urbe condita sexcentesimo nonagesimo tertio. Ipse ergo functus gradu consulatus cum Lucio Bibulo, cum Germanos et Gallos jure proelii superasset, qui tum Rheno tantum flumine dirimebantur, inde venit ad Morinos, unde in Britanniam . . . . . brevissimus est transitus.

Fecit igitur naves parari octoginta onerarias et actuarías, et ipse cum legionibus in Britanniam transvolat: nec tamen secundum quod sperabat evenit; egrediens enim de navibus, Brittonum pugnam acerbam plusquam credere posset sensit. Videns ergo suos pauciores, aliosque quam putaverat præstantiores, vi compulsus est naves reintrare.

His second  
invasion.

Tunc vero tempestate correptus, magnam classis partem, magnum militum numerum, equites vero omnes pene amisit. Confusus et reversus in Galliam acrius exarsit; legionibusque hyemantibus, sexcentas naves utriusque commodi paravit. Vere autem vix expectato, cum maximis copiis Britanniam revehitur: egrediens cum exercitu in hostem pergebat. Naves interim anchoris fixæ tempestate corripuntur, colliduntur, confringuntur. Ex quibus quadraginta perierunt; cæteræ post longum non sine difficultate sunt reparatæ. Dux igitur magnus, spe fugiendi amissa, acrius animos militum hortatur, et in ipso hortatu hostibus commiscetur.

Unanimitè utrinque viribus et animis extensis pugnatur, cum Romanis spes fugiendi nulla, Britannis spes vincendi ex solito certa. Labienus ergo tribunus militum, dum primam aciem in Dolobelli<sup>a</sup> cuneum, Nennius, 14.

<sup>a</sup> *Dolobelli*. This is taken from Nennius. "Liud" or "Luid" must be the Lud of Geoffrey of Monmouth, described by him as the elder brother of Cassibellaunus. Geoffrey (iv. 3) speaks of a town of Dorobellum, and calls Belinus

the general, not the brother, of Cassibellaunus. Evidently Henry identifies Lud with the Minocantus of Nennius, the father of Belinus, "qui occupavit omnes insulas Tyr-rheni maris."

Cf. Galfr.  
Monum. iii.  
90.

qui proconsul erat Brittannici regis, acrius immergit, cedentesque cædit, prosternit et prosequitur, regalis acies inter Cæsareas et Labieni phalanges infigitur. Rex autem vocabatur Belinus frater Cassibellani regis, et erat filius Liud<sup>1</sup> regis fortissimi, qui multas insulas maris bellis occupaverat. Circumventum igitur Labienum cum tota acie sua cædunt, subitoque morti transmittunt. Videns Julius diem infaustum, dicensque pugnandum cum Brittannis magis artibus quam viribus, antequam majora detrimenta sustineret, fugæ indulsit: persecuti sunt Brittanni Romanos, multisque peremptis, nemorum vicinitate cohibiti sunt. Tertio Cæsar congressus est Brittanos, taliterque suos exhortatus est:

He is defeated by the Britons.

§ 13. Consortes\* fortissimi, quorum virtuti nec asperitas maris, nec labor terrarum refragari potuit; quorum vires nec audacia Gallorum, nec fortitudo Germanorum perferre sustinuit; non me exhortari vos arbitremini, ut vestram verbis augeam probitatem: quæ enim summa et perfectissima est, et tot in periculis toties probata crescere nequit, decrescere nescit: illa, inquam, virtus, quæ semper in asperrimis clarius refulsit, et ubi alii desperarent, spe certa progrediens, et secunda hilaritate confligens. Quid nota vobis, imo cunctis gentibus memorem, quoties victi victores nostros vicerimus, et ira compulsi fortioribus fortiores devenerimus? Debet læsa probitas irasci: nunc igitur, si aliqua laus Romani nominis, nunc disciplinam militarem, quam perfecte didicistis, perfectius exercuistis, perfectissime supremo in periculo demonstretis. Ego certe ex duobus alterum inevitabiliter elegi, aut hodie vincere, quod beatum est, aut mori pro patria, quod securius est: sola fuga miserorum est. Unde si alicui vestrum idem animus est, erigat dextram inexpugnabilem, stupeantque hostes nos detrimentis refocillari, et diminutione roborari.

His address to his soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> *Liud*, A<sup>2</sup>.

\* *Consortes*. This speech appears to be a pure rhetorical invention of the writer.

§ 14. Sic loquutus erexit dextram, cunctusque tollens ad sidera clamorem exercitus, dextris erectis, infren-duit, et in ipso clamore miscentur hostibus; apparuit-que virtus Romana, dum sagacius ordinati cautius pugnant, obstinatius perseverant. Fatigatis ergo Brit-tannis percutiendo, Romanisque studentibus in se pro-tegendo, cum diu proelium durasset, fessis insulans, Cæsarei recentes videntur. Tunc igitur, non sine mag-

He gains a victory, and advances to the Thame.

no suorum discrimine, victores fiunt Romani. Inde ad flumen Tamesim<sup>1</sup> provectus. In hujus ulteriore ripa, Cassi-bellauno duce, immensa hostium multitudo consederat; ripam-que fluminis ac pene totum sub aqua vadum acutissimis sudi-bus præstruxerat: quarum vestigia sudium ibidem usque hodie visuntur; at videtur inspectantibus quod singulæ earum ad modum humani femoris grossæ et circumfusæ plumbo immo-biliter fundo fluminis infixæ perseverant. Sed hoc Ro-mani deprehenderunt, vitantesque, Barbaris irruerunt. Illi impetum legionum non ferentes, silvis se occuluerunt, unde crebris irruptionibus Romanos graviter ac sæpe vexa-bant. At Trinovantum firmissima civitas, cum Androgeo duce, datis septuaginta<sup>2</sup> obsidibus, Cæsari sese dedit: similiter et aliæ urbes complures in fœdus Romanorum venerunt. Iisdem demonstrantibus, Cæsar oppidum Cassibellauni, inter duas pa-ludes situm, obtentu insuper silvarum munitum, omnibus rebus confertissimum, tandem gravi pugna cepit. Postquam vero Cæsar a Britannis reversus in Galliam, legiones in hiberna<sup>3</sup> misit; repentinis bellorum curis circumventus, pro legioni-bus quæ remanserant in Britannia et in hibernis<sup>4</sup> misit, ut secum Romam irent; de qua re Lucanus:

Fall of Tri-novantum and the city of Cassibel-lanus.

"Solvuntur flavi longa statione Britanni."<sup>a</sup>

Pharsal. i. 402.

Romam vero invitam recipiens, in honorem suum Quin-tilem mensem Julium jussit vocari; siquidem Idibus Martiis in curia dolo perimitur. Sed quia de Cæsare et successoribus ejus qui rexerunt Britanniam usque ad tempus Marciani, qui fuit quadragesimus quartus a

Neem. 16.

Cæsar is assassinated in the senate-house.

<sup>1</sup> Tamense, A.

<sup>2</sup> quadraginta, Beda; lx., C<sup>s</sup>., S., S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Hyberniam, A., A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> Hybernia, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Britanni. The word in the *Pharsalia* is "Rutheni."

Cæsare, tractandum est; non pigeat laudes eorum perstringere; ut Christianos principes nostros, si moribus non pudeat illis æquiparari, saltem pudeat illos deteriores eis inveniri.

Polyhistor,  
c. vi.

§ 15. Authentica laus Cæsaris ex Solino: Quantum His eulogy.  
fortissimi militum Sergius et Sisinnius cæteris militibus præfulserunt, tantum omnibus ducibus, imo omnis temporis hominibus Cæsar prænituit.\* Ejus siquidem ductu undecies centena nonaginta et duo millia hostium cæsa sunt: nam quantum bellis civilibus fuderit, noluit adnotare.<sup>1</sup> Signis collatis quinquagies et bis dimicavit; Marcum Marcellum solus supergressus, qui triginta et novem vicibus pari modo fuerat præliatus. Ad hoc nullus celerius scripsit, nemo velocius legit, quaternas etiam epistolas simul dictavit. Tantæ fuit bonitatis, ut quos armis subegerat, clementia magis vicerit.

Nenn. 16.

§ 16. Augustus Julio Cæsari succedens monarchiam The reign of Augustus.  
totius mundi tenuit: descripsit autem universum orbem, et a Britannia, sicut ab aliis regnis, censum accepit, ut Virgilius ait:

Georg. iii.  
25.

‘Purpurea intexti tollunt aulea Britanni.’

Hoc autem fecit anno imperii ejus quadragesimo secundo, quando Lux vera mundo nata innotuit, per quem omnia regna mundi et insulæ caligine oppressæ cognoverunt Deum unum esse, et viderunt Eum qui creavit eos. Cum autem regnasset Augustus lV. annis et dimidio, legem mortis sequutus est. Laus Augusti His eulogy.

Eutr. vii. 9.

ex Eutropio: Augustus, exceptis civilibus bellis, in quibus invictus fuit, subegit Armeniam, Ægyptum, Galatiam, Cantabriam, Dalmatiam, . . . . . Pannoniam, Aquitaniam, Illyricum, Rhetiam, Vindelicos, Talassos,<sup>2</sup> . . . . . Pontum et Cappadociam. Dacos et Germanos ita vicit, quod quadringenta millia captivorum ex eis super ripam Rhæni in Gallia collocaret. Persæ obsides ei, quod nulli antea, dederunt, et signa Crasso direpta reddiderunt. . . . . Fuit mitis, gratus, civilis animi, . . . . . corpore toto pulcher, sed oculis præcipue; in cives clemens, in ami-

<sup>1</sup> adnotari, Sol.

| <sup>2</sup> Talassos. Salassos, Eutrop.

\* This first sentence substantially agrees with Solinus, but is differently worded.

cos tantus, ut pene eos sibi cœquaret: nulli genti nisi justis de causis bellum indixit; pessimum ducens causa triumphandi dubios eventus adire. Sic a Barbaris dilectus, ut quidam reges ad ei obsequendum Romam sponte venerint, quidam in honore ejus civitates conderent, ut Juba et Herodes. Omni die legebat, scribebat, declamabat; cibi ac vini multum abstinens: probra sibi dicta non ulciscens, prodicionis suæ reis dans veniam: Romam lateritiâ invenit, reliquit marmoream.<sup>a</sup>

Reign of  
Tiberius.

§ 17. Tiberius privignus Augusti post eum regnavit annis XXIII. tam super Britanniam quam super alia regna totius mundi. Laus Tiberii: Tiberius prudens in armis fortunatusque fuit, unde sub Augusto meruit ut ei succederet: erat literarum scientissimus, sed magis eloquio clarissimus; repentinis responsionibus aut consiliis melior quam præmeditatis: arguebatur autem simultatis,<sup>b</sup> quasi infensus his quos diligebat, his vero quos oderat quasi benevolus apparens.<sup>c</sup>

Anrel. Vic-  
for.

Reigns of  
Caligula and  
Claudius.

§ 18. Caius cognomento Caligula regnavit super orbem terrarum annis fere quinque.

§ 19. Claudius post sexaginta duos annos ab Incarnatione Domini, anno ab Urbe condita septingentesimo nonagesimo octavo imperium suscepit. Quarto anno regni sui Britanniam adiit, quosdamque rebelles sine ulla prælio vel sanguine citissime in ditionem recepit.<sup>d</sup> Orcadas etiam insulas ultra Britanniam in oceano positas, de quibus prædiximus,<sup>e</sup> Romano adjecit imperio, et sexto, quo

Bed. i. 3.

<sup>a</sup> The substance of this latter portion of the character is found in Eutropius, but Henry has arranged and expressed it in his own way.

<sup>b</sup> *simultatis*: for *simulationis*.

<sup>c</sup> Henry condenses Victor's short character of Tiberius, leaving out most of what is said to his disadvantage.

<sup>d</sup> Henry desires to represent

Britain as having been continuously included in the Roman empire, from Julius Cæsar downwards; he therefore alters Bede's account of the visit of Claudius, by substituting for "plurimam insulæ partem . . . in ditionem recepit," "*quosdam rebelles . . . in ditionem recepit.*"

<sup>e</sup> See above, § 2.

profectus erat, mense Romam rediit, sibique et filio suo Britannici nomen indidit: de quo Juvenalis:

Sat. vi. 124. "Ostendensque tuum, generose Britannice, ventrem."

Bed. i. 3. Quo etiam anno fames gravissima per Syriam facta est, quæ a Luca in Actibus Apostolorum per prophetam Agabum prædicta esse memoratur. Temporibus Claudii Petrus, fidei nostræ princeps, cathedram Romæ suscepit, quam xxv. annis tenuit, id est usque ad ultimum Neronis annum. Ab eodem Claudio Vespasianus . . . . . missus in

Bed. de Ratione Temporum, a. 4007.

Ibid. a. 4051. Germaniam, ac deinde in Britanniam, trigesies et his cum hoste conflixit: duas validissimas gentes affixit: xx. oppida armis cepit: insulam quoque Vectam Britannicæ adjacentem Romano subjecit imperio. Cum autem regnasset xiii. annis et plusquam dimidio, viam patrum obtinuit. Laus Claudii: Claudius multa gessit tranquille et moderate, quædam minus caute. Romanum imperium auxit: vir bellicosus fuit. Adeo civilis circa quosdam amicos extitit, ut etiam Paulinum<sup>1</sup> nobilem virum, qui in expeditione Britannica multa egregie fecerat, triumphantem ipse prosequeretur, et conscendenti Capitolium lævus incederet.

Eutrop. vii. 13.

Eulogy of Claudius.

§ 20. Nero regnavit annis xiii. et plusquam dimidio. <sup>Reign of Nero,</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Eadem veste nunquam bis usus est.' Hic quamvis juvenis strenuus fuisset, tamen cum imperaret, in re militari segnis factus est: unde inter alia Romani imperii detrimenta . . . . . Britanniam pene amisit. Nam duo sub eo nobilissima oppida illic subversa et destructa fuerunt. Hic eo anno quo Petrum et Paulum occidit, ignominiose deperiit.

Bed. i. 3.

§ 21. Vespasianus, qui Jerusalem destruxit, regnavit annis fere decem: ipse scilicet qui Britanniam sub Claudio adierat, et insulam Vectam Romanæ ditioni subjecerat: quæ habet ob Oriente in Occasum triginta millia circiter passuum, ab austro in boream xii., in orientalibus sui partibus mari sex millium, in occidentali trium, a meridiano Britannicæ littore distans. Hic etiam vir nobilissimus Colossus erexit, habentem altitudinis c.vii. pedes.

Bed. i. 3.

Reign of Vespasian

<sup>1</sup> Paulinum. Plautium, Eutrop. | <sup>2</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

His eulogy. *Laus authentica Vespasiani: Romæ se imperio<sup>1</sup> modera-* Eutrop. vii.  
 tissime gessit, pecuniæ tantum avidior fuit, ita tamen ut<sup>2</sup> eam 13.  
 nullis<sup>3</sup> injuste auferret: quam cum omni diligentia provisione  
 colligeret, tamen studiosissime largiebatur, præcipue indigen-  
 tibus; nec facile ante eum cujusquam principis vel major est  
 liberalitas comperta, vel justior. Placidissimæ lenitatis erat;<sup>4</sup>  
 ut qui majestatis . . . . . contra se reos non facile  
 punierit ultra exilii poenam. Hic vicit Judæam, . . . . .  
 . . . . . Achaïam, Lyciam, Rhodum, Byzantium, Samum,  
 . . . . . Thraciam, Ciliciam, Comagenem. . . . .  
 . . . . . Offensarum et inimicitiarum immemor fuit; convitia a  
 causidicis et philosophis leniter tulit; . . . . . senatui,  
 populo, . . . . . cunctis amabilis et jucundus.

Reign of  
Titus.

§ 22. Titus filius ejus regnavit annis duobus et  
 mensibus duobus; vir omnium virtutum genere mira-  
 bilis, adeo ut amor et deliciæ humani generis diceretur.  
 Hic amphitheatrum Romæ ædificavit, et in dedicatione  
 ejus quinque millia ferarum occidit. Laus Titi summa:  
 Titus facundissimus, bellicosissimus, moderatissimus: causas Eutrop. vii.  
 Latine egit, poemata et tragœdias Græce composuit. In 14.  
 oppugnatione Ierosolymorum sub patre militans, duodecim  
 propugnatores duodecim sagittarum ictibus confixit. Romæ  
 tantæ civilitatis imperio<sup>5</sup> fuit, ut nullum omnino puniret;  
 convictos adversum se conjurationis dimisit, et in eadem  
 familiaritate qua ante habuit; facilitatis et liberalitatis tantæ  
 fuit, ut cum nulli quicquam negaret, et ab amicis reprehen-  
 deretur; responderit: "Nullum tristem debere ab imperatore  
 "discedere." . . . . . Pro hoc inusitato favore dilectus  
 est, et tantus luctus eo mortuo publicus fuit, ut omnes  
 tanquam in propria dolerent orbitate. Cum procul a Roma  
 mortuus esset, senatus obitu ipsius circa vespertinum nunti-  
 ato, nocte irrupit in curiam, et tantas ei<sup>6</sup> mortuo laudes  
 gratiasque congessit,<sup>7</sup> quantas nec vivo unquam egerat, nec  
 præsentī.

Reigns of  
Domitian,  
Nerva, and  
Trajan.

§ 23. Domitianus frater Titi annos regnavit quin-  
 decim, mensibus quinque. Hic secundus post Neronem  
 Christianos persequitur, quem, divina providentia om-  
 nibus invisum, senatus coegit ut se ipse perimeret.

<sup>1</sup> in imperio, Eutrop.

<sup>2</sup> ita ut, Eutrop.

<sup>3</sup> nulli, Eutrop.

<sup>4</sup> erat, om. Eutrop.

<sup>5</sup> in imperio, Eutr.

<sup>6</sup> A.; deest, Sav.

<sup>7</sup> A.; concessit, Sav.

§ 24. Nerva anno uno et paulo plus imperium terrarum tenuit.

§ 25. Trajanus annos regnavit XIX. et dimidium. Hic tam Britanniam quam cætera regna mirabili vigore rexit. Romanum enim imperium, quod post Augustum defensum magis fuerat quam ampliatur, longe lateque diffudit. Hic est ille qui causa justitiæ oculum sibi et oculum filio eruit: quem Gregorius ab inferis revocavit.<sup>a</sup> Intelligite igitur legentes quanti sit justitia, quæ nec infidelem tam perfectum amatorem sui relinquere potuit desolatum. Laus Trajani ex Suetonio: Trajanus, inusitatæ civilitatis et fortitudinis, . . . . Daciam . . . . subegit, et ea quæ sunt circa Danubium, et Armeniam, quam occupaverant Parthi. . . . Albanis regem dedit; Hiberorum regem, et Sauromatarum, et Bosporanorum, et Arabum, et Osdroenorum, et Colchorum in fidem accepit; Corduenos, Marchamedos occupavit; et Antomusium magnam Persidis regionem, Seleuciam, et Ctesiphontem, Babylonem, et Messenios vicit ac tenuit. Usque ad Indiæ fines et mare Rubrum accessit, atque ibi tres provincias fecit, Armeniam, Assyriam, Mesopotamiam, cum his gentibus, quæ Madenam attingunt. Arabiam postea in provinciæ formam redegit. In mari Rubro classem instituit, ut per eam Indiæ fines vastaret. Gloriam tamen militarem civitate et moderatione superavit, Romæ et per provincias æqualem se omnibus exhibens, amicos salutandi causa frequentans, vel ægrotantes; cum festos dies habuissent, convivia cum eisdem indiscreta vicissim habens; sæpe in vehiculis eorum sedens; nullum senatorem lædens; nil injustum ad augendum fiscum agens; liberalis in cunctis;<sup>1</sup> publice privatimque ditans omnes, et honoribus augens, quos vel mediocri familiaritate cognovisset; orbem terrarum sedificans, multas immunitates civitatibus tribuens; nihil non tranquil-

Joh. Diac.  
in Vita  
Greg. II. 44.

Eutrop. viii.  
2.

Eulogy of  
Trajan.

<sup>1</sup> cunctos, Eutr.

<sup>a</sup> *ab inferis revocavit*] John the Deacon, in his Life of Gregory the Great, says, (the reference in the M. H. B. is wrong,) that in the records of the English churches a story was preserved, to the effect that the pope, having heard an anecdote illustrating Trajan's sin-

gular love of justice, wept bitterly in St. Peter's basilica over the religious darkness in which this virtuous emperor was plunged, and received on the following night an assurance that the soul of Trajan was delivered from perdition.

lum et placidum agens; adeo ut omni ejus ætate unus<sup>1</sup> senator damnatus sit, atque is tamen per senatum, ignorante Trajano. Ob hoc per orbem terrarum Deo proximus, nihil non venerationis meruit et vivus et mortuus. Inter alia dicta hoc ipsius fertur egregium: amicis enim culpantibus quod nimium circa omnes comis esset, respondit: "Se talem imperatorem esse privatis, quales sibi imperatores esse privatus optasset." . . . . . Solus omnium intra urbem sepultus est: ossa collata in urnam auream in foro quod ædificavit sub columna posita sunt, cujus altitudo c.XL. pedes habet. Hujus tantum memoriæ delatum est, ut usque ad nostrum ætatem non aliter in senatu principibus adclametur, nisi "Felicior Augusto, melior Trajano."

Reign of  
Hadrian.

§ 26. Adrianus rexit orbem terræ annis XXI. Hic Judæos secundo rebelles perdomuit, Jerusalemque reædificavit, Judæisque eam videndi licentiam abstulit. Laus Adriani: Adrianus princeps medius fuit: pacem omni tempore imperii sui habuit: semel tantum per præsidem dimicavit: orbem Romanum circuiit: multa ædificavit: facundissimus Latino sermone, Græco eruditissimus fuit.

Hist. Misc.  
X.

Reign and  
character of  
Antoninus  
Pius.

§ 27. Antoninus Pius monarchiam mundi tenuit annis XXIII. et dimidio. Laus Antonini Pii: Vir honestus et insignis merito Numæ Pompilio confertur, ut Romulo Trajanus æquatur. . . . . Nulli acerbus, cunctis benignus; in re militari moderatus, defendere magis provincias quam amplificare studens; viros æquissimos ad administrandum rempublicam quærens, bonos in honore habens,<sup>2</sup> improbos sine aliqua acerbitate detestans; regibus amicis tam venerabilis, ut . . . . . ad eum controversias deferrent, sententiæque parerent; . . . . . in amicos liberalissimus, serarium tamen opulentum reliquit; Pius propter clementiam dictus est.

Hist. Misc.  
X.

Reigns of  
Marcus Au-  
relius and  
Commodus.

§ 28. Marcus Antoninus Verus cum fratre Aurelio Lucio Commodus annis XIX. mensibus II. Hi primum æquo jure imperium administraverunt, cum usque ad hoc tempus singuli Augusti fuissent. Bellum deinde contra Parthos admirabili virtute et felicitate gesserunt. Quorum temporibus cum Eleutherius . . . . . pontificatui Romanæ ecclesiæ præesset; misit ad eum Lucius Brittanniarum<sup>3</sup> rex epistolam, obsecrans ut per ejus mandatum

Bed. i. 4.

<sup>1</sup> unus tantum, Eutr.

<sup>2</sup> bonis honorem habens, Eutr.

<sup>3</sup> Britannorum, A.

Hist. Miscell. x.

Christianus efficeretur. Et mox effectum piæ postulationis consecutus est; susceptamque fidem Britanni usque in tempora Dioclesiani principis inviolatam integramque quietam pace servabant. Laus Antonini Veri ex historia Romana: Hic, Antonio consorte suo per apoplexiam defuncto, supra laudabilis in imperio remansit; quippe qui nunquam vultum vel e gaudio vel mœrore immutaverit. Philosophiæ deditus Stoicæ, summus moribus et eruditione philosophus, literis Latinis et Græcis eruditissimus, omnibus æquus, nunquam elatus, liberalitate promptissimus, provinciis benignus ac moderatus. Contra Germanos feliciter confixit; bellum Marcomanicum gessit contra Squados, Wandalos, Sarmatas, Suetos et omnem barbariem, quantum nulla memoria tradit, adeo ut Punicis conferatur. Vir igitur divinus tanti prælii victor cum Commodo . . . . filio . . . . triumphavit. Cum igitur ærario exhausto regios cultus vendidisset, eis qui reddere voluerunt, postea pretia restituit; eis qui noluerunt, immolestus fuit. Hic permisit viris clarioribus, ut convivia eodem cultu, quo ipse, et ministris similibus exhiberent: in editione munerum post victoriam adeo magnificus extitit ut centum simul leones exhibuisse tradatur.

§ 29 Commodus prædicti Commodi filius imperavit annis XIII. Hic adversum Germanos bellum feliciter gessit; Colossi que capite sublato, suæ imaginis caput iussit ei imponi.

§ 30. Ælius Pertinax menses sex; qui Juliani jurisperiti scelere occiditur in palatio.

Reigns of Pertinax and Severus.

Bed. i. 5.

§ 31. Severus Pertinax, interfecto Juliano jurisperito, regnavit XVII. annis. Hic genere Afer, Tripolitanus ab oppido Lepti, . . . . natura sævus, multis semper bellis lacessitus, fortissime quidem rempublicam sed laboriosissime rexit. Victor ergo civilium bellorum, quæ ei gravissima occurrerant, et Clodio<sup>1</sup> Albino, qui se in Gallia Cæsarem fecerat, apud Lugdunum interfecto, . . . . in Britannias transit; ubi magnis gravibusque præliis sæpe gestis, receptam partem insulæ a cæteris indomitis gentibus, non ut quidam aestimant muro, sed vallo distinguendam putavit. Murus etenim de

Bed. De Hist. Temp. a. 4163.

Bed. i. 5

<sup>1</sup> A.; Didio, Sav.

lapidibus, vallum vero, quo ad repellendam vim hostium castra muniuntur, fit de cespitibus; quibus circumcisis e terra velut murus exstruitur altus super terram, ita ut in ante sit fossa, de qua levati sunt cespites, supra quam sudes de lignis fortissimis præfiguntur. Itaque Severus magnam fossam, firmissimumque vallum, crebris insuper turribus communitum, a mari usque ad mare duxit; ibique apud Eboracum oppidum morbo obiit. Reliquit duos filios Bassianum et Getam: quorum Geta hostis publicus judicatus interiit: Bassianus, Antonini cognomine assumpto, regno potitus est. Laus Severi ex Eutropio: Severus . . . . bella multa et feliciter gessit: vicit Parthos et Arabas et Azabenos; unde Parthicus, Arabicus, Azabenicus dictus est. Multa toto orbe ad Romanum decus reparavit. . . . . Severus tamen præter bellicam gloriam etiam civilibus studiis clarus fuit, et literis doctus, philosophiæ scientiam ad plenum adeptus; . . . . Divus appellatus est.

Eulogy of  
Severus.

Hist. Misc.  
x.

Reigns of  
Caracalla,  
Macrinus,  
Heliogabe-  
lus, and  
Alexander  
Severus.

§ 32. Antoninus Caracalla filius Severi, VII. annis regnum mundi tenuit. Macrinus cum uno anno regnasset, apud Archelaidem, cum filio suo, militari tumultu occiditur. Marcus Aurelius Antoninus IIII. annis dominium terrarum habuit. Aurelius Alexander annis XIII. Hic in Mammeam matrem suam unice pius fuit, et ob id omnibus amabilis. Laus Alexandri: Hic, suscepto adversus Persas bello, Xersen regem gloriosissime vicit, militarem disciplinam severissime rexit, quasdam tumultuantes legiones integras exauctoravit. . . . . Romæ admodum<sup>1</sup> favorabilis fuit; militari tumultu periit in Gallia.

Hist. Misc.  
x.

Names and  
brief no-  
tices of the  
Roman em-  
perors, from  
Maximian to  
Diocletian.

§ 33. Maximianus prior annis tribus terras et insulas rexit. Hic Germanos bello vicit. Gordianus annis VI. Origines floruit, qui v. millia librorum scripsit, ut narrat Hieronymus.\* Hic Persas vicit. Philippus cum Philippo filio annis VII. Hic primus imperatorum omnium Christianus fuit; ac post tertium imperii ejus annum, millesimus a conditione Romæ annus expletus est; magnificisque ludis hic augustissimus omnium præteritorum annus a Christiano imperatore celebratus

S. Hieron.  
adv. Rufi-  
num, lib. II.

<sup>1</sup> quoque, Eutrop.

\* "Sex millia librorum ejus," says St. Jerome, rhetorically, in the passage quoted.

Hist. Misc.  
I.

est. *Laus Philippi junioris*: Hic adeo severi animi fuit, ut nullo commento . . . . . ad ridendum solvi potuerit, patremque . . . . . cachinnantem vultu averso notaverit; semper vitiis restans, et ad ardua virtutis anhelans.

§ 34. Decius anno uno mensibus III. Hic cum Philippos, patrem et filium, interfecisset, ob odium eorum Christianos persequitur. Gallus cum Volusiano filio annis II. et mensibus III. Valerianus cum filio Gallieno annis XV. Hic, in Christianos persecutione commota, statim a Persarum rege capitur: ibique luminibus orbatus, servitute miserabili consenescit. Claudius secundus, anno I. mensibus IX. Iste Gothos jam per annos XV. Illyricum Macedoniamque vastantes superat; ob quod in Curia clipeus aureus ei, et in Capitolio statua aurea collata est.

Hist. Misc.  
I.

§ 35. Aurelianus annis V. mensibus VI. Hic cum Christianos persequeretur, fulmen ante eum<sup>1</sup> magno horrore circumstantium ruit; et paulo post a militibus occiditur. *Laus Aureliani ex gestis mirabilium virorum*: Cum Alexander annis XIII., Cæsar XIII., orbem subjugassent, iste triennio tribusque præliis orbem pacificavit. Iste primus Romanorum diadema sumpsit, gemmisque et aurata omni veste . . . . . usus est; . . . . . disciplinæ militaris et morum dissolutorum . . . . . corrector, sed ferus nimis, et superbus, et sævus omni tempore. Tacitus VI. mensibus; quo apud Pontum occiso, regnavit Florianus III. mensibus, et sic apud Tarsum occiditur. Probus annis VI. mensibus III. Hic Gallias jamdudum a Barbaris occupatas, deletis tandem hostibus, ad perfectum liberavit. *Laus Probi ex authenticis*: Probus

Hist. Misc.  
I.

vir illustris, acer, strenuus, justus: Aurelianum pene militari<sup>2</sup> gloria æquavit, sed morum civilitate superavit. Hic cum bella innumera gessisset, pace parata dixit, "brevis milites necessarios non futuros." Carus annis II. Hic, cum Persas superasset, super Tigride flumine periit.

<sup>1</sup> *cadens*, A. add.

| <sup>2</sup> A. ; deest, Sav.

Reign of  
Diocletian.  
The rebel-  
lion of Ca-  
rausius in  
Britain.

§ 36. Diocletianus cum Herculo Maximiano xx. Bed. i. 6.

He is slain  
by Allectus,  
who is put  
down by  
Asclepiodo-  
tus.

The perse-  
cution of  
Diocletian.

annis: quorum tempore Carausius quidam, genere quidem in-  
fimus, sed consilio et manu promptus, cum ad observanda  
oceani littora, quæ tunc Franci et Saxones infestabant, positus,  
plus in perniciem, quam in profectum reipublicæ ageret, et<sup>1</sup>  
ereptam prædonibus prædam nulla ex parte restituendo domi-  
nis, sed sibi soli vindicando, accendens suspicionem, quia ipsos  
quoque hostes ad incursandos fines artificii negligentia permit-  
teret: quamobrem a Maximiano jussus occidi, purpuram sump-  
sit, ac Britannias occupavit. Quibus sibi per septem annos  
fortissime vindicatis ac retentis, tandem fraude Allecti socii sui  
interemptus est. Allectus postea, erepta Carausio insula, per  
triennium tenuit, quem Asclepiodotus præfectus prætorio op-  
pressit, Britanniamque post x. annos recepit. Bellis vero  
coacti prædicti imperatores, Constantium in Occidente,  
Galerium Maximinum in Oriente assumunt in regnum.  
Eo tempore persecutio crudelissima ubique terrarum  
exarsit in Christianos. S. Albanus se Deo sacrificium  
ea tempestate obtulit, de quo Fortunatus in Laude Virgi- Bed. i. 7.  
num scribit:

“Albanum egregium fecunda Britannia profert.”

History of  
the martyr-  
dom of St.  
Alban.

Qui cum civis apud Verolanium esset, et clericum quen-  
dam paganos fugientem hospitio recepisset, et per eum  
latentem conversus interim fuisset, pro eo quærentibus  
se poenis obtulit: cumque tormentis affectus excapi-  
tandus duceretur, flumen siccatus est per orationem  
sancti, quia populus tantus per pontem transire nequi-  
bat; quod cum inter alios ipse etiam carnifex eum  
percussurus vidisset, genibus ejus advolutus, fidelis et  
cum eo martyr factus est: fons etiam martyrio ejus  
affuit, qui post martyrium ejus reversus est in natu-  
ram: oculi autem percutientis eum cum capite sancti  
in terram deciderunt. Passus est autem juxta Vero-  
lanium, id est Wirlamecester, sive Watlingeceaster, ubi  
post ecclesia mirandi operis . . . . . constructa est,  
et abbatia nobilissima: ubi etiam usque hodie fit cura-  
tio infirmorum et . . . . . operatio virtutum.<sup>a</sup> Passi

<sup>1</sup> et, deest in Bed.

<sup>a</sup> This account of the martyrdom of St. Alban is condensed from that of Beda.

sunt quoque eo tempore Aaron et Julius Legionum urbis cives; alii quoque plures utriusque sexus inaudita membrorum discriptione et diversis cruciatibus in testimonium Dei excelsi. Hæc persecutio tam crebra erat, ut intra unum mensem XVII. millia martyrum pro Christo passa inveniantur. Cum autem vigesimo regni sui anno Diocletianus Nicomediæ, Maximianus Mediolani purpuram deposuerunt; cœpit persecutio mitigari usque ad tempus Arrii. Laus Diocletiani: Diocletianus moratus<sup>1</sup> callide fuit, sagax præterea et admodum subtilis ingenio, et qui severitatem suam aliena invidia vellet explere. Diligentissimus tamen et sollertissimus princeps, quamvis contra Romanam libertatem adorari se jusserit, cum ante eum cæteri salutarentur. Gemmas vestibus calciamentisque indidit . . . . . inusitata virtute usus, ut solus omnium . . . . . ex tanto fastigio sponte privatus fieret. Contigit igitur ei quod nulli post natos homines, ut cum privatus obiisset, inter divos tamen referretur. Maximianus vero vir crudelissimus et vultu fuit horrendus.

Hist. Misc.  
xi.Eulogy of  
Diocletian.

§ 37. Constantius, qui sub prædictis imperatoribus regnaverat super Galliam et Britanniam et Hispaniam XV. annis, uno anno post depositionem eorum imperavit in occidentalibus partibus, Maximino imperante in orientalibus. Condidit autem Constantiam<sup>2</sup> in ea parte Galliæ quæ nunc vocatur Normannia, a cepitque filiam regis Brittannici de Colecestre, cui nomen erat Coel, scilicet Helenam, quam Sanctam dicimus, et genuit ex ea Constantinum magnum. Obiit autem Constantius vir summæ mansuetudinis<sup>4</sup> et civilitatis in Britannia Eboraci. Laus Constantii: Constantius vir præ-

Ord. Vit. v.  
8.Galfr. Mon.  
v. 6.

Bed. i. 8.

Hist. Misc.  
xi.Reign of  
Constantius.He founds  
Coutances  
in Nor-  
mandy.Marries  
Helen, a  
British  
princess.<sup>1</sup> *morigeratus*, Eutrop.<sup>2</sup> *civitatem*, A. add.; deest, Sav.<sup>3</sup> *S.*; *magnitudinis*, cæteri codd.

<sup>4</sup> So far as appears, Henry took this account of the founding of Coutances from Orderic, than whom no earlier authority, explicitly avouching the same thing, was known to the authors of *Gallia Christiana*. We find, however,

"civitas Constantia" among the cities of the province Lugdunensis Secunda named in the "Notitia Imperii," and Ammianus Marcellinus, speaking of the same place, calls it "castra Constantia."

stantissimus, divitiis provincialium ac privatorum studens, fisci commoda non admodum affectavit: dicens, "melius publicas opes a privatis haberi quam intra unum claustrum reservari." Cultus modici, mitis animi. Hic non modo amabilis sed venerabilis etiam Gallis fuit.

Reign of his son, Constantine the Great.

Apparition of the *Labarum*.

Constantine sole emperor.

Churches which he built in Rome.

§ 38. Constantinus flos Britanniae regnavit xxx. annis et x. mensibus. Hic igitur Britannicus genere et patria: ante quem nec post similis est egressus de Britannia. Duxit exercitum a Britannia et Gallia in Italiam. Maximianus enim Maxentium filium suum Romae Augustum constituerat. Contra quem Constantinus adhuc infidelis tendens, vidit angelum Dei ostendentem sibi signum crucis, et hortantem se ut crederet. Credidit ille statim; Maxentiumque Deus flumine submersit. Constantinus igitur potitus imperio, Maximinum bis lege belli superavit, solusque regnum mundi tenuit: et a vulnere leprae, ut scripta tradunt, per S. Silvestrum in baptismo mundatus, fecit Romae, ubi baptizatus est, basilicam Joannis Baptistae, quae vocatur Constantiniana: item basilicam Petro et Paulo in templo Apollinis, corpus utriusque aere Ciprio circumdans v. pedes in grosso: item basilicam in Palatio Sessoriano, quae cognominatur Hierusalem: ubi de ligno crucis Domini posuit: item basilicam sanctae martyris Agnetis ex rogatu filiae suae: item basilicam B. Laurentio via Tiburtina in agro Verano: item basilicam via Lavicana Petro et Marcellino martyribus: et mausoleum ubi matrem suam posuit in sarcophago purpureo: item basilicam in civitate Hostia juxta portum urbis Romae: item basilicam in civitate Albanensi S. Joannis Baptistae: item basilicam in urbe Neapoli. Constantinus urbem sui nominis statuens in Thracia, sedem Romani imperii et totius Orientis caput esse voluit: item Depranam civitatem Bythiniae in honorem martyris Luciani ibi conditi instaurans, ex vocabulo matris suae Helenopolim vocavit. Idem statuit, citra ullam hominum caedem, paganorum templa claudi. Helena vero, Britanniae nobilis alumna, Londoniam muro, quod adhuc superest, cinxisse fertur, et Colecestriam moenibus adornasse.<sup>a</sup> Sed et inter alia multa Hierusalem instau-

Bed. De  
Ecl. Temp.  
a. 4290.

<sup>a</sup> For the statement that the em- | London, Henry is the sole autho-  
press Helena built a wall round | rity. He may have picked up some

ravit, mundatamque idolis, basilicis pluribus adornavit.

Hist. Misc.  
xi.

Laus Constantini ex sacris scriniis: Vir primo imperii tempore optimis principibus, ultimo mediis comparandus: innumerae in eo animi corporisque virtutes claruerunt; militari gloria summus, fortuna par et industria, civilibus artibus et studiis liberalibus deditus, affectator justis amoris, in . . . . . amicis . . . . . egregius; . . . . . verum insolentia rerum secundarum aliquantum ex illa favorabilis animi docilitate tandem immutatus est.

Eulogy of  
Constantine.

Bed. De  
Erat. Temp.  
a. 4314.

§39. Constantius cum Constantino et Constante fratribus annis . . . . . mensibus v. . . . . Hæresis Arriana Constantii regis fulta præsidio, varie et valde catholicos afflixit.

Constantius  
and the  
Arian  
heresy.

Hist. Misc.  
xi.

§ 40. Julianus Apostata II. annis mensibus VIII. Hic digne a barbaris, Dei hostis, bellando perimitur. Laus Juliani ex Paulo: Fuit Marco Antonino non absimilis, quem etiam æmulari studebat: . . . . . liberalibus disciplinis adprime eruditus, . . . . . memoriæ tenacis et amplæ, facundiæ ingentis et promptæ, . . . . . philosopho propior, . . . . . civilis in cunctos, . . . . . avidus gloriæ, et per hoc animi plerumque<sup>1</sup> immodici.

Julian the  
Apostate.

Bed. De  
Erat. Temp.  
a. 4317.

§ 41. Jovinianus bonus et pius VIII. mensibus; cujus læta principia mors immatura corrumpit. Valentinianus cum fratre suo Valente XI. annis regnorum jura custodivit.

Reigns of  
Jovian, Va-  
lentinian,  
and Valens.

Hist. Misc.  
xii.

Laus Valentiniani ex historia Pauli: Fuit . . . . . Aureliano similis, vultu decens, solers ingenio, gravis animo, . . . . . severus, vehemens, infestus vitiis, maximeque avaritiæ, doctus pingere venustissime, . . . . . nova arma meditari, fingere simulachra cera seu limo, . . . . . sermone cultissimus, . . . . . prudens et astutus. Valens cum Gratiano et Valentiniano . . . . . fratris sui prædicti filius, regnavit annis iv. Valens ab Arrianis baptizatus, catholicos persequitur, . . . . . legeque data ut monachi militarent, nolentes fustibus jussit interfici. Gens Hunorum diu in inaccessis seclusa montibus, repentina rabie percita, exarsit in

Bed. De  
Erat. Temp.  
a. 4322 et  
4323.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>s</sup>; *placunque*, M. H. B.

tradition to that effect in London, where a church still existing, St. Helen's, Bishopsgate, which is said to stand on the site of one dating from the Roman occupation, attests

the veneration in which the city held her name from a very early period. Comp. Bollandus, *Acta Sanctorum* (Aug. 18).

**Irruption of the Goths.** Gothos; eosque sparsim conturbatos ab antiquis sedibus expulit. Gothi transito Danubio fugientes, a Valente sine armorum depositione suscepti, mox per avaritiam Maximi ducis fame ad rebellandum coacti sunt; victoque Valentis exercitu, per Thraciam sese miscentes, simul omnia cædibus, incendiis, rapinisque fuderunt.

**A.D. 377. Reigns of Gratian and Theodosius.** § 42. Gratianus cum fratre Valentiniano anno ab Incarnatione Domini trecentesimo séptuagesimo séptimo regnavit annis VI. quamvis jamdudum cum patruo suo Valente regnaret. Qui cum afflictum et pene collapsum rei- Bed. i. 9.

**Reign of Maximus in Britain.** publicæ statum videret, Theodosium Hispanum virum, restituendæ reipublicæ necessitate, apud Sirmium<sup>1</sup> purpura induit, Orientisque et Thraciæ simul præfecit imperio. Theodosius igitur maximas illas Scythicas gentes, hoc est, Alanos, Hunos, et Gothos magnis et multis præliis vicit. Interea Maximus a Britannia oriundus, vir quidem strenuus et laude dignus nisi contra sacramenti fidem per tyrannidem emersisset in Britanniam; ibidem imperator creatus, in Galliam transiit, ubi Gratianum Augustum subita incursione perterritum . . . . . interfecit, fratremque ejus Valentinianum Augustum Italia expulit, qui ad Theodosium in Oriente refugit. Laus Gratiani: Fuit Gratianus literis Hist. Misc. xii. haud mediocriter institutus, carmen facere, ornate loqui, explicare controversias rhetorum more, nihil aliud die noctuque agere quam spiculis<sup>2</sup> meditari, summæque voluptatis divinæque artis credere destinata ferire; parcus cibi, somnique ac libidinis victor.

**After his death his British followers settle in Armorica.** § 43. Theodosius post mortem Gratiani annis XI. regnavit cum Valentiniano, quem regno restituit, clauso videlicet intra muros Aquileiæ, et occiso Maximo tyranno. Brittones vero, quos Maximus secum adduxerat, in Gallia Armorica usque hodie remanserunt: unde et Brittones Armorici vocantur; a quibus spoliata emarcuit Britannia. Laus Theodosii: Theodosius propagator reipublicæ fuit atque defensor eximius; moribus et corpore Trajano similis, quantum scriptura<sup>3</sup> veterum et pictura<sup>4</sup> docent, a quo et originem traxit: sic eminens status, membra eadem, par cæsaries: . . . . . sed illi non tam ingentes Bed. i. 12. Of. Galfr. Monum. v. 12, 14, 16. Hist. Misc. xiii.

<sup>1</sup> F.; cæteri codd. *Sirmiam*.

<sup>2</sup> *spiculas*, Paul. Diac.

<sup>3</sup> *scripta*, Paul. Diac.

<sup>4</sup> *pictura*, Paul. Diac.

oculi erant; nescio an et tanta gratia tantusque flos in facie seu tanta dignitas in incessu fuit; mens vero prorsus similis, adeo ut nihil dici queat, quod non ex libris in istum videatur transferri: . . . . . misericors, communis, solo habitu differre se cæteris putans, in omnes homines honorificus, verum effusius in bonos: simplicia ingenia diligere, erudita mirari, sed innoxia; largiri magno animo magna. . . . . Illa tamen, quibus Trajanus aspersus est, vinolentiam scilicet et cupidinem triumphandi, usque eo detestatus ut bella non moverit sed invenerit; ministeria lasciva, psaltriasque commensationibus adhiberi lege prohibuit. . . . . Literis mediocriter doctus, sagax plane, multumque diligens ad noscenda gesta majorum; execrabatur, cum legisset superbiam dominantium, præcipue perfidos et ingratos; irasci sane rebus indignis, sed subito flecti, . . . . . et quod est raræ virtutis, post auctam annis potentiam imperialem, auri argentique pondera sublata a tyrannis, multis ex suo restituit. . . . . Patrum pro genitore habuit, nepotes et cognatos pro filiis; elegans lætumque convivium dare, nec tamen sumptuosum, miscere colloquia pro personis . . . . et dignitatibus sermone cum gravitate jucundo; blandus pater, concors maritus: . . . . . regebat valetudinem continentia vescendi, ambulatione moderata. Hujus et apud homines mansuetudo, et apud Deum extitit summa devotio.

§ 44. Arcadius filius Theodosii cum fratre Honorio annis XIII. Gothi Italiam, Wandali atque Alani Gallias aggre-  
 Bed. i. 10, 11. diuntur. Pelagius Britto et Julianus Campanensis hæresin suam longe lateque seminaverunt, quibus S. Augustinus, sicut et cæteri patres orthodoxi multis sententiarum catholicarum millibus responderunt, nec eorum tamen dementiam corrigere valebant; sed quod gravius est, correpta eorum vesania magis angescere contradicendo, quam favendo veritati voluit emendari; unde Prosper rhetor versificans ait:

“ Contra Augustinum narratur serpere quidam  
 “ Scriptor, quem dudum livor adurit edax.”

\* \* \* \* \*

“ Aut hunc fruge sua æquorei pavere Britanni,  
 “ Aut hic Campano gramine corda tamet.”

§ 45. Honorius cum Theodosio minore fratris sui Arcadii filio annis xv. Cujus temporibus cum Alani, Suevi, Wandali totas sævirent per Gallias, apud Britanniam Gratianus municeps tyrannus creatur et occiditur. Hujus loco

Constantine Constantinus ex infima militia propter solam spem nominis  
 reigns in sine merito virtutis eligitur, qui continuo ut invasit imperium  
 Britain: he in Gallias transiit: ibi, sæpe a barbaris incertis fœderibus  
 is killed at Arles. illusus, detrimento magno reipublicæ fuit: inde mox iubente  
 Honorio, Constantinus<sup>1</sup> comes in Galliam cum exercitu profec-  
 tus, apud Arelatem civitatem eum clausit, cepit, et occidit:  
 Constantemque filium ejus, quem ex monacho Cæsarem fecerat,  
 Gerontius comes suus apud Viennam interfecit. Contigit Bed. De  
 Kal. Temp  
 a. 4377.  
 Sack of autem quod Alaricus rex Gothorum Romam invasit et  
 Rome by Alaric. cepit, anno conditionis ejus millesimo centesimo sexa-  
 gesimo quarto: cumque partem ejus cremasset incendio,  
 deprædata urbe, sexto die egressus est, post annos  
 ferme quadringentos septuaginta ex quo Julius Cæsar  
 sibi Britanniam subjecit. Habitabant autem Romani intra Bed. i. 11.  
 vallum, quod Severum trans insulam fecisse commemoravimus,  
 ad plagam meridianam, quod civitates, pontes, fari et strætæ  
 ibidem factæ usque hodie testantur; cæterum ultiores Brit-  
 tanniæ partes, vel eas etiam quæ ultra Britanniam sunt, in-  
 The Romans quit Britain. sulas, jure dominandi possidebant. Brittannia igitur mi-  
 litaribus copiis floridaque juventute spoliata, quæ max-  
 ime per Maximum tyrannum fuerant abductæ, post  
 etiam reliquæ per proxime dictum Constantinum,  
 prædæ siquidem tantum patuit Scottis et Pictis, gentibus Bed. i. 12.  
 sævissimis. Hæ quidem remotæ sunt a Brittonibus,  
 duobus sinibus maris interjacentibus, quorum unus ab orientali  
 mari, alter ab occidentali . . . . . longe . . . . .  
 irrumpunt, quamvis ad se invicem pertingere non possint.  
 Orientalis autem habet in medio sui urbem Guidi: occidentalis  
 supra se, hoc est ad dextram sui, habet urbem Aldclyhit:  
 quod lingua eorum significat "petram Clyht;" est autem  
 juxta fluvium nominis illius. Ob harum ergo infestationem  
 gentium, Brittones legatos Romam cum epistolis mittunt  
 . . . . . auxilia flagitantes; . . . . . quibus  
 mox legio destinatur, quæ hostium magnam multitudinem  
 sternens, cæteros a . . . . . finibus expulit; . . . . .  
 . . . . . sicque domum cum magno triumpho reversa est,  
 indicentes Brittannis ut super vallum Severi murum  
 The wall of Severus. constituerent, quatenus ubi munitio aquæ deerat, præsidium  
 valli adesset. At Brittanni murum non tam lapidibus quam  
 cespitibus construentes, . . . . . ad nihil utilem

<sup>1</sup> Constantius, Bed.

statuunt; vestigia vero valli illius latissimi et altissimi usque hodie cernuntur. Incipit autem ferme duorum milium spatio a loco qui vocatur Peneltune, et . . . . . terminatur in occidentem juxta urbem Aldelyhit. Verum priores inimici, ut Romanum militem abiisse conspexerunt, mox advecti navibus irrumpunt acrius. Unde prece Britannorum rursum Romani redeunt, et cæsum hostem trans maria fugant; conjunctisque sibi Britannis, murum non ut ante ex cespitibus, sed ex saxo a mari usque ad mare collocant. Sic et in littore meridiano, quia et inde hostis timebatur, turres per intervalla ad prospectum maris statuunt; sic valedicunt sociis tanquam ultra non reversuri, dicentes ultra se tam laboriosis expeditionibus non posse fatigari. Romanis igitur domum reversis, hostes acrius insultant, insulæque partem usque murum capessunt, deinde murum urbesque appositae sternunt; postea cis murum longe patriam vastant, ut et ipsi Britanni latrocinio ac rapacitate famem temperarent, donec omnis regio totius cibi sustentaculo, excepto venandi solatio, vacuaretur.

Final departure of the Romans.

Hist. Misc. xiv.

Character of Honorius.

Bed. i. 13.

§ 46. Theodosius secundus, qui vocatur Junior, Britanniae potestatem amisit. Imperavit autem Romanis XXVIII. annis: cujus regni anno XXIII. Aetius vir illustris cum Symmacho gessit consulatum. Ad hunc . . . . . Brittonum reliquiae mittunt epistolam: in processu epistolæ, cujus hoc principium est: "Aetio ter consuli:" ita suas calamitates explicant: "Repellunt barbari ad mare, repellit mare "ad barbaros: inter hæc oriuntur duo genera funerum; aut "jugulamur aut mergimur." Neque hoc tamen agentes quicquam ab illo auxilii impetrare quiverunt; utpote qui gravissimis eo tempore bellis cum Bledda et Attila regibus Hunorum erat occupatus; et quamvis anno ante hunc proximo Bledda Attilæ fratris sui interemptus sit insidiis, Attila tamen ipse adeo intolerabilis reipublicæ remansit hostis, ut totam pene Europam, excisis invasisque civitatibus atque castellis, corroderet. Quinetiam et eisdem temporibus fames Constanti-nopolim invasit; nec mora, pestis secuta est, sed et plurimi ejusdem urbis muri cum LVI. turribus corruerunt: multis quoque civitatibus collapsis, fames et aerum pestifer odor plurima hominum millia jumentorumque delevit. Britanniam quo-

Reign of Theodosius the younger.

Supplications of the Britons for aid.

The conquests of Attila.

The Britons rally and drive off the Picts and Scots. que sicut et cæteras provincias præfata fames affecit: Bed. i. 14. tunc igitur Brittanni videntes humanum deesse auxilium invocant divinum: misertusque est eorum Dominus omnipotens et tentavit eos, immisitque eorum

robur brachiis et aciem gladiis. Exiluerunt igitur de montibus et latebris et silvis, irruentesque in Scottos et Pictos undique cœperunt indeficienter cedere et sternere. Hostes vero nec se in ictibus suis cognoscebant, nec in protectione armorum jam confidebant; quæ scilicet jam Britannorum armis erant quasi vestis: contabuit ergo cor hostium, dissolutisque viribus horrescentes aufugiunt; fit itaque in eis strages innumera. Scotti cum dedecore Hiberniam redeunt. Picti in extrema insulæ parte tunc primum et deinceps quieverunt: dediditque Dominus victoriam populo suo, et confusi sunt Bed. i. 13.

Palladius sent to preach to the Irish Scots.

qui eos confundebant. His temporibus, scilicet anno Theodosii octavo, mittitur Palladius a papa Celestino ad Scottos primus eorum futurus episcopus. Theodosius etiam potestatem Galliæ et Hispaniæ et Africæ amisit: gens quippe Wandalorum et Alanorum et Gothorum omnia ferro, flammis, arripuerant et destruxerant, sed B. Augustinus Hipponensis episcopus, ne civitatis suæ ruinam videret, tertio obsidionis ejus mense migravit ad Dominum, Geiserico crudelissimo eam obsidente.

Death of St. Augustine.

Prosperity and consequent moral deterioration of the Britons.

§ 47. Brittannis ergo victoribus et quieti datis, misit Bed. i. 14. Dominus ineffabilem frugum abundantiam, quantam nulla ætas retro meminit: ut sicut confusiones ante habitas triumpho relevaverant, ita famem præfatam opulentia relevarent: probavitque Deus utrum omnimoda prosperitas redderet gratiosos, quos nulla adversa reddiderant correctos. Illi tunc vero omnia scelera transacta superantes, in luxuria furere, et in omnium hæ scelerum sine respectu Dei cœperunt. Ita vero demum crudelitas . . . . . et odium veritatis<sup>1</sup> amorque mendacii in eis exarsit, ut si quis eorum mitior et veritati aliquatenus propior videretur, in hunc, quasi Brittanniæ subversorem,

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, Sav.

omnium odia telaque sine respectu contorquerentur. Et non solum hoc sæculares viri, sed et ipse grex Domini ejusque pastores egerunt; ebriositate, animositate, litigio, contentione, invidia, cæteris hujusmodi facinoribus sua colla, abjecto levi jugo Christi, subdentes. Respexit ergo Dominus, et in iram concitatus, corruptæ mentis homines acerba peste contrivit, quæ in brevi tantam ejus multitudinem stravivit, ut non sepeliendis quidem mortuis vivi sufficerent. Sed nec morte quidem suorum, nec timore mortis, hi, qui supererant, a morte animæ, qua peccando sternebantur, revocari poterant. Justo itaque et patenti judicio constituit Deus exterminare gentem illam, mandavitque statim stimulos iræ suæ, Scottos scilicet et Pictos, qui cædes suas vindicaturi iracundius solito adveniunt, irruuntque Britannis, quasi lupi in agnos; cognoveruntque se in ictibus suis, et Britannos in fuga sua. Rursumque igitur ex more Britanni latebras et silvas et saltus repetunt: postea vero inierunt consilium quid agendum, ubi quærendum esset præsidium<sup>1</sup> ad evitandas vel repellendas tam feras tamque creberrimas gentium aquilonalium irruptiones: placuitque omnibus cum rege suo Vortigerno, ut Saxonum gentem de transmarinis partibus in auxilium vocarent. Quod Domini nutu dispositum esse constat, ut veniret contra improbos malum, sicut evidentius rerum exitus probavit.

Being again harassed by the Picts and Scots, they resolve to call in the Saxons.

## LIB. II.—DE ADVENTU ANGLORUM.

§ 1. TRACTATUM est in superioribus de XLV. imperatoribus qui tam Britanniam quam cæteras mundi partes rexerunt: quorum si aliqui gloria potiuntur in cælis, illam tantum habent, quia jam hic nullam habent. Viluit enim sermocinatio de eis, et prolixior confabulatio de actibus eorum videtur amara, tædii scilicet et odii generatrix. Quapropter excogitemus ex eorum comparatione, quorum potentiæ et majestati vix sufficiebat universus mundus, quam nihil sit gloria nostra, potentia nostra, tumor noster, quorum de causa laboramus, sudamus, insanimus. Si autem gloriam

The nothingness of human greatness.

<sup>1</sup> *auxilium*, A.

cupimus, ut humane loquar, concedo; cupiamus, sed veram: si famam, illam quæ non evanescit: si honorem, illum qui non deflorescit; non qualem prædicti imperatores, quorum omnis gloria jam non est nisi viles reliquæ fabularum: veram autem gloriam et famam et honorem habebimus, si Ei, qui solus verus est, cum jucunditate et lætitia innitatur, si spem nostram et fiduciam omnem in Deo ponamus, non in filiis hominum, sicut Britanni, qui Deo abjecto et magnificentia timoris ejus, auxilium petierunt a paganis, habueruntque; sed quale decebat. Gens namque Bed. i. 15.

Arrival of the Saxons. A.D. 449. Saxonum vel Anglorum, invitata a rege præfato, Britanniam tribus longis navibus advehitur, anno gratiæ quadringentesimo quadragesimo nono, cum. Marcianus et Valentinus,<sup>a</sup> quorum imperium septem annis duravit, imperarent: vigesimo quarto anno postquam regnum Francorum inchoaverat; quorum primus rex fuit Pharamundus. Saxones igitur in orientali parte insulæ, jubente eodem rege, locum manendi, quasi pro patria pugnaturi, re autem vera hanc expugnaturi, susceperunt.

They defeat the Picts at Stamford. Inierunt autem certamen contra Pictos et Scottos, qui jam venerunt usque ad Stanfordiam, quæ sita est in australi parte Lincolnæ, distans ab ea quadraginta miliaribus. Cum igitur illi pilis et lanceis pugnarent, isti vero securibus gladiisque longis rigidissime decertarent, nequiverunt Picti pondus tantum perferre, sed fuga salutis suæ consuluerunt: Saxones victoriosi, triumpho et præda potiti sunt. Quod ubi Saxoniarum nuntiatum est, simul et insulæ fertilitas ac segnitias Brittonum, mittitur confestim illo classis prolixior, armatorum ferens manum fortior: quæ præmissæ adjuncta cohorti invincibilem fecit exercitum. Susceperunt ergo qui advenerant, donantibus Brittonibus, locum habitationis inter eos: ea tamen conditione, ut hi patriæ pace et salute contra adversarios militarent, illi militibus debita stipendia conferrent. Advenerunt autem de tribus Germaniæ populis fortioribus, id est, Saxonibus, Anglis, Jutis: de Jutarum origine sunt Cantuarii, et Victuarii; hæc est ea gens quæ Vectam tenet insulam; et ea, quæ usque

Local tradition?

<sup>a</sup> *Valentinus*] It should be Valentinianus.

- Bed. i. 15. hodie in provincia Occidentalium Saxonum Jutarum natio nominatur, posita contra ipsam insulam Vectam: de Saxonibus, id est, ea regione quæ nunc Antiquorum Saxonum cognominatur, venere Orientales Saxones, Meridiani Saxones, Occidui Saxones: porro de Anglis, hoc est, illa patria quæ Angulus dicitur, et ab eo tempore usque hodie manet deserta,<sup>a</sup> et inter provincias Jutarum et Saxonum esse perhibetur, Orientales Angli, Mediterranei Angli, Mercii, tota Northanhumbro- rum progenies, id est illarum gentium quæ ad boream Humbri fluminis inhabitant, cæterique Anglorum populi sunt orti. Duces eorum primi fuisse perhibentur duo fratres, Hengist et Horsa: . . . . . erant autem filii Widgils, filii Wicta, filii Vecta, filii Woden, filii Frealof,<sup>b</sup> filii Fredulf, filii Fin, filii Flocwald, filii Ieta: quem dixerunt filium Dei, scilicet alicujus idoli; de quorum patrum progenie, multarum provinciarum regium genus originem duxit. Non mora ergo, confluentibus certatim in insulam gentium memoratarum catervis, grandescere populus cœpit advenarum, ita ut ipsis quoque, qui advocaverant, indigenis essent terrori. Dicitur autem a quibusdam, quod rex Vortigernus, formidans robur eorum, filiam Hengisti paganam duxerit: dicitur etiam quod ad cumulum damnationis suæ propriam filiam suam duxerit, et ex ea filium genuerit: unde a S. Germano et ab omni conventu episcopali excommunicatus est.
- Nennius, 28. A.D. 449.  
Saxons, and  
the Angles.
- Nennius, 37, 39. Their lead-  
ers are  
Hengist and  
Horsa, de-  
scendants of  
Woden.
- Bed. i. 15. § 2. Rex Vortigernus, a genero suo et ab exercitu, belli occasionem, Deo volente, quærentibus, annonas eis affluentius ministrare reposcitur; minantes nisi profusior eis copia alimentorum detur, se cuncta insulæ loca rupto fœdere vastaturos. Nec segniter minas prosequuntur effectibus: inito
- Vortigern  
marries the  
daughter of  
Hengist..

<sup>a</sup> *deserta*] Beda writes, "manere "desertus inter provincias Jutarum "et Saxonum perhibetur." By the misquotation, Henry asserts positively of Anglen a desolation which in his day was untrue, and which Beda states with reserve even at his own time; while he states dubiously its geographical position, about which neither Beda doubted, nor could anyone else reasonably doubt. Ethelwerd (Book i.) says

of Anglen, "Anglia Vetus sita est "inter Saxones et Giotos, habens "oppidum capitale, quod sermone "Saxonico Sleswic nuncupatur, "secundum vero Danos, Haith- "aby."

<sup>b</sup> *filii Frealof*] The ancestors beyond Woden, with whom Beda stops, Henry takes from Nennius. Comp. Asser's *Life of Alfred*, an. 849.

The Saxons  
turn against  
the Britons,  
and gradu-  
ally exter-  
minate  
them.

namque foedere cum Pictis, et congregato innumerabili exercitu, neminem qui eis restare auderet usquam invenerunt. Accensus igitur manibus paganorum ignis, justas de sceleribus populi Dei ultiones expetiit; non illius impar, qui quondam a Cældæis succensus, Hierosolymorum mœnia, imo ædificia cuncta consumpsit: sic enim et hic, agente impio victore, imo disponente justo Judice, proximas quasque civitates agrosque depopulans, ab orientali mari usque ad occidentale, nullo prohibente, suum continuavit incendium, totamque prope insulæ pereuntis superficiem obtexit. Ruebant ædificia publica simul et privata, passim sacerdotes inter altaria trucidabantur, præsules cum populis, sine ullo respectu honoris, ferro pariter et flammis absumebantur; nec erat qui crudeliter eos interemptos sepulturæ traderet. Itaque nonnulli . . . . in montibus comprehensi . . . . jugulabantur, alii fame confecti procedentes, manus hostibus dabant; pro accipiendis alimentorum subsidiis æternum subituri servitium, si tamen non continuo trucidarentur: alii transmarinas regiones dolentes petebant: alii perstantes in patria trepidi pauperem vitam in montibus, silvis, vel rupibus arduis, suspecta semper mente, agebant. Rex autem Vortigernus in occidentali parte Britanniæ inter prærupta montium et silvarum omnibus exosus degebat. Dicitur autem quod cum rex prædicationem S. Germani audire nollet, fugeretque sanctum se sequentem, quadam nocte ignis de coelo cecidit super arcem in qua rex erat; rex autem tam ruina quam igne destructus, nusquam comparuit. Nennius, 50.

The fate of  
Vortigern.

Galfr. Mon.  
viii. 2.

Under Am-  
brosius the  
Britons  
rally and  
confront the  
invaders.

At ubi Saxones, dispersis . . . . indigenis, copiam exercituum domum remiserunt, coeperunt Britanni emergentes de latibulis, vires resumere animosque, congregatoque permaximo exercitu, in Cantiam contra Hengist et Horsa vexilla direxerunt. Utebantur eo tempore duce Ambrosio Aureliano viro modesto, qui solus forte Romanæ gentis præfatæ tempestati superfuerat, occisis in eadem parentibus nomen regium et insigne ferentibus; duoque filii Vortigerni duces erant cum eo, Gortimer et Catiger. Ambrosius igitur primam aciem bello induxit, Gortimer secundam, Catiger tertiam: Horsa vero et Hengist licet multo minores numero essent, audacissime tamen eis obvaverunt, duoque fratres duas acies in hostem direxerunt. Bed. i. 16.  
Nennius, 53.

- Chr. E. § 3. Anno septimo adventus Saxonum in Angliam A.D. 455.  
 Nennius, 47. commissum est bellum apud Aeilestreu. Principio ergo Battle at Aylesford.  
 percussit Hors aciem Catigerni tanto vigore ut ad modum pulveris dispersa prosterneretur, et filium regis prostratum cecidit. Gortimer autem frater ejus, vir vere strenuissimus, ex obliquo aciem Horsi dirupit, et ipso Horso interfecto virorum fortissimo, reliquiae cohortis ad Hengistum fugiunt, qui cum Ambrosii cuneo invicte conflegebat. Totum ergo pondus proelii versum est super Hengistum, et probitate Gortimeri coarctatus, cum diu perseverasset, non sine magno detrimento Britannorum, victus, qui nunquam fugerat, fugit. Scripserunt quidam Hengistum postea in eodem anno ter contra eos pugnasse, nec potuisse resistere probitati Gortimeri et numero Brittonum; sed semel in insulam
- Nennius, 46. Tenet, semel ad naves fugisse, et pro his qui abierant in patriam misisse.
- § 4. Anno vero sequenti, regnante Leone imperatore, A.D. 456.  
 qui regnavit XVII. annis, morbo periit flos juvenum He receives reinforcements; battle at Crayford.
- Nennius, 47. Gortimerus, cum quo simul spes et victoria Brittonum extincta est. Hengist igitur et Esc filius suus, receptis auxiliis a patria sua, et morte juvenis freti, bello se præparant apud Creganford. Britanni vero quatuor phalanges<sup>a</sup> maximas quatuor ducibus munitas fortissimis bello prostituunt. Sed cum ludum belli Brittones inissent, numerum Saxonum majorem solito male ferebant: recentes quippe qui supervenerant, et viri electi erant, securibus et gladiis horribiliter corpora Brittonum findebant: nec tamen cesserunt donec quatuor duces eorum prostratos et cæsos viderunt. Tunc vero, ultra quam credi potest perterriti, a Cent usque The Britons are routed; commencement of the kingdom of Kent.  
 in Londoniam fugerunt, et nunquam in Cantiam postea gratia pugnandi venire ausi sunt. Exinde regnavit Hengist et Esc filius suus in Cantuaria: regnum igitur Cantiae incepit VIII. anno adventus Anglorum. A.D. 457.

<sup>a</sup> *quatuor phalanges*] These words | not the preferable reading of A.  
 represent the "IIII werad" of E., | "IIII wera," four thousand men.

A.D. 429.  
Visit of St.  
German to  
Britain :  
he and  
bishop  
Lupus con-  
fute the  
Pelagians.

§ 5. Circa ea tempora venerat Germanus Antisio-<sup>Bed. i. 17, 18, 19.</sup>  
dorensis episcopus, vir sanctitate miraculisque con-  
spicuus, et Lupus Trecaſinæ civitatis episcopus, in  
Brittanniam ad Pelagianam hæresim destruendam.  
Quibus ratione coram omni populo devictis, ad con-  
firmationem suæ rationis, filiam tribuni, x. annis cæcam,  
curavit: præterea casulam, in qua infirmus jacebat, ab  
igne circumquaque furente et adjuncta ipsi casulæ  
consumente, salvavit: petensque sepulchrum S. Albani,  
reliquias in ipso diversorum martyrum imposuit; mas-  
samque pulveris adhuc rubentis sanguine martyris,  
secum portaturus abstulit: quo in loco innumeram ho-  
minum turbam eadem die convertit ad Dominum.

A.D. 430.  
The Alle-  
luia victory.

§ 6. Interea Saxones et Picti bellum contra Brittannos junctis<sup>Bed. i. 20.</sup>  
viribus inierunt. Brittones trepidi S. Germani petie-  
runt auxilium. Sanctus adveniens ducem se proelii  
profitetur. In valle igitur circumdata mediis montibus,  
e regione qua sperabatur adventus hostium, componit  
exercitum ipse dux agminis: et jam aderat ferox hostium  
multitudo quam appropinquare speculatores intuebantur. Tunc  
subito sanctus signifer universos admonet ut voci suæ uno  
clamore respondeant: securisque hostibus qui se insperatos  
adesse confiderent, Alleluia jam tertio repetitum sacerdotes ex-  
clamabant. Sequitur una vox omnium, et elatum clamorem  
repercusso aere montium conclusa multiplicant: hostile agmen  
terrore prosternitur; et super se non solum rupes circumdatas,  
sed et ipsam cœli machinam contremiscunt. Dum igitur  
fugientibus vix sufficere pedum pernecitas creditur, passim  
ruunt, arma projiciunt; gaudentes vel nuda corpora eripuisse  
discrimini: plures etiam timore cæcatos, flumen quod transie-  
rant devoravit: ultionem suam innocens exercitus intuetur, et  
spolia cœlestis palmæ cum gaudio colligunt: triumphant  
pontifices, hostibus fuis sine sanguine, victoria fide obtenta,  
non viribus. Superatis igitur hostibus mentis et corporis,  
beati pontifices ad sua remearunt. Sed non multo<sup>Bed. i. 21.</sup>

Second visit  
of St. Ger-  
main.

post, Pelagiana hæresi iterum pullulante, precibus om-  
nium sacerdotum Brittanniæ rediit Germanus cum  
Severo episcopo Treveris, fidemque rectam restituens,  
filium Elafii principis, contractum nervis et poplite,

in conspectu omnium sanavit: omnibusque prospere gestis, inde ad Ravennam pro pace Armoricanæ gentis supplicaturus, advenit; ibique a Valentiniano . . . . . summa reverentia susceptus, migravit ad Christum: . . . . . nec multo post Valentinianus interimitur a satellitibus Aetii patricii, quem occiderat; cui Brittanni quondam miserant ut prædiximus, epistolam: cum quo simul Hesperium concidit regnum.

A.D. 448.  
His death at  
Ravenna.

Chr. B.

§ 7. Supervenientibus vero auxiliariis, post aliquantum temporis Hengist rex et Esc filius suus invictissimum congregaverunt exercitum anno XVII<sup>o</sup> adventus eorum in Angliam: contra quos omnis Brittannia, viribus congregatis, duodecim phalanges nobiliter ordinatas opposuit apud Wippedesflede. Pugnatum est diu et acriter, donec Hengistus duodecim principes cuneorum prostravit, et vexillis eorum dejectis et manipulis eorum proturbatis, in fugam coegit. Ipse autem multos principum suorum et gentis amisit, et quendam magnum principem qui vocabatur Wipped, ex cujus nomine locum belli illius prædicto nomine vocavit. Victoria igitur illis lachrymabilis fuit et odiosa, ita ut postea non parvo tempore nec ipse intra Brittanorum fines, nec Brittanni in Cantiam venire præsumerent. Britanniæ igitur dum cessarent externa bella, non cessabant civilia; sed inter exterminia civitatum ab hoste dirutarum . . . . . pugnabant . . . . . invicem, qui hostem evaserant cives. Dum tamen recens esset memoria calamitatis . . . . . inflictæ, servabant utcunque reges, sacerdotes, privati et optimates, suum quique ordinem: cum autem junior ætas crevisset, præsentis solum serenitatis statum experta, ita cuncta veritatis et justitiæ moderamina concussa sunt ac subversa, ut earum non dicam vestigium, sed nec memoria quidem, præter in paucis et valde paucis, ulla appareret. Immisit ergo Deus, ex partibus Germaniæ, duces plures ferocissimos per successiones temporum, qui gentem Deo invisam delerent; et in primis dux Aello venit et tres filii sui, Cymen et Wlencing<sup>1</sup> et Cissa.

A.D. 468.  
Hengist  
gains another  
victory  
at Wipped-  
fleest.

Bed. i. 22.

The Britons  
ruin their  
own cause  
by intestine  
strife.

New chief-  
tains of un-  
exampled  
ferocity  
arrive from  
Germany.

<sup>1</sup> For the justification of this | of the MSS., see § of the In-  
reading, instead of the "Plenting" | troduction.

A.D. 477. § 8. Igitur dux Aelle cum filiis suis et classe mili- Chr. E.  
 Landing of  
 Ella; battle  
 at Cymene-  
 sora. taribus copiis instructissima, in Britannia ad Cymene-  
 sora appulerunt. Egredientibus autem Saxonibus de

mari, Britanni clamorem excitarunt, et a circumadja-  
 centibus locis innumeri convolarunt, et statim bellum  
 initum est. Saxones vero statura et vigore maximi,  
 impudenter eos recipiebant; illi vero imprudenter ve-  
 niebant: nam sparsim et per intervalla venientes a  
 conglomeratis interficiebantur, et ut quique attoniti  
 veniebant, rumores sinistros ex improvviso sentiebant.  
 Fugati sunt igitur Britanni usque ad proximum nemus  
 quod vocatur Andredesleige. Saxones autem occupa-  
 runt littora maris Sudsexe,<sup>1</sup> magis magisque sibi re-  
 gionis spatia capessentes usque ad nonum annum  
 adventus eorum. Tunc vero cum audacius regionem

Sussex gra-  
 dually con-  
 quered.

A.D. 485.

Battle at  
 Mercredes-  
 burne.

in longinquum capesserent, convenerunt reges et ty-  
 ranni Brittonum apud Mercredesburne, et pugnaverunt  
 contra Aelle et filios suos, et fere dubia fuit victoria:  
 uterque enim exercitus valde læsus et minoratus, alte-  
 rius congressum devovens, ad propria remearunt. Misit  
 igitur Aelle ad compatriotas suos auxilium flagitans.  
 Annus autem quo Aelle venit in Angliam fere xxx.  
 fuit ab adventu Anglorum.

A.D. 488.  
 Death of  
 Hengist.

§ 9. Mortuus est Hengist rex Cantiae xl. anno post Galfr. Mon.  
 adventum suum in Britanniam, et regnavit Esc filius viii. 7.  
 ejus pro eo xxxiv. annis, tempore Zenonis imperatoris, Chr. E.  
 cujus imperium fuit xvii. annis. Esc autem patria  
 virtute patriam contra Britannos potenter tenuit, reg-  
 numque suum regnis eorum ampliavit.

Commence-  
 ment of the  
 kingdom of  
 Sussex  
 under Ella.

§ 10. Regnum Sudsexe incipit, quod Aella diu et  
 potentissime tenuit: venerant enim ei auxiliares a  
 patria sua anno tertio post mortem Hengisti, tempore  
 Anastasii imperatoris Romani, qui regnavit xxviii.<sup>2</sup>  
 annis. Fretus igitur copiis ingentibus, obsedit Andre-

<sup>1</sup> deest, A.; in *Sudsexe*, F.

| <sup>2</sup> xxvii., Sav.

Chr. E. decester urbem munitissimam. Congregati sunt igitur A.D. 401.  
 Britanni quasi apes, et die expugnabant obsidentes Siege of Anderida.  
 insidiis, et nocte incursibus: nullus dies erat, nulla nox  
 erat, quibus sinistri et recentes nuntii Saxonum animos  
 non acerbarent; inde tamen ardentiores effecti, con-  
 tinuis insultibus urbem infestabant. Semp̄r vero dum  
 assilirent, instabant eis Brittones a tergo cum viris  
 sagittariis et amentatis telorum missilibus. Dimissis  
 igitur mœnibus, gressus et arma dirigebant in eos  
 Pagani. Tunc Brittones eis celeritate præstantiores,  
 silvas cursu petebant: tendentibusque ad mœnia rursum  
 a tergo aderant. Hac arte Saxones diu fatigati sunt,  
 et innumera strages eorum fiebat, donec in duas partes  
 exercitum dividerunt; ut dum una pars urbem expug-  
 naret, esset eis a tergo contra Brittonum excursus  
 bellatorum acies ordinata. Tunc vero cives diuturna It is taken  
and de-  
stroyed by  
the Saxons.  
 fame contriti, cum jam pondus infestantium perferre  
 nequirent, omnes ore gladii devorati sunt cum mulieri-  
 bus et parvulis, ita quod nec unus solus evasis: et  
 quia tot ibi damna toleraverant extranei, ita urbem  
 destruxerunt quod nunquam postea reædificata est;  
 locus tantum, quasi nobilissimæ urbis, transeuntibus  
 ostenditur desolatus.

Chr. E. § 11. Anno XLVII. adventus Anglorum, Certic et A.D. 406.  
 Cinric filius suus cum v. puppibus venerunt ad Certi- Cerdic and  
his son land  
at Cerdice-  
sore; after  
a battle they  
make good  
their foot-  
ing.  
 cesore. Eodem die convenit multitudo regionis, et  
 pugnatum est contra eos. Saxones acie conferta coram  
 navibus immobiliter stabant. Insulani audacter in eos  
 irruerant, et sine persecutione revertebantur, advenis  
 quippe nunquam locum deserentibus: sic irruendo et  
 redeundo bellatum est, donec noctis tenebræ litem diri-  
 merunt. Inventis igitur Saxonibus asperis, Britanni  
 se retraxerunt, et neutra ex parte habita est victoria.  
 Hospitati tamen Certic et filius suus in terra hostili,  
 magis magisque circa littora maris cœperunt occupare,  
 non sine frequentibus bellis, regiones.

A.D. 501.  
Arrival of  
Port and his  
sons.

§ 12. Septimo autem anno post adventum Certici, Chr. E venit Port et duo filii ejus, Beda et Megla, cum duabus navibus maximis apud Portesmudham; statimque clamor maximus implevit omnem provinciam. Dux igitur provinciæ et omnis multitudo pugnam aggressi, absque ordine ut quisque adveniebat, in ictu oculi deperiere: audacia namque agebat Brittones in hostem; fortitudo vero hostis agebat imprudentiam eorum in confusionem. Duce igitur et populo perempto vel fugato, victoria potiti sunt Port, de quo dicta est Portesmudam, et duo filii ejus.

A.D. 506.  
Battle at  
Cerdices-  
ford, in  
which the  
British king,  
Natanleod,  
is defeated  
by Certic.

§ 13. Bellum scripturus sum quod Nazaleod, rex Chr. E. maximus Brittannorum, egit contra Certic et Cinric filium ejus sexagesimo anno adventus Anglorum. Nazaleod vero magni nominis erat et magnæ superbæ, a quo regio illa dicta est Nazaleoi, quæ modo<sup>a</sup> dicitur Certichesforde. Congregata igitur omni multitudine Britannicæ, auxilium petierat in supremis negotiis Certic et filius ejus ab Esc rege Cantuariorum et ab Aella magno rege Sudsexorum et a Port et filiis ejus qui nuper venerant; et duas acies bello statuerunt; unam regebat Certic, aliam vero Cinric filius ejus. Certic regebat cornu dextrum, Cinric vero sinistrum. Inito ergo proelio, rex Nazaleod dextrum cornu videns præstantius, irrumpit ipse et omnes vires ejus, ut illud quod fortissimum erat prius prosterneretur: prostratis ergo vexillis et acie perforata, Certic in fugam versus est, et facta est strages maxima aciei ejus in momento. Videns autem sinistrum cornu ductum a filio, quod dextrum cornu patris sui destructum esset, irrumpit in terga persequentium, et aggravata est pugna vehementer, et cecidit rex Nazaleod, et versi sunt sui

<sup>a</sup> *quæ modo*] This is a good specimen of our author's carelessness. The chronicle which he was follow-

ing says of *Cerdicesford*, "as far as *Cerdicesford*."

in fugam, et interfecti sunt ex eis quinque millia: cæteris vero celeritas fuit subsidium. Saxones igitur prærogativa victoriæ potiti sunt, et quies data est eis annis non multis: adveneruntque eis adjuutores fortes et multi.

Chr. E.

§ 14. Sexto namque anno post bellum prædictum, venerunt nepotes Certic, Stuf et Witgar, cum tribus navibus apud Certicesore. Primo autem mane duces Britannorum acies in eos secundum belli leges pulcherrimè construxerunt; cumque pars eorum in montibus, pars eorum in valle progredieretur caute et excogitate, apparuit sol oriens, offenderuntque radii clipeis deauratis, et resplenduerunt colles ab eis, aerque finitimus clarius refulsit, timueruntque Saxones timore magno et appropinquaverunt ad proelium. Dum autem colliderentur exercitus fortissimi, fortitudo Britannorum dissipata est, quia Deus spreverat illos, et facta est victoria patens, et adquisierunt duces prædicti regiones non paucas, et per eos fortitudo Certici terribilis facta est, pertransiit<sup>1</sup> que terram in fortitudine gravi.

A.D. 514.  
The nephews of Cerdic, Stuf and Witgar, defeat the Britons.

Bed. ii. 5.

§ 15. Circa hoc tempus obiit Aella rex Australium Saxonum, qui omnia jura regni Anglorum, reges scilicet et procures et tribunos in ditioe sua tenebat.

Death of Ella.

Chr. E. a. 827.

Regnavitque post eum Cissa filius ejus, progeniesque eorum post eos: at in processu temporum valde minorati sunt, donec in aliorum jura regum transierunt.

Decline of the kingdom of Sussex.

Chr. E.

§ 16. Regnum Westsexe incipit anno adventus Anglorum LXXI., anno ab Incarnatione Domini D.XIX.; tempore Justini qui vocatur Senior, qui imperavit VIII. annis: quod scilicet regnum cætera omnia sibi processu temporum subjugavit, et monarchiam totius Britanniae obtinuit. Quam ob causam omnium aliorum tempora regnorum ad hos reges applicare libet, ut sicut horum potentia crevit, ita tempora regnorum per eos dinoscantur.

A.D. 519.  
Commencement of the kingdom of Wessex.

§ 17. Certic regnavit XVII. annis in Westsexe: inierant namque bellum fortissimi Britannorum contra eum

A.D. 519.  
Reigns of Cerdic and Kinric (?).

<sup>1</sup> *pertransit*, M. H. B.

apud Certicesford in eodem anno; perstiteruntque duces eorum magnanimiter et proterve ex utraque parte, donec, declinante jam die ad vesperum, Saxones victoriam obtinuerunt; et facta est plaga magna in die illa super incolas Albion: atrocior vero multo fuisset, nisi sol occidens prohiberet. Ampliatum est autem nomen Certici, et divulgata est fama bellorum ejus et Kinrici filii sui per universam terram. Ab illa quippe die incepit regnum West-Sexorum, quod usque ad nostra tempora, cæteris regnis omnibus sibi vindicatis, durat. Certic et Kinric filius ejus, anno nono regni ejus, pugnaverunt iterum contra Britannos apud Certicesford, et facta est strages magna ex utraque parte. Ea tempestate venerunt multi et sæpe de Germania, et occupaverunt Eastangle et Merce: sed necdum sub uno rege redacta erant. Plures autem procures certatim regiones occupabant, unde innumeralia bella fiebant: procures vero, quia multi erant, nomine carent.

A.D. 527.

Many Teutons come over and settle in East Anglia and Mercia.

Arthur gains twelve victories over the Saxons.

§ 18. Arthurus belliger, illis temporibus dux militum et regum Britanniae, contra illos invictissime pugnabat: duodecies dux belli fuit, duodecies victor bellatorum.<sup>1</sup> Primum bellum contra eos iniit juxta ostium fluminis quod dicitur Glenus<sup>2</sup>: at secundum, tertium, quartumque ac quintum bellum super alium amnem qui nominatur Britannice "Duglas,"<sup>3</sup> qui est in regione Iniis: sextum bellum super flumen quod vocatur Bassas; septimum vero contra illos iniit bellum in silva Chelidonis, quæ Britannice "Cat coit Celidon" nominatur: octavum contra barbaros egit bellum juxta castellum Guinnion; in quo idem Arthurus imaginem S. Mariæ Dei Genetricis semperque Virginis super humeros suos portavit, et tota illa die Saxones per virtutem Domini nostri Jesu Christi et S. Mariæ matris ejus in fugam versi sunt, et multi ex illis magna cæde perierunt: nonum egit bellum in urbe Leogis, quæ Britannice "Kaer-

Nennius, 63, 64.

Galfr. Mon. ix. 1. Nennius, 64.

<sup>1</sup> bellorum, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Gleniz, A.; Glenn, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Dulgaz, A.; Dulgias, A<sup>2</sup>.

Cf. Galfr.  
Mon. ix. 4.

"lion" dicitur: decimum vero gessit bellum in littore fluminis quod nos vocamus Tracteheuroit: undecimum in monte qui nominatur Breuoin, ubi illos in fugam vertit, quem nos Cathbregion appellamus: duodecimum contra Saxones durissime Arthur bellum in monte Bado- nis perpetravit, in quo corruerunt impetu illius una die cccc.xl. viri, nullo sibi Britonum in adiutorium adhæ- rente, ipsum solum Domino confortante. Hæc autem bella et loca bellorum narrat <sup>1</sup> Gildas<sup>a</sup> historiogra- phus. Quæ tamen omnia loca nostræ ætati incog- nita sunt; quod providentia Dei factum esse putamus, ad despectum popularis auræ, laudis adulatoriæ, famæ transitoriae. Interim tamen ubique multa bella fiebant, in quibus quandoque Saxones, quandoque Brittones victores erant: quanto magis autem plures Saxonum prosternebantur, tanto plures in auxilium eorum venie- bant, ab omnibus circumjacentibus terris invitati.

Flor. Wig.  
Geneal.]

Chr. E.,  
a. 604.

§ 19. Regnum Estsexe, id est, Orientalium Saxonum incipit: quod primus, ut putatur, tenuit Erchenwin,<sup>b</sup> secundum quod ex veterum scriptis conjicere possumus; qui fuit filius Offæ, filii Biedcan, filii Sigewlf, filii Spoeuwe, filii Gesac, filii Andesc, filii Saxnat. Post Erchenwin vero regnavit Slede filius ejus, qui ducens filiam Ermenrici regis Cantuariorum, sororem scilicet

Commence-  
ment of the  
kingdom of  
Essex.

<sup>1</sup> quidam, A. C. C<sup>2</sup>. S.; Gildas, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Gildas] Henry does not appear to have seen any MS. of the *Historia Britonum* which ascribed the authorship to Nennius. Among the thirty or more MSS. still ex- tant, only two or three, and those dating only from the twelfth century, contain the prologues which name Nennius as the author. Being ig- norant, therefore, of the real name of the writer whom he was follow- ing, Henry seems to have used the term "Gildas" as a general name for a Welsh chronicler, on account

of the fame which hung round the memory of Gildas the Wise, author of the *De Excidio Britannia*. Similarly the fame of Marianus Scotus caused his name to be at- tached to compilations with which he had nothing whatever to do. See Introd., § .

<sup>b</sup> Erchenwin] Æscwine, accord- ing to Florence; grandfather of the Saberct, nephew of Ethelbert of Kent, whom Bede mentions, (H. E. ii. 3).

Ethelberti, genuit ex ea Siberctum,<sup>1</sup> qui primus regum Bed. ii. s. Estsexe conversus est ad fidem.

A.D. 530.  
Cerdic and  
Kinric over-  
run the  
Isle of  
Wight, and  
give it to  
Stuf and  
Witgar.

A.D. 534.

§ 20. Certic namque et Kinric filius ejus, congrega- Chr. E.  
tis ingentibus copiis, apud Witland præliati sunt, bello-  
que devicto, insulam ceperunt, et innumerabilem stra-  
gem hostium fecerunt apud Witgaesburcg,<sup>2</sup> XIII. anno  
regni sui. Eandem autem insulam, quæ scilicet Latine Chr. E.  
dicitur "Vecta," dederunt quarto post hunc anno duo-  
bus nepotibus suis Stuf et Witgar.

A.D. 534.  
Death of  
Cerdic.

Certic primus rex Westsexe cum regnasset XVIII.  
annis mortuus est, et Kinric filius ejus regnavit post  
eum XXVI. annis, tempore Vigiliæ papæ.

A.D. 538.

Kinrici anno v. obscuratus est sol a mane usque ad Chr. E.

A.D. 540.

tertiam, mense Martio. Septimo vero anno regni ejus Chr. E.  
obscuratus est sol a tertia pene usque ad nonam, ita

A.D. 544.

ut stellæ apparerent, XII. Kal. Julii. Decimo autem  
anno regni ejus obiit Witgar, et sepultus est apud  
Witgaesbrig, quæ sic ab eo vocatur.

A.D. 547.  
Commence-  
ment of the  
kingdom of  
Northum-  
bria, under  
Ida.

§ 21. Regnum Nordhumborum incipit | XIII. anno Chr. E.  
regni Kinrici. Cum enim procures Anglorum multis et Nennius, 65,  
magnis præliis patriam illam sibi subjugassent, Idam 66.  
quendam<sup>3</sup> juvenem nobilissimum sibi regem constitue-  
runt, qui fuit filius Eoppe, filii Ese, filii Inguim, filii Chr. C. vel G.

Bam-  
borough the  
royal city.

Angenwit, filii Aloc, filii Beonoc, filii Brand, filii Bældæt,  
filii Woden, filii Fredelaf, filii Fredewlf, filii Fin, filii  
Godwlf, filii Geata.<sup>4</sup> Hic igitur regnavit XII. annis for-  
tissime, semper armatus et laboriosus: construxit autem Chr. E.  
Bebanburgh et circumdedit eam prius sepe, postea muro.

A.D. 547.

Regnum hoc incepit anno gratiæ D.XLVII.

A.D. 552.  
Warfare  
carried on  
by Kinric  
against the  
Britons.

§ 22. Kinric rex anno XVIII. regni sui pugnavit Chr. E.  
contra Britannos, qui venerant cum maximo exercitu  
usque ad Salesbirig. Ille autem, undique congregatis  
auxiliis, occurrit eis invictissime, ingentibusque copiis  
fuis, utrinque dispersit eos et in fugam convertit.

<sup>1</sup> *Sibricum*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> *Witgaesbrige*, G.

<sup>3</sup> *Om.* Sav.

<sup>4</sup> *A.*; *Heata*, Sav.

Chr. E. Kinric XXII. anno regni sui, et Ceaulin<sup>1</sup> filius ejus, A.D. 556;  
 pugnarunt iterum contra Britannos. Sic autem pug-  
 natum est: Britanni quasi vindicaturi confusionem  
 belli quam circa quinquennium pertulerant, congregatis  
 viris bellicosis, armis et numero munitis, acies ordina- Battle at  
 verunt apud Beranburi; cumque statuissent novem Barbury.  
 acies, qui numerus bello est aptissimus, tribus scilicet  
 in fronte locatis, et tribus in medio, et tribus in fine,  
 ducibusque in ipsis aciebus convenienter institutis,  
 virisque sagittariis et telorum jaculatoribus equitibusque  
 jure Romanorum dispositis, Saxones in eos, omnes in  
 una acie conglomerati, audacissime irruerunt, vexillisque  
 collisis et dejectis, fractisque lanceis, gladiis rem egerunt;  
 donec advesperascente die victoria in dubio remansit.  
 Nec hoc mirum videri debet, cum illi maximæ staturæ  
 et vigoris et audaciæ fuerint; quamvis nostri temporis  
 exercitus in ipsa prima collisione statim alterp̃ter in  
 fugam convertatur; viris scilicet modo parvæ staturæ  
 et vigoris et audaciæ existentibus,

Chr. E. Kinric cum regnasset XXVI. annis mortuus est; et A.D. 560  
 Ceaulin filius ejus regnavit pro eo XXX. annis. Simi- Death of  
 liter eodem anno obiit Ida rex Nordhumbrae, et Ella Kinric, and  
 of Ida.

Chr. C. vel G. post eum regnavit XXX. annis; quamvis iste non  
 fuisset filius Idæ, sed filius Iffæ, filii Uscfrea, filii  
 Witgils, filii Westrefalcna, filii Sefugil, filii Seabald,  
 filii Sigegæat, filii Wepdeg, filii Woden, filii Fredealaf.

Chr. E. § 23. Ceaulino VI. anno regnante super Westsexe, A.D. 565  
 cœpit Ædelbert<sup>a</sup> rex magnus regnare super Kent, Reigns of  
 Bed. ii. 5. tempore Justini imperatoris: qui tertius quidem in regibus Ceaulin in  
 gentis Anglorum cunctis australibus eorum provinciis, quæ in Wessex,  
 and Ethel-  
 bert in  
 Kent.  
 Humbræ fluvio et contiguis ei terminis sequestrantur a borea- List of the  
 libus, imperavit. Nam primus imperium hujusmodi tenuit Bretwaldas.  
 Aella rex Australium Saxonum: secundus Ceaulin rex Occi-  
 dentalium Saxonum: tertius, ut diximus Æthelbert rex Can-  
 tuariorum: quartus Redunald rex Orientalium Anglorum, qui  
 etiam vivente Æthelberto eidem suæ genti ducatum præbebat:

<sup>1</sup> Cheuling, A.

<sup>a</sup> Ædelbert] The reign of Ethelbert, according to Beda (ii. 5), began in 560.

quintus Edwine rex Northumbrorum gentis majore potentia cunctis qui Britanniam incolunt, Anglorum pariter et Brittonum, populis præsuit, præter Cantuariis tantum; nec non et Mevanias Brittonum insulas, quæ inter Hiberniam et Britanniam sitæ sunt, Anglorum, subjecit imperio: sextus Oswald rex Nordhumbrae sanctissimus eisdem finibus regnum tenuit: septimus Oswius frater ejus, æqualibus pene terminis regnum nonnullo tempore coercens, Pictorum quoque atque Scottorum gentes, quæ septentrionales Britanniae fines tenent, maxima ex parte perdomuit ac tributarias fecit: octavus Egbert<sup>1</sup> rex Chr. E.  
a. 827. Westsexe, qui usque ad Humbram imperavit: nonus nepos ejus Alfredus, qui omnes partes regni in ditione sua suscepit: decimus Edgar nepos nepotis Alfredi, rex fortis et pacificus, qui et Anglos et Scottos vel in dominio vel prorsus ad libitum suum habuit; et hæredes ejus post eum usque ad hanc diem. Regis autem Æthelberti tempore conversi sunt Anglici ad fidem: unde diligenter in sequentibus<sup>a</sup> tractabitur.

A.D. 568.  
Battle at  
Wimbleton;  
Ethelbert  
defeated by  
Ceaulin.

§ 24. Ceaulin nono anno regni ejus, et Cutha<sup>2</sup> frater Chr. E. ejus, viri audacissimi, causis variis compellentibus, pugnauerunt contra Aedelbert, qui in regnum eorum viribus superbis introierat. Ingressi vero proelium apud Wipandune, duos consules ejus, scilicet Oslaf et Cneban, et innumeram multitudinem cum eis, bello fulminantes, ceciderunt, regemque Aedelbert usque ad Kent fugaverunt. Istud est primum bellum quod inter se reges Anglorum gesserunt.

A.D. 571.  
Successes of  
Cutha,  
Ceawlin's  
brother.

Ceaulini anno XII. pugnavit Cutha frater ejus cum Chr. E. Brittannis apud Bedeanfordam, quæ modo dicitur Bedeforda, et est modo caput provinciae circumjacentis: pugnavit igitur et vicit, cepitque armorum effectu III. castra munita, scilicet Lienberig,<sup>3</sup> et Aelesbury, et Benesintune, et Aegnesham: sed Cutha, vir magnus, frater regis, eodem anno obiit.

Commence-  
ment of the  
kingdom of  
East Anglia.

§ 25. Regnum Estangle incipit; quod continet Nordfolc et Sudfolc. Hoc autem regnum primus tenuit

<sup>1</sup> Egbrith, A.

<sup>2</sup> Chuta, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; Lienberis, S.; Lyemberig, C<sup>3</sup>.; Lyenbirig, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> in sequentibus] See Book III.

Bed. ii. 15. Uffa, a quo reges Orientalium Anglorum Uffingas appellant, quod postea Titilus<sup>1</sup> filius ejus tenuit, pater Reduualdi fortissimi regis Estangle.

Chr. E. Ceaulin et Cuthwine filius ejus, XVIII. anno regni ejus, pugnaverunt contra Britannos. Tres autem reges eorum, Commagil et Candidan et Farinmagil, acies in eos confertas et splendidas, prælii legibus distinxerunt, apud Deorham.<sup>2</sup> Bellatum est igitur robustissime; victoriam vero dedit hostibus suis Dominus omnipotens, abjecitque suos qui vane offenderant eum; et ceciderunt die illa tres reges Christianorum prædicti, reliqui autem in fugam versi sunt. Saxones vero horribiles eis facti, intersequendum eos, tres urbes excellentissimas sibi ceperunt, Gloucestre, et Cirecestre, et Badecestre.

A.D. 577.  
Victories of  
Ceawlin in  
Gloucester-  
shire.

Chr. E. Ceaulin vigesimo quinto anno regni sui, et Cuthwine, pugnaverunt cum Britannis apud Fedhanlea.<sup>3</sup> Pugnatum est autem perniciose et horribiliter utrinque: Cuthwine gravi multitudine oppressus, prostratus et occisus est. Victi sunt igitur Angli et fugæ dati: rex tamen Ceaulin, rursus reparato exercitu, cum fugam sui abjurassent, tandem prælio victores vicit; persequensque Britannos, regiones multas et innumerabilia spolia cepit.

A.D. 584.  
Battle at  
Fedhan-  
lea (?).

§ 26. Regnum Merce incipit; quod Crida, ut ex scriptis conjicere possumus,<sup>a</sup> primus obtinuit. Nunc igitur inchoata sunt omnia regna Anglorum, quorum ætates et variationes, secundum quod in libris veterum

Commence-  
ment of the  
kingdom of  
Mercia,  
under Crida

<sup>1</sup> A.; Titulus, C<sup>2</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>. S.; Titilus, C. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Dehoram, A. G.

<sup>3</sup> Fedhalnea, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> *conjicere possumus*] Chr. E. records the death of Crida in 593, and names Creoda (= Crida) as the grandfather of Penda, who began to reign in 626. As none of the predecessors of Crida are named in the Chronicle, except as constituting links in Penda's pedigree, Henry appears to have assumed

that he was the first king of Mercia, and the assumption has been adopted by all subsequent historians. From the language of Florence, however (M. H. B., 637), one would rather infer that there were several kings among the Mercians before Crida.

invenimus, ut distinctius poterimus designavimus; conferentes tamen ea ætati regum Westsex.

A.D. 590.  
Death of  
Ceawlin, and  
of Ælle.

A.D. 588.

A.D. 591.  
Battle at  
Wednes-  
bury.

A.D. 593.  
Death of  
Crida.

A.D. 596.

A.D. 597.  
And of  
Ceolric.

§ 27. Ceaulin xxx, regni sui anno mortuus<sup>a</sup> est, et Chr. E.

Ceolric regnavit post eum v. annis.<sup>b</sup> Simili modo

Ella rex Nordhumbroꝝ eodem anno<sup>c</sup> obiit, et Edelric

post eum regnavit v. annis. Tertio autem post hunc

anno Britanni et Saxones bellum constituerunt apud

Wodnesbirue. Cum autem Brittones, more Romanorum,

acies distincte admoverent, Saxones vero audacter et

confuse irruerent, maximum proelium factum est, con-

cessitque Deus victoriam Britannis. Saxones vero

quanto in bellis præstantiores esse solebant, tanto in

fuga segniore effecti, valde contriti sunt. Post hæc

tempora Crida rex Merce periit, cui successit filius ejus

Wipha. Circa hæc etiam tempora, post Edelric regnavit

Edelfert, qui vocatur ferus, super Nordhumbre. His Chr. E.

etiam temporibus occuparunt Longobardi Italiam; nec

multo post Gregorius verbum Dei signavit in Angliam.

Celrico regnante super Westsexe, Edelfert super

Nordhumbre, et Wippa super Merce, conversi sunt rex

Æthelbertus Cantia et populus Kentensis ad fidem,

ut in sequenti libro ostendemus. Post Wippam vero

regnavit Cherlus,<sup>d</sup> qui non filius ejus, sed consanguineus

fuit.

§ 28. Celric cum v. annis regnasset, vivendi finem Chr. E.

fecit; post quem regnavit Ceolwlf super Westsex xiv.

<sup>a</sup> *mortuus*] Ceawlin was driven from his kingdom in 590; he died three years later.

<sup>b</sup> *v. annis*] All the MSS., except E., which has "vi." have this reading, and Henry agrees with them. But in the same sentence he adopts the reading of E., "Ceolric," in preference to that of all the others, "Ceol."

<sup>c</sup> *eodem anno*] An oversight. Ælle is said in the Chronicle to have died in 588.

<sup>d</sup> *Cherlus*] The "Cearlus rex Merciorum" of Beda, ii. 14. But

if Florence be right in calling Quenburga (M. H. B. 689) the daughter of *Creoda*, then,—since Beda calls her the daughter of Cearlus,—*Creoda* and *Cearlus* must be the same person. Attending merely to the notice in Beda, Henry inserts *Cearl* between *Wybba* and *Penda*, without thinking how improbable it was that a son so vigorous as *Penda*, who was born as far back as 576, would, on his father's death, allow his cousin to supplant him in the kingdom.

annis; et cunctis diebus regni sui pugnabat vel contra Anglos, vel contra Scottos, vel contra Pictos. Ceolwlf

Chr.C. vel G. fuit filius Cutha, Cutha filius Kinric filii Certic.

Bed. i. 34.

Ceolwlfi regis igitur anno VII., Phocatis imperatoris A.D. 608.  
anno primo, qui VIII. annis imperavit Romæ, Edelfert Great victory gained by Ethelfrid, king of Northumbria, over the Scots at Degaстан.  
rex ferus Nordhumbroꝝ, fortis et gloriæ cupidus,  
plus omnibus Anglorum regibus gentem vastabat Brittonum.  
Nemo in tribunis, nemo in regibus plures eorum terras, exterminatis vel subjugatis indigenis, aut tributarias genti Anglorum, aut habitabiles fecit. Cui merito poterat illud . . . . .  
aptari; "Benjamin lupus rapax, mane comedit prædam, et Gen. xlix. 27.  
"vespere dividet spolia." Unde motus ejus profectibus Ædan, rex Scottorum qui Britanniam inhabitant, venit contra eum cum immenso ac forti exercitu; sed cum paucis victus aufugit. Siquidem in loco celeberrimo, qui dicitur Degaстан, . . . . .  
omnis pene ejus est cæsus exercitus. In qua etiam pugna Tedbald, frater Edelfridi, cum omni illo quem ipse ducebat exercitu, peremptus est: neque ex eo tempore quisquam regum Scottorum . . . . . adversus gentem Anglorum . . . . . in proelium venire ausus est.

Chr. E.

Ceolwlfi vero regis anno nono, pugnavit prædictus A.D. 608.  
rex Edelfert contra Britannos, victor apud Kaerlegion: Another gained by the same over the Britons at Chester.  
de quo bello, bellorum maximo, in libro conversionis

Cf. Lib. III. Anglorum, qui hunc sequitur, dicendum est.  
§ 16.

Ceolwlfus vero inter multa bella contra multos  
facta, quæ causa brevitatis prætermissa sunt, pugnam A.D. 607.  
maximam habuit contra Sudsexas; in qua uterque exercitus ineffabiliter contritus est. Clades tamen detestabilior contigit Sudsexis.

Chr. E.

§ 29. Ceolwlf cum regnasset XIV. annis, homo esse A.D. 611.  
desiit. Kinegils vero regnavit post eum XXXI. annis Death of Ceolwulf.  
super Westsexe, tempore Heraclii imperatoris, qui imperavit XXVI. annis. Kinegils fuit filius Ceola, a filii

Chr.C. vel G. Cutha, filii Kinric, filii Certic. Quarto autem regni A.D. 614.  
sui anno, assumpsit secum filium<sup>1</sup> suum Kichelmu  
in regnum, et inierunt bellum contra Britannos apud Battle at Bampton;

<sup>1</sup> A.; fratrem, Sav.

\* Ceola] The Ceolric or Ceol- | 607. So we find Saba used for Saba-  
wulf of the Sax. Chron., a. 591 and | berct (Bed. ii. 5).

defeat of the  
Britons.

Beandune. Ordinatis igitur manipulis et cuneis et aciebus, cum eis, lege rata, centuriones et consules et duces utrinque præessent, bellum inceptum est. Cum igitur obviarent sibi acies terribiliter et pulcherrime, vexillis inclinatis, in ipsa prima collisione invasit horror Britannos, timentesque aciem securium maximarum splendentium et framearum magnæ longitudinis, fuga in principio, sero tamen, potiti sunt, Saxones igitur, sine detrimento sui victores, numeravere mortuos Britannorum, et inventi sunt mortui duo millia et sexaginta duo.

A.D. 616.  
Death of  
Ethelbert,  
king of  
Kent.  
A.D. 617.

Battle on  
the Idle;  
Ethelfrid  
defeated and  
slain.

§ 30. Kinegils vero cum sex annis regnasset, mor- Chr. E.  
tuus est Ethelbert rex Kentensis: cui successit Ædbold  
filius ejus. Sequenti quoque anno Edelfridus rex  
Nordhumbrorum et Redwaldus rex Estangle obvia-  
verunt sibi, provocati utrinque, cum exercitibus copi-  
osis. Pugnatum est igitur in finibus Merciorum, ad  
orientalem plagam amnis qui vocatur Idle; unde di-  
citur; "Amnis Idle Anglorum sanguine sorduit." Edel-  
fridus rex ferus, dedignans et mirans quod aliquis ei  
auderet resistere, cum militibus electis et bello as-  
suetis, audacissime quidem sed inordinate, irruit in  
hostem, quamvis acies Redwaldi eleganter ordinatæ  
terribiles essent aspectu. Nam hirsutæ galeis et has-  
tis, et innumeris decoræ vexillis, terno procedebant  
ordine, multoque majores erant numero quam hostes.  
Rex tamen Nordhumbrorum, quasi præda inventa,  
subito proruens in cuneos conglomeratos, Rainerum  
filium regis cum tota acie sua gladiis prostravit, et ad Bed. II. 12.  
inferos ante se misit. Redwaldus autem tanta clade  
non perterritus sed iracundior, invincibiliter cum du-  
abus aciebus perstitit. Cumque impenetrabiles essent  
Nordhumbris, Edelfridus findens cuneos ultra posse  
suum, longe a suis super magnam stragem hostium  
prostratus est. Fugit igitur, rege adempto, totus ejus  
exercitus. Huic ergo in regnum successit Edwinus,  
qui postea factus est Christianus. Tanta autem pax

- Bed. ii. 16. erat in Brittannia tempore regis Edwini, ubicunque imperium ejus attingebat, ut mulier cum nato parvulo a mari ad mare secunda gradi posset. Rex autem ad lucidos fontes juxta vias, ob refrigerium viantium, erectis stipitibus, æreos cancos suspenderat, quos nullus vel magnitudine timoris auderet, vel amoris vellet, attingere. Ubique autem ante regem vexilla gestabantur; necnon . . . . . per plateas illud genus vexilli, quod Romani "Tuffam" vocant, Angli vero<sup>1</sup> "Tuf" appellant, ante eum ubilibet ferri solebat.
- Chr. E. § 31. Kinegils, cum regnasset sexdecim annis, et A.D. 626. Kichelmus, pugnantes contra Edwinum regem prædictum, quem prius morti prodicione paraverant tradere, jure victi<sup>2</sup> sunt, ut post dicetur. Eodem anno Penda Strenuus cœpit regnare super Merce: regnavit autem Chr. C. vel G. triginta annis. Penda autem fuit filius Wibba, filii Crida, filii Cinewald, filii Cnibba, filii Icil, filii Eomer,<sup>3</sup> filii Angeltheau, filii Offa, filii Weremund, filii Witlac, Bed. ii. 5. filii Woden. Eodem anno<sup>4</sup> obiit Sebertus rex Estsexe, cui duo filii ejus successerunt in regnum; nec longe post pugnaverunt contra Kinegils et Kichelm; audacter quidem cum paucioribus contra plures, sed infelicitè: uterque enim juvenis acie gladii corruit, et ex toto eorum exercitu vix aliquis fugam capessere potuit, obstantibus cadaverum suorum montibus et Bed. iii. 22. sanguinis torrentibus. Quibus successit Sigebertus cognomine Parvus, cui postea Sigebertus, vir sanctus et virtutibus plenus, quem sui prodicione occiderunt.
- Chr. E. Kinegils et Kichelm, tertio anno post hunc, pugnaverunt contra Pendam apud Cirancestre, congregata utrinque multitudine gravi. Cumque uterque exercitus, fuga abjurata, invincibiliter persisterent, solis occidentis gratia dirempti sunt. Mane autem cum se

Edwine's  
peaceful  
reign.

Penda be-  
gins to reign  
in Mercia.

A.D. 628.  
Battle at  
Cirencester.

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A.; *necati*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> C. C<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Comer*, S., Sav.,  
M. H. E.

\* *eodem anno*] The exact date of the death of Sebert is unknown; but it could not have been in 626; it must have happened some time

between the death of Ethelbert in 616, and the translation of Mellitus to Canterbury in 619. See Bedæ, ii. 5.

utrosque in perniciem redigendos, si applicarentur, viderent, moderatis utrinque impetitionibus concordati sunt.

A.D. 633.  
Eadwine  
slain at  
Heathfield.  
A.D. 634.

Kinegils cum regnasset viginti tribus annis, occisus Chr. E. est rex Edwine per Pendam Strenuum, quæ res in libro sequenti digne et prolixè tractabitur. Anno vero Chr. E. sequente Oswald rex sanctus adeptus est regnum

A.D. 635. Nordhumborum, et regnavit novem annis. Anno hunc Chr. E. sequente conversus est Kinegils ad fidem. Anno etiam Chr. E. proximo baptizatus est Kichelm, regnans cum Kinegils

A.D. 632. fratre suo, qui obiit eodem anno. Diebus in iisdem conversus est Earpwald<sup>1</sup> rex Est-Anglorum filius Redwaldi regis ad fidem rectam; et eo mox occiso<sup>2</sup> per

A.D. 636. Pendam Strenuum, conversus est Sigbert frater et successor suus per Felicem episcopum, et tota gens Ori- Chr. E. entalium Anglorum cum eo. Quarto post hunc anno

A.D. 639.  
Kings of  
Kent.

obiit Eadbald rex Kent, qui regnavit viginti tribus annis. Post quem regnavit filius suus Ercombert<sup>2</sup> Chr. E. xxvi. annis; tempore Eraclonas imperatoris, qui imperavit duobus annis.

Death of  
Cynegils.

§ 32. Kinegils cum regnasset xxxi. annis vita caruit; tempore Constantini imperatoris, qui imperaverat xxxiii. annis, filius scilicet Constantini prioris, qui

A.D. 641. regnaverat dimidio anno. Successit autem Kinegilso Chr. E. filius ejus Cenwalh, et regnavit uno et triginta annis super Westsexe, sicut et pater ejus fecerat. Eodem anno

And of Os-  
wald.

occisus est rex sanctus Oswald,<sup>b</sup> sicut in consequenti Chr. E. libro dicetur; et post eum regnavit Oswi frater ejus, viginti octo annis.

A.D. 645. Cenwalh quinto anno regni sui invasus est a rege Chr. E. Penda, quia sororem ejus dimiserat: sed non potuit ei (sub anno 645).

<sup>1</sup> A.; *Carpwald*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> *Erchenbriht*, A.

<sup>a</sup> *occiso*] Earpwald was not killed by Penda, but "a viro gentili, nomine Riebertō." Cf. Bed. ii. 15.

<sup>b</sup> *Oswald*] Following Chr. E., Henry places the succession of

Cenwalh and the death of Oswald (which Chr. A. dates in 643 and 642 respectively) in the same year, 641.

- resistere ut pater ejus fecerat, sed proelio victus, fugit ante faciem ejus, et fugatus est a regno suo. Post A.D. 648.
- Chr. B.<sup>1</sup> triennium vero, regno recuperato, dedit Cenwalh Ædredo<sup>1</sup> cognato suo et adjutori, ter mille villas
- Bed. ii. 15. juxta Esesdune.<sup>2</sup> His temporibus successit Earpwaldo regi Est-Anglorum Sigebert frater ejus, Dei servus.
- Bed. iii. 18. Qui nimirum Deo tantum adhæsit, ut, cognato suo Egrico regno commendato, monasterium intraret et tonsuram acciperet. Post multos annos autem coegerunt eum exire contra regem Pendam; ille tamen non nisi virgam in manu habebat in proelio: occisus est igitur cum rege Egrice et totus eorum exercitus. And of Sige-  
bert, king of  
East Anglia.
- Successit autem eis Anna filius Eni de regio genere, vir optimus et optimæ pater sobolis.
- Chr. B.<sup>1</sup> § 33. Cenwalh cum regnasset tredecim annis, invasit A.D. 653.  
Annam prædictum regem Est-Anglorum Penda Strenuus. Cui bene poterat aptari illud Lucani:
- Phars. ii.  
489. "Totus in arma furens, nullas nisi sanguine fuso  
" Gaudet habere vias."
- Insurrexit igitur exercitui perituro regis Annæ, insurrexit et infrenduit, Anna, the  
successor of  
Sigebert,  
slain by  
Penda.
- " Ut lupus ad caulas injustæ prodigus iræ,  
" Molle pecus, nec pro meritis, mactatque voratque;  
" Ora fluunt sanie, latus undique sanguine manat,  
" Perstat atrox nec abit donec simul omnia fundat,  
" Sic super attonitos fertur rex Penda propinquos."
- Devorati sunt igitur Anna rex et exercitus ejus ore gladii in momento, ita quod vix aliquis superfuit ex iis. Successit autem Annæ frater ejus Edelhere. Quo mox occiso<sup>a</sup> a rege Penda, successit Adewold in regno.<sup>3</sup>
- Flor. Wig.  
a. 654. Prædato igitur regno, acies et vexilla in Nordhumbre A.D. 655.  
Flor. Wig.  
a. 655. direxit Penda Strenuus.

<sup>1</sup> Ældredo, C<sup>9</sup>.<sup>2</sup> Æscendune, A.<sup>3</sup> Quo . . regno] om. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> occiso] This is an oversight; | contrary fought on his side at  
comp. Bed. iii. 24. Edelhere was | Winwidfeld.  
not slain by Penda, but on the

A.D. 655.  
Penda falls  
at Winwid-  
field.

§ 34. Cenwalh cum regnasset quatuordecim annis, Chr. E. Penda, qui cæteros gladio perimebat, gladio peremptus est; secundum illud: "Qui gladio percusserit, gladio <sup>Matt. xxvi. 52.</sup> peribit." Percussus vero est per Oswium regem apud amnem Winwed; unde dicitur,

"In Winwed amne vindicata est cædes Annæ,  
"Cædes regum Sigbert et Ecgrice,  
"Cædes regum Oswald et Edwine."

A.D. 656.

Successit ei filius ejus Peda, qui primus regum Merce <sup>Bed. iii. 21.</sup> baptizatus est; et gens regni Merce, quæ etiam vocatur Midelengle, id est, Mediterranea Anglia, cum eo et per eum ad fidem conversi sunt. Sed ipso post breve intervallum occiso, regnavit Wlfere frater ejus pro eo <sup>Chr. E.</sup> viginti annis, vir patriæ virtutis hæres. Eo etiam <sup>Bed. iii. 22.</sup> tempore baptizatus est rex Estsexe, id est, Orientalium Saxonum, nomine Sigbert, qui post Sigbertum, cognomento Parvum, provinciæ illius regnum tenuit.

A.D. 658.  
Battle at  
Penn; the  
Britons sig-  
nally de-  
feated.

§ 35. Cenwalh rex Occidentalium Saxonum XVII. <sup>Chr. E.</sup> anno regni ejus pugnavit contra Brittannos apud Pennum: scientes enim eum victum fuisse a Penda Strenuo, et a regno fugatum, minus aptum existimantes ad onus prælii sustinendum, congregata multitudo gravi, cum superbia bellum inierunt. Prima quidem collisione Brittones Anglos aliquantulum repulerunt; cum autem Angli magis horrerent fugam quam mortem, et in repercutiendo persisterent, defatigati sunt Brittanni, et more nivis liquefacta est vis eorum. Dederunt ergo terga percutientibus, et fugati sunt a Pennum usque ad Pedredan; et facta est super progeniem Bruti plaga insanabilis in die illa.

A.D. 661.  
War be-  
tween Mer-  
cia and  
Wessex.

Cenwalh vero XX. anno regni ejus, aliter pugnavit <sup>Chr. E.</sup> contra Wlfere regem Merce filium Pendæ. Rex namque Merce, patria virtute et fortuna usus, hosti Martis eventibus præstitit.<sup>1</sup> Cumque rex Westsexe campo

<sup>1</sup> restitit, A.

- Chr. E. Martio expulsus fugam elegisset, pertransiit Wlfere terram hostilem in multitudine grandi, et insulam Wiht ultra positam debellavit, et obtinuit. Ejus autem industria conversus est rex Adeluold rex Sudsexe primus ad fidem. Cui de lavacro suscepto dedit in signum adoptionis insulam Wiht; et ut eandem insulam ad fidem Christi converteret, misit illo Eppam presbyterum ad prædicandum: illa tamen necdum converti potuit. Anno post hunc tertio sol obscuratus est, tertio die Maii: quod signum pestilentia gravissima tam in Brittannia quam in Hibernia persecuta est. Eo igitur anno Ercembert rex Kentensis, et Deusdedit archiepiscopus Kentensis uno et eodem die obierunt. Postea filius ejusdem prædicti regis Egbriht regnavit ix. annis super Cantuariam. Ipse igitur rex Egbriht et rex Oswi miserunt Wihard presbyterum Romam ut fieret archiepiscopus. Sed eo ibidem defuncto, misit Vitalianus papa pro eo Theodorum archiepiscopum magnum, de cujus strenuitate in suo loco dicitur. A.D. 664.
- Chr. E. Cenwalh regis anno XXIX. obiit rex Oswi maximus Nordhumbre morbo confectus. Post quem Egferd filius ejus regnavit xv. annis. A.D. 667. Pope Vitalian sends Theodore to England. A.D. 668.
- Chr. E. § 36. Cenwalh cum regnasset XXXI. annis mortuus est. Post quem Sexburgh uxor ejus regnavit uno anno: præcedenti autem anno fuit maxima pugna<sup>a</sup> volucrum in Anglia. Quod ut credibilis videatur, hoc etiam tempore nostro contigit in Normannia regnante<sup>1</sup> rege Henrico, qui primus regum Angliæ sic vocatus est. Hoc autem determinatum est, quia sic aliquis alius futuro tempore forsitan vocabitur. Palam vero apud Rotomagum volucres pugnaverunt ita ut A.D. 670. Death of Oswy.
- Chr. E. of "avium ruina," the other of "avium strages." The notion of a battle among the birds originated with our author. A.D. 671.

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest in Sav.

<sup>a</sup> The Chronicles record under 671 "micle fugalwal," a great murrain among the birds. Ethelwerd and Florence, understanding the passage rightly, speak, the one

of "avium ruina," the other of "avium strages." The notion of a battle among the birds originated with our author.

millia volucrum occisa invenirentur, et extranei volucres fugam inisse viderentur. Quod signum scilicet fuit proelii, quod gestum est inter Henricum dominum Angliæ et Normanniæ, et Ludovicum filium Philippi regem Franciæ. Quo in proelio rex fortis Henricus victor extitit, et Ludovicus victus aufugit.

A.D. 673. Sexburgh regnante, mortuus est Egbricht rex Can- Bed. iv. 5.  
Theodore holds a council at Hertford. tuariæ; cui successit Lotarius in regnum. Tunc etiam tenuit Theodorus concilium apud Tedforde.<sup>a</sup> Lotarius autem filius<sup>b</sup> regis prædicti regnavit XII. annis.

A.D. 674. § 37. Escwine cœpit regnare super Westsexe; sed Chr. E.

A.D. 675. brevi regnum ejus, morte præripiente, duravit. Cujus regis anno secundo fuit pugna gravissima inter eum et Wlfere regem Mercensem. Rex vero Mercensis, patria et avita virtute usus, aliquantulum præstantior pugna fuit; uterque tamen exercitus terribiliter contritus est, et multa millia utrinque ad inferos demersa sunt. Operæ autem pretium est attendere quam viles sint actus hominum, quam vilia sint bella regum gloriosa, et gesta nobilia: cum enim reges prædicti tantam cladem genti suæ, causa pompæ et tumoris et inanis gloriæ ingessissent, alter eorum, scilicet Wlfere, eodem anno morbo periit, alter vero sequenti. Post hunc Edelred regnavit super Merce.

A.D. 676. § 38. Escwine cum duobus annis regnasset, vitæ  
Death of Escwine. demptus est; et Cenwine regnavit super Westsexe novem annis. Eodem anno rex Edelred novus Merce

Mercian expedition into Kent. insurrexit contra Lotarium regem Kentensem. Lotarius vero patriam et avitam virtutem formidans, divertit se a conspectu ejus, nec obviam processit. Rex igitur Mercensis urbem Rovensem destruxit, provinciam Kentensem transmeavit, prædam innumerabilem reduxit.

A.D. 678. Centwine regis anno tertio, cometa per tres menses Chr. E.  
 apparuit, et unoquoque mane velut sol resplenduit.

A.D. 671. Anno vero sequente Egferd rex Nordhumbre et Edelred

<sup>a</sup> *Tedforde*] It should be Heortforde.

<sup>b</sup> *filius*] It should be "frater."  
 See Beda and Florence.

- Bed. iv. 21. rex Merce pugnauerunt gravissime juxta Trent. Et ibi occisus est Alfwine,<sup>1</sup> frater regis Egferdi, juvenis . . . . utrique provinciæ multum amabilis. Nam et sororem ejus, quæ dicitur Ostrith, rex Edelred habebat uxorem. Cumque materies belli acrioris et inimicitia longioris inter reges populosque feroces videretur exorta, Theodorus Deo dilectus antistes, divino functus auxilio, salutifera exhortatione coeptum tanti periculi funditus extinguit incendium; adeo ut, pacatis alterutrum regibus ac populis, nullius anima hominis pro interfecto regis fratre, sed debita solummodo mulcta pecuniæ regi ultori daretur. Cujus fœdera pacis multo exinde tempore inter eosdem reges eorumque regna duraverunt. Eodem anno obiit Æeldrida quæ fuerat uxor regis Egferdi, virgo tamen perpetua.
- Chr. B. Centwine rex VII. anno regni sui congressus est Britannos, eosque male resistentes, victoriosus et vehemens cæde et incendiis usque ad mare fugavit.
- Bed. iv. 17. Circa hoc tempus tenuit Theodorus concilium apud Hatfeld.
- Chr. B. § 39. Centwino rege defuncto, venit Cedwalla ad regnum; qui mox insulam Vectam captam converti fecit ad fidem ad quam ipse postea conversus est.
- Omnes igitur reges Angliæ jam fideles effecti, et universæ regionum partes Christi lumine et gratia fruebantur.
- Tractatum est, ut æstimamus, in confusione, de gestis Anglorum adhuc infidelium, in libro hoc, quem vocamus "De adventu Anglorum;" perduximusque seriatim ab ipsa invasione Britannia quæ per Saxones facta est, usque dum singula regna suis regibus illustrata, et reges singuli fulgore fidei sunt irradiati. Nunc igitur cum liber hic, licet verbis brevis sit, gesta tamen multa eventus et bella contineat, termino donandus est. Scribendum namque attentius est in libro sequente, qui prædicatores, quorum hortatu, quibus miraculis, qua prædicatione, quos reges, quo ordine ad fidem, Domini nostri converterint. Hæc autem bella

A war between Mercia and Northumbria stopped by the mediation of Theodore.  
A.D. 680.

A.D. 679.

A.D. 682.

A.D. 680.

A.D. 685.  
Death of Centwine.

The subject of the conversion of the English to Christianity is reserved for the next book.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; Alfwine, A. G.

Names of  
the em-  
perors con-  
temporary  
with the  
transactions  
described in  
this book.

gesta sunt tempore XIV. imperatorum, annis circiter CC.XVIII. Tempore Marciani, qui regnavit VII. annis; tempore Leonis, qui regnavit XVII. annis; tempore Zenonis, qui etiam regnavit XVII. annis; tempore Anastasii, qui regnavit XXVIII. annis; tempore Justinii senioris, qui regnavit VIII. annis; tempore Justiniani majoris, qui regnavit XXXVIII. annis; tempore Justinii junioris, qui regnavit XI. annis; tempore Tiberii, qui regnavit VII. annis; tempore Mauricii, qui regnavit XXI. annis; tempore Focatis, qui regnavit VIII. annis; tempore Heraclii, qui regnavit XXVI. annis; tempore Eraclonas, qui regnavit II. annis; tempore Constantini, qui regnavit dimidio anni; tempore Constantini filii sui, qui regnavit XXXVIII. annis.

§ 40. Nomina ergo omnium regum Angliæ, qui usque ad hunc terminum fuerunt, quia confuse dispersa sunt, si secundum regna singula brevissime recapitulem, non tædiosus, ut æstimo, sed apertior et lectori gratior existam.

*Reges autem Centenses hi sunt ex ordine.*

Kings of  
Kent.

Primus rex Hengist,<sup>1</sup> VIII. annis regnum sibi conquisivit, et postea XXXII. annis regnavit.<sup>2</sup> Esc<sup>3</sup> filius ejus regnavit XXXIV. annis gloriose. Octa<sup>4</sup> circa XX. annos<sup>5</sup> obscure regnavit. Irmiricus etiam circa XXV.<sup>6</sup> annos<sup>5</sup> similiter regnavit. Aedelbertus filius Irmirici, primus Christianus, LVI.<sup>6</sup> annis splendidissime regnavit. Eadbaldus XXXIV. Erchembrius XXXIV. Egbertus IX. Nonus, Lotharius XII.

<sup>1</sup> xl. annis, A.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; Otta, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> desunt, A.

<sup>4</sup> x., A.

<sup>5</sup> desunt, A.

<sup>6</sup> A.; l., Sav.

\* Henry's chronology is in hopeless confusion. See the section treating of the matter in the Introduction, § .

*Reges vero Westsaxe hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Cerdic, <sup>1</sup> anno LXXI. ab adventu Anglorum, <sup>Kings of Wessex.</sup> regnavit XVII. annis. Kinric filius Cerdici regnavit XXVI. annis. Ceuling <sup>2</sup> filius Kinrici regnavit XXX. annis. Chelric filius Ceulingi regnavit V. annis. Chelwlf filius Cutha fratris Ceulingi regnavit XIV. annis. Kinigils filius Ceola, filii Cutha, regnavit XXXI. annis, et fidem primus suscepit. Cenwalh <sup>3</sup> filius Kinigilsi similiter regnavit XXXI. annis. Sexburh uxor Cenwalh regnavit uno anno. Escwine filius Cenwalh regnavit II. annis. Cenwine cognatus Escwini regnavit IX. annis.

*Reges vero Estsaxe hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Erchenwine; Slede; Sebert, primus suscepit <sup>Kings of Essex.</sup> fidem; Sigebertus, Sibertus, Swithelmus, Sebbi, Sigardus.

*Reges etiam Nordhumbre hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Ida; Ælla; Edelfert; Edwinus, primus fidem <sup>Kings of Northumbria.</sup> suscepit; Oswaldus, Oswi, Egferd.

*Reges vero Estangle hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Uffa; Titilus; Redwaldus; Erwaldus, <sup>a</sup> fidem <sup>Kings of East Anglia.</sup> primus suscepit; Sigebertus, Egricus, Anna, Adelhere, Adelwold, Aldulfus.

*Reges quoque Merce hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Crida; Wibba, Ceorlus, Penda; Peda, <sup>Kings of Mercia.</sup> fidem primus suscepit; Wlfhere, Ædelred.

*Reges itaque <sup>4</sup> Sudsaxe hi sunt ex ordine.*

Primus Ælle; Scisse. Cæteros penuria scriptorum <sup>Kings of Sussex.</sup> vel fama obscura recondit, præter regem Adeluuold,

<sup>1</sup> desunt, A.<sup>2</sup> *Ceuling*, A.<sup>3</sup> *Cenwalh*, A.<sup>4</sup> A.; *deest*, Sav.<sup>a</sup> Erpwaldus, Earpwald. See Book III. § 30.

qui jure adhuc nomen habet, quia primus nomen Christi agnovit.

Et hæc quidem expliciunt. Vide igitur lector et perpende, quanta nomina quam cito ad nihilum devenerint. Attende quæso et stude, cum nihil hic duret, ut adquiras tibi regnum et substantiam illam quæ non deficiet; nomen illud et honorem qui non pertransibit; monumentum illud et claritatem quæ nullis sæculis veterascet. Hoc præmeditari summæ prudentiæ est, adquirere summæ calliditatis, adipisci summæ felicitatis.

---

### LIB. III. DE CONVERSIONE ANGLORUM.

Liber hic<sup>a</sup> conversionis Anglorum est, quæ per Gregorium papam hoc ordine facta est. Primus rex Kentensis Adelberth cum gente sua per Augustinum episcopum ad fidem conversus est. Secundus rex Estsexe Sibertus cum gente sua per Mellitum episcopum conversus est. Tertius rex Nordhumbre Edwinus cum gente sua per Paulinum episcopum conversus est. Quartus rex Estangle Sibertus cum gente sua per Felicem episcopum conversus est. Quintus Kinegils rex Westsexe cum gente sua per Birinum episcopum conversus est. Sextus rex<sup>1</sup> Peada Merciorum cum gente sua per Finanum episcopum conversus est. Septimus rex Adewlf<sup>1</sup> Australium Saxonum per Wilfridum<sup>2</sup> episcopum conversus est. Quomodo autem conversi sunt<sup>3</sup> ordine<sup>4</sup> prosequamur.<sup>5</sup>

*Incipit Liber Tertius de conversione Anglorum.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Æthelwold*, C<sup>2</sup>.; *Ealwold*, F.

<sup>2</sup> F.; libri *Birinum* habent.

<sup>3</sup> *sini*, F.

<sup>4</sup> Om. C<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *prosequamur*, C<sup>2</sup>. F.

---

<sup>a</sup> The passage *Liber hic . . . prosequamur*, which forms a kind of table of contents to the Third Book, —though it occurs in all the prin-

cipal MSS.—was omitted in Savile's edition, and thrown into a note by Mr. Petrie.

Bed. i. 23.

§ 1. Anno gratiæ quingentesimo octogesimo ij<sup>o</sup> Mauritio imperante, quarto decimo anno imperii sui, qui quinquagesimus quartus ab Augusto imperavit, misit servus Dei Gregorius Augustinum et alios plures cum eo monachos predicaturos in Anglia, anno adventus Anglorum in Britannia circiter centesimo quinquagesimo. Qui jussis pontificalibus obtemperantes cum Angliam appropinquarent, horrore maximo nimirum percussi, redire domum potius quam . . . adeo feram . . . gentem, cujus nec linguam nossent, adire, cogitabant. . . . Nec mora, Augustinum, quem iis episcopum ordinandum si ab Anglis susciperentur disposuerat, domum remittunt, qui a beato Gregorio humili supplicatu obtineret, ne tam periculosam, tam laboriosam, tam incertam peregrinationem adire deberent. Quibus ille exhortatorias mittens literas, in opus eos verbi, divino confisos auxilio, proficisci suadet. Quarum videlicet literarum ista est forma :

A.D. 582.  
Pope Gregory sends Augustin and his companions to England.  
A.D. 595.

Dismayed at the prospect before them, the missionaries ask leave to return.

A.D. 596.

§ 2. "Gregorius servus servorum Dei, servis Domini nostri. "Quia melius fuerat bona non incipere quam ab his quæ cepta sunt cogitatione retrorsum redire, summo studio, dilectissimi filii, oportet ut opus bonum, quod auxiliante Domino coepistis, impleatis. Nec labor vos ergo itineris, nec maledicorum hominum linguæ deterreant; sed omni instantia omnique fervore quæ inchoastis Deo auctore peragite; scientes quod laborem magnum major æternæ retributionis gloria sequitur. Remeante autem Augustino præposito vestro, quem et abbatem vobis constituimus, in omnibus humiliter obedite; scientes hoc vestris animabus per omnia profuturum, quicquid a vobis fuerit in ejus admonitione completum. Omnipotens Deus sua gratia vos benedicat,<sup>1</sup> et vestri laboris fructum in æterna me patria videre concedat; quatenus si vobiscum laborare nequeo, simul in gaudio retributionis inveniar, quia laborare scilicet volo. Deus vos incolumes custodiat, dilectissimi filii. Data die decimo kalendarum Augustarum, imperante domino nostro Mauricio Tiberio piissimo Augusto anno x<sup>o</sup>. "iiij. imperii ejusdem domini nostri, indictione x<sup>a</sup> iiij<sup>a</sup>."

The pope chides and encourages them.

Bed. i. 25.

§ 3. Roborati igitur beati patris . . . confirmatione, Britanniam prædicatores perveniunt. Erat eodem tempore rex Edelbert in Cantia potentissimus, qui ad confinium usque Humbre fluminis maximi, quo meridiani et septentrionales Anglorum populi dirimuntur, fines imperii tetenderat. Est autem ad orientalem Cantie plagam Tenatos, insula non modica, id est, magnitudinis juxta consuetudinem æstimationis Anglorum

Section 1.  
Conversion of Kent.  
Æthelberht was then king of Kent.  
Augustin lands in the isle of Thanet.  
A.D. 597.

<sup>1</sup> *protegat*, A<sup>3</sup>. F.; A. *protegat* superscriptum habet.

A.D. 597. familiarum sexcentarum. Quam a continenti terra secernit fluvius Wantsamu, qui est latitudinis circiter trium stadiorum, et duobus tantum in locis transmeabilis; utrumque enim caput protendit in mare. In hac ergo applicuit servus Dei Augustinus et socii ejus viri, ut ferunt, ferme xl.; missisque interpretibus mandavit regi predicto sese venisse de Roma ac nuntium ferre optimum, qui sibi obtemperantibus aeterna in coelis gaudia et regnum sine fine cum Deo vivo et vero futurum sine ulla dubietate promitteret. Qui hæc audiens, manere illos in ea quam adierant insula, et eis necessaria ministrari, donec videret quid de illis<sup>1</sup> faceret, jussit. Nam et antea fama ad eum Christianæ religionis pervenerat, utpote qui et uxorem habebat Christianam de gente Francorum reginam vocabulo Birte, quam ea conditione a parentibus acceperat, ut ritum fidei ac religionis suæ, cum episcopo quem . . . . adiutorem . . . . dederant, nomine Ludhardo, inviolatum servare licentiam haberet.<sup>2</sup>

Æthelberht, whose queen was a Christian, desires them to remain quiet for the present.

§ 4. Post dies vero venit ad insulam rex, et residens sub divo jussit Augustinum cum sociis ad suum ibidem advenire colloquium. Caverat enim ne in aliquam domum ad se introirent, veteri<sup>3</sup> usus augurio, ne superventu suo, siquid maleficæ artis habuissent, eum superando deciperent. At illi non dæmoniacæ sed divina virtute præditi veniebant, crucem pro vexillo ferentes argenteam, et imaginem Domini Salvatoris in tabulis<sup>4</sup> depictam; litaniasque canentes pro sua simul et eorum propter quos et ad quos venerant salute aeterna Domino supplicabant. Cumque ad jussionem regis residentes, verbum ei vitæ una cum omnibus qui aderant ejus<sup>5</sup> comitibus prædicarent, respondit ille dicens: "Pulchra sunt quidem verba et promissa quæ affertis; sed quia nova sunt et incerta non his possum assensum tribuere, relictis eis quæ tanto tempore cum omni Anglorum servavi gente. Verum quia de longe huc peregrini venistis, et, ut ego mihi videor per-spexisse, ea quæ vera vos et optima credebatis, nobis quoque communicare desiderastis, nolumus molesti esse vobis; quin potius benigno vos hospitio recipere curamus; et quæ victui sunt necessaria vestro ministrare. Nec prohibemus quin omnes quos potestis fidei vestræ religionis prædicando societis." Dedit ergo eis mansionem in civitate Dorovernensi, quæ imperii sui totius erat metropolis; eisque, ut promiserat, cum administratione victus temporalis licentiam

<sup>1</sup> eis, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; habet, A.

<sup>3</sup> vetere, C<sup>3</sup>.; vere, A.

<sup>4</sup> tabula, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; eis, A.

quoque prædicandi non abstulit. Fertur autem quia appropinquantes civitati more suo cum cruce sua et imagine magni regis Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, hanc letaniam<sup>1</sup> consona voce modularentur: "Deprecamur te, Domine, in omni misericordia tua, ut auferatur furor tuus et ira tua a civitate ista, et de domo sancta tua, quoniam peccavimus; Alleluia."

A.D. 597.

Bed. i. 26.

§ 5. Ingressi igitur urbem, vitam apostolicam primitivæ ecclesiæ imitantes, conversatione cælesti et dulcedine doctrinæ, multos ad fidem et baptismum compulerunt. Baptizabant autem missasque celebrabant in ecclesia Sancti Martini, ad orientem ipsius civitatis antiquitus a Britannis facta, in qua regina prædicta consueverat orare. At ubi rex inter alios, delectatus vita mundissima sanctorum et . . . ostensione miraculorum, . . . ad fidem conversus est, cœpere innumeri Christi Ecclesiæ uniri. Quos quidem arctius rex diligebat, nullum tamen ad fidem cogebat. Didicerat enim a suæ salutis . . . auctoribus, servitium Christi voluntarium non coactum<sup>2</sup> esse debere. Locum vero sedis congruum possessionesque varias conferre non distulit.

They come to Canterbury; their holy lives; Æthelberht converted, with many of his people.

Bed. i. 27.

Pergens igitur vir Domini Augustinus Arelas, et ab archiepiscopo ejusdem civitatis Etherio<sup>3</sup> juxta præceptum papæ ordinatus archiepiscopus, . . . reversus est Britanniam. Misitque . . . Laurentium presbyterum Romam, per quem et res gestas summo pontifici mandavit, et gerenda ix. questionibus consuluit, contra quas papæ rescripta recepit. Quæ quia proluxa<sup>4</sup> sunt, in decretis vel canonibus lector quærat et inveniet.<sup>5</sup>

Augustin is consecrated at Aries to the see of Canterbury.

Bed. i. 28.

§ 6. Misit . . . papa Gregorius Augustino episcopo tunc temporis ab urbe Roma cooperatores ac verbi ministros plures, in quibus primi et præcipui erant, Mellitus, Justus, Paulinus, Ruffinianus. Misit et per eos . . . vasa . . . et indumenta, . . . codices, et . . . ornamenta ecclesiis necessaria. Misit etiam literas . . . quarum . . . iste est textus :

A.D. 601. Other missionaries sent from Rome.

<sup>1</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *litaniam*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> *coactitium*, Beda.

<sup>3</sup> Ætherio, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *prolixæ* (i.e. *proluxæ*). A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> Possibly there is a reference here to the book containing the decrees of councils and other im-

portant documents which Henry designed to add to his history. See note a, § 47 of this book.

A.D. 601.  
Gregory's  
letter to  
Augustin.

The pope  
grants him  
the pallium  
as bishop of  
London;  
contem-  
plates the  
future erec-  
tion of York  
into an inde-  
pendent  
province.

"Reverentissimo et sanctissimo fratri Augustino coepiscopo  
Gregorius servus servorum Dei. Cum certum sit pro omni-  
potenti Deo laborantibus ineffabilia æterni regni præmia  
reservari, nobis tamen eis necesse est honorum beneficia  
tribuere, ut in spiritualis operis studio ex remuneratione  
valeant multiplicius insudare. Et quia nova Anglorum  
ecclesia ad omnipotentis Dei gratiam eodem Domino largiente  
et te laborante perducta est, usum tibi pallii in ea ad sola  
missarum solennia agenda concedimus, ita ut per loca sin-  
gula xij, episcopos ordines, qui tuæ subiaceant ditioni,  
quatenus Londoniensis civitatis episcopus semper in poste-  
rum a synodo propria debeat consecrari, atque honoris  
pallium ab sancta et apostolica, cui Deo auctore deservio,  
sede percipiat. Ad Eboracam vero civitatem te<sup>1</sup> volumus  
episcopum mittere, quem ipse judicaveris ordinare; ita  
duntaxat, ut si eadem civitas cum finitimis locis verbum  
Dei receperit, ipse quoque xij. episcopos ordinet, et metro-  
politani perfruat honoris; quia ei quoque, si vita comes  
fuerit pallium tribuere Domino favente disponimus: quem  
tamen tuæ fraternitatis volumus dispositioni subiacere. Post  
obitum vero tuum ita episcopis quos ordinaverit præsit, ut  
Londoniensis episcopi nullo modo subiaceat ditioni. Sit vero  
inter Londoniæ et Eboracæ civitatis episcopos in posterum  
honoris ista distinctio, ut ipse prior habeatur qui prius  
fuerit ordinatus. Communi autem consilio et concordi  
actione quæque sunt pro Christi zelo agenda, disponant  
unanimiter, recte sentiant, et ea quæ senserint non sibimet  
discrepando perficiant. Tua vero fraternitas non solum . . .  
episcopos quos ordinaverit, neque hos tantummodo qui per  
Eboracæ civitatis episcopum fuerint ordinati, sed etiam  
omnes Britanniae sacerdotes habeat Domino nostro Ihesu  
Cristo subjectos; quatenus ex lingua et tuæ vitæ sanctitate<sup>2</sup>  
et recte credendi et bene vivendi formam percipiant; atque  
officium suum fide ac moribus exsequentes ad cœlestia, cum  
Dominus voluerit, regna pertingant. Deus te incolumem  
custodiat, reverentissime frater.  
"Data die decimo kalendarum Juliarum, imperante domino  
nostro Mauricio Tiberio piissimo Augusto anno septimo x<sup>o</sup>."

In a letter  
to Mellitus,  
the pope  
teaches him  
how to deal  
with the ido-  
latry which

§ 7. Cum autem legatarii prædicti Britanniam pete-  
rent, misit post eos apostolicus literas . . . , in quibus  
. . . . quam studiosus erga salutem gentis nostræ fuerit  
aperte demonstrat, ita scribens: "Dilectissimo filio Mellito  
Bed. i. 30.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>; om. te, A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> vita tuæ sanctitatis, Beda.

“ abbati Gregorius servus servorum Dei. Post discessionem<sup>1</sup> A.D. 601.  
 “ congregationis nostræ quæ tecum<sup>2</sup> est valde sumus suspensi he found  
 “ redditi, quia nihil de prosperitate vestri itineris audisse nos among the  
 “ contigit, Cum ergo Dominus<sup>3</sup> omnipotens vos ad reve- English.  
 “ rentissimum virum fratrem nostrum Augustinum episcopum  
 “ perduxerit, dicite ei, quod diu mecum de causa Anglorum  
 “ cogitans tractavi, videlicet quia fana idolorum destrui in  
 “ eadem gente minime debeant; sed ipsa quæ in eis sunt idola  
 “ destruantur; aqua benedicta fiat, et in eisdem fanis asperga-  
 “ tur; altaria construantur; reliquæ componantur.<sup>4</sup> Quia,<sup>5</sup> si  
 “ fana eadem bene constructa sunt, necesse est ut a cultu dæ-  
 “ monum in obsequium veri Dei debeant commutari; ut dum  
 “ gens ipsa eadem fana sua non videt destrui, de corde erro-  
 “ rem deponat, et Deum verum cognoscens et adorans, ad loca  
 “ quæ consuevit familiariter currat.<sup>6</sup> Et quia boves solent in  
 “ sacrificio dæmonum multos occidere, debet eis etiam hæc de  
 “ re aliqua solennitas immutari; et<sup>7</sup> die dedicationis vel in<sup>8</sup>  
 “ natalitiis<sup>9</sup> sanctorum martyrum, quorum illic reliquæ po-  
 “ nuntur, tabernacula sibi circa easdem ecclesias quæ ex fanis  
 “ commutatæ sunt, de ramis arborum faciant, et religiosis  
 “ conviviis solemnitatem celebrent; nec diabolo jam animalia  
 “ immolent, sed<sup>10</sup> ad laudem Dei in esu suo animalia occi-  
 “ dant, et donatori omnium de satietate sua gratias referant;  
 “ et<sup>11</sup> dum eis aliqua exterius gaudia reservantur, ad interna  
 “ gaudia facilius consentire valeant. Nam duris mentibus  
 “ omnia similiter abscidere<sup>12</sup> impossibile esse non dubium est,  
 “ quia et is<sup>13</sup> qui summum locum ascendere nititur, gradibus  
 “ vel passibus non autem saltibus elevatur. Sic Israelitico po-  
 “ pulo in Egypto Dominus siquidem<sup>\*</sup> innouit; sed tamen eis  
 “ sacrificiorum usus quæ diabolo solebat exhibere in cultu  
 “ proprio reservavit, ut eis in suo sacrificio animalia immo-  
 “ lare præciperet; quatenus cor mutantes aliud de sacrificio  
 “ amitterent, aliud retinerent; ut etsi ipsa essent animalia quæ  
 “ consueverant immolare, vero tamen Deo hæc et non idolis  
 “ immolantes, jam sacrificia ipsa non essent. Hæc igitur di-  
 “ lectionem tuam prædicto fratri necesse est dicere, ut ipse

<sup>1</sup> *discessum*, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *ret*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Deus*, Beda.

<sup>4</sup> *ponantur*, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *qui*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *concurrat*, Beda.

<sup>7</sup> *ut*, Beda.

<sup>8</sup> A. F.; om. C<sup>3</sup>, Sav.

<sup>9</sup> *vel natalitii*, Beda.

<sup>10</sup> *et*, Beda.

<sup>11</sup> *ut*, Beda.

<sup>12</sup> *abscidere*, codd.; *abscindere*, Sav.

<sup>13</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>; *his*, A. C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>\*</sup> *se quidem*, Beda; but the reading in the text is right, according to the text of Gregory's Letters.

A.D. 601. " in præsenti illic positus perpendat, qualiter omnia debeat  
 " dispensare. Deus te incolumem custodiat, dilectissime fili.  
 " Data die quinto decimo kalendarum Juliarum, anno nono  
 " decimo, post consulatum ejusdem domini nostri anno octavo  
 " decimo, indictione quarta."

Letter to  
 Augustin  
 from the  
 pope con-  
 cerning his  
 miracles.

§ 8. Augustino etiam super miraculis ejus misit epi- Bed. i. 31.  
 stolam, ne in eis extolleretur, his verbis. " Scio, frater ca-  
 " rissime, quia omnipotens Deus per dilectionem tuam in gente  
 " quam eligi<sup>1</sup> voluit miracula ostendit; unde necesse est<sup>2</sup> de  
 " eodem dono celesti et timendo gaudeas, et gaudendo pertimes-  
 " cas, Gaudeas videlicet, quia Anglorum animæ per exteriora  
 " miracula ad interiorem gratiam pertrahuntur; pertimescas  
 " vero, ne inter signa quæ fiunt, infirmus animus præsumptione  
 " se elevet, et unde foras in honorem tollitur, inde per inanem  
 " gloriam intus cadat. Meminisse etenim debemus quia disci-  
 " puli cum gaudio a prædicatione redeuntes, dum cælesti  
 " magistro dicerent, Domine, in nomine tuo etiam dæmonia  
 " nobis subjecta sunt, protinus audierunt, Nolite gaudere super  
 " hoc, sed potius gaudete quia nomina vestra scripta sunt in  
 " cœlis. In privata enim et temporali lætitia mentem posue-  
 " rant qui de miraculis gaudebant; sed de privato ad commu-  
 " nem, de temporali ad æternam lætitiā revocantur, quibus  
 " dicitur, In hoc gaudete, quia nomina vestra scripta sunt in  
 " cœlis. Non enim omnes electi miracula faciunt; sed tamen  
 " eorum nomina in cœlo tenentur adscripta. Veritatis ete-  
 " nim discipulis esse gaudium non debet, nisi de eo bono quod  
 " commune cum omnibus habent, et in quo finem lætitiæ non  
 " habent. Restat itaque, frater carissime, ut inter ea quæ  
 " operante Domino exterius facis, semper te interius subtiliter  
 " judices, ac subtiliter intelligas et semet ipsum quis sis, et  
 " quanta sit in eadem gente gratia, pro cujus conversione  
 " etiam faciendorum dona percepisti signorum. Et si quando  
 " te Creatori nostro seu per linguam seu per opera remi-  
 " nisceris deliquisse, semper hæc ad memoriam revoces, ut  
 " surgentem cordis gloriam memoria reatus premat. Et quic-  
 " quid de faciendis signis acceperis, vel accepisti, hæc non tibi  
 " sed illis deputes donata, pro quorum tibi salute collata  
 " sunt."

Letter from  
 the pope to  
 Ethelberht,  
 with pre-  
 sents.

§ 9. Adelberto quoque regi misit papa Gregorius episto- Bed. i. 32.  
 lam, simul et dona in diversis speciebus . . . , ut tempo-  
 ralibus donis extolleret, quem gratiæ cælestis muneribus  
 consignaverat. " Domino gloriosissimo et præcellentissimo

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *elegi*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>. ; *necesse est ut*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

" filio Edelberto regi Anglorum, Gregorius episcopus. Propter A.D. 601.  
 " hoc omnipotens Deus bonos quosque ad populorum regimina  
 " perducit, ut per eos omnibus quibus prælati fuerint dona  
 " pietatis suæ impendat. Quod in Anglorum gente factum  
 " cognovimus; cui vestra gloria idcirco est præposita, ut per  
 " bona quæ vobis concessa sunt, etiam subjectæ vobis genti  
 " superna beneficia præstarentur. Et ideo, gloriose filii, eam  
 " quam accepisti divinitus gratiam, sollicita mente custodi,  
 " Cristianam fidem in populis tibi subditis extendere festina;  
 " zelum rectitudinis tuæ in eorum conversione multiplica;  
 " idolorum cultus insequere; fanorum ædificia evert; subdi-  
 " torum mores et magna vitæ munditia, exhortando, terrendo,  
 " blandiendo, corrigendo, et boni operis exemplo monstrando  
 " ædifica: ut illum retributorem invenias in cælo, cuius  
 " nomen atque cognitionem dilataveris in terra. Ipse enim  
 " vestræ quoque gloriæ nomen etiam posteris gloriosum<sup>1</sup>  
 " reddet, cuius vos honorem quæritis et servatis in gentibus.  
 " Sic etenim Constantinus quondam piissimus imperator,  
 " Romanam rem-publicam a perversis idolorum cultibus revo-  
 " cans, omnipotenti Deo Domino nostro Jhesu Cristo secum  
 " subdidit; seque cum subjectis populis tota ad eum mente  
 " convertit. Unde factum est ut antiquorum principum nomen  
 " suis vir<sup>2</sup> laudibus vinceret; et tanto in opinione quanto et  
 " in bono opere superaret præcessores suos. Et nunc itaque  
 " vestra gloria cognitionem unius Dei, Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus  
 " Sancti, regibus ac populis sibimet subjectis festinet infundere,  
 " ut<sup>3</sup> et antiquos gentis suæ reges laudibus ac meritis transeat,  
 " et quanto in subjectis suis etiam aliena peccata deteraserit,  
 " tanto etiam de peccatis propriis ante omnipotentis Dei  
 " terribile examen fiat securior. Reverentissimus frater noster  
 " Augustinus episcopus, in monasterii regula edoctus, sacræ  
 " scripturæ scientia repletus, bonis auctore Deo operibus  
 " præditus, quæque vos admonet, libenter<sup>4</sup> audite, devote  
 " peragite, studiose in memoria reservate; quia si vos eum  
 " in eo quod pro omnipotenti Deo<sup>5</sup> loquitur, audieritis,<sup>6</sup> isdem  
 " omnipotens Deus hunc pro vobis exorantem celerius exaudiet.<sup>7</sup>  
 " Si enim, quod absit, verba ejus postponitis, quando eum  
 " omnipotens Deus poterit audire pro vobis, quem vos negligitis  
 " audire pro Deo? Tota igitur mente cum eo vos in fervore  
 " fidei stringite, atque nisum illius virtute quam vobis divi-

<sup>1</sup> *gloriosus*, Beda.<sup>2</sup> *vir ille*, Beda.<sup>3</sup> *ut*, om. Beda.<sup>4</sup> *libenter*, om. Beda.<sup>5</sup> *Domino*, Beda.<sup>6</sup> *auditis*, Beda.<sup>7</sup> *exaudiet*, Beda.

A.D. 601. "nitas tribuit, adjuvate, ut regni sui vos ipse faciat esse  
 "participes, cujus vos fidem in regno vestro recipi facitis et  
 "custodiri. Præterea scire gloriam vestram volumus, quia  
 "sicut in scriptura sacra ex verbis Domini omnipotentis agnos-  
 "cimus præsentis mundi terminus jam juxta est, et sanctorum  
 "regnum venturum est, quod nullo unquam fine poterit  
 "terminari. Appropinquante autem eodem mundi termino,  
 "multa imminet, quæ ante non fuerunt: videlicet, immuta-  
 "tiones aeris, terroresque de coelo, et contra ordinationem  
 "temporum, tempestates, bella, fames, pestilentia, terræ-motus  
 "per loca; quæ tamen non omnia nostris diebus ventura  
 "sunt, sed post nostros dies subsequenter. Vos itaque,  
 "si qua ex his evenire in terra vestra cognoscitis, nullo  
 "modo vestrum animum perturbetis; quia ideo hæc signa  
 "de fine sæculi præmittuntur, ut de animabus nostris debeamus  
 "esse solliciti, de mortis hora suspecti, ut<sup>1</sup> venturo judicio in  
 "bonis actibus inveniamur esse præparati. Hæc nunc, glo-  
 "riose fili, paucis locutus sum, ut cum Christiana fides in  
 "regno vestro excreverit, nostra quoque apud vos latior locutio  
 "excreseat, et tanto plus loqui libeat, quanto se in mente  
 "nostra gaudia de gentis vestræ perfectæ conversione multipli-  
 "cant. Parva xenia<sup>2</sup> transmissi,<sup>3</sup> quæ vobis parva non erunt,  
 "cum a vobis ex beati Petri apostoli benedictione fuerint  
 "suscepta. Omnipotens itaque Deus in vobis gratiam suam  
 "quam coepit, perficiat, atque vitam vestram et hio per mul-  
 "torum annorum curricula extendat, et post longa tempora  
 "in cælestis vos patriæ congregatione suscipiat.<sup>4</sup> Incolumem  
 "excellentiā vestram gratia superna custodiat. . . ."

Data die decimo kalendas Julii, imperante domino nostro  
 Mauricio Tiberio piissimo Augusto, anno xix,<sup>5</sup> post consulatum  
 ejusdem domini anno x<sup>viii</sup>, indictione quarta.

Church-  
building at  
Canterbury.

§ 10. Augustinus autem in regia civitate ecclesiam Bed. i. 33

quam Romani fideles olim construxerant in sedem sibi  
 et successoribus ejus sacravit in honorem Salvatoris.  
 Rex vero ecclesiam . . . . Petri et Pauli ad orientem  
 civitatis construxit et . . . . ditavit, in qua archiepisco-  
 porum et regum Cantia poni corpora possent. Cujus primus  
 abbas Petrus presbyter fuit, qui legatus Galliam missus  
 demersus est in sinu maris qui vocatur Amphleot,<sup>6</sup> et ab

A.D. 607.  
Death by  
drowning of

<sup>1</sup> et, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> *arenia*, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *xenia*, F., e  
supra lineam scripto.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *transmissi*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *recipiat*, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> *xix.*, C<sup>3</sup>, i.e. decimo nono;  
*xi.*, A. F.

<sup>6</sup> *Amfleot*, A<sup>2</sup>; *Amfleot*, F.

incolis loci ignobili traditus sepulturæ. Sed omnipotens Deus <sup>the abbot Peter.</sup> ut qualis meritis fuerit demonstraret, omni nocte supra sepulchrum ejus lux cœlestis apparuit; donec animadvertentes vicini qui videbant sanctum fuisse virum, qui ibi esset sepultus, et investigantes unde vel quis esset, abstulerunt corpus, et in Bononia civitate juxta honorem tanto viro congruum in ecclesia posuerunt.

Bed. II. 1.

§ 11. Sexcentesimo anno gratiæ transacto, magnus <sup>A.D. 604.</sup> papa Gregorius ad veram vitam migravit anno post <sup>Death of pope Gregory.</sup> hunc quinto, secundo Focatis imperatoris anno. Qui <sup>Account of his life and actions.</sup> genere Romanus, ortu nobilis, divitiis abjectis monachicam elegit vitam. Postea vero de monasterio abstractus . . . Constantinopolim apocrisiarius a Felice papa directus est, ubi *Moralia Job* inchoavit quæ postea perfecit papa. Ubi etiam Euticii hæresim præsentem Tiberio imperatore damnavit. Composuit etiam librum egregium qui vocatur *Pastoralis*, . . . librosque *Dialogorum* iiii.<sup>or</sup> et *Omellas*, xl., primamque et ultimam *Ezechielis* partem exposuit; quamvis omnis juventutis suæ tempore . . . viscerum doloribus, et stomachi imbecillitate, et lentis quidem, sed tamen continuis febribus cruciaretur.

His writings.

Hæc quidem de immortali ejus sint dicta ingenio, quod nec tanto corporis potuit dolore restringi.<sup>1</sup> Nam alii quidem pontifices ecclesiis . . . ornandis operam dabant; hic autem omnia pauperibus dispergebat, ut illud beati <sup>His charity:</sup> Job . . . dicere posset: Auris audiens beatificabat me, et oculus<sup>2</sup> videns testimonium reddebat mihi, quod liberarem pauperem vociferantem et pupillum cui non esset adjutor. Benedictio perituri super me veniebat, et cor viduæ consolatus sum. Justitia indutus sum, et vestivi<sup>3</sup> me sicut vestimento, et diademate judicio meo. Oculus fui cæco, et pes claudus. Pater eram pauperum, et causam quam nesciebam diligentissime investigabam. Conterebam molas iniqui, et de dentibus illius auferebam prædā. Et paulo post; Si negavi, inquit, quod volebant pauperes,<sup>4</sup> et oculos viduæ expectare feci; si comedi buccellam meam solus, et non comedit pupillus ex ea. Quia ab infantia crevit mecum miseratio, et de utero matris meæ egressa est mecum.

<sup>1</sup> *restringui*, Beda.  
C. A.<sup>2</sup>; oculis, A.

<sup>2</sup> *vestivi*, Beda.  
<sup>4</sup> *pauperibus*, Beda.

A.D. 604.  
Words  
added by  
him to the  
Canon  
Missæ.

Fecit autem inter alia beatus papa . . . . . super corpora  
. . . . . apostolorum Petri et Pauli . . . . . missas  
celebrari. In ipsa vero missarum celebrations tria verba  
maximæ perfectionis adjecit: <sup>1</sup> "Diesque nostros in tua pace  
" disponas, atque ab æterna damnatione nos eripi, et in elec-  
" torum tuorum jubeas grege numerari."

Story of the  
young Eng-  
lish boys at  
the slave  
market.

§ 13. Dicitur autem, ut ait Beda, quod vir Dei  
prædictus die quadam Romæ in mercaturam profectus  
juvenes Anglorum viderit, corpore et vultu capillisque  
valde venustos. Quos cum de Britannia venisse et  
paganos esse cognovisset, suspirans inquit, "Heu, pro  
dolor, . . . . . quod tam lucidi vultus homines tenebrarum  
" auctor possidet!" . . . . . Interrogavit ergo quod esset  
vocabulum gentis illius. Responsum est, quod Angli vocarentur.  
At ille; "Bene," inquit; "nam et Angelicam faciem habent, et  
" tales Angelorum in cœlis decet esse coheredes. Quod habet  
" provincia nomen ipsa, de qua isti sunt allati?" Responsum  
est quod Deiri vocarentur iidem <sup>2</sup> provinciales. At ille, "Bene,"  
inquit, "Deiri, de ira eruti, et ad misericordiam Christi vocati.  
" Rex provinciæ illius quomodo appellatur?" Responsum est, *Beda. ii. 1.*  
"quod Allet <sup>4</sup> diceretur. At ille, alludens ad nomen, ait, "Alle-  
" luia ad <sup>5</sup> laudem Creatoris illis in partibus oportet cantari."  
Accedens igitur ad pontificem Romanum, nondum enim erat  
. . . pontifex factus, legationem prædicandi eis petiit.  
Quod cum impetrare non posset, . . . . . mox ut ipse pon-  
tifex factus est per alios opus diu desideratum perfecit.

He is buried  
in St. Peter's  
church.

Sepultus est autem . . . . . in ecclesia beati Petri  
Apostoli ante secretarium, . . . . . ubi est epitaphium  
hujusmodi;—

Suscipe, terra, tuo corpus de corpore sumptum,

Reddere quod valeas vivificante Deo,

Spiritus astra petit, leti nil jura nocebunt,

Cui vitæ alterius mors magis ipsa via est,

Præsulis hoc summi <sup>6</sup> clauduntur membra sepulchro,

Qui tamen innumeris <sup>7</sup> vivit ubique bonis,

\* \* \* \* \*

<sup>1</sup> *superadjecit*, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> *idem*, pro *iidem*, C<sup>3</sup>. A. A<sup>2</sup>;  
deest in F.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; *appellatus*, A.; *vocatur*,  
F.

<sup>4</sup> A. C<sup>3</sup>.; *Alle*, Sav.; *Alla*, F.

<sup>5</sup> *ad* deest in Beda.

<sup>6</sup> *Pontificis summi hoc*, Beda.

<sup>7</sup> *Qui innumeris semper*, Beda.

<sup>8</sup> Omittuntur quatuor versus.

Anglos ad Cristum vertit<sup>1</sup> pietate magistra,  
Multiplicans fidei semina<sup>2</sup> gente nova,

A.D. 604.

\* \* \* \* \*

Sic consul Domini factus lætare, Gregori;  
Namque triumphalis jam tibi laurus adest.<sup>4</sup>

Bed. ii. 3.

§ 13. Ordinavit autem Augustinus Justum in ipsa Cantia episcopum in civitate Dorubrevi, quam Angli a quodam principe Rof Rovecestriam vocant. In qua rex Edelred apostoli Andreæ ecclesiam fecit, factamque, territoriis ac possessionibus ditavit. Distat a Dorovernensi miliaris xiiij. Pertractatum est igitur quomodo rex et populus Cantizæ ad fidem Christi sint conversi.

Founding of  
the see of  
Rochester.

§ 14. SECUNDA PARS incipit, qua aperitur quomodo rex et populus Estsexe, id est, orientalium Saxonum, verbum Dei susceperunt. Misit namque Augustinus ad eos virum perfectum et probatum evangelizare, Mellitum scilicet. Orientales autem Saxones Tamisi . . . . . dirimuntur a Cantia; . . . . . quorum metropolis Londonia . . . . . multorum emporion populorum terra marique venientium est. Ibi tunc temporis Sebertus, nepos Edelbricti, sub eo tamen regnabat, quia omnibus, ut prædictum est, usque ad Humbram . . . . . imperabat. Re igitur bene prosperata et rege Seberto et populo ad fidem converso, fecit rex Edelbertus in . . . . . Landonia ecclesiam . . . . . Pauli . . . . . ad sedem episcopi, multisque prædiis dotavit. In qua videlicet Mellitus digne pontifex constitutus est.

Section 2.  
The conversion  
of the  
East Saxons.

Bed. ii. 2.

§ 15. At Augustinus adiutorio usus Edelberti regis, cum Mellito episcopo et Justo, convocavit ad suum colloquium episcopos sive doctores maximæ et proximæ Britonum provinciz, in loco ubi<sup>5</sup> usque hodie lingua Anglorum "Augustines ac," id est, robur Augustini, in confinio Wicciorum<sup>6</sup> et

Conference  
with the  
Britons at  
Augustin's  
oak.  
A.D. 603.

<sup>1</sup> *Ad Christum Anglos convertit,*  
Beda.

<sup>2</sup> *Adquirens fidei agmina,* Beda.

<sup>3</sup> Omittuntur versus duo.

<sup>4</sup> Apud Bedam ultimi hi versus  
sic se habent:—

Hisque Dei consul factus lætare  
triumphis:

Nam mercedem operum jam  
sine fine tenes.

<sup>5</sup> *qui,* Beda.

<sup>6</sup> *Picciorum* pro *Wicciorum*, C<sup>3</sup>.;  
cf. Prolegomena, § ; *Pictorum*,  
A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; *Unictiorum*, F.

A.D. 603. Occidentalium Saxonum, appellatur. Cumque de celebratione Paschæ contra Scotos et Pictos certaret, et illi invictissimæ rationi assentire nollent, assertionem suam confirmavit, cæco Anglico in commune adducto ad sanandum ex conventionem ad alterutræ partis confirmationem. Quem cum pontifices eorum curare non possent, flectens genua Augustinus coram omnibus ad illuminationem gentis totius cæcum illuminavit. Tunc Bed. ii. 2. Britanni et Scoti, petentes inducias, a quodam qui videbatur ab eis<sup>1</sup> prudens et religiosus esse consilium petiere, quid agendum esset. Quibus ille dixit, "Si servus Dei est, assentite ei."<sup>2</sup> At illi, "Unde hoc poterimus dignoscere?" Tum ille, "Si mitis est et humilis corde, servus Dei veri dicitur esse." At illi contra: "Quomodo utrum humilis sit poterimus scire?" Quibus ille, "Si vobis . . . . assurrexerit, humilis habebatur; si autem, cum plures numero sitis, assurgere spreverit, et vos spernite illum." Cum igitur convenissent, et Augustinus Romano more in sella residens eis non assurrexisset; objurgantes et discordes abiit. Quibus Augustinus prædixit quia, si pacem cum fratribus accipere nollent, bellum<sup>3</sup> cum hostibus forent accepturi; et si nationi Anglorum noluissent viam vitæ prædicare, per horum manus ultionem essent mortis passuri. Quod ita per omnia<sup>4</sup> ut prædixerat,<sup>5</sup> divino agente iudicio patratum est.

It leads to no result. Augustin's prophecy.

Fulfilled when Æthelfrid massacred the monks of Banchor at the battle of Chester, A.D. 607 (613).

§ 16. Siquidem post . . . . ipse de quo diximus, rex Anglorum . . . . Adelfrid ferus, collecto grandi exercitu ad Civitatem Legionum, quæ a gente Anglorum Legescestria vocatur, a Britonibus autem rectius Karlegion appellatur, maximam gentis perfidæ stragem dedit. Cumque bello acturus videret sacerdotes eorum, qui ad exorandum Dominum pro milite bello agente convenerant, seorsum in tutiori loco consistere, sciscitabatur qui essent hi, quidve acturi illuc convenissent. Erant autem plurimi eorum de monasterio Brancor<sup>6</sup> in quo tantus fertur fuisse numerus monachorum, ut cum in septem portiones esset cum præpositis sibi rectoribus monas-

<sup>1</sup> ab eis, A. A<sup>2</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>. F.; iis, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> eis, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; belum, A.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; quod per omnia, A<sup>2</sup>.; quod ita ut per omnia, A.

<sup>5</sup> prædixerant, A.

<sup>6</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; B ancor, C<sup>3</sup>., rasura inter B et a interposita; Bangor, A<sup>4</sup>., Sav.; Banchor, Beda.

terium divisum, nulla harum portio minus quam trecentos homines haberet, qui omnes de labore manuum suarum vivere solebant. Horum ergo plurimi ad memoratam aciem, peracto triduo jejunio, cum aliis orandi causa convenerunt, habentes defensorem nomine Brocmailum, qui eos intentos precibus a barbarorum gladiis protegeret. Quorum causam adventus cum intellexisset rex Adelfrid, ait: "Ergo si adversum nos ad *"Dominum*<sup>1</sup> suum clamant, profecto et ipsi, quamvis arma non *"ferant, contra nos pugnant, qui adversis nos imprecationibus *"persequuntur."* Itaque in hos primum arma verti jubet, et sic ceteras nefandæ militiæ copias non sine magno exercitus sui damno delevit. Extinctos in ea pugna ferunt de his qui ad orandum venerant viros circiter mille ducentos, et solum quinquaginta fuga esse lapsos. Brocmail ad primum hostium adventum cum suis terga vertens, eos quos defendere debuerat inermes ac nudos ferientibus gladiis reliquit. Sicque<sup>2</sup> completum est præsagium sancti pontificis Augustini, quamvis ipso jam multo ante tempore ad cælestia regna sublato, ut etiam temporalis interitus ultionem<sup>3</sup> sentirent perfidi, quod oblata<sup>4</sup> sibi perpetuæ salutis consilia spreverunt:*

A.D. 607  
(613).Cowardice  
of Brocmail.

Bed. ii. 3.

§ 17. Defunctus est autem Deo dilectus . . . et sepultus est juxta ecclesiam . . . Petri et Pauli, quia necdum perfecta erat nec dedicata. Ut vero dedicata est a successore ejus Laurentio, in porticu illius aquilonali,<sup>5</sup> decenter translatus est. In quo<sup>6</sup> . . . archiepiscoporum omnium . . . corpora usque ad Theodorum sepulta sunt, nam plura porticus capere nequivit. Scriptum vero est in tumba Sancti epitaphium hujusmodi:

A.D. 604.  
Augustin  
dies, and is  
buried near  
his cathed-  
ral church.

Hic requiescit domnus Augustinus Dorobernensis archiepi- scopus primus. Qui olim huc a beato Gregorio Romanæ urbis pontifice directus, et a Deo operatione miraculorum suffultus, Edalbertum regem ac gentem illius ab idolorum cultu ad Christi fidem perduxit, et completis in pace diebus officii sui, defunctus est, vii<sup>7</sup> kalendas Junii, eodem rege regnante.

His epitaph.

Bed. ii. 4.

§ 18. Laurentium vero adhuc vivens ordinaverat Augustinus in archiepiscopum, exemplo beati Petri, qui Clementem similiter ordinaverat, ne se defuncto status ecclesiæ tam rudis vel ad horam pastore destitutus vacillaret. Qui strenuiter fidem fundatam auxit, non solum novæ

Laurentius  
succeeds  
him.He writes to  
the Britons<sup>1</sup> *Deum*, Beda.<sup>2</sup> *A<sup>2</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>. F.*; sic quoque, A.<sup>3</sup> *ultione*, Beda.<sup>4</sup> *oblato*, Beda.<sup>5</sup> *C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; aquilonari, A.; aquilonari, F.*<sup>6</sup> *C<sup>3</sup>. A. A<sup>2</sup>.; in qua, Sav., Beda.*<sup>7</sup> *C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; viii., A.*

A.D. 604. ecclesiæ Anglorum curam gerens, sed etiam veterum  
and Scots on Britonum et Scotorum qui in observatione Paschæ  
the right ob- errabant; quibus et epistolam misit, cujus . . . . hoc est  
servance of Easter. principium.:

“Dominis fratribus carissimis episcopis vel abbatibus per  
“universam Scotiam, Laurentius, Mellitus, et Justus episcopi,  
“servi servorum Dei. Dum nos sedes apostolica more suo,  
“sicut in universo orbe terrarum, in his occiduís partibus ad  
“prædicandum gentibus paganis dirigeret, atque in hanc in-  
“sulam . . . . contigit introisse antequam cognosceremus;  
“credentes quod juxta morem universalis ecclesiæ ingrede-  
“rentur, in magna reverentia sanctitatis tam Britones quam  
“Scotos venerati sumus. Sed cognoscentes Britones, Scotos  
“meliores putavimus. Scotos vero per Daganum episcopum,  
“ . . . . et Columbanum abbatem . . . . nihil  
“discrepare a Britonibus in eorum conversatione didicimus.  
“Nam Daganus episcopus ad nos veniens non solum cibum  
“nobiscum, sed nec in eodem hospitio quo vescebamur, su-  
“mere voluit.”

A.D. 610. § 19. Mellitus episcopus Londoniæ Romam profectus,  
concilio Bonifacii papæ interfuit, in quo de vita et quiete  
monachorum tractavit. Hic est Bonifacius, quartus a . . . .  
Gregorio papa, qui templum Panteon a Foca<sup>1</sup> impetravit,  
quod<sup>2</sup> in honore omnium sanctorum dedicavit.

A.D. 616. § 20. Edelbertus<sup>3</sup> rex obiit sexcentesimo sexto decimo Bed. ii. 5.  
Death of anno gratiæ, qui regnaverat lvi. annos, et sepultus est  
Æthelberht, in ecclesia prædicta Petri et Pauli. Hic vir maximus  
et eximius inter cetera bona . . . . genti suæ . . . .  
decreta . . . . judiciorum scripsit. At vero post mortem  
Ædelberti Ædbald filius ejus infidelis uxorem patris  
duxit. Unde multi ad primum vomitum redierunt.  
and of Rex tamen crebra mentis vesania puniebatur. Rex autem  
Sæberht. Sebrit orientalium Saxonum defunctus, tres filios  
paganos hæredes regni reliquit. Qui cum essent  
idolatræ,<sup>4</sup> derisorie dicebant episcopo in missarum sol-  
lenniis, “Quare non et nobis panem nitidum porrigis quem  
“patri nostro . . . . . dabas et adhuc populo donas?”  
Quibus ille respondebat: “Si vultis ablui fonte illo salutari  
“quo pater vester ablutus est, potestis etiam panis sancti,

<sup>1</sup> Focate, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> quem, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> Ædelbertus, F.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A. A<sup>2</sup>. ; idololatræ, Sav.

"cujus<sup>1</sup> ille participabat, esse participes: sin autem lavacrum  
 "vitæ contemnitis, nullatenus valetis panem vitæ percipere."  
 At illi, "Nolumus," inquiunt, "fontem illum intrare, quia illo  
 "nec opus nos habere novimus; sed tamen pane illo refici  
 "volumus." Cumque diligenter ac sæpe ab illo essent<sup>2</sup> ad-  
 moniti, nequaquam ita fieri posse, ut absque purgatione sacro-  
 sancta quis oblationi sacro-sanctæ communicet, ad ultimum  
 furore commoti aiebant: "Si non vis adsentire nobis in tam  
 "facili causa quam petimus, non poteris jam in nostra pro-  
 "vincia demorari." Expulerunt eum, ac de suo regno cum  
 suis abire jusserunt. Qui expulsus inde, venit Cantiam trac-  
 taturus cum Laurentio et Justo coepiscopis quid in his agendum  
 esset. Decretumque est communi consilio, quia satius esset ut  
 omnes, patriam redeuntes, libera ibi mente Domino deservirent,  
 quam inter rebelles fidei barbaros sine fructu residerent. Dis-  
 cesserunt itaque primi<sup>3</sup> Mellitus et Justus, atque ad partes Gallias  
 secessere, ibi rerum finem expectare disponentes. Sed non  
 post multo tempore, reges qui præconem a se veritatis  
 expulerunt, dæmonicis cultibus impune non serviebant. Nam  
 egressi contra gentem Gewissorum in prælium, omnes pariter  
 cum sua militia corruerunt. Nec<sup>4</sup> licet auctoribus perditis,  
 exercitatum<sup>5</sup> ad scelera vulgus potuit corrigi, atque ad sim-  
 plicitatem fidei et caritatis, quæ in Christo est, revocari.

A.D. 618.  
 The sons of  
 Sebert ex-  
 pel Mellitus  
 from Lon-  
 don.

Mellitus and  
 Justus de-  
 part to Gaul.

Circa A.D.  
 618.  
 The pagan  
 kings alain  
 in battle.

Bed. ii. 6.

§ 21. Cum vero et Laurentius Mellitum Justumque secuturus  
 ac Britanniam esset relicturus, jussit ipsa sibi nocte in ecclesia  
 beatorum . . . . Petri et Pauli, de qua jam frequenter  
 diximus, stratum parari. In quo cum post multas preces ac  
 lacrymas ad Dominum pro statu<sup>6</sup> ecclesiæ fusas, ad quiescendum  
 membra posuisset atque obdormisset, apparuit ei beatissimus  
 apostolorum princeps, et multo illum tempore secreto<sup>7</sup> noctis  
 flagellis arctioribus afficiens, sciscitabatur apostolica districtione,  
 quare gregem quem sibi ipse crediderat<sup>8</sup> relinqueret, vel cui  
 pastorum oves Christi in medio luporum positas fugiens ipse  
 dimitteret. "An mei," inquit, "oblitus es exempli, qui pro  
 "parvulis Christi, quos mihi in indicium suæ dilectionis com-  
 "mendaverat, vincula, verbera, carceres, afflictiones, ipsam  
 "postremo mortem, mortem autem crucis, ab infidelibus et  
 "inimicis Christi ipse cum Christo coronandus pertuli?"

Laurentius,  
 intending to  
 follow Mel-  
 litus, is  
 stopped by  
 a vision.

His admonitus Laurentius mox regi omnia revelavit.  
 Rex autem nimia terrore perterritus abdicato non legitimo

<sup>1</sup> cui, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; ab illo pane essent, A.

<sup>3</sup> primo, Beda.

<sup>4</sup> Nam, A.

<sup>5</sup> exercitatum, Beda.

<sup>6</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; stratu, A. A<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> secreta, Beda.

<sup>8</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; crediderit, A.

connubio baptizatus est; mittensque ad Gallias revocavit Mellitum et Justum. Justum Rovenses receperunt; Mellitum . . . . Londonienses abjecerunt, idolatris magis pontificibus<sup>1</sup> servire gaudentes. Rex autem Ædbald non erat tantæ potestatis quantæ pater, ut eis invitis restituere posset episcopum.

A.D. 619.  
Death of  
Laurentius;  
he is suc-  
ceeded by  
Mellitum.

§ 22. Eadbaldi regis tempore obiit Laurentius, cui Bed. ii. 7.  
Mellitum . . . . Londoniæ episcopus successit. Ipse igitur et Justus Rofensis episcopus cum magno labore ecclesiam Anglorum regebant. Erat autem Mellitus podagricus, sed mentis gressibus sanus;<sup>2</sup> carne nobilis, sed mente nobilior. Unum autem virtutis ejus opus est, quod flammis urbem consumentibus ipse se ferri obviam jussit, et statim orando destruxit flammaram impetus.

A.D. 624.  
On whose  
death Jus-  
tus becomes  
archbishop.

Justus Rofensis episcopus Mellito v. annis archi- Bed. ii. 8.  
episcopo successit, cui Bonifacius papa, successor Deus-  
dedit, misit pallium cum his literis:—

§ 23. "Dilectissimo fratri Justo Bonifacius. Quam devote,  
"quamque etiam vigilanter pro Cristi Evangelio elaboraverit  
"vestra fraternitas, non solum epistolæ directæ a vobis tenor,  
"immo indulta desuper operi vestri perfectio indicavit. Nec  
"enim omnipotens Deus aut sui nominis sacramentum, aut  
"vestri laboris fructum deseruit, dum ipse prædicatoribus  
"evangelii fideliter repromisit; 'Ecce ego vobiscum sum om-  
"nibus diebus, usque ad consummationem seculi.' . . . .  
" . . . . Susceptis namque apicibus filii nostri Eadbaldi  
"regis, reperimus quanta sacri eloquii eruditione ejus ani-  
"mum ad veræ conversationis et indubitæ fidei credulitatem  
"fraternitas vestra perduxerit. . . . . Pallium  
"itaque per latorem præsentium fraternitati tuæ . . . .  
"direximus, quod videlicet . . . . in sacrosanctis celebra-  
"dis mysteriis utendum licentiam imperavimus,<sup>3</sup> concedentes  
"etiam tibi ordinationes episcoporum, exigente opportunitate,  
"Domini præveniente misericordia, celebrare; ita ut Christi  
"Evangelium plurimorum annuntiatione, in omnibus genti-  
"bus quæ necdum conversæ sunt, dilatetur. . . . .  
" . . . . Dominus te incolumem custodiat, dilectissime  
"frater."

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>9</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *quam pontificibus,*

A.

<sup>2</sup> *sanis, Beda.*

<sup>3</sup> *quod . . . utendi . . . licentiam  
impertivimus, Beda.*

Bed. II. 9.

§ 24. TERTIA PARS incipit de conversione Nord-humbrorum, id est, eorum qui ad aquilonalem Humbræ fluminis plagam inhabitant. Rex vero eorum Eadwinus tanta potestate terreni creverat imperii, ut, quod nemo Anglorum ante eum, omnes Britanniae fines . . . . . acciperet, et omnes provinciae, quas vel Angli vel Britones habitabant, sub ditione ejus essent. Quin et Mevanias insulas . . . . . imperio subjugavit Anglorum; quarum prior quæ ad Austrum est et situ amplior, et frugum proventu atque ubertate felicior, nongentarum sexaginta familiarum mensuram, . . . . . secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet. Rex autem ille filiam Edelberti regis Edelburgam Cristianam paganus duxerat, quæ alio nomine Tate vocabatur; cum qua<sup>1</sup> venit Paulinus ut ibi<sup>2</sup> prædicaret, ad hoc ordinatus episcopus a Justo archiepiscopo. Anno autem sequente venit quidam sicarius nomine Eumer, missus a rege Westsexe Chichelmo,<sup>3</sup> ut regem Edwinum interficeret. Qui simulans legationem domini sui, cucurrit in regem cum sica bicipiti toxicata, . . . . . juxta amnem Derventionem. Quod videns Lilla regis minister, interponens se ictu transfixus est; et eodem ictu rex parumper vulneratus est. Interfectoque alio equite gladii cæsus est. Eadem autem nocte . . . . . peperit regina filiam, nomine Enflat. Cumque . . . . . rex . . . . . gratias inde diis ageret, dixit Paulinus quod precibus suis apud Deum obtinuerit, ut regina illam pareret absque dolore. Cujus verbis delectatus rex promisit se . . . . . Christo servitutum, si . . . . . victoriam donaret ei adversus Chichelmum, et in pignus promissionis implendæ filiam suam baptizari jussit. Quæ . . . . . cum undecim . . . de familia ejus baptizata est. Rex autem, superato Chichelmo, et hostibus suis aut occisis aut in deditione receptis, cum victor rediret in patriam, non statim Christianus effectus, sed sæpe solus, sæpe cum aliis, ratione fidei audita quid ageret discutebat, vir natura sagacissimus.

A.D. 626.  
Section 3.  
The conversion of the Northumbrians.

A.D. 636.  
Attempt to assassinate Eadwine, king of the Deirl.

Eadwine allows his daughter to be baptised by Paulinus.

<sup>1</sup> *cumque*, A.<sup>2</sup> C<sup>9</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *ubi*, A.<sup>3</sup> *Chichelmo*, C<sup>9</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

A.D. 636.  
Letter of  
pope Boni-  
face to Ed-  
wine, with  
presents.

§ 25. Bonifacius ergo papa exhortatorias ad fidem literas Bed. II. 10.  
regi misit. Misit et munera, de quibus in fine epistolæ  
meminit, his verbis :—" Præterea benedictionem protectoris  
" vestri beati Petri Apostolorum principis vobis direximus; id  
" est, camisiā cum ornatura in auro una, et lenam anciri-  
" anam unam, quod petimus ut eo benignitatis animo gloria  
" vestra suscipiat, quo a nobis noscitur destinatum."

Another to  
his queen,  
Æthelburga.

Edelburgæ quoque reginæ misit literas et munera, de Bed. II. 11.  
quibus in fine epistolæ sic ait :—" Præterea benedictionem  
" protectoris vestri beati Petri Apostolorum principis vobis  
" direximus, id est, pectinem eburneum auratum, speculum<sup>1</sup>  
" argenteum; quod petimus ut eo benignitatis animo gloria  
" vestra suscipiat, quo a nobis noscitur destinatum."

Paulinus  
reveals to  
Edwine a  
secret vision  
which had  
appeared to  
the latter  
many years  
before.

§ 26. Paulino autem Spiritus sanctus oraculum reve- Bed. II. 12.  
lavit, regi Edwino<sup>2</sup> quondam ostensum hoc modo.  
Cum, Edelfrido illum persequente qui ante eum regnavit,  
profugus apud regem Redwaldum moraretur, cognovit  
per quendam amicum suum Redwaldum corruptum  
muneribus regis Edelfridi eum interficere velle. Pro-  
misitque se a provincia illa eum educturum si vellet.  
Cui Edwinus, " Quo nunc fugiam, qui per omnes Bri-  
" tanniæ provincias tot annis hostium insidias vitavi?  
" Si autem mori oportet, malo ut hic me interficiat  
" quam ignobilior." His dictis remansit . . . solus.  
Dumque mentis angoribus et cæco carpitur igne, vidit . . . Virg. Æn.  
... intempesto noctis silentio hominem incognitum dicen- iv. 3.  
tem sibi, " Ne formides; scio enim causam tristitiæ  
" tuæ. Quid autem dares ei qui hac te absolveret, et  
" Redwaldo regi suaderet ut te amaret?" Qui cum  
responderet, " Omnia quæ possem;" adjecit ille; " Quid  
" si etiam te regem futurum potentiorum prioribus extinctis  
" hostibus vere promittat?" Respondente Edwino ut  
prius, adjecit iterum; " Quid si is meliorem viam<sup>3</sup> vitæ  
" tibi ostenderit, quam aliquis parentum tuorum ha-  
" buerit, obtemperabisne ei?" Promittente hoc Edwino  
firmissime, subdidit ille, imponens manus capiti ejus :

<sup>1</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; et speculum, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> Eadwino, F.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>. F.; vitam, A. A<sup>2</sup>.

"Cum ergo hoc signum tibi advenerit, memento hujus temporis et sermonis." Quo dicto repente disparuit, ut intelligeret non hominem esse . . . . . sed spiritum. Et cum regius juvenis solus adhuc ibidem sederet, . . . . . præfatus amicus ejus venit, et ait: "Surge hilaris; mutatum est cor regis, consilioque reginæ fidem suam tibi disposuit servare." Quid plura? Rex congregato exercitu Eadelfridum sibi occurrentem occidit in finibus Merciorum, ad orientalem plagam amnis qui vocatur Idle. Ibi tamen filius Redwaldi nomine Reiner occisus est. Ac sic Edwine regno Northumbrorum potitus est. Cum autem Paulinus hoc oraculum regi dixisset, imponens manum capiti ejus procidere volentem ad pedes ejus levavit, et ad fidem hortatus est.

A.D. 636.

A.D. 617.

Bed. II. 13.

§ 27. Rex igitur ad fidem promptus, ut lucraretur suos, sciscitabatur ab eis quid eis videbatur. Cui Coifi pontifex ait: "Nemo studiosius servivit diis quam ego ad lucrum terrenum. Multi autem sunt qui majora beneficia a te receperunt, unde nil valere deos probavi." Tum alius optimatum regis . . . . . subdidit: "Talis mihi videtur, rex, vita hominum præsens teris, ad comparisonem ejus quod nobis incertum est temporis, quale cum te residente ad cœnam cum ducibus ac ministris tuis tempore brumali, accenso quidem foco in medio, et calido effecto cœnaculo, furentibus autem foris per omnia turbinibus hiemalium pluviarum vel nivium, adveniens unus passer<sup>1</sup> domum citissime<sup>2</sup> pervolaverit. Qui cum per unum ostium ingrediens, mox per aliud exierit, ipso quidem tempore quo intus est hiemis tempestate non tangitur, sed tamen, parvissimo spatio serenitatis ad momentum excurso, in hieme mox de hieme regrediens oculis tuis elabatur. Ita hæc vita hominum ad modicum apparet; quid autem sequatur, quidve præcesserit, prorsus ignoramus. Unde si hæc nova doctrina certius aliquid attulit, merito sequeunda esse videtur." His similia cum etiam ceteri dicerent, adjecit . . . Coifi quod vellet ipsum Paulinum . . . audire de Deo dicentem. Quo audito, exclamavit se et alios penitus errasse, fidemque Christi se suscepturos omnes pariter

A.D. 636.

Edwine consults the Deiran chiefs on the subject of conversion. Coifi the priest is in favour of it. Apologue on human life, told by a chief.

Preaching of Paulinus.

<sup>1</sup> passerum, C<sup>3</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>., Beda. | <sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; scitissime, A.

A.D. 636.  
Coifi sets  
fire to the  
heathen  
temple.

promiserunt. Coifi autem pontifex accepto equo emissario Bed. ii. 12.  
a rege, cum pontifici idolorum non liceret nisi super  
equam equitare, arreptoque gladio et lancea, quod  
etiam non licebat, videntibus cunctis succendit et  
destruxit quas ipse sacraverat aras. Ostenditur autem

Virg. Æn.  
ii. 502.

A.D. 627.  
Eadwine  
and many of  
his people  
receive bap-  
tism.

locus ille quondam idolorum non longe ab Eboraco, ad orien-  
tem, ultra amnem Doruventionem, (id est, Derewente,) et  
vocatur hodie Godmundingeham. Igitur . . . baptizatus Bed. ii. 14.  
est rex Edwinus die sancto Paschæ, et multi cum eo, in  
ecclesia Sancti Petri, quam . . . ipse de ligno . . .  
construxerat, sedem episcopatus Paulino. Mox autem  
majorem incepit lapideam, quam postea perfecit Oswald.  
Baptizati sunt etiam Offrid et Eadfrid filii regis Edwini  
qui ambo ei exuli nati sunt de Quoeburga filia Cearli regis  
Merciorum.<sup>1</sup> Baptizati sunt tempore sequenti et . . . liberi  
ejus de Edelberga regina progeniti . . . quorum duo adhuc  
albati mortui sunt, et Eboraci in ecclesia sepulti. . . .  
Tanta autem fertur tunc fuisse verborum fides ac desiderium  
lavacri salutaris gentis<sup>2</sup> Norhumbriorum, ut quodam tempore  
Paulinus veniens cum rege et regina in regiam villam quæ vo-  
cabatur Adgebrin<sup>3</sup> xxxvi. diebus ibidem cum eis catechizandi et  
baptizandi officio deditus moraretur. In provincia Bernitiorum  
baptizabat in fluvio Gleni, juxta locum qui vocatur Mel-  
min;<sup>4</sup> in provincia vero Deirorum . . . in fluvio  
Sualua, qui vicum Cataractam preterfuit.

Mission in  
the parts of  
Lindsey.

§ 28. Paulinus etiam convertit provinciam Lindisse, Bed. ii. 16.

quæ est . . . ad meridianam ripam Humberis fluminis,  
priusquam præfectum Lindocolinæ civitatis, cui nomen  
Blecca, . . . cum domo sua convertit . . . In qua civi-  
tate ecclesiam egregii operis . . . fecit, et in ea Honorium  
consecravit archiepiscopum; cujus tecto vel longa incuria  
vel hostili manu dejecto, parietes hactenus<sup>5</sup> stare videntur.  
Urbs autem Lincolinæ, quæ tunc Lindocolina vocabatur,  
et provincia Lindisse ei adjacens, quæ circumquaque  
clauditur<sup>6</sup> vel fluviis vel paludibus<sup>7</sup> vel mari, ad  
Merce regnum pertinet. Urbs autem illa et situ splen-

First church  
at Lincoln.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; meritorum, A.

<sup>2</sup> gente, Beda.

<sup>3</sup> Adgefrin, Beda.

<sup>4</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>; Melmin, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>4</sup>. F.; actenus, C<sup>3</sup>. A. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; clauditur, A.

<sup>7</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; paulidibus, A.

dida est, et provincia rerum multarum locuples. Unde A.D. 627.  
quidam:

“Urbs in colle sita est, et collis vergit ad austrum.”

Enarravit abbas de Peartaneig se vidisse seniore What the abbot of Partenay had heard about Paulinus.  
a Paulino baptizatum cum cetera turba coram rege  
Edwino in fluvio Trenta juxta civitatem quæ . . . Tuue] Tuue]  
fingecestre<sup>1</sup> vocatur. De cujus effigie dicebat, quod esset  
vir longæ staturæ, paululum incurvus, nigro capillo, facie  
macilenta, naso adunco pertenui, venerabilis simul et terribilis  
aspectu.

Bed. ii. 17. § 29. Honorius autem papa misit accensorias Edwino A.D. 634  
regi litteras, his auditis; quarum postremam partem Letter of pope Honorius to king Edwino,  
necessarium duxi apponere, quæ, scilicet de agendis  
archiepiscoporum. Angliæ tractat distincte per hæc  
verba:—“Prædicatoris . . . vestri domini mei apostolicæ  
“memoriæ Gregorii frequenter lectione occupati, præ oculis  
“affectum doctrinæ ipsius, quod<sup>2</sup> pro vestris animabus li-  
“benter exercuit, habetote; quatenus ejus oratio et regnum  
“vestrum populumque augeat,<sup>3</sup> et vos omnipotenti Deo in-  
“reprehensibiles repræsentet. Ea vero quæ a nobis pro  
“vestris sacerdotibus ordinanda sperastis, hæc pro fidei vestræ  
“sinceritate, quæ nobis multimoda relatione per præsentium  
“portitores laudabiliter insinuata est, gratuito animo attri- confirming the arrange-  
ments of Gregory the Great concerning the two metro-  
politan sees.  
“buere ulla sine dilatione providemus;<sup>4</sup> et duo pallia utro-  
“rumque metropolitano-<sup>5</sup>rum, id est<sup>6</sup> Honorio et Paulino di-  
“reximus, ut, dum quis eorum de hoc sæculo ad auctorem  
“suum fuerit accersitus, in loco ipsius alterum<sup>7</sup> episcopum ex  
“hac nostra auctoritate debeat subrogare, Quod quidem tam  
“pro vestræ caritatis affectu,<sup>7</sup> quam pro tanto provinciarum  
“spatio quæ inter nos et vos esse noscuntur, sumus invitati  
“concedere, ut in omnibus devotioni vestræ nostrum con-  
“cursum juxta desideria vestra præberemus. Incolumem ex-  
“cellentiam vestram superna gratia custodiat.”

Bed. ii. 15. § 30. QUARTA PARS incipit de conversione Orientalium Circ. A.D. 635.  
Anglorum quorum rex Erpwaldus, filius Redwaldi regis, Section 4. Conversion of the East Angles by bishop Felix under the kings Eorp-  
hortatu Edwini regis sibi amicissimi, fidem suscepit.  
Et quidem pater ejus Redwald jam dudum in Cantia fidem  
susceperat, sed frustra. Nam rediens domum, ab uxore sua

<sup>1</sup> A. C<sup>3</sup>; *Tuelfingecestre*, A<sup>4</sup>; *Touulfingec.*, F.; *Tioulfingacastir*, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> *quem*, Beda.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *augebat*, A.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *providimus*, A.; *prævidemus*, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>; *idem*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *alter*, Beda.

<sup>7</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *affectum*, A.

Circ.  
A.D. 636.  
wald and  
Sigberht.

et a quibusdam perversis . . . seductus, . . . habebat altare Christi et dæmonis in eodem fano. Quod . . . rex ejusdem provinciæ Aldulf, qui venerabilis Bede ætate fuit, usque ad suum tempus perdurasse . . . testatur. Verum Erpwald non multo postquam credidit tempore, occisus est a viro gentili . . . Rigberto. Cui<sup>1</sup> successit Sigbert frater ejus<sup>2</sup> Christianissimus et ceteros Christianizans, cum Felice episcopo; quem de Burgundia ortum miserat illuc Honorius archiepiscopus ad prædicandum. Juxtaque nomen suum, acceptam sedem episcopus in civitate Dommoo, xvii. annis tenuit, et in pace ibidem obiit.

Hæc inter, Justo archiepiscopo defuncto, Paulinus Bed. ii. 18.  
Honorium sibi occurrentem ordinavit in urbe Lindocolinæ, quæ modo vocatur Lincolia, in ecclesia quam ipse fecerat ibidem, sicut prædictum est. Honorius A.D. 627.  
autem papa misit Honorio archiepiscopo pallium et litteras de ordinatione et dignitate utriusque archiepiscopatus, quarum hæc est forma:—

A.D. 634.  
Letter from  
Rome to  
archbishop  
Honorius,  
on the same  
subject of  
jurisdiction.

§ 31. "Dilectissimo fratri Honorio, Honorius. Inter plurima Bed. ii. 18.  
"quæ Redemptoris nostri misericordia suis famulis dignatur  
"bonorum munera prærogare, illud etiam clementer collata  
"sue pietatis munificentia tribuit, quoties per fraternos affec-  
"tus<sup>3</sup> unanimum<sup>4</sup> dilectionem quadam contemplatione alternis  
"aspectibus repræsentat. Pro quibus majestati ejus gratias  
"indesinenter absolvimus, eumque votis supplicibus exora-  
"mus, ut vestram dilectionem in prædicatione evangelii elabo-  
"rantem et fructificantem, sequentemque<sup>5</sup> magistri et capitis  
"sui Sancti Gregorii regulam, perpetua<sup>6</sup> stabilitate confirmet,  
"et ad augmentum ecclesiæ sue potiora per vos suscitet  
"incrementa; ut fide et opere, in timore Dei et caritate,  
"vestra adquisitio decessorumque vestrorum quæ per domini  
"Gregorii exordium pullulat, convalescendo amplius exten-  
"datur; ut ipsa vos dominici eloquii promissa in futuro re-  
"spiciant, vosque vox ista ad æternam festivitatem evocet:  
Matt. xi. 28. "Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis et onerati estis, et ego  
Ib. xxv. 23. "reficiam vos. Et iterum: Euge, serve bone et fidelis, quia  
"super pauca fuisti fidelis, supra multa te constituam; intra  
"in gaudium Domini tui. Et nos equidem, fratres carissimi,  
"hæc vobis pro æterna caritate exhortationis verba promit-

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; Qui, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; est, A.

<sup>3</sup> affatus, Beda.

<sup>4</sup> unanimum, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> sectantem, Beda.

<sup>6</sup> perpeti, Beda.

“tentes,<sup>1</sup> quæ rursus pro ecclesiarum vestrarum privilegiis A.D. 634.  
 “congruere posse conspiciamus, non desistimus impertire.  
 “Et tam juxta petitionem vestram, quam filiorum nostrorum  
 “regum, vobis præsentī nostra præceptione vice beati Petri  
 “Apostolorum principis auctoritatem tribuimus, ut quando  
 “unum ex vobis divina ad se jusserit gratia evocari,<sup>2</sup> is qui  
 “superstes fuerit alterum in loco defuncti debeat episcopum  
 “ordinare. Pro qua etiam re singula vestræ dilectioni pal-  
 “lia pro eadem ordinatione celebranda direximus, ut per  
 “nostræ præceptionis auctoritatem possitis Deo placitam ordi-  
 “nationem efficere. Quia, ut hæc nobis concederemus, longa  
 “terrarum marisque intervalla quæ inter nos et vos obsis-  
 “tunt, ad hæc nos condescendere coegerunt, ut nulla possit  
 “ecclesiarum vestrarum jactura per cujuslibet occasionis ob-  
 “tentum quoquo modo provenire, sed potius commissi vobis  
 “populi devotionem plenius propagare. Deus te incolumem  
 “custodiat, dilectissime frater. Data die tertio iduum Juni-  
 “arum, imperantibus dominis nostris piissimis Augustis,  
 “Heraclio anno vigesimo quarto, post consulatum ejusdem  
 “anno vigesimo tertio, et consulatus ejus anno tertio; sed  
 “et Heraclio felicissimo Cæsare, id est filio ejus, anno tertio,  
 “indictione septima id est, anno Dominicæ incarnationis sex-  
 “centesimo tricesimo<sup>3</sup> quarto.”

Bed. ii. 19.

§ 32. Misit et idem papa Honorius genti Scotorum literas A.D. 640.  
 correctorias de observatione Paschali, ne paucitatem suam  
 cunctis per orbem Christi ecclesiis sapientiores aestimarent, Papal letters to the Irish  
 Scots, on the compu-  
 tation of  
 Easter and  
 the Pelagian  
 heresy.  
 . . . . . Sed et Johannes, qui successorī ejusdem Honorii  
 Severino successit, misit literas pro eodem errore corri-  
 gendo et Pelagiana heresi, quam apud eos reviviscere didicerat,  
 quæ dicebat, hominem sine peccato posse existere ex  
 propria voluntate, et non ex gratia Dei. Nec enim  
 homo potest sine peccato esse, nisi Jhesus Kristus,  
 qui sine peccato conceptus fuit et natus. Nam cæteri  
 homines, etsi actuali peccato careant, contrahunt tamen  
 originale peccatum secundum illud: Ecce enim in iniqui-  
 tatibus meis conceptus sum, et in peccatis concepit me mater  
 mea. Ps. l. 5.

Bed. ii. 20.

§ 33. At vero Edwinus post xvii, annos regni sui conserto A.D. 633.  
 gravi prælio in campo qui vocatur Hadfeld, occisus est a Edwine  
 killed at  
 Heathfield.  
 Cedwalla rege Britonum, adjuvante eum Penda strenuo,  
 qui ex eo tempore rex fuit Merciorum, ejusque totus vel

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>3</sup>. F.; *preceptione*, A.; *præ-*  
*mittentes*, Beda.

<sup>2</sup> *vocari*, Beda.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>., Beda; A. om. *tricesimo*.

A.D. 633. peremptus est, vel dispersus exercitus. Offrid<sup>1</sup> quoque Bed. ii. 20.  
 bellicosus filius ejus occisus est ante eum; alter Edfrid<sup>2</sup>  
 necessitate cogente ad Pendam effugit, a quo postmodum  
 regnante Oswaldo perfide peremptus est. Dicitur autem  
 quod Hadfeld rubens undique nobilium fumabat cruore.  
 Ibi namque mirabilis et inopinata fortissimorum facta  
 est strages; Cedwalla siquidem rex potentissimus in-  
 numerabilem multitudinem secum adduxerat, Penda  
 vero strenuissimus strenuissimos; facta est igitur maxima  
 strages in ecclesia Northumbro-  
 rum. Penda enim paganus  
 erat; Cedwalla vero pagano<sup>3</sup> sævior, nec mulieribus  
 nec parvulis parcens, se Anglos Britannia erasurum . .  
 . . . deliberans. Nec Britones magis communicant  
 Anglis quam paganis, fidem eorum nihili pendentes.  
 Allatum est autem caput Edwini regis Eboracum, et illatum  
 . . . . in ecclesia . . . . Petri, quam ipse cepit sed . . .  
 Oswaldus perfecit. Nordhumbris igitur nihil præsidii nisi  
 in fuga habentibus, Paulinus assumpta secum regina Edel-  
 burga, quam pridem adduxerat, rediit Cantiam navigio, atque  
 ab Honorio archiepiscopo et rege Eadbaldo . . . . honori-  
 fice susceptus est, habens etiam secum filium et filiam  
 Edwini, quos postea mater, metu Eadbaldi et Oswaldi regum,  
 misit in Galliam nutriendos regi Dagoberto, qui erat amicus il-  
 lius, ibique pueri defuncti sunt. Attulit quoque secum vasa  
 pretiosa Edwini, . . . . et crucem magnam auream, et calicem  
 aureum, quæ . . . in ecclesia Cantiae adhuc sunt. Romano  
 autem Rovensî præsule absorpto fluctibus Italici maris, dum  
 legatarius Honorii tenderet Romam, Paulinus eundem  
 episcopatum tenuit dum vixit; ibique moriens, pallium  
 quod a . . . . papa acceperat reliquit. Reliquerat autem in  
 ecclesia sua Eboraci Jacobum diaconum, virum . . . . .  
 sanctum, qui . . . . . ex hinc baptizabat et docebat,  
 usque dum recuperata . . . . . pace in provincia, et cres-  
 cente numero fidelium, magister<sup>4</sup> ecclesiasticæ cantationis juxta  
 morem Romanorum . . . . . cepit existere, Et ipse senex  
 et plenus dierum juxta scripturas viam patrum<sup>5</sup> secutus est.

Paulinus,  
taking  
Eadwine's  
widow,  
escapes into  
Kent,

and takes  
charge of  
the see of  
Rochester;  
while James  
the deacon  
administers  
the see of  
York.

<sup>1</sup> *Osfrid*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *Effrid*, A.; *Eadfrid*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *pagana*, A, scripto supra lineam *us*.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>; om. A. G.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; om. A. G.

- Bed. iii. 1. § 34. Edwino regi successit Osric cognatus ejus in A.D. 633.  
 provincia Deirorum; Anfrid filius Edelfridi regis sus- The succes-  
 cepit regnum Berniciorum; nam in has duas provincias sors of  
 gens Nordhumbro- rum antiquitus divisa erat. Hi autem ju- Edwin in  
 venes tempore regis Edwini apud Scotos et Pictos Deira and  
 exulantes baptizati sunt. Ubi autem reges facti sunt, Bernicia  
 ad idola conversi sunt. Quos rex Cedwalla impie sed apostatise.  
 juste peremit. Et primo quidem proxima æstate Osricum They are  
 dum se in oppido municipio temerarie obsedis- set, erumpens both slain  
 subito cum suis omnibus imparatum destruxit. Post annum by Cæd-  
 vero occidit Enfridum ad se postulandæ pacis gratia walla.  
 venientem cum xii. militibus. Infaustus ille annus habitus A.D. 634.  
 est, tam propter regum apostasiam, quam propter  
 Cedwallæ tyrannidem, qua non terras ut victor ad-  
 quirebat, sed ut pestis destruebat. Unde ille annus  
 sequentis regis Oswaldi regno assignatur. Qui post oc- A.D. 635.  
 cisionem fratris Enfridi superveniens cum parvo exercitu . . . Victory of  
 . . . . . signum sanctæ crucis manibus suis erexit Oswald at  
 ac foveæ impositam cæspitibus firmavit. Dixitque, Denises-  
 "Flectamus . . . genua, et Dominum omnipotentem vi- burn; Cæd-  
 "vum ac verum in commune deprecemur, ut nos ab hoste walla slain.  
 "feroci ac superbo sua miseratione defendat. Scit enim . .  
 "quia justa pro salute gentis nostræ bella suscipimus."  
 Quo facto incipiente diluculo congressi Cedwallam et  
 copias illas, quibus nihil resistere posse jactabat, ceciderunt  
 apud<sup>1</sup> Denisesburne, id est, rivus Denisi. Unde dicitur:  
 "Cædes Cedwalensium Denisi cursus coercuit." Qui  
 locus in magna veneratione habetur, ut in libro mi-  
 raculorum dicitur.<sup>2</sup>
- Bed. iii. 3. § 35. Oswaldus igitur rex, ut fidem augeret, misit Aidan,  
 Scotiam ubi exulaverat, accepitque pontificem Aidanum brought  
 sumum virum, quamvis Pascha non recte celebraret from Hii  
 more septentrionalium Scotorum. Australes enim by Oswald,  
 Hiberniæ insulæ partes jãmdudum admonitione papæ founds the  
 rectum Pascha susceperant. Venienti igitur . . . . . see of Lin-  
 distarna.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; om. A. G.

<sup>2</sup> This is a reference to the ninth | *Anglorum* or *De Miraculis*, of  
 Book, entitled *De Viris illustribus* | Henry's complete history.

A.D. 685. episcopo rex sedem episcopalem in insula Lindisfernensi . . .  
 . . . . . tribuit. Igitur fides coepit dilatari. Pulchroque  
 spectaculo saepe contigit, ut evangelizante Aidano, qui  
 Anglicum perfecte non noverat, ipse rex suis duobus ac  
 ministris interpres . . . existeret. Longo enim exilii sui  
 tempore linguam Scotorum . . . plene didicerat. Crescebat  
 igitur fides, monachisque venientibus de Scotia fer-  
 venter docebatur. Monachus enim ipse episcopus erat,  
 de insula quæ vocatur Ii,<sup>1</sup> cujus monasterium . . . . .  
 . . . septentrionalium Scotorum et omnium Pictorum . . .  
 . . . . . arcem tenebat. . . . . Quæ . . . . . in-  
 insula ad jus quidem Britanniae pertinet, non magno ab ea  
 freto discreta, sed donatione Pictorum qui illas Britanniae  
 plagas incolunt, monachis Scotorum tradita, eo quod ab illis  
 . . . . . fidem . . . perceperint.

The Island  
 of Ili  
 (Iona).

Columba  
 had come  
 from Ire-  
 land to  
 preach to  
 the North-  
 ern Picts,  
 A.D. 565.  
 The South-  
 ern Picts  
 had been  
 before con-  
 verted by  
 St. Ninias,  
 circ. A.D.  
 412.

§ 36. Namque anno gratiæ D. lx<sup>o</sup>. v<sup>o</sup>., regnante post Bed. iii. 4.  
 Justinianum Justino minore, venit de Hibernia . . . . .  
 abbas . . . . . Columba, prædicandum<sup>2</sup> septemtri-  
 onalibus Pictis, id est, eis qui arduis<sup>3</sup> atque horrentibus  
 montium jugis ab Australibus Pictis separantur. Australes  
 enim Picti prius conversi fuerant per Niniam episco-  
 pum, Britonem, Romæ edoctum; cujus sedem episcopatus,  
 Sancti Martini . . . . . nomine . . . . . ubi ipse Columba  
 sepultus est, jam nunc Anglorum gens obtinet. Qui lo-  
 cus, ad provinciam Bernitiarum pertinens, vulgo vocatur Ad  
 Candidam Casam, eo quod ibi ecclesiam de lapide insolito  
 Britonibus more fecit. Venit autem . . . . . Columba, reg-  
 nante Pictis Bridio filio Meilocon rege potentissimo, ix<sup>o</sup>. anno  
 regni ejus, gentemque illam . . . . . convertit; unde et  
 præfatam insulam ab eis . . . . . accepit, (quæ est quasi  
 familiarum v. juxta estimationem Anglorum,) quam suc-  
 cessores<sup>4</sup> ejus usque hodie tenent; ubi et ipse sepultus est.  
 Erat autem et aliud monasterium nobile in Hibernia  
 Dearmao,<sup>5</sup> id est, campus roborum. Ex quo utroque  
 monasterio plurima in Hibernia et Anglia sunt. In quibus  
 omnibus monasterium Ii principatum tenet. Abbati autem  
 illius insulæ omnis provincia et etiam episcopi, ordine

<sup>1</sup> Hii, C<sup>o</sup>.; Ii, A<sup>o</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> ad prædicandum, Sev.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>o</sup>. F., Beda; perarduis, A.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>o</sup>. A<sup>o</sup>.; succensores, A. G.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>o</sup>.; Deariano, A. A<sup>o</sup>. F.;  
 Dearmach, Beda.

inuitato, solent esse subjecti, quia Columba prædicator non episcopus fuit, sed presbyter et monachus. Cujus successores ejus imitatione valde claruerunt; tamen in observatione Paschæ errabant, donec Egbertus Anglicus eos correxit.

Bed. iii. 5. Aidanus igitur hinc missus episcopatum Nord- A.D. 635.  
humbre tenuit. Cujus institutione formatus rex Os-  
waldus, ut mente proficiebat, ita et regno plusquam  
Bed. iii. 6. omnes majores ejus. Omnes igitur gentes Britanniae, Oswald's  
scilicet Britones, Anglos, Pictos, Scotos, in ditionem ac- kingdom is  
cepit. Adeo tamen sublimis, humilis fuit et benignus enlarged.  
peregrinis et pauperibus.

Bed. iii. 7. § 37. QUINTA PARS sequitur de conversione Occiden- Section 5.  
tialium Saxonum, qui antiquitus Geuissæ vocabantur, Conversion  
quæ facta est per Birinum episcopum. Qui consilio of the West  
papæ Honorii adveniens, a quo etiam ordinatus est Saxons,  
episcopus, per Asterium Genuensem episcopum, gentem commenced  
Geuissorum ingrediens paganissimam, baptizavit eos by Birinus.  
et regem eorum Kinigils. Contigit<sup>1</sup> autem pulchre A.D. 634.  
sanctum regem Oswaldum affuisse, eumque de lavacro . . .  
suscepisse, cujus filiam Oswaldus erat accepturus in conjugem.  
. . . . . Donaverunt<sup>2</sup> autem ambo reges Birino civitatem  
. . . . . Dorcic ad sedem episcopi; ibique, construc-  
tis ecclesiis, sepultus est; et post multos annos, Hedde  
episcopatum agente, translatus inde in Ventam civitatem, quæ  
Winestre vocatur, et in ecclesia . . . . . Petri et  
Pauli positus est. Defuncto autem rege successit . . . filius  
ejus Cenwald, qui fidem . . . . . renuit, nec im-  
pune. Repudiata enim sorore Pendan regis<sup>3</sup> Merciorum quam  
duxerat, aliamque ducens, bello victus est, et regno priva- A.D. 645.  
tus ab illo; triennioque exulans apud Annam, regem Orien-  
tialium Anglorum,<sup>4</sup> fidelem, fidem recognovit. Cum vero  
Cenwald restitutus esset in regno, constituit episcopum  
Ailbertum, natione Gallum, sed tunc de Hibernia gra-  
Diocesan  
affairs.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Contingit*, A. G.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Donaverat*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *regem*, A. A<sup>4</sup>. G.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; *Saxonum*, A<sup>4</sup>.; A. F. A<sup>2</sup>.  
om.

A.D. 660. tia legendi venientem. Sed postea rex, Anglicum Bed. iii. 7.  
 sciens tantum, pertæsus barbaræ linguæ, subintrodixit in  
 provinciam . . . suæ linguæ episcopum . . . Wine, et  
 ipsum in Gallia ordinatum; dividensque in duas parochias  
 provinciam, huic in . . . Wenta . . . sedem . . .  
 tribuit. Unde offensus . . . Ailbertus, quod hæc ipso in-  
 consulto ageret . . . rediit Galliam, et acceptum episco-  
 patum Parisius usque ad obitum tenuit. Postea rex  
 idem pepulit etiam Vuine ab episcopatu, qui secedens ad  
 Wlfere regem Merciorum, emit pretio ab eo sedem Londoniæ  
 civitatis, ejusque episcopus usque ad obitum mansit. Ca-  
 rente igitur pastore provincia, cum rex hostibus et  
 damnis ideo sæpius affligeretur, misit pro Ailberto  
 Parisius. Qui nolens episcopatum illum dimittere, mi-  
 sit Leutherium suum nepotem. Hic igitur, ordinatus  
 episcopus a Theodoro archiepiscopo, episcopatum Geuis-  
 sorum longo tempore rexit solus.

The simony  
 of Wine.  
 A.D. 663.

A.D. 640.  
 Progress of  
 Christianity  
 in Kent.

§ 38. Ea tempestate, post Eadbaldum regem Ken- Bed. iii. a.  
 tensem, Erchenbert filius ejus xxiii. annis nobiliter  
 regnavit. Hic primus . . . in toto regno . . . idola  
 . . . destrui, et jejunium Quadragesimale observari . . .  
 . . . præcepit, poenasque transgressionibus posuit.  
 Duxitque Sexburth, majorem filiam regis Annæ. Mi-  
 norem vero filiam suam Adelburth, et filiam uxoris  
 suæ Sedrid, miserat rex Anna ad monasterium Bruges,  
 serviendum Deo. Quæ utraque, cum esset peregrina, me-  
 rito virtutum . . . Bregensis . . . abbatissa effecta est.  
 Tunc siquidem mittebant nobiles Angliæ filias suas  
 erudiendum in Bruge, et in Kala,<sup>1</sup> et in Ande-  
 ligum<sup>2</sup> monasterio. Misit et Erchembert Bruges<sup>3</sup>  
 filiam suam Ercungotam virginem Christi, virginem  
 sanctam et præclaram. Cujus opera virtutum, cujus  
 signa miraculorum ab incolis loci illius usque hodie narrantur;  
 de cujus laude in libro Miraculorum<sup>b</sup> dicemus.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Gala*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Burges*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Andilegum*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> *Cale*, Beda, i.e. Chelles.

<sup>b</sup> i.e. in Book IX.; see above, § 34.

- Bed. iii. 9. § 39. Eo quoque tempore Oswald, cum regnasset ix. annos, internumerato illo anno aliorum prædicto, occisus est etiam a Penda strenuo, commisso gravi prælio apud Masefeld<sup>1</sup> anno ætatis suæ xxxvii., quinto Augusti, unde dicitur, "Campus Masefeld<sup>2</sup> sanctorum canduit "ossibus." Occulto autem Dei judicio invisì Deo pagani dilectos ejus mactaverunt, et escas volatilibus cœli dederunt. In loco autem cædis illius miracula usque hodie fiunt. Successit vero regi sancto frater ejus Oswi, regnans xxviii. annis in provincia Bernitiorum. Sed in provincia Deirorum Oswine, filius Osrici regis de quo prædictum est, vii. annos regnavit. Ingravescens vero causis, cum reges simul conflicturi essent apud Wilfaresdune, id est, mons Wilfari, et est a vico Cataractone x. ferme millibus contra solstitialem occasum: videns se Oswine imparem viribus, remittens exercitum, abscondit se in domo Hunwaldi comitis, quem sibi amicissimum putabat, cum uno tantum milite, . . . . . nomine Tondhere. Sed . . . . . ab eodem comite proditus est Oswine, et detestanda omnibus morte cum eodem milite per præfectum ejus Edwinum<sup>3</sup> interfectus est in Gedingum,<sup>4</sup> ubi pro utriusque regis anima, id est, occisi . . . . . et ejus qui occidere jussit, ecclesia constructa est. Erat autem rex Oswine aspectu venustus, statura sublimis, affatu jocundus, moribus civilis, manu . . . . . largus: et ideo ab omnibus dilectus, et a nobilibus cujusque provinciæ frequentatus. De cujus humilitate digna relatu inter sancti Aidani sibi dilectissimi opera referemus. Secundo autem anno Oswi regis successit patri magno Paulino Itamar episcopus in Rovensi ecclesia.
- Bed. iii. 14. § 40. Tunc temporis, regno Orientalium Anglorum, post Erwaldum Redwaldi successorem, Sigbert frater ejus preerat, homo religiosus. Qui in Gallia, exulans pro inimicitia Redwaldi baptizatus fuerat; rexque

Oswald is defeated and slain at Maserfeld.

A.D. 642.  
Oswy succeeds him in Bernicia.

A.D. 651.  
Oswine, reigning in Deira, is put to death by order of Oswy.

A.D. 629.  
Progress of religion in East Anglia.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>, in utroque loco; Masefeld, A. G.  
<sup>2</sup> Masefeld, A.

<sup>3</sup> Edwinum, Beda.  
<sup>4</sup> Ingellingum, Beda.

A.D. 629. factus, ut in Gallia viderat, scholas puerorum instituit, juvante se Felice episcopo. Ad quem sanctus Furseus de Bed. iii. 19. Hibernia veniens, nobiliter susceptus est. Rex autem tantum Deo adhesit, ut cognato suo Ecgrice<sup>1</sup> regno commendato monasterium intraret et tonsuram acciperet. Post multos autem annos coegerunt eum exire contra regem Pendam. Ille tamen non nisi virgam in Bed. iii. 18. manu habebat in prælio. Occisus est igitur cum rege Ecgrice et exercitu; quibus successit Anna filius Eni de regio genere, vir bonus et bonæ pater sobolis, quem etiam Penda postea occidit. Felici autem episcopo Orientalium Anglorum successit Thomas; post quem Bed. iii. 20. Bonifacius. Hos omnes cum ordinasset Honorius archiepiscopus, mortuus est; cui Deusdedit sextus archiepiscopus Kentensis successit, ordinatus ab Itamar<sup>2</sup> Rovensi episcopo. Itamaro<sup>3</sup> vero successit Damianus.

Death of  
Sigebert;  
Anna suc-  
ceeds him,  
A.D. 635.

Section 6.  
Conversion  
of the Mid-  
land Angles  
and Mer-  
ciana.

Penda, son  
of Penda,  
baptised  
by bishop  
Finan,  
A.D. 653.

§ 41. SEXTA PARS sequitur de conversione Mid- Bed. iii. 21. engle, id est, Mediterraneorum Anglorum, sub principe Peda, quem pater illi genti præfecerat, 'et de conversione Merciorum per regem Oswinum facta.' Dederat namque rex Oswi Pedæ filio Pendæ regis filiam suam, eo pacto ut Christianus efficeretur. Hoc etiam maxime factum est persuasione Alfredi filii Oswi regis, qui sororem ejus duxerat Cineburgam filiam Pendæ. Baptizatus est ergo Peda cum suis a Finano episcopo, . . . . . in vico . . . . . qui vocatur Ad Murum. Acceptisque presbyteris secum Ceadda, et Abda<sup>5</sup> et Betti,<sup>6</sup> et Diuma, reversus est ad propria. Nec prohibuit Penda quin de sua, hoc est, Merciorum natione crederent qui vellent, temnebatque credentes et male viventes. Post biennium vero conversi sunt Mercii hoc modo. Oswi namque rex, cum irruptiones Pendæ regis Bed. iii. 24. intolerabiles ferre non posset, obtulit ei munera innumera; Penda vero strenuus, quia gentem ejus ex-

<sup>1</sup> *Ecgnice*, A. G.

<sup>2</sup> *Idamar*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Itamaro*, A.

<sup>4</sup> 'desunt in Sav.

<sup>5</sup> *Cedd*, *Adda*, *Beda*.

<sup>6</sup> *C<sup>2</sup>*; *Becti*, A.

Bed. iii. 24. terminare decreverat, munera spreuit. Igitur Oswi, A.D. 654. supremis accensus doloribus, ait: "Si paganus nescit accipere nostra donaria, offeramus ei qui novit, . . . "Deo." . . Vovit ergo se filiam suam Deo sacraturam, et xii. prædia monasteriis danda, et sic cum paucis multos aggressus est. Denique fertur quia trecies majorem pagani habuerunt exercitum; siquidem ipsi xxx. legiones ducibus nobilissimis instructas in bello habuere, quibus Oswius rex cum Alfrido filio, perparvum, ut dixi, habens exercitum, sed Christo duce confusus, occurrit. Nam alius filius ejus Egfrid eo tempore in provincia Merciorum apud reginam Cynewissem obses tenebatur. Filius autem Oswaldi regis Dilwald,<sup>1</sup> qui eis auxilio esse debuerat, in parte erat adversariorum, eisdemque contra patriam et patrum suum pugnaturus ductor extiterat; quamvis in ipso tempore pugnandi sese pugnae subtraxerat, eventumque discriminis tuto in loco exspectabat. Inito ergo certamine fugati sunt et cæsi pagani, duces xxx.; Deus enim omnipotens cum suis aderat, dissolvitque fortitudinem regis Pendæ, solitumque robur nervorum brachiis ejus dempsit, et cor magnanimum contabescere jussit. Igitur nec se in ictibus suis cognovit, nec armis hostium impenetrabilis fuit; stupuitque hostes tales esse, qualis ipse hostibus esse solebat, se vero talem quales illi esse solebant. Qui ergo semper alienum sanguinem fuderat, sensit quod egerat, dum jam cruore suo terram imbuit et cerebro respersit. Ergo qui ad auxilium ejus venerant pæne sunt omnes interfecti; in quibus Adelered<sup>2</sup> frater Annæ regis Orientalium Anglorum qui post eum regnavit, auctor ipse belli, perditis militibus sive auxiliis interemptus est. Et quia prope fluvium Winwed pugnatum est, qui tunc per inundantiam pluviarum late alveum suum immo omnes ripas suas transierat, contigit ut multo plures aqua fugientes quam bellantes perderet ensis.

The vow of Oswy.

Battle of Winwidfeld. Pendæ defeated and slain, A.D. 655.

§ 42. Igitur Elfleda filia Oswi regis monachata est in Herten,<sup>3</sup> id est, insula cervi. Deinde, constructo

Founding of the monastery of Hartlepool.

<sup>1</sup> *Edilwald, A<sup>2</sup>; Etilwald, C<sup>3</sup>; A<sup>4</sup> Edilwald, F.; Oidilwald, Beda.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ædilheri, Beda.*

<sup>3</sup> *C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; Erteu, A.; Herten, F.*

A.D. 655. monasterio in Streneshalh,<sup>1</sup> abbatissa ibidem obiit, ubi sepultus est pater ejus Oswi, et mater ejus Enflad, et pater matris ejus Eadwine. Tribus igitur annis post mortem Pendæ rexit Oswi gentem Merciorum, et ceteras Australes provincias, gentemque Pictorum ex parte magna.<sup>2</sup> Dedit etiam Pedæ filio Pendæ, cognato suo, regnum Australium Merciorum, qui sunt . . . familiarum v. millium, discreti fluvio<sup>3</sup> Trente ab Aquilonaribus Mercis, qui sunt familiarum vii. millium. Peda autem proditione conjugis suæ occisus est. Oswio igitur regi gentes Merciorum tribus annis subjectæ fuerunt, quæ, desecto capite perfido, ad fidei Cristianæ gratiam per eum conversæ sunt. Igitur Diuna factus est episcopus Midelengle et Merciorum et Lindisfarorum; qui ibidem defunctus est. Cui successit Coellec,<sup>4</sup> qui ad Scotos unde venerat rediit. Sed post tres annos duces Merciorum rebellantes Uulfere filium Pendæ in regem levaverunt. Quo regnante, xvii. annis fuit primus episcopus Trumhere, secundus Jaruman, tertius Ceadda,<sup>5</sup> quartus Wilfrid.<sup>6</sup>

Diuna  
bishop in  
Mercia.

Re-conver-  
sion of the  
East Saxons.  
A.D. 653.

Cedd leaves  
East Anglia,  
and be-  
comes their  
bishop.

§ 43. Tunc quoque iterum Orientales Saxones, qui olim Mellitum expulerant, iterum conversi sunt. Erat enim rex ejusdem gentis Sigbert, qui post Siberum cognomento Parvum regnavit, amicus . . . Oswi regis; ad quem cum sæpe veniret, et prædicaretur ab eo, baptizatus est . . . a Finano episcopo in vico Ad Murum, qui est xiii. millibus a mari orientali. Vocatus autem Ceadda a Middelenglis factus est episcopus super Estsexe. Baptizabatque maxime in civitate Ithamcestre, quæ est in ripa Pentæ amnis, et in Tilaburt, quæ est in ripa Thamasis. Consuli ergo cuidam pro illicito conjugio vetuit omnium communionem; quod contemnens rex pranduit cum eo; revertensque obviantis episcopi cecidit ad pedes. Quem jacentem

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *Streneshald*, A.; *Streneshale*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *ex magna parte*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *fluvii*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Cellach*, Beda.

*Ceaddan*, A. G.

<sup>6</sup> *Wynfridus*, Beda.

iratus virga tangens, prædixit eum in ipsa domo moriturum. Contigitque ut consul prædictus et frater A.D. 653.

ejus eum in ipsa domo interficerent; dixeruntque se id fecisse quia nimis mitis erat, et parcens hostibus. Successit autem Sigberto Swithelm, baptizatus ab Ced in Estanglia in Redlesham, id est, mansio Rendli. Suscepitque eum de lavacro Adelwold rex ipsius gentis,

Bed. iii. 23. frater Annæ, regis eorumdem. Adelwold vero filius Oswaldi rex Deirorum eidem Ced episcopo tribuit locum ad Lestingæu monasterii faciendi. Quo constructo cum illuc ab Estsexe sæpe rediret, tempore mortalitatis ibidem obiit. Cui successit in episcopatu frater ejus Ceadda..

He founds the monastery of Lestingham. A.D. 648.

Bed. iii. 25. § 44. Interea . . . Finan episcopus in insula Lindisfarnensi ecclesiam fecit, . . . totam de secto robore.

Quam cum postea Theodorus archiepiscopus dedicasset, Egbert episcopus ibidem plumbo parietes et tectum operuit. Finano defuncto, successit Colman, qui male servabat Pascha, sicut Aidanus et Finan. Igitur inde disputatum est coram Oswi rege et Aldfrido<sup>1</sup> rege filio ejus. Hinc erat Colmannus et Ced episcopus prædictus, inde Albertus<sup>2</sup> episcopus Occidentalium Saxonum, qui ad Aldfridum regem amicus ejus venerat, et Jacobus diaconus Paulini. Quorum digne pars prevaluit. Ced

A.D. 661. Dispute at Whitby on the right observance of Easter. A.D. 664.

Bed. iii. 26. igitur postea rectum Pascha servabat; Colman vero cum parte ossium patris Aidani, nolens mutare sectam, in patriam reversus est. Cui successit Tudda in episcopatu Nordhumbre. Eata vero prius custos, postea episcopus factus est Lindisfarnensis. Hi autem tres episcopi Scotorum, Aidan, Finan, Colman, miræ sanctitudinis fuerunt et parsimonie. Nec enim potentes sæculi suscipiebant, qui ad eos nisi orandi causa non veniebant. Rex ipse cum v. vel vi. ministris, cum orasset, vel discedebat, vel cibo fratrum utebatur. Adeo autem sacerdotes erant illius temporis ab avaritia

Colman retires to Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> *Alefrido*, C<sup>9</sup>. F.

| <sup>2</sup> *Agilbertus*, Beda.

A.D. 684. immunes, ut nec territoria nisi eo acti<sup>1</sup> acciperent. Nec longe post facta est eclipsis solis die tertio . . . Maii, Bed. iii. 27. hora . . . decima diei; quam gravis pestilentia secuta est, Britanniam et Hiberniam magna strage devastans. Qua plaga Tuda episcopus mortuus est, et sepultus in Wemalet.<sup>2</sup>

Wilfrid is consecrated a bishop for Northumbria in France. A.D. 684.

§ 45. Alfrid vero filius Oswi jam regnans in parte Bed. iii. 28. regni patris misit Wilfridum presbyterum ad regem Galliarum, ut eum . . . consecrari faceret episcopum; quem Ailbertus prædictus, jam tunc præsul Parisius, cum plurimis episcopis honorifice consecravit, in vico qui vocatur Compendium. Rex autem Oswi imitatus industriam filii sui misit Ceaddam presbyterum, quia archiepiscopus jam obierat, ad Wine episcopum Occidentalium Saxonum, qui ab eo ordinatus est episcopus Eboracensis ecclesiæ. Cedda igitur episcopus Aidanum magistrum suum cœpit sequi, et exemplum Ced fratris sui, pergens non equo sed pedibus, instans lectioni, studens veritati, amicus castitatis, servus humilitatis. Veniens quoque Britanniam Wilfrid jam episcopus, doctrina sua multa ecclesiæ Anglorum contulit.

And Chad also.

§ 46. Post Swithelm regem Estsexe cum Sighere et Bed. iii. 30. Sebbi regnarent, pro præfata mortalitate Sighere et gens sua ad idola reversi sunt. Rex autem Wlfher<sup>3</sup> mittens ad eos Jaruman episcopum revocavit eos ad fidem per eum feliciter. Tunc quoque regibus Anglorum Bed. iii. 29. nobilissimis Oswi et Egbert misit papa Vitalianus literas, requisitus de statu ecclesiæ et Paschæ. Nec longe post misit eis Theodorum archiepiscopum. Bed. iv. 1.

The faith restored in Essex.

A.D. 687.

§ 47. Theodorus post Damianum ordinavit Puttam Bed. iv. 2. Roffi<sup>4</sup> episcopum. Regis etiam Wferi<sup>5</sup> petitione,<sup>6</sup> Cead- Bed. iv. 3. dam transtulit a monasterio quod est in Lestinge ad

A.D. 688. Theodorus is made primate.

<sup>1</sup> coacti, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Weinalet, C<sup>3</sup>.; Wemalet, A<sup>2</sup>.; Pagnalaech, Beda.

<sup>3</sup> Ulfhere, C<sup>3</sup>.; Uulfhere, F.

<sup>4</sup> Hrofi, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> Wfheri, C<sup>3</sup>.; Vulferi, A<sup>2</sup>.; Wlferi, F.

<sup>6</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; petitionem, A.

- episcopium Licheffeld<sup>1</sup> ubi miraculis claruit quæ suo loco dicentur.<sup>a</sup> Oswio autem rege infirmitate defuncto, regnante Egfrido filio ejus anno tertio coegit Theodorus concilium cum cæteris episcopis, cujus decreta in ultimo librorum ponentur.<sup>b</sup> Post hæc, offensus . . . . per quandam inobedientiam, Theodorus Winfridum episcopum Merciorum deposuit, pro quo Sexwlfum ordinavit. Londoniæ etiam Erchenwaldum constituit episcopum, tempore Sebbi et Sighere regum prædictorum, cujus miracula suo loco scribentur.<sup>c</sup> Eo tempore Edelred rex Merciorum Cantiam vastavit, Roffam destruxit; Putta episcopus aufugit. Huic Chichelmus successit. Anno eodem cometa apparuit tribus mensibus mane.

§ 48. Egfridus rex Nordhumbre fugavit Wlfridum ab episcopio, loco cujus Bosa Deirorum provinciam, Eata Bernitorum, suscepit; hic . . . . Eboraci, ille in Agustaldensi, vel Lindisfarnensi ecclesia. Tunc etiam Eadheld<sup>4</sup> in provincia Lindisfarorum<sup>3</sup> quam nuperrime rex Egfrid, superato . . . . Wlfere, obtinuerat, ordinatus episcopus; et hunc primum eadem provincia proprium accepit præsulem, secundum Alwinum, tertium Eadgarum, quartum Kinebertum, quem in præsentem habet, inquit Beda. Habebat enim ante Eadhedum antistitem Sexulfum, qui etiam Merciorum et Middel-Angle simul episcopus fuit; unde et expulsus de Lindissi, in illarum provinciarum regimine permansit. Ordinati sunt autem Eadheld, et Bosa, et Eata Eboraci a . . . . Theodore; qui etiam post annos iii. abscissionis Wilfridi, horum numero duos addidit antistites, Trumbertum ad ecclesiam Hagustaltensem, remanente Eata ad Lindisfarnensem, et Trumwine ad provinciam Pictorum, quæ tunc . . . . Anglis erat . . . . subjecta. Eadhedum de Lindissi reversum, eo quod rex Adelred provinciam recepisset, Ripensi ecclesiæ præfecit.

<sup>1</sup> *Lichfeld*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *Licesfeld*, F.

<sup>2</sup> *Eadhed*, A<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Lindisfarorum*, A.

<sup>a</sup> The reference is to the author's Book IX., *De Miraculis*. See Introduction, § 8.

<sup>b</sup> From this it appears that Henry contemplated the addition of a book

containing documents to his History; the design, however, was not carried out. See above, § 5, n.

<sup>c</sup> See above, note <sup>a</sup>.

A.D. 681.  
Section 7.  
Conversion  
of the South  
Saxons by  
Wilfrid.

He teaches  
the people  
to fish.

King Ædil-  
wald gives  
him land at  
Selsey.

A.D. 685.

§ 49. SEPTIMA PARS sequitur de conversione Austra- Bed. iv. 13.  
lium Saxonum facta per Wlfridum episcopum. Qui ab  
episcopio pulsus, ut supra dixi, Roma petita Britan-  
niam rediit, et Australes Saxones, qui sunt familiarum  
vii. millium, ad fidem convertit. Rex autem eorum  
Adilwalut<sup>1</sup> paulo ante baptizatus fuerat in provincia  
Merciorum, suasionem regis Wfere,<sup>2</sup> a quo etiam de lavacro  
susceptus est. In cujus signum adoptionis dederat illi Vectam  
. . . . insulam, et Meamparorum provinciam in gente Oc-  
cidentalium Saxonum. Concedente igitur immo . . . gau-  
dente rege, Wilfridus prædicans primo duces et milites,  
deinde plebem sacro fonte abluit. Ipsa igitur die populo  
imber affluxit, qui tribus cessaverat annis, unde fames  
acerbissima plebem . . . . prostraverat. Denique ferunt  
quia sæpe xl. simul aut l. inedia homines macerati, procederent  
ad precipitium aliquod sive ripam maris, et junctis misere  
manibus, pariter omnes aut ruina perituri aut fluctibus absor-  
bendi deciderent. Sed baptismate simul et pluvia ad-  
veniente, reffloruit terra, rediit viridantibus arvis annus lætus  
et frugifer. Sic et cor omnium et caro omnium exultaverunt  
in Deum vivum. Docuit etiam eos antistes piscari. Nec  
enim prius nisi ad anguillas tantum piscari sciebant. Col-  
lectis igitur retibus, misit se in mare, et mox trecentis  
piscibus captis, centum pauperibus dedit, et centum his  
quorum erant retia, centum in suos usus reservavit.  
Quod videns populus libentius ejus verbis celestia bona  
sperare ceperunt, cujus ministerio temporalia bona sumpserunt.  
Dedit autem ei rex Aelwald insulam lxxx<sup>ta</sup>. vj. fami-  
liarum, nomine Selesheu, id est, insula vituli marini. Cir-  
cumdatur undique mari, præter fundæ jactum ab  
occidente; qualis locus a Latinis Peninsula, a Græcis Cher-  
ronesos vocatur. Ibi ergo Wlfrid, fundato templo, v. annis  
fuit, id est, usque ad mortem Egfrid regis, ubi servos  
suos et ancillas ccl. Christianos fecit et liberos. In-  
terea Ceadwalla, juvenis de regio genere Gevissorum, Bed. iv. 15.  
exulans interfecit regem Adelwald; sed mox expulsus est  
a ducibus regis Berctuno et Anduno, qui prius regnave-

<sup>1</sup> Adilwaludh, F.

| <sup>2</sup> Wlfhere, C<sup>s</sup>. F.

runt.<sup>a</sup> Sed cum Cedwalla esset rex Gevissorum, priorem occidit, et provinciam graviter vexavit, tam ipse quam successor ejus; unde toto illo tempore, revocato domum Wlfrido, proprio caruit antistite, et episcopo Wentæ subjecti sunt. A.D. 685.

Bed. iv. 16. § 50. Cedwalla rex debellavit insulam Vectam, adhuc idolatram, et secundum votum quartam partem dedit Wilfrido episcopo, qui tunc forte de gente sua supeveniens aderat. Est autem insula mille ducentarum familiarum, unde data est episcopo possessio . . . trecentarum familiarum. Duos autem filios Arwaldi regis insulæ occisi, jam post patrem occidendos, fecit abbas Redford, id est "Vadum harundinis," prius baptizari, concessione Cedwaldi. Sic conversa est Vecta, ultima regionum Britanniae. Hoc ergo ordine postquam omnes Britanniarum provinciae fidem Christi susceperant, Theodorus archiepiscopus ad confirmandam fidem tam recentium quam veterum concilium constituit, cum episcopis Britanniae de fide Catholica tractaturus; et tractatum synodalibus literis aeternae memoriae commendavit. Quas literas in exordio sequentis libri, quem de gestis regum Anglorum fidelium, usque ad adventum et bella Dacorum, perdicturi sumus, dignum duxi praepondere; hujus namque libri partes omnes secundum ordinem propositum pertractatae sunt. A.D. 686.  
Cædwalla overruns the Isle of Wight, and gives a quarter of the island to bishop Wilfrid.  
  
This is the last English country to receive Christianity.  
  
Archbishop Theodore convenes a council.

*Explicit liber tertius.*

*Incipit liber Quartus De Regno Anglorum.*

#### LIB. IV. DE REGNO ANGLORUM.

Bed. iv. 17. § 1. "In nomine Domini nostri Jesu Christi Salvatoris nostri, imperantibus dominis nostris piissimis Egfrido rege Hymbronensium, anno decimo regni ejus, et Centwino rege Westsexe anno quinto regni ejus, et Edelfredo rege Merciorum anno sexto regni ejus, et Aldulfo rege Est-Anglorum anno xvi<sup>to</sup> regni ejus, et Lothario rege Cantuariorum, anno A.D. 680.  
Synodal letter of the council of Heathfield.

<sup>a</sup> *prius regnaverunt*] Henry has misunderstood the meaning of this passage. Beda does not say that Berctun and Andun had "previously reigned," but that, after driving out Caedwalla, they "deinceps regnum provinciae tenuerunt."

A.D. 680. " vii<sup>o</sup> regni ejus, sub die xv<sup>a</sup> Kalendarum Octobrium, indio- Bed. iv. 17.  
 " tione viii,<sup>1</sup> præsidente Theodoro gratia Dei archiepiscopo  
 " Britanniae insulae et civitatis Dorovernensis, una cum eo  
 " sedentibus cæteris episcopis Britanniae insulae viris vene-  
 " rabilibus, præpositis sacrosanctis Evangeliiis, in loco qui  
 " Saxonico vocabulo Hatfeld<sup>2</sup> nominatur, pariter tractantes,  
 " fidem rectam et orthodoxam exposuimus, sicut Dominus  
 " noster Jesus Christus incarnatus tradidit discipulis suis,  
 " qui præsentialiter viderunt et audierunt sermones ejus, atque  
 " sanctorum patrum tradidit Symbolum, et generaliter omnes  
 " sanctae et universales synodi et omnis probabilium Catholicarum  
 " ecclesiae doctorum chorus. Nos itaque sequentes eos pie  
 " atque orthodoxe juxta divinitus inspiratam doctrinam eorum  
 " professi credimus constanter et confitemur, secundum sanctos  
 " patres, proprie et veraciter Patrem et Filium et Spiritum  
 " Sanctum Trinitatem in unitate consubstantiali, et unitatem  
 " in Trinitate, hoc est, unum Deum in tribus subsistentibus  
 " personis et consubstantialibus, aequalis gloriae et honoris."  
 Et post multa hujusmodi quae ad rectae fidei confessionem  
 pertinebant, haec quoque sancta synodus suis litteris addit<sup>3</sup>:  
 " Suscepimus sanctas et universales quinque synodos beatorum  
 " et Deo acceptabilium patrum, id est, qui in Nicæa congregati  
 " fuerunt cccxviii. contra Arrium impissimum et ejusdem  
 " dogmata, et in Constantinopoli cl. contra vesaniam Macedonii  
 " et Endoxii et eorum dogmata, et in Epheso prima co. contra  
 " nequissimum Nestorium et ejus dogmata, et in Chalcedone  
 " dc.<sup>4</sup> contra Eutychen et Nestorium et eorum dogmata; et  
 " iterum in Constantinopoli quinto congregati sunt concilio  
 " in tempore Justiniani Minoris contra Theodorum et Theo-  
 " doreti<sup>5</sup> et Ibæ epistolas et eorum dogmata contra Cyrillum."  
 Et paulo post: " Et synodum quae facta est in urbe Roma in  
 " tempore Martini papae beatissimi, indictione prima, imperante  
 " Constantino piissimo anno nono, suscepimus; et glorificamus  
 " Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum sicut ipsi glorificaverunt,  
 " nihil addentes vel subtrahentes; et anathematizamus corde  
 " et ore quos anathematizaverunt, et quos suscepimus sus-  
 " cepimus, glorificantes Deum Patrem sine initio, et Filium  
 " ejus unigenitum ex Patre generatum ante saecula, et Spiritum  
 " Sanctum procedentem ex Patre et Filio inenarrabiliter, si-  
 " cut prædicaverunt hi quos memoravimus supra, sancti apos-  
 " toli et prophetae et doctores; et nos omnes subscripsimus, qui  
 " cum Theodoro archiepiscopo fidem Catholicam exposuimus."

<sup>1</sup> septima, Sav.<sup>2</sup> Watfeld, Sav.<sup>3</sup> addidit, F.<sup>4</sup> dc<sup>rum</sup> xxx<sup>ta</sup>, F.<sup>5</sup> Teoderitum, F.

Bed. iv. 18. § 2. Intererat autem huic synodo Johannes archicantator ecclesiæ S. Petri Romæ, et abbas . . . S. Martini, qui nuper inde venerat jussu papæ Agathonis, cum Benedicto abbate venerabili. Benedictus autem construxerat monasterium S. Petro juxta ostium fluminis Wiri. Qui Romam profectus ad confirmandum privilegium templi illius ex concessione regis Egberti, rediens Johannem prædictum secum adduxit. Hujus Benedicti successor fuit Ceolfridus abbas, sub quo Beda deguit. Ibi ergo Johannes cantare docuit Romano more, et decreta synodi Martini papæ, ubi ipse interfuerat, ibi scripta reliquit. Repetens vero Romam relaturus qualitatem fidei Anglorum, in via mortuus est, et Turonis sepultus.

A.D. 680.  
Monks  
Wearmouth  
founded by  
Benedict  
Biscop.

§ 3. Nunc igitur, his ita pertractatis, redeundum est ad contextum historiæ regum Anglorum quem in fine libri secundi desecimus: connectendusque est illi tractatui tractatus iste, ut in directum protendatur narratio.

Chr. E. Centwino igitur Occidentalium Saxonum rege defuncto, Cedwalla post eum regnans, auxilio Mul fratris sui, insulam Vectam suam viribus suis fecit; namque frater ejus Mul laudabilis et graciosus, terribilis erat viribus, et decorus aspectu: ideoque et omnibus amabilis erat, et famæ prærogativa clarissimus. Perrexerunt ergo fratres prædicti in Centensem provinciam, causa virium suarum exercitandarum et famæ ampliandæ. Ipsi namque necdum baptizati erant, quamvis prædecessores eorum et populus omnis Christi<sup>1</sup> essent. Igitur ingredientes Cent, nullo obsistente, prædati<sup>2</sup>

A.D. 686.  
Reign of  
Cedwalla.

Chr. E. sunt totam provinciam. Cedwalla namque cum regnum suum invaderet, Lotarius, rex Cantix, regnum suum moriens deseruit. Vulneratus namque est rex impiger Lotarius in pugna Australinm Saxonum, quos contra eum Eadric filius Egberti aggregaverat, et vulnere immenitate inter medendum defunctus est. Ac post eum idem

A.D. 685.  
Deaths of  
Lothaire  
king of  
Kent,

<sup>1</sup> Christiani, A. F.

| <sup>2</sup> deprædati, A. F.

A.D. 685. Eadric anno uno et dimidio, sine amore et reverentia Bed. iv. 28.  
Centensium, regnavit.

and of  
Egfrid of  
Northumbria.

who had  
invaded the  
land of the  
Picts against  
the admoni-  
tion of St.  
Cuthbert.

§ 4. Eo quoque tempore Egfridus rex Nordhumbre mortuus est. Miserat namque anno præcedente Hiberniam ducem Berctum cum exercitu, qui misere gentem innoxiam et nationi Anglorum semper amicam vastavit. At Hiberni, et pro posse suo repugnantes, et divinæ auxilium pietatis invocantes, cœlitus se vindicari continuis Deum imprecationibus postulabant. Et quamvis maledici regnum Dei possidere non possint, creditum est tamen quod ii qui merito impietatis suæ maledicebantur, ocuis Domino vindice poenas sui reatus luerent. Siquidem anno post hunc proximo, idem rex, cum temere exercitum ad vastandum Pictorum provinciam duxisset, multum prohibentibus amicis, et maxime beatæ memoriæ Cudberto,<sup>1</sup> qui nuper fuerat ordinatus episcopus, (anno namque eodem fecerat eum rex idem Lindisfarnensem episcopum,) introductus est, simulantibus fugam hostibus, in angustias inaccessorum montium, et cum maxima parte copiarum quam secum adduxerat, extinctus: datumque est illi, ne audiret amicos revocantes se, quia noluerat audire . . . . . patrem Egbertum, ne Scotiam nil se lædentem impugnaret. Exinde spes cœpit et virtus . . . Anglo-Virg. Æn. ii. 169. rum fluere, et retro sublapsa referri: nam et Picti terram suam, cujus partem tenebant Angli, recuperaverunt; Brittones quoque nonnullam libertatem receperunt, quam hactenus habent. Vir autem Domini Trumwine abbas Ebercurni, positi quidem in regione Anglorum, sed juxta fretum quod Anglorum terras Pictorumque disternat, fugit inde, et in monasterio Streneshal sæpe dicto obiit. Successit autem Egfrido in regnum Alfrid, vir in Scripturis doctissimus, qui frater ejus et filius regis Oswi esse dicebatur: destructumque regni statum, quamvis intra fines angustiores, nobiliter recuperavit.

A.D. 687.  
Kent laid  
waste by  
the West  
Saxons,  
under Mul.

§ 5. Cedwalla secundo anno regni sui misit fratrem Chr. E.  
suum Mul fortissimum, et juvenes cum eo fortissimos, prædatum Cent, petitione ejusdem fratris sui.<sup>2</sup> Allexerat enim eum præteriti anni lucrum gloriosum, et famæ pretium non exosum. Pergens igitur in Cent, non invenit qui ei resisteret, et terram prædando in

<sup>1</sup> A. G.; *Cuthbert*, Sav., M. H. B. | <sup>2</sup> *sui Mul*, A.

solitudinem redigens, et Christi servos immeritos A.D. 687.  
 affligens, maledicta eorum merita sensit. Nam cum  
 hostes effœminatos duceret, et nihil sibi pro viribus  
 prœvideret, irruit in domum quandam longe a suis cum  
 duodecim tantum militibus prœdaturus; ubi inopinata  
 multitudo circumventus, cum hostes interficiendo  
 non deficeret nec proficeret, qui armis cœdi non pote-  
 rat, in ipsa domo cum duodecim militibus suis igne  
 combustus est. Periit ergo flos juvenum, et juvenilis  
 evanuit exercitus. Unde comparet quam nihili sit  
 confidentia fortitudinis ad Dei omnipotentiam. Hæc  
 audiens Cedwalla rursus ingressus est Cantiam, ubi  
 mirabili cæde et innumera satiatu rapina, cum non  
 inveniret quid cæderet vel raperet, ad sua magnus  
 vindex et victor sævus rediit.

Chr. E.

Bed. v. 7.

Cedwalla rex cum duobus annis regnasset, se reg- A.D. 688.  
 numque suum abdicans propter Deum regnumque per- Abdication,  
pilgrimage,  
and death of  
Cedwalla.  
 petuum, Romam petiit; illud gloriæ singularis sibi  
 æstimans si ibi baptizaretur et moreretur. Sergius  
 ergo papa baptizavit eum, et ex nomine apostoli Pe-  
 trum vocavit. Rex vero, secundum votum, infra sep-  
 tem dies in albis mortuus est, duodecimo Kal. Maii, et  
 sepultus est in ecclesia S. Petri; super quem scriptum A.D. 689.  
20 Apr.  
 est hoc epitaphium:—

Culmen, opes, sobolem, pollentia regna, triumphos,  
 Exuvias, proceres, mœnia, castra, lares,  
 Quæque patrum virtus, et quæ congesserat ipse  
 Cedwal<sup>1</sup> armipotens<sup>2</sup> liquit amore Dei:  
 Ut Petrum sedemque Petri rex cerneret hospes,  
 Cujus fonte meras sumeret almus aquas:  
 Splendificumque jubar radianti carperet haustu,  
 Ex quo vivificus fulgor ubique fluit.  
 Percipiensque alacer redivivæ præmia vitæ,  
 Barbaricam rabiem, nomen et inde suum,  
 Conversus convertit ovans: Petrumque vocari  
 Sergius antistes jussit, ut<sup>3</sup> ipse pater

<sup>1</sup> *Ceadwal*, F.<sup>2</sup> F., Beda; *omnipotens*, Sav.<sup>3</sup> *et*, F.

Fonte renascentis, quem Christi gratia purgans,  
 Protinus albatum vexit in arce poli.  
 Mira fides regis, clementia maxima Christi,  
 Cujus consilium nullus adire potest.  
 Sospes enim veniens supremo ex orbe Britanni  
 Per varias gentes, per freta, perque vias,  
 Urbem Romuleam vidit, templumque verendum  
 Aspexit Petri, mystica dona gerens.  
 Candidus inter oves Christi sociabilis ibit,  
 Corpore nam tumultum, mente superna tenet.  
 Commutasse magis sceptrorum insignia credas,  
 Quem regnum Christi promernuisse vides.

A.D. 688. § 6. Inc regnavit post hunc super Westsexe XXXVII.<sup>1</sup> Chr. C.  
 annis. Inc fuit filius Cenred, filii Ceolwold: Ceolwold vel G.

A.D. 690.  
 Death of  
 archbishop  
 Theodore.  
 A.D. 692.

fuit frater Cinewold,<sup>a</sup> fueruntque ambo filii Cudwine,  
 filii Ccauling, filii Chenric, filii Certic. Hujus regis Chr. E.  
 anno secundo Theodorus archiepiscopus, XXII. anno  
 episcopatus sui, transiit: cujus loco Britwold abbas Bed. v. 8.  
 Raculf electus est, et sacratus archiepiscopus. Ad hoc  
 usque tempus fuerunt Romani archiepiscopi: exinde  
 fuerunt Angli. Ipse vero Britwoldus ordinavit Tobiam  
 Rovensem episcopum, Latina, Græca, et Saxonica lingua  
 . . . . . multipliciter instructum. Eo tempore erant Chr. E.  
 duo reges in Cent, non tam secundum stirpem regiam  
 quam secundum invasionem: scilicet Uithred<sup>2 b</sup> et  
 Webhard.

Two kings  
 in Kent.

<sup>1</sup> F.; xxxviii., A.

| <sup>2</sup> C. F.; Nithred, A. C<sup>2</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Cinwold] In the Chronicles "Cynegils." This variation of the significant termination of a proper name is of frequent occurrence in Saxon names.

<sup>b</sup> Uithred] This is certainly the true reading; the king meant is Beda's Vietred. Beda (H. E. v. 8) speaks of Vietred and Suabhard as reigning in Kent together. Henry evidently conceived of Wihtried, whom he names in the next sen-

tence, as the legitimate king, and Webhard as an intruder; and this view is countenanced by the list of Kentish kings in Florence, which contains Wihtried, but is silent respecting Webhard. But Henry absurdly supposed Uithred to be also an intruder, and a different person from Wihtried, a notion to which his authorities give no countenance whatever.

- Chr. C.  
vel G. Ine VI. anno regnante, legitimus rex Centensis Withred confortatus in regno, religione simul et industria suam gentem ab extranea invasione liberavit. Withred namque fuit filius Egbrith, filii Erchenbrith, filii Eadbald, filii Edelbrith. Tenuit autem regnum Centense xxxii. annis nobiliter et pacifice. Anno eodem Ine rex castrorum acies ordinatas et terribiles in Cantiam deduxit, vindicaturus combustionem Mul cognati sui. Rex autem Withred obviam ei affuit, non cum feroci arrogantia, sed pacifica supplicatione; non cum freudentibus minis, sed rhetorici mellis dulcedine, qua regi fero persuasit ut, armis depositis, multam pecuniæ a Centensibus acciperet pro cæde juvenis; et sic lis finita ruit, pax confirmata revixit. Rex vero Centensis abhinc semper in pace regnavit. Tertio post hunc anno Mercii, qui dicuntur etiam Sudhumbri, turpe scelus commiserunt; reginam namque Ostridam, uxorem Edelredi regis sui et Egfridi regis sororem, inhumane occiderunt. A.D. 694.  
  
Long reign  
of Withred.  
Hostilities  
between  
Ine and  
Withred
- Chr. E. § 7. Ine XI. anno regnante, Bertus<sup>1</sup> prædictus consul Egfridi sensit maledicta Hibernensium, quorum ecclesias destruxerat, sicut et dominus suus senserat. Sicut enim Egfridus rex ingressus terram Pictorum cædem ibi pertulit, ita et iste, ingressus terram eorundem vindicaturus dominum suum, ab iisdem occiditur. Circa hoc tempus ab Incarnatione Domini septingenti anni fuerunt. Ædelred filius Pendæ rex Merce, Omnipotentis benignitate visitatus, fit monachus anno xxix. regni ejus, et sepultus est apud Bardenie feliciter: cui successit Cenred cognatus ejus, similis virtute et felicitate. Cum enim quinque annis regnum nobiliter tenuisset, A.D. 697.  
The Mercians murder their queen, Ostrida.
- Chr. E. nobilius multo sceptrum regni reliquit. Veniens namque Romanus, et monachus ibi factus, Constantino pontificante, usque ad diem permansit ultimum: cum quo etiam Offa filius Sigheri regis Orientalium Saxonum, rex si remansisset futurus, pari ductus devotione Romanam ivit et A.D. 699.  
  
Bert killed by the Picts.  
  
A.D. 700.  
Kings of Mercia.  
  
A.D. 704.  
A.D. 716.  
A.D. 700.
- Bed. v. 19.

<sup>1</sup> *Brith, A.*

A.D. 700.  
Glorious  
through  
resigning  
their tem-  
poral  
crowns.

monachatum suscepit. Imitamini ergo, reges, horum duorum regum felicissimam strenuitatem, scilicet Edlredi et Cenredi, quorum nomen permanet in æternum; qui diademata, uxores, urbes, cognatos, et omnia relinquentes, multis millibus idem faciendi exemplum fuerunt. O Deus bone! quæ et qualia diademata eis reddes, et ipse manu tua cervicibus eorum summus Pontifex impones in die exultationis et lætitiæ, quando cunctis millibus legionum cœlestium et terrestrium tecum reges prædictos suscipientibus cum triumpho, et faciem eorum videre desiderantibus, afferent fructum non centenum tantum, sed potius millenum! fructum odoriferum, fructum expectabilem, et tibi ipsi visu delectabilem. O Deus bone! quis nunc etiam igne Sancti Spiritus accensus exempla regum illorum, et vere regum, sequatur, ut adhuc etiam crescat eis exultatio novi fructus, et uberiora tibi sequentium probitate munera offerant cum devotissima jocunditate? Heu miseri! dimittendus est sermo de regibus cœli, qui, O utinam, perennis in cordibus nostris miserulis et inertissimis figatur! Sed redeundum est de cœlo ad terras. Successit namque regibus prædictis Merce Ceolred in regno, quod idem octo annis patriæ et avitæ virtutis hæres clarissime rexit.

A.D. 705.  
Erection of  
the see of  
Sherborne.

§ 8. Ine vicesimo anno regni sui divisit<sup>a</sup> episcopat- Chr. E.  
tum Westsexiæ in duo, qui unus esse solebat; partem  
orientalem a silvis tenuit Daniel, occidentalem Ald-

A.D. 709.  
Death of  
bishop  
Wilfrid.

elmus. Aldelmo vero successit Forthere. Eodem anno  
Wilfridus episcopus, de quo inter miracula non silebitur,  
obiit apud Uundalum,<sup>1</sup> XLV. anno episcopatus sui,

A.D. 710.

et sepultus est apud Ripun. Anno huic proximo pug- Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> *Wandalum, F.*

<sup>a</sup> The division of the West Saxon diocese into the bishoprics of Winchester and Sherborne was made

in 705 or 706 (Bed. v. 18), i.e. in the seventeenth, not the twentieth, year of Ina.

- navit rex Ine et Nun cognatus ejus contra Gerente<sup>a</sup> A.D. 710.  
 regem Wales. Cujus pugnæ principio occisus est dux  
 Higebald; ad ultimum vero Gerente cum suis faciem  
 ab Anglis avertit, et fugiens, arma et spolia sequenti-  
 bus reliquit. Tunc etiam Berfrid consul restitit super-  
 biæ Pictorum, dimicans inter Heve et Cere; ubi mul-  
 titudine magna Pictorum strata, ultor extitit regis  
 Egfridi et consulis Berti. Acca presbyter successit  
 Wilfrido episcopo. Alfridus vero rex Nordhumbre, A.D. 705.  
 quarto ante hunc anno, infirmatus perierat apud Drif- Kings of  
Northum-  
bria in Ina's  
time. field, anno regni sui vicesimo nondum impleto. Cui  
 succedens Osredus filius ejus, puer octo annorum, reg-  
 navit xi. annis. Osred vero rex, belli infortunio, juxta  
 Mere<sup>b</sup> pugnans, interfectus est. Cui succedens Cenred A.D. 716.  
 regnavit duobus annis, et mortuus est. Post quos Osri- A.D. 718.  
 cus regnavit ibidem undecim annis. Hi namque  
 quatuor reges<sup>1</sup> regnaverunt in Nordhumbre tempore  
 Ine regis.
- § 9. Ine xxvi. anno regni sui pugnavit contra Ceol- A.D. 715.  
 red regem Merce, filium Edelredi regis, apud Wonebi-  
 rih; adeo autem horribiliter pugnatum est utrinque, ut  
 nesciatur cui clades detestabilior contigerit. Anno vero A.D. 716.  
 sequente idem rex Merce Ceolred mundo exiit, et  
 sepultus est apud Lichfeld. Adelbold successit ei in  
 regnum Merce, vir fortis et vehemens, regnavitque

<sup>1</sup> *prædicti*, A.; *deest*. Sav.; *predicti reges*, F.

<sup>a</sup> This Gerente was a king of Cornwall. St. Aldhelm dedicated to him his book "Adversus Erro-  
 rem Britonum;" see Bed. v. 18; and consult an interesting note on this king in Mr. Earle's "Two  
 Saxon Chronicles." It is not known who Hygebald was; but the Chronicle does not in any way connect his death with the battle between Ina and Gerente.

<sup>b</sup> The Peterborough Chronicle says that Osred was slain "south  
 of the boundary" of Northum-  
 bria, *be suðan ge-mære*. Comp.  
 Spenser's line—

"And made one mere of the  
 earth and to their reign."

Henry imagines a town or village named Mere.

A.D. 718.  
Egbert at  
Iona.

victoriose XLI. annis. Eodem anno Egbertus vir vene- Chr. E.  
rabilis convertit monachos qui erant in Hii, ad catho-  
licum Pascha et canonicam tonsuram. Cumque cum Bed. v. 22.  
iisdem conversis moratus fuisset XIII. annis, jam secu-  
rus de correctione fratrum, ipso die Paschali, cum  
missarum solemniam celebrasset, exultavit ut videret diem

Naiton, king  
of the Picts,  
adopts the  
Catholic  
Easter.

Domini: vidit, et gavisus est. Eo tempore Naiton rex ch. 21.  
Pictorum conversus fuerat ad rectum Pascha, literis  
instructoriis a Ceolfrido abbate directis, qui post Be-  
neditum, de quo prædiximus, rexit monasterium quod  
est ad ostium Wiri amnis, et juxta amnem Tina, in  
loco qui vocatur In Girvum. Scripsit ergo regi literas  
de Pascha et de tonsura, magna plenas auctoritate:  
quod autem ille literis persuasit, rex in toto regno suo  
regia auctoritate perfecit. Circa hoc tempus Cudburh, Chr. E.  
soror Cneburh,<sup>1</sup> constituit abbatiam apud Wineburn;  
quæ data fuerat Egferdo<sup>2</sup> regi Nordhumbre, sed eo  
vivente separata.

A.D. 718.

A.D. 725.  
Ina invades  
Sussex.

Ine XXXVI. anno regni ejus exercitum suum in Sud-  
sexe promovit, pugnavitque contra Sudsexas potenter  
et victoriose, et interfecit in eodem proelio Ealdbriht,  
quem prius fugaverat a castro quod vocatur Tantune,  
quod quidem rex Ine construxerat; sed quia juvenis  
prædictus Ealdbriht castrum introierat, qui regius hostis  
erat, Edelburh regina, uxor Ine, castrum cepit armis,  
captumque destruxit, et eum fugere compulit in Sudrei

A.D. 725.  
Death of  
Withred,  
king of  
Kent,

<sup>3</sup> et Sudsexe. Eodem anno Withred rex Centensis, cum  
per XXXIV. annos pæne regnasset, defunctus est; tres Bed. v. 23.  
filios, Edilbertum, Edbertum, Aeilricum, relinquens

A.D. 727.  
and of  
bishop  
Tobias.

hæredes. Circa hoc tempus Tobias Rovensis episcopus, Chr. E.  
Theodori archiepiscopi et abbatis Adriani discipulus,  
expiravit; cui successit Aldulfus.

A.D. 728.  
Ina resigns  
his crown,

§ 10. Ine rex potens et felix, relinquens Adelhardo Chr. E.  
cognato suo regnum, Romam petiit, et ibi peregrinans

<sup>1</sup> Cneburh, F. S.

<sup>2</sup> Egfrido, A.; Ecgfredo, F.

<sup>3</sup> A. F.; desunt in Sav.

Chr. E.

in terris, stipendia promeruit in cœlis. Hujus autem regis tempore, ut mundi volubilitas quam velox sit ex hinc perpendatur; fuerunt imperatores Justinianus minor, qui regnavit decem annis; Leo, qui regnavit tribus annis; Tiberius, qui regnavit septem annis; Justinianus secundus, qui regnavit sex annis; Philippus, qui regnavit anno et dimidio; Anastasius, qui regnavit tribus annis; Theodosius, qui regnavit uno anno; Leo, qui regnavit novem annis; Constantinus etiam, cujus regni anno tertio Ine Romam profectus est. Apostolici autem in ejus tempore hi fuerunt: Sergius papa, Johannes, alius Johannes, Sisinnius, Constantinus, Gregorius; cujus tempore rex Ine sponte victor cupiditatis exulavit. Reges autem Francorum hi fuerunt ex ordine tempore ejus: rex Childericus, rex Theodoricus, rex Clodoveus, rex Childeburtus, rex Dagobertus. Tempore etiam hujus regis, cœli palatia conscenderunt S. Heddi episcopus Wincestrensis, S. Guthlacus heremita Croilandensis, S. Johannes Eboracensis archiepiscopus. Reges vero contigui Cedwalla et Ine, magni viribus, quod commune fuit eis cum belluis, majores vero sanctitate, quod proprium est angelorum, et hominum sed paucorum, egregie fecerunt: unde beatos dicent eos omnes generationes. Sicut et duo reges contigui Merce fecerunt, scilicet Edelred et Cenred: qui relictis omnibus bonis falsis, verum et summum bonum, quod Deus est, adepti sunt. Reges ergo terræ præsentes, imitamini reges prædictos sapientes et beatos, non furiosos et infelices, quorum distinctionem opera et finis operum in præsentī tractatu demonstrant. Quatuor ergo reges prædicti luminaria sunt omnibus regibus terræ, ut boni quos imitentur habeant, mali unde excusentur non habeant. Vos etiam, qui reges non estis, reges prædictos imitamini, ut cœli reges efficiamini. Si enim, cum illi majora reliquerunt, vos minora relinquere nolueritis, sancti reges prædicti vestræ damnationis judices erunt.

A.D. 726.  
goes to  
Rome, and  
dies.  
Names of  
emperors,  
popes, and  
kings of  
France, who  
were con-  
temporary  
with Ina.

Reflections  
on the he-  
roic example  
set by four  
English  
kings, two  
of Wessex,  
and two of  
Mercia.  
A.D. 704.  
A.D. 709

Chr. E.

A.D. 728.  
Affairs of  
Wessex.

§ 11. *Ædelhard* rex Westsexe primo anno regni sui Chr.C. vel. G. pugnavit contra *Oswald* juvenem de regia stirpe, regnum idem sibi acquirere conantem. *Oswald* namque filius fuit *Ædelbald*, filii *Chinebald*, filii *Cudwine*, filii *Ceaulin*, filii *Cinric*. Cum autem juvenis, impar numero regalibus turmis, pondus prœlii diu pertulisset, et ultra non posset, fuga regi regnum reliquit. Rex igitur prædictus in regno confortatus est.

A.D. 729.  
Comets.

*Ædelhardi* regis anno tertio apparuerunt duæ cometæ Bed. v. 23.

circa solem terribiles; una quippe solem præcedebat . . . orientem, alia sequebatur occidentem, quasi *Orienti* simul et *Occidenti* diræ cladis præsagæ; vel certe una diei, altera noctis præcurrebat exortum, ut utroque tempore mala mortalibus imminere signarent. Portabant autem faciem ignis contra *Aquilonem* quasi ad accendendum acclinem; apparebantque mense *Januario*, et duabus ferme septimanis permanebant. Quo tempore gravissima *Sarracenorum* lues *Gallias* et *Hispanias* late misera cæde vastabat; et ipsi post non multo in eadem provincia dignas suæ perfidiæ pœnas luebant. Eodem quoque anno *Osrucus* rex *Nordhumbre* vita discedens, regnum quod *XI.* annis gubernaverat *Ceolwlf*o reliquit, fratri illius, qui ante se regnaverat tempore *Cænredi* regis. Rex autem *Ceolwlf* *VIII.* annis regnum tenuit. Hic est rex ille, cui *Beda* vir sanctus et venerabilis, vir ingenii florentis et *Christi* philosophus, *Ecclesiasticam Historiam Anglorum* scripsit, qua regi missa, quantum profecerit finis beatus regis ostendit.

Saracens lay  
waste Spain  
and France.

Affairs of  
Northumbria.

A.D. 731.  
Death of  
archbishop  
Berhtwald;  
Tatwine  
succeeds  
him.

§ 12. *Ædelhardo* regnante quinque annis, *Britwoldus*, Chr. E. archiepiscopus pene *XXXVIII.* annis, obiit; et *Tadwinus*, qui fuerat presbyter apud *Bredune* in *Merce*, factus est archiepiscopus. Illum autem sacraverunt viri beatæ memoriæ, *Inguald Londoniensis* episcopus, et *Daniel Wintoniensis* episcopus, et *Aldulf Rovensis* episcopus,

A.D. 733.

et *Aldwine Licesfeldensis* episcopus. Post biennium vero *Edelbald* rex *Merce* fortissimus, congregato terri- Chr. E. bili exercitu, obsedit *Sumerton*, castris dispositis per gyrum; cumque non esset qui auxilium inclusis inferret, vel includentibus resistere posset, eam recepit in

Bed. v. 23. suam. Edelbald igitur rex Mercensis maxima virtute super reges cœtaneos proventus, omnes provincias Angliæ usque ad Humbram flumen, cum suis regibus, sibi subjectas esse voluit, et fecit. Eodem anno sol obscuratus est. A.D. 733.  
Power of  
Ethelbald  
king of  
Mercia.

Chr. E. Ædelhardi regis anno VIII., Tadwinus archiepiscopus, vir religione et prudentia insignis, sacris quoque literis nobiliter instructus, hominibus ultra non apparuit. Ascendit autem in loco ejus Egbricht,<sup>a</sup> recepto Romæ pallio. Anno eodem venerabilis Beda, semper mente inhabitata, cœli conscendit palatia; qui regia virtute sua et aliorum vitia compescens, cum regibus ipsis inferior non sit, dignissime regum in ordine quasi rex ponatur. A.D. 734.  
Death of  
Tatwine.  
  
A.D. 735.  
and of the  
Venerable  
Beda.

Bed. v. 24. § 13. Beda igitur presbyter monasterii quod est ad Wiremudham et In Girvum, a Benedicto abbate ejusdem loci, ac deinde Ceolfrido educatus et eruditus, semper scripturis studuit; reliquit autem mundum anno LXII. ætatis suæ, senex annis et sapientia, et plenus dierum non in vano consumptorum, quod apparet in operum suorum numero. Scripsit ergo a principio Genesis usque ad nativitatem Isaac, libros tres: de tabernaculo, et vasis ejus, et vestibus, libros tres: in primam partem Samuelis usque ad mortem Sanlis, libros quatuor: de ædificatione Templi allegorice, duos: in Cantica Canticorum, sex: <sup>1</sup> Omeliarum Evangelii, II.: <sup>2</sup> in Esdram et Neemiam, tres: in canticum Abacuc, unum: in librum Tobisë, unum: Capitula quoque lectionum Veteris Testamenti: in Evangelium Marci, quatuor: in Lucæ, sex: in Apostolum quæcunque in opusculis Augustini invenit, cuncta per ordinem transcripsit: in Actus Apostolorum, duos: in

---

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; desunt, Sav.

---

<sup>a</sup> This Egbricht was appointed to do with Canterbury. Tatwine to the see of York, and had nothing was succeeded by Nothelm.

A.D. 785. septem Epistolas Canonicas, libros septem: in Apocalypsim, tres: item Capitula lectionum in totum Novum Testamentum excepto Evangelio: item librum Epistolarum ad diversos: item de Historiis sanctorum: item de vita S. Cuthberti, primum heroice, postea plano sermone: item de vita Abbatum monasterii sui, duos: item Martyrologium: item librum Hymnorum: item librum de Temporibus: item librum de Metrica arte: et Historiam Ecclesiasticam Anglorum in libris quinque; in qua pie perorat, ut apud omnes legentes fructum intercessionis inveniat.

Sketch of  
the English  
church in  
Beda's time.

§ 14. De statu autem ecclesiastico in suo tempore Bed. v. 23. ita idem Beda ait: In præsentī Cantuariensis archiepiscopus est Tadwine, Rovensis episcopus Aldulfus, Londoniensis Ingualdus: super Orientales Anglos sunt Edbertus et Hedhelac episcopi: <sup>1</sup>provinciæ Occidentaliū Saxonum Daniel et Forthere episcopi: super Merce est Aldwinus episcopus: super gentem quæ ad occidentem Sabrinæ amnis habitat, est Walestod <sup>2</sup> episcopus: in provincia Huicciorum <sup>3</sup> est Wilfridus episcopus: in provincia Lindisfarorum Chinebertus: Vecta insula ad Danielelem episcopum Wentæ pertinet; et provincia Australium Saxonum, jam aliquot annis sine episcopo, eundem colit. Sub rege vero Ceolwifo sunt quatuor episcopi; Wilfrid Eboracensis, Edilwald Lindisfarnensis, Acca Haugustaldensis, Wettelmus in Candida Casa, quæ nuper pontificata ipsum primum habet antistitem. Rex vero Cent est Eadbriht: rex Westsexe Ædelhard: rex Est-Anglorum Selred: rex Nordhumbre Ceolwlfus: rex Merce Edelbaldus, maximus omnium. Anno adventus Anglorum circiter ducentesimo octogesimo octavo: <sup>4</sup>anno Dominicæ Incarnationis septingentesimo tricesimo quarto, <sup>5</sup>in cuius regno perpetuo exultet terra, et congratulante in fide ejus Brittania, lætentur multæ insulæ, et confiteantur memoriæ sanctitatis ejus.

A.D. 784.

<sup>1</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *Walsted*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> *Uuictiorum*, F.

<sup>4</sup> quinto, Beda.

<sup>5</sup> primo, Beda.

Hucusque auctoritatem venerabilis Bedæ presbyteri in hac nostra historia contexenda secuti sumus, et maxime in iis omnibus quæ de rebus ecclesiasticis dicta sunt: in aliis etiam semper quantumcunque potuimus. Hinc igitur, quæ in scriptis veterum diligenti scrutinio collectis invenire potuimus, ad instructionem posteritatis literis mandare studuimus. Namque sicut in prologo Historiæ Anglorum doctissimus Beda testatur, "Vera lex historiæ est simpliciter id, quod fama vulgante colligitur, scribendo posteris notificare."

A.D. 734.  
Beda's conception of history.

Chr. E.

§ 15. Ædelhardi regis anno decimo Nothelmus archiepiscopus accepit pallium a papa: nec longe post Forthere episcopus et Fridegida<sup>1</sup> regina, relictis possessionibus splendidis et deliciarum voluptatibus, Romam profecti sunt. Quod iis temporibus plures de gente Anglorum, nobiles, ignobiles, clerici, laici, viri ac feminae, certatim facere consueverunt. Eo etiam tempore Edilwaldus Lindisfarnensis episcopus vivendi finem fecit; post quem episcopatus honorem Chenewlf adeptus est. Nec segnius venerabilis Acca presbyter, et Haugustaldensis postea præsul, corporeis rebus exutus est.

A.D. 736.

A.D. 737.

Chr. C. vel G.  
a. 731.

§ 16. Ædelhardi regis anno XI. Ceolwlf rex nobilissimus Nordhumbre nobilissime fecit. Ceolwlf namque fuit filius Cutha, filii Cuthwine, filii Ledwold, filii Egwold, filii Aldelm, filii Ocche, filii Idæ regis. Ceolwlf igitur cum sæpe viventi Bedæ colloqueretur, et sæpe ante mortem ejus, et post mortem, Historiam ejus ad se scriptam oculis adhiberet, cœpit diligenter regum singulorum facta et finem secum discutere, viditque luce clarius regna terrena et res humanas cum labore perquiri, cum timore possideri, cum dolore amitti. Et quia quibusdam minus callidis vel ætate teneris, videntibus temporalia pulchra et delectabilia, cum audierint prædicari ea deserenda et temnenda,

A.D. 737.  
Ceolwulf, following the example of former kings, renounces his crown, and becomes a monk.

<sup>1</sup> C. S<sup>2</sup>. F.; *Frigeida*, A.

A.D. 787. videtur eis frivolum et contra rationem, quia nondum perceperunt quomodo mordeant mundi divitiæ, quomodo ad nihilum deveniant, et fructum tandem nullum nisi seram pœnitudinem generent: horum nihil regem callentem et expertum impediēbat. Senserat enim in seipso regnum sibi cum labore fuisse perquisitum, cum timore possessum; noluit vero cum dolore amittere. Sponte igitur divitiarum non servus sed dominus, quasi magnus viles abiecit. Maxime autem accendērat eum, quod cum pueri vel mulieres vulgusque, vel etiam ditiores, prosilirent ad eum conspiciendum et ejus beatitudinem mirandam, ipse horribilibus curis necis et proditiōis et multimodæ calamitatis intus cruciābatur, et animo et corpore decoquebatur. Cumque alii judicarent eum beatissimum, ipse qui solus animi sui secreta noverat, judicabat se miserrimum. Quum ergo parvo spatio, id est, octo annis regnasset, permaximum visum est ei, et valde anxius est quod tanto tempore vitam suam amiserit, curis<sup>1</sup> et decipulis<sup>2</sup> vanis et fragilibus<sup>2</sup> deditam; reliquum autem saltem vitæ suæ non erroneæ stultitiæ sed sapientiæ et utilitati propriæ dicare certavit. Exemplumque assumens ex Historia beati viri prædicta, sex reges fortissimos, vir vere fortissimus prosecutus est: scilicet Edelredum regem Merce, et Cenredum successorem ejus; nec non Cedwallam regem Westsexe, et Ine successorem ejus; sed et Sigebertum regem Estangle, qui monachus effectus est, quem postea Penda occidit; et Sebbi<sup>Bed. iv. 11.</sup> regem Estsexe, qui monachus effectus diem jucundum mortis suæ prævidit; vidit et gavisus est. Isti non devorarunt substantias suas cum meretricibus, sed euntes cum dolore semina sua seminaverunt, ut venientes veniant cum exultatione, suos Deo manipulos afferentes. Complevit ergo Ceolwlfus hebdomadam

<sup>1</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> curis vanis et decipulis fragilibus, C. F. C. S<sup>2</sup>.; disciplinis fragilibus, Sav.

Ps. 20, 4.  
Chr. E. regum perfectorum ; et habitu monachali suscepto, A.D. 738.  
capiti ejus corona de lapide pretioso imposita est a Domino. Edbricto vero cognato suo regni sceptrā reliquit. Edbrictus namque fuit filius Eatæ<sup>1</sup> filii Ledwoldi, regnavitque XXI. annis. In hoc regum commercio Edelbald rex superbus Mercensis, alterius vir animi, et ideo aliusmodi deditus fini, spreta sanctificatione, gladiisque jura postponens, introivit Nordhumbre, A.D. 737.  
et cum non esset qui ei resistere posset, præda arrepta quantam voluit secum ad suos transvexit.

Chr. E. § 17. Ædelhardus rex decimo quarto anno regni sui A.D. 741.  
mortuus est, et regnavit Cudred cognatus ejus pro eo Death of Ethelheard of Wessex.  
super Westsexe, sexdecim annis. Edelbaldus vero rex succeeds;  
superbus sæpe eum nunc seditionibus, nunc bellis his wars  
affligebat. Fortuna autem varia, vicibus variis, modo with Ethelbald of Mercia.  
hunc, modo illum Martis eventibus extollebat. Aliquando vero pacem inter se statuebant, quam brevi tenentes spatio, denuo rebellabant.<sup>2</sup> Eodem anno  
Chr. E. Ædberth<sup>3</sup> sacraus est archiepiscopus, tempore Zachariæ papæ, et Dun episcopus apud Rovecestre.

Cudredus anno regni sui quarto et Edelbald rex A.D. 743.  
Merce, tunc simul pacificati, pugnaverunt viribus con- Alliance  
junctis contra Brittannorum undique congestorum in- between  
numerabilem multitudinem. Cumque reges fortissimi, Cuthred and  
exercitusque eorum clarissimus, inter se divisi, hinc et Ethelbald.  
inde certatim, et quasi ex invidia Brittannorum pha- They attack  
langes percutientes sternerent, nequierunt tantum bel- and defeat  
landi onus perferre Brittanni. Fugam igitur eligentes, the Britons.  
dederunt terga percutientibus, et spolia sequentibus. Reges autem victoriosi remeantes ad sua, triumphalibus  
Chr. E. gaudiis suscepti sunt. Anno vero sequenti obiit Wil-

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>2</sup>.; *Ette*, S.; *Etate*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Ecce*, A.; *Etta*, F.

<sup>2</sup> A.; *debellabant*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> C. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Edbert*, S.; *Egbert*, A.; *Ædebert*, F.

<sup>4</sup> *Ædberth*] Henry has followed | mistake wrote Eadberht for Cuth-  
the Peterborough scribe, who by | berht.

A.D. 744.  
Death of  
Wilfrid the  
younger.

frid,<sup>a</sup> qui fuerat episcopus triginta<sup>1</sup> annis apud Eboracum. Anno vero eodem visum est signum mirabile in cælo; stellæ namque hac et illac discurrebant per aera, quod omnibus intuentibus magno fuit monstro.

A.D. 745. Anno vero hunc sequente decessit Daniel, quadragesimo tertio<sup>2</sup> anno ex quo fuit episcopus. Anno etiam

A.D. 746. hos prædictos sequente, rex Selred vitæ ademptus est; Chr. E. scripta namque veterum quod hoc anno occisus fuerit dicunt; quomodo autem vel a quo occisus fuerit non dicunt.

A.D. 748.  
Kynric, son  
of Cuthred,  
slain in a  
mutiny.

§ 18. Cudredi anno nono, occisus est Kinric filius ejus, armorumque decus "debellatorque ferarum;" *Æn. vii. 651.* ætate tener, sed armis acer, annis parvus, sed vigore magnus: qui cum successibus suis instaret fortunamque Martis nimis sollicitaret, immoderationem animi cædes militari seditione illata punivit.<sup>b</sup> Eodem anno obiit Chr. E. Edbrit rex Centensis, qui regni infula XXII. annis potitus fuerat.

A.D. 750.  
Cuthred  
puts down  
the rebel  
Edelhum(?).

Cudredus anno undecimo regni sui pugnavit contra Edelhun audacissimum consulem; qui seditionem movens in dominum, licet numero militum longe domino debilior esset, diu tamen et gravissime Martio perstitit in campo: probitasque consulis excelsa loco millium fuit. Cumque ei jam pene victoria lætis applauderet alis, infixum tandem corpori vulnus, et animo perjurium, justam regis causam triumphare compulerunt.

<sup>1</sup> *decem, Sav.*

| <sup>2</sup> *quarto, A.*

<sup>a</sup> The chronicler whom Henry follows seems to have confounded Wilfrid II., who died in 732, with Wilfrid bishop of Worcester, who died in 743. In 744, and for many years afterwards, Egbert, to whom Beda addressed his well-known Epistle, was archbishop of York.

<sup>b</sup> That Kynric fell in a "militaris seditio" seems to be merely Henry's embellishment; and the same remark may be made on the details of the battle of Burford which follow.

§ 19. Cudredus decimo tertio anno, cum jam regis Edelbaldi superbas exactiones et insolentiam ferre non posset, occurrit ei cum legionibus vexillatis apud Bereford, omni spe vivendi postposita libertati. Adduxit autem secum Edelhun prædictum consulem jam sibi concordem, cujus viribus fretus et consilio, belli discrimen ingredi potuit. Edelbaldus vero rex regum cum Mercensibus Centenses adduxerat, Orientalesque Saxones et Anglos, copiasque multiplices. Aciebus igitur dispositis cum in directum tendentes appropinquarent, Edelhun præcedens Westsexenses, regis insigne draconem scilicet aureum gerens, transforavit vexilliferum hostilem. Unde clamore orto, pars Cudredi valde confortata est; statimque acies sibi invicem offenderunt. Ergo tonitruum belli, scilicet offensionis armorum et sonitus ictuum clamorisque cadentium, terribiliter exarsit, bellum maximum et inæstimabile incipitur: quod vel Mercenses, vel eos Westsexe, usque in longam posteritatem vincenti supponeret. Videres igitur acies loriceis crispantes, galeis acutas, lanceis hirsutas, vexillis depictas, auro resplendentes, parvo tempore sanguine perfusas, lanceis cassas, ruina dissipatas, cerebris aspersas, visu horrendas. Congregantes autem se ad vexilla utrinque procaces et fortissimi, gladiis et securibus Amazonicis rem agentes, acies aciebus funeste irruerant. Memoria fugæ nulla, spes victoriæ utrinque certa: Mercenses superbix tumor invitabat, Westsexas servitutis horror accendebat. At ubicunque consul prædictus aciebus se infigebat, via ruinarum patebat, dum securis ejus timendissima, modo fulminis, corpora finderet et arma. Rex fortissimus autem Edelbaldus quacunque ruebat, strages hostilis fiebat, dum gladio ejus invictissimo essent arma pro veste, ossa pro carne. Cum igitur, quasi duo ignes diversis in partibus impositi obstantia quæque consumerent, contigit ut sibi obviam rex et consul venirent. Uterque vero alteri terribilis corpore infrenduit, dextram excussit, se in

A.D. 752.  
War between  
Wessex and  
Mercia.  
Great battle  
at Burford.

- A.D. 753. armis collegit, et ictibus immensis<sup>1</sup> arma obstantissima pares lacesunt. Deus autem, qui superbis resistit, a quo robur fortitudo et magnanimitas procedit, gratiæ suæ regi Edelbaldo terminum posuit, animoque regis confidentiam solitam dempsit. Cum igitur nec animum suum nec vires ipse recognosceret, pugnantibus adhuc suis, a Domino omnipotenti territus, fugam primus incepit. Nec ab hac die usque ad mortis suæ tempora prosperum aliquid ei Deus permisit. Quarto siquidem post hunc anno rursum pugnans apud Se-  
Chr. E.  
candune, non sine mirabili exercituum ruina, fugam dedignans occisus est. Occisus apud Secandune, sepultus est apud Repandune: sic itaque rex validissimus, cum quadraginta et uno annis regnasset, superbiæ immoderatæ poenas exsolvit. Regnum vero Westsexe, ex hoc tempore valde roboratum, crescere usque in perfectum non destitit.
- A.D. 753. Cudredus quartodecimo anno regni sui pugnavit contra Britannos; qui victori regis Edelbaldi, ut prædictum est, frustra resistentes, cito fugam incepterunt, clademque maximam sine hostium detrimento digne pertulerunt. Anno sequente Cudredus rex magnus et excelsus, tot prosperitatibus et victoriis potitus, mortis inclementiæ lætitiā<sup>2</sup> finivit.
- A.D. 754. § 20. Sigebertus regis prædicti cognatus successit ei, Chr. E.  
sed brevi tempore regnum tenuit. Namque ex præcessoris sui eventibus tumefactus et insolens, etiam suis intolerabilis fuit. Cum autem omnibus modis male tractaret eos, legesque vel ad commodum suum depravaret, vel pro commodo suo devitaret, Cumbra consul ejus nobilissimus, prece totius populi querimonias eorum regi fero intimavit. Quem, quia regem suaserat ut lenius populum regeret, et inhumanitate deposita Deo et hominibus amabilis appareret, mox

The Mer-  
cians de-  
feated.

A.D. 755.  
Ethelbald  
killed in  
battle at  
Beckington.

A.D. 754.  
Death of  
Cuthred.

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; *universis*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> F.; *vitam*, A.

impia nece jussit interfici ;<sup>a</sup> populoque sævior et intolerabilior tyrannidem augmentavit.

Sigebertus rex, in principio secundi anni regni sui, cum incorrigibilis superbie et nequitie esset, congregati sunt procures et populus totius regni, et provida deliberatione et unanimi consensu omnium expulsus est a regno. Kinewlf vero juvenis egregius de regia stirpe oriundus, electus est in regem. Sigebertus vero rex fugatus a suis, non minora meritis metuens, in sylvam magnam quæ vocatur Andredeswald fugiens, se abscondit; ubi quidam porcarius Cumbrie consulis, nequiter, ut diximus, interfecti, regem absconsum invenit, inventum cognovit, cognitum domini sui vindex occidit. Ecce manifestum Domini judicium, ecce quomodo Domini justitia non solum in futuro seculo, verum etiam in isto digna meritis recompensat! Eligens namque reges improbos ad contritionem promeritam subjectorum, alium diu insanire permittit ut et populus pravus diu vexetur, et rex pravior in æternum acrius crucietur, veluti Edelbaldum regem Merce præfatum: alium vero cita disteminatione præoccupat, ne populus suus nimia tyrannide oppressus non respiret, et immoderata principis nequitia citissimas ultionis æternæ debito pœnas incurrat, veluti Sigebertum hunc, de quo tractamus; qui quanto nequior extitit, tanto vilius a subulco interfectus, a dolore in dolorem transiit. Unde Domini justitiæ æternæ laus et gloria nunc et semper. Amen.

A.D. 755.  
Sigebert, his successor, is expelled by his people.

He is afterwards killed by a swineherd in the forests of Sussex.

Cynewulf reigns in Wessex.

- § 21. Kinewlfi regis anno primo, Edelbaldo regi  
 Chr. E. Merce successit Beornred in regnum, sed brevi: Offa  
 enim eodem anno fugavit eum, regnavitque super  
 Chr. C. vel G. Merce xxxix. annis. Offa juvenis nobilissimus fuit, filius quidem Wingferd, filii Eanwlf, filii Osmod, filii

A.D. 755.  
Reign of Offa in Mercia; his successes in war; his devotion to St. Alban, and munificence

<sup>a</sup> Henry amplifies the account of the chronicler, but mistakes his meaning. Sigebert killed Cumbria after, not before, the meeting of

the Witan, by whose sentence he was deprived of all his kingdom but Hampshire.

A.D. 756.  
to the  
Roman sec.

**Eapa**,<sup>1</sup> filii **Wippa**,<sup>2</sup> filii **Creada**, filii **Kinewald**, filii **Cnibba**, filii **Icil**, filii **Eomer**, filii **Ageltheu**,<sup>3</sup> filii **Offa**, filii **Weremund**, filii **Withlad**,<sup>4</sup> filii **Woden**. **Offa** strenuissimus rex fuit; vicit namque **Centenses** proelio, vicit quoque **Westsexas** prælio, vicit quoque **Nordhumbros** proelio. **Offa** fuit vir religiosus: transtulit namque ~~ossa~~ <sup>ossa</sup> **S. Albani** in monasterium quod construxerat multisque modis ditaverat, deditque vicario **B. Petri**, **Romanæ** urbis pontifici, redditum statutum de singulis domibus regni sui in æternum.<sup>b</sup>

Malm. Gest.  
Reg. i. 4.

A.D. 797.  
**Eadbert**,  
king of  
**Northum-**  
**bria**, be-  
comes a  
monk.

**Kinewlfi** regis anno tertio, **Eadbert** rex **Nordhumbre** Chr. E. videns regum prædictorum, **Edelbaldi** scilicet et **Sigeberti**, vitam ærumnosam et finem infaustum, **Ceolwlfi** vero prædecessoris sui vitam laudabilem et finem gloriosum, meliorem partem elegit quæ non auferetur ab eo. Regno namque relicto, tonsuram capitis æternum diadema generaturam suscepit, furvasque vestes, æthereum splendorem collaturas, induit. Iste est octavus regum illorum qui regna sua pro Christo sponte dimiserunt, immo, ut verius dicam, pro regno æterno commutarunt; quibus octo beatitudinum jocunditas perennis multiplici delectamento ineffabiliter jocundatur, quorum strenuitatem imitari beatorum est. Successit autem in regno **Osulf** filius suus; sed cum uno anno reg-

<sup>1</sup> *S<sup>2</sup>*; *Epa*, A. F. S.

<sup>2</sup> *Wibba*, C. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> *Angeltheu*, C. F. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *Withlac*, C<sup>2</sup>.

\* *Eapa*] This probably means *Eawa*, which is the true reading. See p. 77, n.

<sup>b</sup> The translation by *Offa* of the relics of *St. Alban* is described rather fully by *Malmesbury* in the *Gesta Pontificum*, iv. § 179, but he ascribes the institution of the *Romescot* to *Ethelwulf*. In the *Two Offas*, however, printed by *Wats* with the works of *Matthew Paris*, the gift and the manner of it,—how

during a visit to *Rome* *Offa* endowed the English school there with the “*denarium sancti Petri*,” to be levied on all house property in England, excepting always the possessions of the monastery of *St. Alban*’s,—are circumstantially related. Probably *Henry* had at his command some chronicle or document emanating from *St. Alban*’s monastery which is now lost.

nasset, a familia sua nefanda proditione occisus est. Post quem Mol Edelwold regnavit sex annis. Circa hoc tempus Cudbrietus archiepiscopus vitæ demptus est.

A.D. 759.

A.D. 758.  
Death of  
archbishop  
Cuthbert.  
A.D. 760.

Chr. E.

§ 22. Kinewlf cum VI. annis regnasset, Edelbricht rex Centensis metas vivendi attigit. Eodem anno Ceolwlfus tunc monachus, sed quondam rex, non hic obiit, sed hinc abiit, stipendia mirabilia recepturus. Anno vero sequente, Mol rex Nordhumbre interfecit Oswine fortissimum ducum suorum, qui committens proelium erga dominum suum apud Eadwinesclive, jure gentium spreto, jure Dei occisus est. Anno vero se-

A.D. 763.

Chr. E.

quente Iambeth factus est archiepiscopus Eboracensis.\* Tunc etiam Fridwald episcopus Ceastrensis vivere destitit, qui factus fuerat episcopus VI. anno regni Ceolwlf. Eo tempore Witwine<sup>1</sup> factus est episcopus Witerne. Mol vero cum VI. annis regnasset, regnum Nordhumbre dimisit: post quem Alred VIII. annis regnavit. Cujus regni anno X. animas emisunt Egbert archiepiscopus Eboracensis, cum archiepiscopus fuisset XXXVI. annis, et Fridebertus episcopus Haugustaldensis, cum episcopus fuisset XXXIV. annis: Edberto archiepiscopo successit Adelbert, Frideberto episcopo successit Almund. Anno

Ianbryht  
succeeds to  
the primacy.  
Other diocesan  
changes.  
A.D. 765.

A.D. 766

Sim. Dan.  
s. anno.

iv. Alredi regis obierunt Pipinus rex Francorum, et Stephanus papa Romanorum; et Eadbert filius Eata, dux famosissimus Anglorum.

A.D. 768.

§ 23. Anno gratiæ DCCLXIX., Kinewlf vero regis anno XV., incepit fieri mutatio dextræ Excelsi; imperium namque Romanum, quod tot annis in se præcellentissimum fuerat, Carolo regi magno Francorum subiectum est post XXX. annos regni ejus, quod in hoc anno inceperat, et successoribus ejus usque ad hunc diem exinde contigit.

A.D. 769.

Charle-  
magne be-  
gins to  
reign.

Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> Withwine, F. S<sup>2</sup>.

\* In this and the following sentence are two serious blunders. Ianbryht was consecrated to Canterbury, not to York, and Frithe-

wald was bishop of Witherne, not of "Ceastre," (i.e. York,) though he had been consecrated there.

- A.D. 774. *Offa gains a victory at Otford over the men of Kent. Affairs of Northumbria.* Kinewlf regis anno xx. pugnavit rex Offa cum Mercensibus contra Centenses apud Otthanford<sup>1</sup>; clade autem horrenda utrinque peracta, belli successibus Offa clarus effulsit.<sup>a</sup> Eodem anno Nordhumbri fugaverunt Chr. E. regem eorum Alred -ab Eoverwic in hebdomada Paschali, et elegerunt sibi in regem Edelred filium Mol, qui regnavit annis iv. Hoc autem anno visa fuerant in cœlo rubea signa post occasum solis; et horrendi serpentes visi fuerunt in Sudsexe cum magna admiratione. Secundo autem ab hoc anno, Saxones Antiqui, unde gens Anglorum descendit, ad fidem conversi sunt.<sup>b</sup> Quo anno Witwine episcopus Witterne, xxiv. anno episcopatus sui, morte affectus est.
- A.D. 776. *Conversion of the Old Saxons.* Kinewlf xxiv. anno regni sui pugnavit contra Offam Chr. E. circa Benetune. Martis autem casu minoratus loco secessit; et Offa rex castrum idem in jura sua redegit. Eodem anno Edelbert sacratus est apud Eoverwic episcopus in Witterne. Anno sequente Edelbald et Herebert, duces regis Nordhumbre, rebellantes domino suo, occiderunt Aldulf filium Bose regalis exercitus primatem Martis congressibus apud Kingsclive; et postea duces regis, Kinewlf et Eggan, proelio ingenti occiderunt duces prædicti apud Hilathirnum. Rex autem prædictus Adelred, ducibus suis et spe amissis, fugit a facie eorum: illi vero constituerunt Alfwld in regem, qui regnavit decem annis. Anno autem hunc sequente Chr. E. principes et præpositi Nordhumbre quendam consulem
- A.D. 778. *Offa takes Bensington from Cynwulf. Affairs of Northumbria.*
- A.D. 779.

<sup>1</sup> A.; *Oxenford*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> Only the bare fact of a battle at Otford is mentioned in the Chronicles. It is described as a brilliant victory for Offa in the *Vita Offæ II.* ascribed to Matthew Paris. Some common source, now lost, probably a Chronicle preserved at St. Alban's, must have existed, from which both Henry and the biographer of Offa drew their information.

<sup>b</sup> *Saxones . . conversi*] This is not mentioned by any known English writer earlier than Henry. Yet the statement is not without some foundation, for Einhard in his *Annals* places under the year 776 the first considerable conversion of Saxons made under Charlemagne's auspices.

et justiciarium suum, quia rigidior æquo extiterat, combusserunt. Eodem anno Edbert<sup>1</sup> archiepiscopus obiit in Cestre, cui successit Enbald. Eodem anno Kinebold factus est episcopus Lindisfarnensis. Eodem anno Antiqui Saxones et Franci pugnaverunt: Franci vero vicerunt. Anno vero proximo rex Nordhumbre Alfwld misit Romam propter pallium, et dedit Enbaldo<sup>2</sup> archiepiscopo. Tunc Alcmundo episcopo Haugustaldensi defuncto Tilbeth successit. Carolus eo anno Romam ivit.\* Circa hoc tempus concilium fuit apud Acle.

A.D. 779.

A.D. 780.

Charle-  
magne  
visita Rome.  
A.D. 782.

Chr. E. § 24. Kinewlf cum regnasset xx. et vi. annis, et contra Britannos victoriosus, multa gessisset prœlia, et eos ex omni parte domasset, tandem exulare statuit adolescentem Kineard, fratrem Sigeberti. Ipse autem impetiit regem apud Meretune, ubi private perrexerat ad quandam mulierem. Rex autem id comperiens, in ostio viriliter se defendebat, donec conspecto juvene foras exiliens, vulneravit eum; et omnes socii ejus in regem pugnantes, interfecerunt eum. Clamore autem audito, milites regis qui in urbe erant, in juvenem cucurrerunt, renuentesque oblatas ab eo terras et pecuniam, pugnando omnes mortui sunt, præter unum Brittanum obsidem, graviter vulneratum. Mane autem milites regis, qui circa erant, in atrio ubi rex occisus erat, obsederunt juvenem et suos. Qui dixit eis: "Cog-  
" nati vestri mecum sunt, vobisque dabo terram et pecu-  
" niam secundum cor vestrum, ne pugnetis contra nos:  
" idem autem sociis vestris obtuli, renuentesque perie-  
" runt." Illi autem responderunt, nullam pecuniam cariorem domino suo esse iis, seque domini sociorumque sanguinem ulturos; irrumpentesque gravi prælio in portam, juvenem et LXXXIV. qui cum eo erant interfe-

A.D. 784.  
Cynewulf  
killed by  
Cyneheard.

<sup>1</sup> *Ædelbert*, C<sup>2</sup>. Tota hæc clau-  
sula deest in F. et S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; *Embaldo*, F.

\* According to Einhard in the | winter of 780 at Pavia, and pro-  
Annals, Charlemagne spent the | ceeded to Rome in 781.

cerunt. Remansitque solus filiolus juvenis, vulneratus tamen. Kinwlf igitur XXXI. anno regni sui sepultus est apud Wincestre; juvenis autem apud Ascenminster.<sup>a. 765.</sup>

A.D. 764.  
Brihtric  
succeda.

A.D. 785.

Council of  
Chalkhythe.

A.D. 786.  
Omens.

A.D. 787.

The first  
descent of  
the Danes  
on the Eng-  
lish coast.

§ 25. Brictric, qui etiam de progenie Certici sæpe dicti regis erat, post Kinwlfum regnavit super Westsexe sexdecim annis; cujus anno secundo Adrianus papa misit legatos in Britanniam ad renovandam fidem quam prædicaverat Augustinus. Ipsi vero honorifice a regibus et populis suscepti, super fundamentum stabile ædificaverunt, pulchre Christi misericordia co-operante. Tenuerunt autem concilium apud Cealchide,<sup>1</sup> ubi Iambert dimisit partem episcopatus sui. Ibi etiam Higebrit electus est ab Offa rege. Eodem anno Egfert sacratus est in regem Kentensis provinciae.<sup>a</sup> Anno vero sequente, qui est annus gratiæ septingentesimus octogesimus sextus, apparuit signum crucis in vestibus;<sup>b</sup> quod dictu et auditu seculis omnibus videri potest mirabile. Factumne igitur fuit ad demonstrationem motionis Ierosolymitanæ cum crucibus assumptis, quæ facta est post trecentos et novem<sup>2</sup> annos tempore junioris Willielmi: an<sup>3</sup> potius factum est ad correctionem gentium, ne plagam Dacorum, quæ proxime secuta est, correcti perferrent? Nos autem nihil temere definimus, sed Domini<sup>4</sup> secreta Domino relinquimus.

Brictricus anno regni sui quarto, duxit in uxorem Eadburh filiam regis Offæ Merce: unde confortatus est in regno et proventus in superbiam. His autem diebus venerunt Daci cum tribus puppibus in Britanniam prædationis causa. Quod præpositus regis illius provinciae videns, occurrit eis debito securius, ut com-

<sup>1</sup> C.; *Cealchide*, F.

<sup>2</sup> xi., A. F.

<sup>3</sup> A. F.; *ant*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> Dei, A.; *Dei secreta Deo*, F.

<sup>a</sup> The value of this assertion is discussed in the Introduction,

<sup>b</sup> It does not appear where Henry found the authority for his account of these omens. Lieber-

mann would trace it to some Rouen annals, brought over to England about 1100. See his article in the *Forschungen z. D. G.*, 1878, p. 282.

prehensos ad regium duceret castrum. Nesciebat autem qui essent qui appulerant, vel cur appulissent. Statim vero immixtus eis occisus est. Hic primus fuit Anglorum cæsus a Dacis, post quem multa millia millium ab iisdem cæsa sunt: et hæc puppes primæ fuerunt quas huc Daci adduxerunt. Anno sequenti convenit concilium apud Nordhumbre in Wincenhale.<sup>1</sup> A.D. 787.  
A.D. 788.

Chr. E.

§ 26. Brictrici regis VI. anno congregata est synodus apud Aclea. Sigan vero occidit nefanda proditione Alfwld regem Nordhumbre. In eo autem loco, ubi rex amicus Domini<sup>2</sup> occisus est, lumen cœleste sæpe visum est. Et ipse sepultus est in ecclesia apud Haugustaldam: post quem Osredus regnare incepit; sed anno sequenti proditus est, et a regno fugatus, et Edelred filius Mol item regno est restitutus. Osredus vero IV. anno postquam rex fuerat, cum congregatis viribus rediret, ut Edelred, per quem expulsus fuerat, regno expelleret, inter eundum captus est et occisus, et sepultus est Tinemuthæ. Quam bene igitur dixit, qui dixit; "O cæca futuri mens hominum." Cum enim juvenis prædictus Osred tripudians et lætabundus rex fieret, quam parum æstimabat se, anno II. regali sede, anno vero IV. vitali luce privandum; unde semper in ter prospera solliciti simus, ignari scilicet quam prope

Lucan  
Phars. ii. 14.

sint adversa. Ea tempestate Offa rex Merce præcepit amputari caput S. Edelbrieti. His etiam diebus Iambriht<sup>3</sup> archiepiscopus ultra non vixit; et abbas Edelred electus est in archiepiscopum. Enbaldus vero archiepiscopus Eboracensis sacrauit Baldulf episcopum apud Witerne. A.D. 790.  
A.D. 792.  
A.D. 792.  
A.D. 790.  
A.D. 791.

Flor. Wig.  
a. 793.  
Chr. E.

Brictrici regis anno X. visi sunt flammei dracones volantes per aera, quod signum duæ pestes secutæ sunt: primo maxima fames, postea gens pagana a Norwagia et Dacia veniens; quæ prius gentem Nordhum- A.D. 793.  
Omens.

<sup>1</sup> Wicenhale, F.<sup>2</sup> Dei, A. F.<sup>3</sup> S<sup>2</sup>.; Iambriht, A.; Iambriht, F. C.

\* The reading of the Worcester Chronicle (D. in Mr. Earle's edition) is Wincanheale, not, with the Peterborough MS., Pincanheale.

A.D. 798. brensem misere exterminavit, et post in Lindisfarnensi provincia ecclesias Christi cum inhabitantibus horribiliter destruxerunt in Idibus Januarii. Qua etiam tempestate Sigga dux, qui Alfwold regem beatum indigne prodiderat, digne deperiit.

A.D. 794.  
Regicide  
and other  
crimes in  
Northumbria.

§ 27. Brictrici regis anno XI. Nordhumbri regem Chr. E suum Edelred occiderunt; qui anno eo quo rex Osredus occisus fuerat, in superbiam elatus, sua relicta, novam duxerat uxorem; ignorans quod et ipse post biennium perimendus esset, brevisque regni gaudium mortis desolatione tam cito terminandum foret. Post

A.D. 796.

quem Ardulf regnum Nordhumbre suscepit. Hunc igitur Enbaldus archiepiscopus et Edelbertus episcopus et Higealdus episcopus et Baldulfus episcopus sacra-

A.D. 796.

verunt in regem, et elevatus est in regia sede apud Eboracum. Nec multo post obiit Enbaldus archiepiscopus apud Eboracum; cui successit alter Enbaldus. His diebus Adrianus papa et rex magnus Offa vitæ metas attigerunt. Postea Egfert, filius Offæ, regnavit super Merce; et C.XLI. die mortuus est: cui successit rex Cenwlf. Eodem anno Eadbriect, vocatus alio nomine

A.D. 794.  
Death of  
Offa.

The Danes  
plunder the  
monastery  
of Wear-  
mouth.

Pren, adeptus est regnum Centense. Gens vero Pagana prædaverunt Nordhumbre; et monasterium Egfert spoliaverunt apud Donemuth.<sup>a</sup> Tunc vero, occurrentibus eis nobilissimis et bello assuetissimis Anglorum, ducibus eorum occisis, victi ad puppes fugerunt. Cum vero in puppibus fugiendo perseverarent, aliquæ earum per tempestatem fractæ sunt, et multi virorum naufragati sunt; quidam vero viventes capti sunt, et juxta littus capite

<sup>a</sup> The passage in the Chronicle runs "Ecgferðes mynster æt done muþe." This has been commonly rendered "Ecgfrid's minster" "at the mouth," namely, of the Wear. See Mr. Petrie's note, M. H. B., p. 732. Mr. Earle (*Two Saxon Chron.*) seems to understand it in the same way, for he has altered the "done" of the Laud MS.

to "ðone," the acc. s. of the article, forgetting, apparently, that *æt* governs the dat. not the accusative case. Mr. Surtees, in his *Hist. of Durham* (quoted in the preface to Prof. Stubbs' *Hoveden*), understands by "Donemuth" Jarrow, at the junction of the Don with the Tyne; and this is beyond a doubt the true explanation.

privati sunt. Nec multo post Cenwlf rex Merce Centensem provinciam transverberans prædatus est, regemque eorum Pren, viribus sibi imparem et ideo per latibula et divortia delitescensem, comprehendit, et victum victoriosus secum reduxit.

A.D. 796.

Kent is over-run by Ceolwulf of Mercia.

Chr. E.

Brichtrici regis anno decimo quarto, Romani amputaverunt linguam Leonis papæ, et oculos sibi eruerunt, eumque a sua sede fugaverunt. Sed ipse, ut scripta tradunt, per Domini misericordiam iterum videre et loqui potuit, rursusque papa effectus est. Post triennium vero Carolus rex factus imperator et a Leone papa sacratus, damnavit morti illos qui papam dehonestaverant; sed postea precibus papæ mortem indulsit, et in exilium eos retraxit. Post triennium quoque defecit Brichtric rex Westsexe. Hoc in tempore fuit magnum prælium in Nordhumbre apud Wellehare; in quo periit Alric filius Hereberti,<sup>1</sup> et alii cum eo multi. Singulorum autem bellorum gesta et fines et modos ad plenum determinare, nimietas prolixitatis necessario prohibet. Gens enim Anglorum naturaliter dura erat et superba, et ideo bellis intestinis incessanter attrita.

A.D. 797.

Outrage on pope Leo.

A.D. 800.

Charles crowned emperor of the West.

Death of Brithric.

A.D. 798.

Battle at Whalley.

§ 28. Egbricht, anno gratiæ DCCC., octavus numero decem regum fortissimorum quos in secundo libro prærogativa singularis excellentiæ notavimus, regnavit

A.D. 800.

Reign of Egbert in Wessex.

Malm. Gest. Reg. ii. 1.

XXXVII. annis et sex mensibus super Westsexe; quem juvenili quidem ætate Brictric præcessor ejus, et Offa rex Merce ab hac terra fugaverant: exulavit igitur III. annis cum rege Francorum, nobiliter tamen et egregie. Defuncto autem rege prædicto, cum reversus regnum suscepisset, eodem die Edelmund consul recessit a Wicum,<sup>2</sup> et veniens Kinemeresford, obviavit Wicstan consuli cum Wilsatis: et ilico simul pugnaverunt; et ambo consules occisi sunt, et Wilsates<sup>2</sup> vicerunt. Quarto post hunc anno decessit Ædelhard<sup>3</sup> archiepi-

Chr. E.

A.D. 803.

Death of archbishop Ethelheard.

<sup>1</sup> Heberti, Sav.<sup>2</sup> Wilsate, H.<sup>3</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Edelred*, A.; *Ædel-*  
*bald*, C. F.

<sup>2</sup> Henry has mistranslated the Chronicle, which calls Æthelmund "caldorman of Hwiccum."

- scopus Centensis, et Wlfred loco suo sacratus est.  
 A.D. 805. Inde vero post biennium, Cudred rex Centensis vitali  
 A.D. 806. privatus est aura. Anno vero sequenti Hardulf rex Chr. E.  
 Nordhumbre fugatus est a regno suo.  
 A.D. 813. Egbricht XIV. anno regni sui prædavit in regnis  
 Brittonum ab Oriente usque ad Occidentem, nec fuit  
 A.D. 812. qui ejus immanitati vel conaretur resistere. Anno au-  
 tem huic proximo, Carolus rex Francorum et impera-  
 A.D. 814. tor Romanus vita exierat. Anno autem huic proximo,  
 S. Leo papa venerabilis corpus deposuit, et Step ha-  
 nus ei successit: Stephano vero Paschalis. Post parvum  
 A.D. 819. vero spatium tempore<sup>1</sup> Cenwlf rex Merce morti datus  
 Death of Cenwlf. est. Post quem regnavit Ceolwlf in loco ejus: sed  
 A.D. 821. tertio ab hoc anno regnum amisit, et Beornwlf sibi  
 illud occupavit.  
 A.D. 823. § 29. Egbricht XXIV. anno regni sui commisit præ Chr. E.  
 Egbert defeats the Mercians at Allington. lium contra Beornwlf regem Merce apud Ellendune;  
 unde dicitur: "Ellendune rivus cruore rubuit, ruina  
 "restitit, fætoe tabuit." Ibi autem, maximo gentis  
 exterminio utrinque peracto, Egbricht victor funestus  
 exitit. Inde vero successus urgens suos, et fortunæ  
 instans, misit Adelwlf filium suum, qui postea rex  
 devenit, Alcstan episcopum et Wlfard consulem cum  
 magno exercitu in Cent; qui fugaverunt regem Bal-  
 dred ultra Tamesin. Tunc ergo populos Cantia, et  
 The men of Kent and East Anglia take him for their lord. Sudria, et Sudsexe, et Estsexe rex Egbricht in domi-  
 nium suscepit, quos prius cognatus suus Pren injuste  
 amiserat.<sup>2</sup> Hoc etiam anno rex Estangle cum gente

<sup>1</sup> *temporis spacium*, H.

<sup>2</sup> Henry has misunderstood the statement of the Chronicle, the true meaning of which was seized by Florence, who says that the men of Kent, Surrey, &c., voluntarily submitted to Egbert, "ex cujus pro-  
 "pinquorum manibus prius extorti,  
 "extraneorum regum ditioni per  
 "aliquot annorum curricula inviti  
 "sunt subacti." This seems pre-

ferable to the fanciful interpretation proposed by Mr. Earle (*Two Saxon Chron.*, p. 298). On the other hand, history affords no countenance to the notion that the house of Cerdic had ever, for any length of time, ruled in Kent. See Lingard's *Hist. of Engl.*, i. 81, for his view about Eadbert Pren.

sua recepit Egbricht regem in patronum: et postea hoc eodem anno Estangli occiderunt Beornwlf regem Merce; cui successit Ludecen. Eodem anno maximum proelium fuerat inter Brittones et gentem Davenescire apud Gavelford; ubi multa millia utrinque corruerunt. Anno vero proximo Ludecen rex Merce et quinque consules cum eo occisi sunt.

Fight between the Britons and the men of Devon.

A.D. 825.

Chr. E.

Egbricht xxvii. anno regni sui fugavit Wilaf regem Merce, qui regi Ludecen successerat, regnumque sibi acquisivit. Cum ergo obtineret omne regnum ex australi parte Humbre, duxit exercitum contra Nord-humbras apud Dore. Illi vero regi magno devote concordiam offerentes et subjectionem, pacifice separati sunt. Anno vero sequente rex Egbricht, misericordia motus, concessit Wilaf ut regnum Merce teneret sub eo. Et inde rex Egbricht duxit exercitum in Nord-wales, et eam sibi patrocínio armorum subdidit. Anno vero hos sequente, Wlfredo archiepiscopo Centensi defuncto Ceolnod successit.

A.D. 827.

Merca, Northumbria, and North Wales, submit to the sovereignty of Egbert.

A.D. 828.

Death of archbishop Wulfred.

§ 30. Egbrichti regis anno xxxiii. redierunt Daci in Angliam, xxxviii. anno postquam apud Donemutham a victi, et fugati sunt. Primum igitur prædaverunt Sepeige. Rex vero Egbricht pugnavit cum exercitu suo contra eos, qui triginta et quinque maximis pupibus advecti fuerant anno sequente apud Carrum, et ibi Dacenses alea belli prævaluerunt: et duo episcopi, scilicet Herefert et Wigfert, et duo duces, scilicet Dudda et Osmod, perierunt. Anno vero sequente venit exercitus Dacorum navalis in Westwales: et Walenses cum Dacis coadunati sunt, et contra regem Egbricht insurrexerunt. Rex vero secunda usus fortuna, Dacos et Walenses contritione contrivit, et triumphose fortissimos fugavit apud Hengistesdune.<sup>1</sup> Anno his proximo Egbricht, rex et monarcha Britanniae, fati concessit. Regnorum,<sup>2</sup> quæ in manu propria tenebat,

A.D. 832.

Descents of the Danes.

A.D. 833.

A.D. 835.

A.D. 836.

Death of Egbert.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *Hengestesdune*, F.; *Hengistendune*, H. Sav.

<sup>2</sup> *Regnorumque*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> See ante, p. 180, note \*.

filios fecit hæredes : Edelwlfum super Westsexe, Edelstan vero super Cent et Sudsexe et Estsexe. Sed cum jam ad monarchiam Angliæ pervenimus, et ad plagam horribilem quæ per Dacos illata est, liber proprius rebus novis donandus est.

Recapitulation.

§ 31. Verum ut in libro secundo factum est, ea quæ in hoc libro dicta sunt, breviter repetenda sunt; et regnorum singulorum progressio ex ordine dirigetur, ut quod confusum est in tot regum commixtionibus, hæc abbreviatio diligenter elucidet. Unde, cum lectori gratior extitero, fructum laboris desiderabilem Dei gratia percipiam.

*Hæc est abbreviatio de regibus Cantuariæ in hoc libro prætractatis.*

Kings of Kent.

Lotharius regnavit duodecim annis, et pugna Australium Saxonum neci traditus est.

Eadricus regnavit anno .et dimidio, extraneus a regali prosapia.

Nidred<sup>1</sup> et Wibbehard, similiter extranei, regnaverunt vi. annis, et expulsi<sup>2</sup> sunt.

Withred de regia stirpe ortus, regnavit xxxiv.<sup>3</sup> annis in pace, et cum rege Ine concordiam fecit.

Edbriht filius Withredi, cum duobus fratribus, regnum tenuit xxii. annis.

Edelbriht sceptro regni potitus est xii. annis.

Egfert regnum idem xxxiv. annis, ut conjicere possumus ex scriptis, tenuit.

Edbrit Pren regnavit iii. annis, et captus est, et abductus a Cenwlfio rege Merce.

Cudred regni infulas obtinuit ix. annis.

Baldred<sup>4</sup> regnavit xviii. annis; et fugavit eum a regno rex Egbricht Westsexe.

Egbrichtus rex Westsexe, regnum conquistum dum vixit obtinens, Adelstano filio suo moriens reliquit:

<sup>1</sup> Vilred, F.

<sup>2</sup> A. C. C<sup>2</sup>. F. S<sup>2</sup>; repulsi, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> xxxiii., A. II.

<sup>4</sup> A.; Balred, Sav.

cessavit ergo regia stirps Cantuariæ, et in aliena jura regnum transiit.

*Hæc est abbreviatio de regibus Westsexe in hoc libro prætractatis.*

§ 32. Cedwalla cum duobus annis regnasset Vectam <sup>Kings of Wessex.</sup> insulam acquisivit: Cent bis prædavit; pergensque Romam, in albis mortuus est, et insignia regni commutavit.

Ine regnavit xxxvii. annis: vicitque proelio Geren-tem regem Walensem, domuitque bello Australes Saxones: Romamque petens se feliciter regno deposuit.

Adelhardus cognatus regis Ine, regnum sibi ab eodem traditum rexit in pace quatuordecim annis.

Cudredus regnavit sexdecim annis, vicitque Brit-annos bis lege proelii; et regem Edelbaldum.

Sigebertus crudelis regnavit uno anno et paulo plus; et a regno juste expulsus, et postea occisus est.

Kinewlf regnavit viginti tribus annis; quem Kine-hard<sup>1</sup> frater regis neci tradidit.

Brictricus regnavit xvi. annis; ejus tempore pri-mum Dacorum sævitia Britanniam lacessivit.

Egbrichtus regnavit xxxvii. annis, et prædavit in Brittanniam ab Oriente usque ad Occidentem, vicitque Marte Beornwlfum regem Merce, et Baldred regem Cantiaë, et regem Wilaf, et Dacos.

*Hæc est abbreviatio de regibus Nordhumbre in hoc libro præsignatis.*

§ 33. Alfridus frater regis Egfridi, doctus in scrip-turis, strenuus in bellis, regnavit viginti annis. <sup>Kings of Northumbria.</sup>

Osredus filius ejus regnavit xi. annis, et pugnans interfectus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> G.; *Sigebert*, F. H.

Cenred regnavit II. annis, et infirmatus, mortis celeritate præventus est.

Osricus regnavit XI. annis, et vitali luce caruit.

Ceolwlfus frater Cenredi prædicti regis, regnavit VIII. annis, et monachus effectus est. Cujus tempore Beda presbyter venerabilis, et Christi philosophus, feliciter decessit.

Ædbrictus<sup>1</sup> cognatus ejus regnavit XXI. annis, effectusque monachus, fragilem vitam fine glorioso perlustravit.

Osulf filius ejus regnavit uno anno, et a familia sua proditus est, et occisus.

Mol Edelvold regnavit VI. annis, et coactus dimisit illud.

Alredus regnavit VIII. annis, et fugatus, depositus est a gente sua.

Aedelred filius Mol regnavit tribus annis, et fugit a facie ducum suorum rebellantium.

Alfwold regnavit X. annis, quem Sigga dux proditione occidit.

Osred, nepos regis prædicti, regnavit uno anno, et a regno fugatus est a suis; et post triennium occisus.

Aedelred filius Mol iterum regnavit quatuor annis, et occisus est a populo suo semper nequissimo.

Ardulf regnavit XII. annis, et a suis fugatus est a regno suo. Postea Nordhumbri, ut apparet, insania nequitiae præoccupati, aliquantisper sine rege fuerunt, et Egbrichto regi concordati sunt.

*Hæc est abbreviatio regum Merce in hoc libro prædictorum.*

Kings of  
Mercia.

§ 34. Edelred filius Pendæ regnavit XXIX. annis, et gloriose monachus effectus est.

Cenred cognatus ejus regnavit V. annis, Romamque petiit, et victoriosus monachatum suscepit.

<sup>1</sup> C.; Adbrichtus, S<sup>2</sup>.; Egbrictus, A.; Aedbrichtus, F. H.

Ceolred, filius Edelredi regis, regnavit octo annis, pugnavitque valide contra regem Ine.

Edelbald superbus regnavit xli. annis. Hic prædavit Nordhumbre, vicitque gentem Walliæ, præfuitque regibus omnibus Angliæ: sed tandem a Cudredo rege victus; et postea occisus est.

Beornred uno anno regnum tenuit; sed Offa validus eum aufugavit.

Offa xxxix. annis regnavit. Is regem Westsexe Kinewlf bello minoravit, et Centenses et Nordhumbras.

Egferd, filius Offæ regis, uno ad plenum anno vivere non suffecit.

Cenwlf regnavit xxvi.<sup>1</sup> annis pacifice, et mortuus est communi morte.

Ceolwlf tribus annis regnum tenuit; quod tunc ei Beornulf ferox diripuit.

Beornulf uno anno regnavit, et ab Egbricto rege bello victus demarcuit.

Ludecen rex primo anno regni sui, cum consulibus quinque suis, occisus est.

Wilaf ab rege Egbricto victus bellando, tributarie sub eo regnum tenuit. Regnum vero Eastangle jam regnis aliis variis modis subjectum fuerat.

## LIB. V. DE BELLIS DACORUM.<sup>2</sup>

### *Prologus.*

IN hujus historiæ principio, quinque plagis percussam diximus Britanniam: quarum de quarta, quæ per Dacos facta est, præsentī libro tractabimus: hæc siquidem longe immanior, longe crudelior cæteris fuit. Romani namque sibi Britanniam brevi subjugaverunt et lege dominantium splendide rexerunt. Picti vero

Among the five plagues before mentioned, that of the Danish raids was the most cruel, the most lasting, and the most destructive.

<sup>1</sup> xxiii., G.

| <sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F.

et Scotti crebras irruptiones ex boreali parte Britanniae faciebant, sed nec eam ex omni parte aggrediebantur, nec nunquam perniciose repulsi tempore non paucō ab invasione cessabant. Saxones autem pro viribus paulatim terram bello capessentes, captam obtinebant, obtentam aedificabant, aedificatam legibus regebant. Nec non et Normanni cito et breviter terram subdentes sibi, victis vitam et libertatem legesque antiquas regni jure concesserunt; de quibus in antea dicendum est. Daci vero terram undique creberrime, diutissime insilientes et assilientes, eam non obtinere sed praedari studebant, et omnia destruere, non dominari cupiebant. Qui si quandoque vincerentur, nihil<sup>1</sup> proficiebant victores, cum alibi classis et exercitus major insurgeret: miroque modo cum reges Anglorum in orientalem partem contra eos pugnaturi tenderent, antequam hostilibus turmis appropinquarent, advolabat nuntius dicens: "Rex, quonam tendis? Classis Paganorum innumerabilis ex australi parte Angliae littora occupavit, urbesque et villas depopulans, omnia caedi tradit et igni." Eadem die accurrebat alius dicens: "Rex, quo fugam capessis? Terribilis exercitus in occidentali parte Angliae appulit, contra quos nisi festinus revertaris, te fugisse existimantes, caede et flamma a tergo persequentur." Adveniebat eadem die, vel crastina, nuntius alius, qui diceret: "Quo tenditis, procures? Daci borealibus plagis appulsi, jam domos vestras combusserunt, jam res vestras asportarunt,<sup>2</sup> jam pueros sursum jactatos lancearum acumine susceperunt, jam conjuges vestras quasdam vi oppresserunt, quasdam secum abduxerunt." Sic tot<sup>3</sup> rumorum miserabili plaga percussi, rex et populus manibus et corde dissolvebantur et tabescebant. Igitur nec cum vincerent, laetitia ut assolet<sup>4</sup> erat eis ulla,

<sup>1</sup> *proficiebat*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> *asportant*, H.

<sup>3</sup> F.; *deest*, A.

<sup>4</sup> A. F.; *assolent*, Sav.

nec spes salutis aliqua. Cur autem tanto furore Dei justitia in eos exarserit, causa hæc est. In primitiva Angliæ ecclesia religio clarissime splenduit, ita ut reges et reginæ, duces et episcopi, vel monachatum vel exilium, ut præmonstravimus, appeterent. Processu vero temporum adeo omnis virtus in eis emarcuit, ut gentem nullam proditione et nequitia sibi parem esse permetterent: quod maxime apparet in historia regum Nordhumbre. Sicut autem in regalibus gestis impietas eorum descripta est, ita uniuscujusque ordinis et officii homines dolo et proditione insistebant. Nec erat decori nisi pietas; et causa dignissima cædis innocentia. Immisit ergo Dominus omnipotens, velut examina apium, gentes crudelissimas, quæ nec ætati nec sexui parcerent, scilicet Dacos cum Gothis, Norwagenses cum Suathedis, Wandalos cum Fresis: qui ab exordio regni Edelwlf regis usque ad adventum Normannorum Willelmi regis ductu, ducentis triginta annis terram hanc desolaverunt. Qui etiam nonnumquam ex affinitate Brittanniæ, Dei vindices et stimuli, Galliam pro meritis crudeliter invaserunt. Sed jam ad historiæ ordinem, his explanatis, redeundum est.

The decline of religion and piety among the English brought this chastisement upon them.

Chr. E.

§ 1. Adelwlf primo anno regni sui, cum ipse adversus hostes prædictos in una parte regni sui persisteret, undique confluyente Paganorum multitudine, misit Wlfhard consulem cum parte exercitus ad debellandum Dacos qui cum xxxiii.<sup>1</sup> navibus apud Hamtonam apulerant: ubi, magna strage hostium patrata, clarissime triumphavit. Misit etiam rex Adelwlf<sup>2</sup> Edelhelm consulem ut pugnaret contra alium exercitum apud Port<sup>3</sup> cum exercitu Westsexe. Cumque diu conflixissent, occiso prædicto consule, Daci victores extiterunt. Anno vero sequente Herebertus consul pugnavit contra eos apud Mercsware,<sup>4</sup> Dacisque vincentibus, suisque fugi-

A.D. 837.  
Struggle of Ethelwulf to repel the Danes.

Chr. C. vel G.

A.D. 838.

<sup>1</sup> C. S<sup>2</sup>. F.; xxiv., A.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; Aedhulf, F, H.

<sup>3</sup> Portes, H.

<sup>4</sup> Merseware, H.

entibus, occisus est. Eodemque anno<sup>1</sup> perrexit Paganorum exercitus per orientales partes Angliæ, scilicet per Lindesie et Estangle et Cantiam, gentique innumeræ vitam ferro rapuerunt. Anno vero hos se- Chr. E.  
 A.D. 839. quente, terram profundius introiens, exercitus circa Cantuariam et Rovecestriam et Londoniam multitudinem magnam stravit.

§ 2. Adelwlf quinto anno regni sui cum parte exercitus, divisi namque erant exercitus, pugnavit contra gentem xxxv. puppium apud Carrum; Dacique victores fuerunt: licet enim parvus fuisset numerus puppium, magnus tamen erat puppes maximas numerus ingressorum. Anno vero ab hoc quinto, Alcstan episcopus venerabilis, et dux Ernulfus cum Sumersmetis, et dux Osredus cum Dorsetis, pugnaverunt contra Dacos apud Pedredesmuth; et, Deo auxiliante, multos eorum prostraverunt et victoriæ splendorem obtinuerunt. Adelwlf decimo sexto anno regni sui et Edel- Chr. E.  
 A.D. 845. baldus filius suus, congregatis omnibus copiis, pugnaverunt cum maximo exercitu, qui cum cccl.<sup>2</sup> navibus appulerant ad Temesmuth, urbesque præclaras et multis inclitas annis, Londoniam scilicet et Cantuariam, fregerunt, et fugaverunt Britwlf regem Merce victum cum exercitu suo, qui nunquam postea vixit; cui successit Burhred in regnum Merce: ingredientibusque Sudreiam regalibus cuneis obviaverunt apud Achlea.<sup>3</sup>

Commissum est igitur inter maximos exercitus tantum et tam grave proelium, quantum nullus retro audierat in Anglia commissum. Videres igitur viros bellatores more segetis utrinque ruere; sanguinisque fluvios capita et membra cæsorū<sup>4</sup> secum volvere. Scribere autem singula nonne nimis et fastidiosæ prolixitatis esset? Concessit ergo Deus fortunam belli in se credentibus, et inenarrabilem contritionem se contemnen-

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, Sav.; *Eodem anno*, F, H.

<sup>2</sup> S<sup>2</sup>. F.; ccl., A.

<sup>3</sup> *Haclea*, H.

<sup>4</sup> *occisorum*, A. F.

tibus. Rex igitur Adelwlfus victor extitit clarissimus. Eodem anno Edelstan rex Cantiae et dux Ealhere navali proelio contra Dacos pugnaverunt apud Sandwic: et magna strage hostium facta, novem puppes eorum ceperunt; aliae vero fugerunt. Consul quoque nomine Cheorl cum gente Davenescyre pugnavit contra Paganos, multosque percussit, et victor extitit apud Wienbeorne.<sup>1</sup> Hic igitur annus Anglorum genti fortunatus extitit. Hoc anno primum quidem Paganorum exercitus per totam hyemem in hac patria conversatus est apud Tenet.<sup>2</sup>

Naval combat at Sandwich.

And at Wembury

Chr. E.

§ 3. Adelwlfus decimo octavo anno regni sui, adjuvit Burhred<sup>3</sup> regem ad subjugandum sibi Nordwalenses potentissime; sociavitque ei filiam suam in matrimonio. Anno eodem misit rex Adelwlf Aluredum filium suum Leoni papae Romam; quem Leo postea in regem benedixit et loco filii suscepit. Hoc anno dux Ealhere cum Centensibus, et Huda cum Sudrigensibus pugnaverunt contra exercitum Paganorum apud Tenet: et magna gens ex utraque parte occisa est, et naufragata; et ambo duces mortui sunt.

A.D. Alfred sent / father Rome.

Fighting on the Isle of Thanet.

Chr. E.

Adelwlfus decimo nono anno regni sui, totam terram suam ad opus ecclesiarum decumavit propter amorem Dei, et redemptionem sui: postea vero cum magno honore Romam perrexit, et ibi uno anno conversatus est. Et inde rediens filiam Caroli Calvi regis Franciae assumpsit in uxorem, et eam secum in hanc patriam adduxit: et cum duobus annis eam tenuisset, hominibus ademptus est; et sepultus apud Wincestre. Hic primum fuerat episcopus<sup>a</sup> apud Wincestre, sed

A.D. 855. Ethelwulf tithes the whole land for the love of God.

He marries Judith, daughter of Charles the Bald. His death.

A.D. 855.

<sup>1</sup> C. F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Wienorne*, A. S. | *apud Tenet* in Sav.; *apud Teneth*,

<sup>2</sup> C. F. C<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; desunt verba | A. <sup>3</sup> A.; *Burred*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> Malmesbury (*Gesta Pontif.*, ii. § 75) says that Ethelwulf was chosen king on his father's death, | from the grade of subdeacon, with the consent of pope Leo. The entire sentence, *Hic primum*.

Egbricto patre suo defuncto, necessitate cogente, factus est rex; et uxore ducta, quatuor filios genuit, qui omnes post eum reges fuerunt. Circa hoc tempus Paganani perendinauerunt tota hyeme apud Sepeige.<sup>1</sup>

A.D. 855.  
The Danes  
winter at  
Sheppey.  
Reigns of  
Ethelbald  
and Ethel-  
bert, sons of  
Ethelwulf.

§ 4. Adelbaldo filio suo reliquit prædictus rex nobi- Chr.C. vel G.  
lissimus regnum hæreditarium Westsexe: Adelbricto filio suo alii reliquit regnum Cantiae et Estsexe, et Sudsexe. Ambo igitur fratres, optimæ indolis juvenes, regnum suum, dum uterque vixit, felicissime tenuerunt. Adelbaldus rex Westsexe cum regnum suum quinque annis in pace tenuisset, morte immatura præreptus est; planxit autem omnis Anglia Adelbaldi regis juventutem, et factus est luctus vehemens super eum; et sepelierunt eum apud Sireburne. Sensitque posthac Anglia quantum amiserit in eo.

A.D. 860.

Adelbricht frater regis prædicti regnavit post eum Chr. E.  
super<sup>2</sup> Westsexe, qui prius erat rex Centensis. In diebus ejus venit navalis exercitus, et egredientes destruxerunt Wincestre; et sic

Virg. Æn. ii.  
363.

“Urbs antiqua ruit multos dominata per annos.”

The Danes  
defeated  
near Win-  
chester.

Tunc vero dux Osric cum Hamtunescyre et dux Edelwlf cum Barrucescyre pugnaverunt contra eundem exercitum. Quibus cum magna contritione fugatis, nostri victores extiterunt.

A.D. 865.

§ 5. Adelbricti regis anno quinto, venit exercitus Ch. E.  
Paganorum apud Tenet; quibus cum Centenses causa induciarum pecuniam promisissent, infra inducias, nocte quadam improvise proruperunt, et Cantiam ex orientali parte deprædati sunt. Eodem anno Adelbrictus cum regnasset super Westsexe quinque annis, super Cantiam vero decem annis, mortem gustavit. Post quem Adelred frater ejus regni suscepit insignia. Hoc autem

Death of  
Ethelbert;  
His brother  
Ethelred  
succeeds.

A.D. 866.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *Sepeigei*, Sav.

| <sup>2</sup> *in*, A.

*fuerunt*, is omitted in S<sup>2</sup>. and H. | *uni*) exactly agrees with that of  
Goscelin's account (*Vita S. Swith-* | Malmesbury.

anno venit maximus exercitus Paganorum in terram Anglorum, quorum duces fuerunt Hinguar et Ubba,<sup>a</sup> viri strenuissimi sed crudelissimi: Hinguar erat ingen-  
tis ingenii, Ubba vero fortitudinis admirandæ. Peren-  
dinantes igitur in hyeme in Estangle, inducias et  
equos ab iis acceperunt, et quietis gratia fortitudini  
suæ ad tempus pepercerunt.

A.D. 866.  
A powerful  
Pagan host,  
under Hin-  
guar and  
Ubba, lands  
on the east  
coast.

Chr. E.

Adelredi regis anno secundo, venit exercitus præ-  
dictus, quem Hinguar et Ubba rexerunt, in Nord-  
humbre apud Eoverwic. Eratque inter gentem patriæ  
illius, solita prodicione, magna discordia, quia regem  
suum Osbrict abjecerant, et alium degenerem, nomine  
Ellan, acceperant: ideoque tarde concordati, congregato  
exercitu, venerunt ad Eoverwic, in qua erat Paganus  
exercitus; fractoque muro intus irruentes, cum eis  
pugnaverunt, et ibi occisus est uterque rex Osbrict et  
Ælla, et innumera multitudo gentis Nordhumbre intra  
urbem et extra; et qui residui fuerunt, inducias cum  
Paganis ceperunt. Hoc anno obiit Alcstan episcopus;  
sepultus est apud Scyreburne, ubi fuit episcopus quin-  
quaginta annis.

A.D. 867.  
It marches  
upon York;  
great battle;  
two North-  
umbrian  
kings slain.

Chr. E.

Adelredus rex, anno tertio regni sui, iuit Snotingham  
cum fratre suo Alfredo in auxilium Burhredi regis  
Merce; exercitus namque prædictus venerat Snoting-  
ham, et ibi in hyeme fuit. Congregatis igitur omni-  
bus copiis Anglorum, cum suos obsessos et viribus im-  
pares Hinguarus videret, vulpeculari astutia, verbisque  
delinitis, inducias ab Anglis impetravit: rediensque

A.D. 868.  
Ethelred  
and Alfred  
force Hin-  
guar back  
from Not-  
tingham to  
York.

A.D. 869.

<sup>a</sup> *Hinguar et Ubba*] The names of the Danish leaders are not given in the Chronicles under this date. Malmesbury names them, both in the *Gesta Reg.* and the *Gesta Pont.*, but only in connexion with the martyrdom of St. Edmund in 870. In the same connexion they are named by one of the Chronicles ("F." of Mr. Earle). But Ethel-

werd distinctly says that the "ty-  
" rannus Igware" landed in East  
Anglia with a large force of North-  
men in 866. Henry seems to have  
arrived at the opinion that the  
leaders of the expedition of 866  
were no other than Hinguar and  
Ubba by independent inference  
from subsequent entries in the  
Chronicles.

A.D. 870. Eboracum, ibi crudeliter uno anno permansit. S. Ead- Chr. E.  
mundus anno. <sup>1</sup> Dominicæ Incarnationis' DCCC.LXX.,  
Adelredi regis anno quinto, coeli palatia conscendit.  
Exercitus namque prædictus Hinguari regis veniens  
per Merce ad Tedforde, ibi in hyeme permansit, cla-  
demque maximam genti miserrimæ intulit. Rex vero  
Eadmundus magis eligens mortem perferre, quam de-  
solationem suorum videre, captus est ab iis, corpusque  
sanctissimum sagittis impiorum ad stipitem undique  
transverberatus: Dei vero clementia multa super eo  
signavit miracula.

Martyrdom  
of Edmund,  
king of East  
Anglia.

A.D. 871. § 6. Adelredi regis anno sexto, venit exercitus novus Chr. E.  
et maximus, quasi fluvijs inundans et omnia secum  
volvens, in Westsexe usque ad Redingum; præ nimia  
vero multitudine cum simul non possent procedere,  
diversis turmis et locis gradiebantur. Duces eorum  
autem fuerunt duo reges Basreg<sup>2</sup> et Aldene.<sup>3</sup> Itaque  
post tres dies dux Edelwlf duobus obvians consulibus  
exercitus apud Englafeld, pugnavit cum eis et vicit, et  
unum occidit, qui vocabatur Sidrac. Et post quatuor  
dies rex Edelred et frater suus cum magna gente ve-  
nientes Redingum, pugnaverunt cum exercitu; et multi  
cecidere ex utraque parte; et Daci victores fuerunt.  
Et post quatuor dies iterum pugnaverunt rex Adelred  
et frater suus Alfred contra totum exercitum apud  
Escesdune, qui fuit divisus in duas partes: ex una  
parte fuerunt Basreg et Alfdene reges Pagani, contra  
quos pugnavit rex Edelred, et occidit regem Basreg:  
ex alia vero parte fuerunt Pagani consules, contra  
quos pugnavit Alfred frater regis, et occidit quinque  
consules; Sidroc senem et Sidroc juvenem et Osbearn  
et Frena et Harolde: et exercitus fugatus est, et  
multa millia occisa sunt; duravitque proelium usque  
ad noctem. Iterum post quatuordecim dies Adelred  
rex et frater suus Alfred pugnaverunt cum exercitu

A fresh  
Danish in-  
vasion, un-  
der Bagsecg  
and Healf-  
dene.

Battles at  
Englefield,  
Reading,  
Ashdown,  
Basing,  
Marden,  
and Wilton.

<sup>1</sup> *gratia*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> *Basrecg*, H.

<sup>3</sup> *Halfdene*, H.

Chr. B.

apud Basingum; et Daci vicerunt. Iterum post duos menses rex Adelred et frater suus Alfred pugnaverunt cum exercitu apud Meredune; et multi ex utraque parte ceciderunt, et Daci diu fugati in fine vicerunt. Ibi occisus est Heahmund<sup>1</sup> episcopus et multi proceres Angliæ. Post hoc proelium venit in æstate magnus exercitus apud Redingum. Hoc anno obit Adelred rex post Pascha, sepultus apud Winburnhamminster; qui regnavit quinque annis. Tunc Alfred frater suus, filius Adelwlf, regnavit super Westsexe; et postea circa unum mensem pugnavit cum paucâ gente apud Wiltune<sup>2</sup> contra exercitum, et diu fugavit eum; et postea Daci vicerunt. Hoc anno fuerunt novem prælia campestria contra exercitum in regno ex australi parte Temese; præter invasiones quas Alfred frater ejus et duces regis sæpe fecerunt. Et hoc anno sunt occisi rex unus et novem comites; et proceres Westsexe ceperunt inducias cum exercitu Paganorum.<sup>3</sup>

Bishop  
Heahmund  
slain.

A.D. 871.  
Death of  
Ethelred;  
Alfred sole  
king of  
Wessex.

§ 7. Alfredi regis anno primo, exercitus venit Londoniam a Reding, et ibi per hiemem fuit; et Mercenses ceperunt inducias cum exercitu. Secundo vero anno, rex Haldene duxit exercitum eundem hiematum in Lindesei apud Torcheseige. Tertio autem anno, hiemaverunt apud Rependune. Tunc vero congregati sunt cum eo tres alii reges, Godrun et Oscetin et Anwend,<sup>4</sup> et facti sunt invincibiles; et Burhred regem, qui regnaverat xxii. annis super Merce, trans mare fugaverunt. Rex autem Burhred Romam perrexit, ibique moriens, sepultus est in ecclesia S. Mariæ apud Anglecnescolam.<sup>5</sup> Daci autem tradiderunt regnum Merce Ceolwlf, cuidam insipienti regi, ad servandum ad opus eorum. Ipse autem juravit, et obsides iis dedit, se redditurum illis regnum quancumque vellent,

A.D. 872.  
Healfdene is  
joined by  
Godrun,  
Oscetyl, and  
Anwend.

A.D. 873.  
The Danes  
gain the  
upper hand  
in Mercia,  
and drive  
Burhred  
into exile.  
A.D. 874.

<sup>1</sup> S<sup>2</sup>.; *Headmund*, F. S<sup>3</sup>.; *Ead-*  
*mund*, C<sup>2</sup>.; *Edmundus*, A.

<sup>2</sup> A. F.; *Wintune*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> deest A. F.

<sup>4</sup> A. F.; *Anwend*, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> "Angel-cynnes scole," the English school at Rome.

et seipsum præsto esse cum omnibus quos adducere Chr. E. posset in auxilium eorum.

A.D. 875.  
Healfdene  
settles his  
Danes in  
Northum-  
bria.

Another  
army occu-  
pies Cam-  
bridge.

A.D. 876.  
And the  
next year  
lands at  
Wareham  
in Wessex.

A.D. 877.  
Danish fleet  
destroyed  
by a storm.

Alfred  
comes to  
terms with  
them, and  
they retire  
into Mercia.

A.D. 878.

The next  
year, they  
move south-

Alfredi regis anno quarto, exercitus recessit a Rependune et divisus est. Alfdene rex cum parte quadam exercitus perrexit in Nordhumbre et fuit in hieme juxta Tinam, et saisivit terram et divisit eam suis, et coluerunt eam duobus annis; et sæpe prædavit super Pictos. Tres vero reges Dacorum prædicti venerunt cum majori parte exercitus ad Grantebrige, et ibi uno permanserunt anno. Hoc anno pugnavit rex Alfred navali proelio contra VII. puppes, quarum unam cepit, ceteras fugavit. Anno vero sequente, exercitus trium regum venit apud Werham in Westsexe. Rex vero Alfredus cepit inducias cum exercitu, acceptis ab eo obsidibus ex nobilioribus eorum. Ipsi autem juraverunt ei, quod nunquam alicui antea fecerant, se cito exituros a regno illius; et in proxima nocte furtim recedens exercitus qui equos habebant, perrexerunt Exanceastre.. Hoc anno Rollo cum suis Normanniam Chr. E. venit. Anno vero sequente exercitus perjurus venit a Werham ad Exanceastre, et navalis exercitus circum remigans tempestate obrutus est, perieruntque CXX. puppes apud Swanawic. Rex autem Alfred cum magna gente secutus est exercitum, qui equos habebant, nec eos consequi potuit ante Exanceastre. Tunc exercitus tradidit illi quotquot obsides ipse volebat, et pacem tenere juravit; et bene tenuit. Tunc exercitus ivit in Merce, et partem regni tenuit, partem dedit Ceolwlfo.

§ 8. Alfredi regis anno septimo, cum jam Daci omne regnum a boreali parte Temesis obtinerent, regnaretque rex Haldene in Nordhumbre, et frater Haldeni esset in Estangle, tres vero reges prædicti cum Ceolwlfo rege eorum essent in Merce, et Londonia, et Estsexe, regi vero Alfredo non remansisset nisi terra ultra Tamesim; indignum visum est Dacis ut vel hoc ei remaneret. Tres igitur reges venerunt Cipeham in Chr. E. Westsexe cum mira multitudine quæ nuper a Dacia

venerat: operientesque terram quasi locustæ, cum nulus eis posset resistere, occupaverunt eam sibi. Pars igitur populi trans mare fugit, pars Alfredum regem secuta est, qui cum paucis se in nemoribus abscondebatur, pars vero subdita est hostibus. Cum autem rex Alfredus jam nec terram haberet, nec spem habendi, respexit in reliquias plebis suæ Dominus. Venit namque frater regis Haldene cum XXIII. navibus in Westsexe in Davenscyre. Gens autem regis Alfredi occidit eum et DCCCXL. homines exercitus sui; captumque est ibi vexillum eorum quod vocabatur Raven. Ergo rex Alfredus, hoc successu confortatus, paravit firmitatem quandam apud Ethelingeie; et sic fretus, pugnavit sæpe cum exercitu, auxilio Sumersetsensium qui ibi propinqui erant. Et in septima hebdomada post Pascha perrexit ad Ecgbrightestan<sup>1</sup> ex orientali parte Seleuude;<sup>2</sup> et venerunt contra eum omnes Sumerseti et Wilsati et qui residui fuerant de Hantunescyre, læti pro adventu suo: et ipse in crastino inde perrexit ad Æglea, et inde alia die ad Edendune, et ibi pugnavit contra exercitum, et eum fugavit, et eum persecutus est usque ad firmitatem suam; et ibi fuit quatordecim diebus. Tunc exercitus tradidit regi obsides, et iuravit se recessurum a regno suo. Promisit etiam quod rex eorum baptizaretur; et factum est: venit enim<sup>3</sup> Godrun princeps regum eorum ad Alfredum regem, et baptizatus est. Alfredus vero patrinus ejus factus, cum eum secum duodecim diebus tenuisset, abeunti multa dedit munera.

§ 9. Alfredi anno octavo, ivit exercitus prædictus a Chipenham ad Cyrencestre, et ibi hiemavit in pace. Eodem anno<sup>4</sup> extranei, id est Wicingi,<sup>5</sup> collegerunt novum exercitum, et manserunt apud Fuleham juxta Tamesim. Hoc anno sol obscuratus est. Anno vero sequente exercitus prædictus regis Godrun recessit a

A.D. 879.  
ward to  
Chippen-  
ham.

A Danish  
force under  
Healfdene's  
brother,  
landing in  
Devonshire,  
is defeated  
with loss.

Alfred takes  
up a forti-  
fied position  
at Athelney.

Muster at  
Brixton.

Victory of  
Ethandun.

Godrun  
agrees to  
give host-  
ages, to  
evacuate  
Mercia, and  
to embrace  
Christianity.

A.D. 879.

The Danes  
at Fulham.

A.D. 879.  
Godrun re-  
tires into

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; *Egbrichtstan*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A.; *Salwdu*, Sav.; *Sealwdis*  
F.

<sup>3</sup> *ergo*, A.

<sup>4</sup> A.; *Wincigi*, G., Sav.; *Wicingi*, F.

A.D. 880. Cyrenceastre et perrexit in Estangliam, et terram  
East Anglia, and settles there.

A.D. 881. anno permansit. Sequenti vero anno pugnaverunt cum

A.D. 882. Francis, et vicerunt eos. Tertio autem anno venerunt  
per Mese in Franciam. Quo in tempore rex Alfredus  
navali proelio quatuor puppes Dacorum cepit, et eos  
qui inerant, interfecit. Quarto vero anno venit exer-  
citus apud Scat in Cundoet, et ibi uno anno per-

A.D. 883. mansit. Hoc anno Marinus papa misit Alfredo regi  
Exchange of gifts between Alfred and Pope Marinus. lignum Domini. Alfredus autem misit eleemosynam  
suam Romæ, et etiam in Indiam ad S. Thomam, se-  
cundum votum quod fecerat quando hostilis exercitus  
hiemavit apud Londoniam.

A.D. 885. § 10. Alfredi regis anno decimo quarto, pars exer- Chr. E.  
Danes at Rochester. citus qui in Gallia erat venit<sup>1</sup> ad Rovecestriam: et

civitatem obsidentes, coeperunt facere ibi aliam firmi-  
tatem. Adveniente vero rege, ad puppes fugerunt, et  
mare transierunt. Misit autem rex Alfred navalem  
exercitum ad Cent in Estanglia,<sup>a</sup> qui cum venissent  
Sturemutham obviantes XVI. puppibus Wiccingorum  
vicerunt eas bello: sed redeuntes cum spoliis et vic-  
toria, obviaverunt magno exercitui Wiccingorum, et  
cum iis pugnantes victi sunt. Eodem anno interfecit  
aper quidam Carolum regem Franciæ, filium Lodovei,  
filii Caroli Calvi, cujus filiam Juhetam duxerat rex  
Edelwlf. Tunc quoque papa Marinus obdormivit.

A.D. 886. Anno sequente venit exercitus Dacorum per Secanam  
Danes at Paris. Alfred recovers London. ad pontem Parisius, et illic hiemavit. Alfredus rex  
Londoniam obsedit,<sup>b</sup> quia maxima vis Dacorum secuta  
fuerat Gallicanum exercitum; omnes autem Anglici  
statim ei subditi sunt, et receperunt eum: Daci

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; *venerunt*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> A mistranslation of Chr. E, which has, "of Cent on East Engle," from Kent to East Anglia.

<sup>b</sup> In the original *ge-sette*, "planted" or "settled." Asser's statement, that Alfred restored and

settled the city of London after the havoc of the Danish wars, clears up the passage sufficiently; see however Mr. Earle's note (*Two S. C.* p. 310).

Chr. E. namque aufugerunt. Rex vero tradidit Ædredo duci A.D. 887.  
 civitatem in custodiam. Anno vero hos sequente, ex-  
 ercitus recedens a ponte Parisius ivit per Secanam Danes at  
 Cheay and  
 on the  
 Yonne.  
 usque ad Marnam, et per Marnam usque ad Cadzi, et  
 in ea, et in Iorna<sup>1</sup> duobus annis conversati sunt.  
 Circa hoc tempus, factione Ernulfi, quinque reges facti  
 sunt in Francia.

§ 11. Alfredi regis anno XIX. Godrun rex Dacus, qui A.D. 890.  
 fuit filiolus Alfredi regis et regnavit in Estangle, luce  
 demptus est. Hoc anno venit exercitus a Secana ad  
 Scanlaudam, quod est inter Brittanniam et Franciam.  
 Brittones vero cum eis pugnantes, et in flumen quod-

Chr. B. dam fugantes, multos necaverunt. Hic Pleumundus archi- Election of  
 Chr. C. episcopus a Deo et omni populo electus est. Anno vero se- archbishop  
 quente exercitus ivit in orientem, et rex Arnulfus Plegmund.  
 cum Francis et Saxonibus et Baveriensibus pugnavit A.D. 891.

contra exercitum, et repulit eos. Postea rediit in A.D. 893.  
 Angliam ille magnus exercitus cum omnibus rebus A Danish  
 suis ad portum Limene cum CCL. navibus; qui portus army lands  
 est in orientali parte Cent juxta magnum nemus An- at Lympe,  
 drede-laige, quod CXX. millia in longitudine, XXX. in and forms  
 latitudine continet. Egressi vero construxerunt cas- a camp at  
 trum apud Awldre.<sup>2</sup> Interim venit Hasteng cum LXXX. Appledore.  
 navibus in portum Tamesis, et paravit castrum apud  
 Middletune: postea vero regi Alfredo juramenta fecit, Hastings,  
 ne in aliquo ei noceret. Rex ergo ipsi, et uxori suæ, with a large  
 et filiis multa dona dederat; quorum alterum rex fleet, enters  
 ipse in baptismo tenuerat, alterum vero Edredus the Thames.  
 dux magnus. Hasteng autem semper infidus, castrum  
 construxit apud Beamfled. Cumque isset prædatum A.D. 894.  
 super regem, fregit rex castrum prædictum, et cepit Alfred con-  
 ibi uxorem ejus, et filios, et pecuniam, et spolia, et tends inces-  
 puppes: uxorem vero et filios reddidit Hastengo, quia santly with  
 patrinus eorum erat. Regi autem Alfredo venit nun- the barba-  
 tius dicens: "Centum puppes venerunt a Nordhumbre rians at all  
 " et Estangle, et obsident Exanceastre." Rex igitur points.

<sup>1</sup> Iorra, C. F.

| <sup>2</sup> A. F.; Awldre, Sav.

A.D. 894. dum illuc tendit, exercitus qui erat apud Awldre in- Chr. C.  
vasit Estsexe, et castrum fecit apud Scobrih: indeque  
permeantes, venerunt usque ad Budingtune juxta Sa-  
vernam, et ibi castrum fecerunt; unde tamen bello  
repulsi, fugerunt ad castrum suum in Estsexe. Illi  
autem qui obsederant Exanceastre, audito adventu  
regis, ad puppes fugerunt, et in mari prædantes mane-  
bant. Quartus exercitus venit eodem anno a Nord-  
humbre usque in Legecestriam; sed ibi obsessi sunt,  
et tanta fame afflicti sunt, quod etiam equos suos  
comederent.

A.D. 895.  
Operations  
round Lon-  
don.

§ 12. Alfredi regis anno XXIII Daci qui erant in Chr. C.  
Legecestria iverunt circum per Nordwales et Nord-  
humbre ad Mereseige insulam Estsexe, et post in  
hieme traxerunt puppes suas per Tamesim in flumen  
Luye: ille autem exercitus qui obsederat Exanceas-  
tre deprehensus est prædans juxta Ciceastre, ubi mul-  
tos ex suis amiserunt, et quasdam ex puppibus suis

A.D. 896. perdiderunt. Anno vero sequenti, exercitus qui erat  
in Luye, fecit juxta idem flumen castrum quoddam,  
viginti millibus a Londonia. Venerunt igitur Londo-  
nienses ad castrum illud, et cum Dacis pugnantes,  
quatuor ex ducibus eorum occiderunt, et victoriam in  
tempore opportuno dedit suis Dominus omnipotens.  
Cum ergo fugissent Daci ad castrum, fecit rex aquam  
Luye findi in tria brachia, ne puppes suas per eam  
reducere possent. Quod Daci comperientes, relictis  
puppibus, perrexerunt usque ad Quadrage<sup>1</sup> juxta Sa-  
vernam, et ibi castrum fecerunt, et ibidem hiema-  
verunt; commendatis uxoribus suis in Estangle. Rex  
vero cum exercitu persecutus est eos: at Londonienses  
puppes Dacorum relictas quasdam ad Londoniam dux-  
erunt, quasdam combusserunt.\* Hi igitur his tribus

<sup>1</sup> Quathruge, C. C<sup>3</sup>. F.

\* Henry misconceives the action  
at the stockade on the Lee; he  
makes it a victory of the London-

ers, but it was the other way.  
Florence interprets the Chronicle  
correctly.

Chr. C.

annis prædictis, scilicet ex quo Daci ad portum Limene appulerunt, Anglis multa mala fecerunt, sed et ipsi multo plura toleraverunt. Anno vero quarto, divisus est exercitus partim in Nordhumbre, et partim in Estangle; pars vero transfretans ivit in Secanam: postea tamen quædam puppes Dacorum venerunt juxta littora Westsexe, quæ crebris irruptionibus sæpe prædantes, et sæpe pugnantes, cladem non modicam provincialibus Westsexe contulerunt. De multis vero conflictibus unum pertractabo, quia insoliti fuit eventus. Rex Alfredus naves longas, scilicet XL remorum, vel plurium, fecit parari contra puppes Dacorum prædictas: sex autem puppes Dacorum, cum in quodam littore Davenscyre starent, præoccupaverunt eas novem regiæ naves. Quod Daci videntes, tres rates contra eos commoverunt, aliæ namque tres stabant in littore immobiles, Nereo scilicet retracto. Sex igitur puppes Anglorum pugnaverunt contra tres puppes<sup>1</sup> Dacorum. Tres vero reliquæ progressæ sunt ad tres naves Dacorum in littore stantes. Tres igitur naves Dacorum contra sex desperate et omnino audacissime et diu pugnantes, conflictum asperrimum peregerunt. Vicit tamen numerus major, duæque rates Dacorum captæ sunt, tertia vero aufugit, omnibus tamen occisis qui inerant, præter quinque. Hoc autem perpetrato, cum ad naves sociorum, quæ juxta puppes Dacorum ex adverso littore erant, reverti vellent, exsiccatae sunt: quod Daci videntes, egressi de tribus puppibus pugnant contra gentem Anglorum quæ erat in tribus ratibus. Videres autem gentem sex navium bellum aspicientem, et auxilium ferre nequentem, pugnis cedere pectus, et unguibus rumpere crines. Angli tamen viriliter agebant, et Daci fortissime instabant. Ceciderunt ex Anglis XLII, et ex Dacis CXX. Daci tamen Lucheman præpositum regalis exercitus acrius insistentem occiderunt: ob quam rem Angli dum paulatim

A.D. 897.

Remarkable  
naval combat.<sup>1</sup> naves, A.

A.D. 897. cederent, Daci pene victores visi sunt. Sed ecce, *Chr. C.*  
 mari redeunte ad puppes, Daci maris alta invadunt,  
 quos postea IX. puppes Anglorum sero et frustra per-  
 secutæ sunt. Ventus vero adversus victores Dacos  
 aggreditur, et duas ex puppibus eorum ad terram pro-  
 jecit, unde homines capti et adducti ad regem, omnes  
 suspensi sunt apud Wincestriam; qui vero in tertia  
 puppe erant, valde sauciati appulerunt in Estangle.  
 Eodem anno perierunt XX. naves cum hominibus juxta  
 australia littora.

The king  
hangs the  
crews of two  
Danish  
ships at  
Winchester.

A.D. 901. § 13. Alfredus rex, cum regnasset viginti octo annis  
 et dimidio super totam Angliam, præter illas partes  
 quæ subditæ erant Dacis, mortis sensit aculeum. De  
 cujus regimine laborioso, et inextricabili vexatione,  
 versifice proloqui dignum duximus:

His panegy-  
ric.

Nobilitas innata tibi probitatis honorem,  
 Armipotens Alfrede, dedit, probitasque laborem,  
 Perpetuumque labor nomen: cui mixta dolori  
 Gaudia semper erant, spes semper mixta timori.  
 Si modo victor eras, ad crastina bella pavebas:  
 Si modo victus eras, ad crastina bella parabas.  
 Cui vestes sudore jugi, cui sica cruore  
 Tincta jugi, quantum sit onus regnare, probarunt.  
 Non fuit immensi quisquam per climata mundi,  
 Cui tot in adversis vel respirare liceret,  
 Nec tamen aut ferro contritus ponere ferrum,  
 Aut gladio potuit vitæ finisse labores.  
 Jam post transactos vitæ regnique dolores,  
 Christus ei sit vera quies, sceptrumque perenne."

A.D. 901.  
Edward the  
Elder suc-  
ceeds his  
father.

§ 14. Edwardus filius regis Alfredi, paternum reg-  
 num tenuit XXIV. annis. Ædelwoldus vero frater *a Chr. C.*  
 suus junior accepit uxorem, et saisivit Winburnam  
 sine voluntate tam regis quam nobilium regni: qua-  
 propter ivit rex Edwardus cum exercitu usque ad

\* Henry seems not to have known the meaning of "fædran sunu," pa-  
 truelis.

Chr. C. Bathan<sup>1</sup> juxta Winburnam. Ædelwoldus autem cum A.D. 901.  
hominibus suis in Winburna permanens januis clausis,  
dicebat quia ibidem persisteret aut occumberet. Nocte  
tamen inde recedens, ivit ad exercitum qui erat in His cousin  
Ethelwold  
joins the  
Danes. Nordhumbre.<sup>2</sup> Illi vero nobilitati juvenis congau-  
dentes, constituerunt eum regem et principem super  
reges et duces suos. Rex autem saisivit uxorem ejus,  
quam juvenis prædictus ultra vetitum episcopi dux-  
erat, quia sacrata fuerat in sanctimoniam. Eodem  
anno obierat Edred dux Davenescyre<sup>3</sup> uno mense ante  
obitum Alfredi regis; qui cum eo multa fidelis et for-  
tis gesserat bella.

Chr. C. Edwardi regis anno tertio, Ædelwoldus frater regis, A.D. 904.  
coactis viribus, duxit navigium immensum in Estsexe;  
et Estsexenses sine mora subditi sunt. Anno vero A.D. 905.  
sequente duxit exercitum gravissimum in Merce, et  
prædavit eam undique usque ad Cricalade. Ibique  
transiens Tamesim, cepit in Brethdenne<sup>4</sup> et circum-  
quaque quicquid aderat. Sicque patrato facinore suo,  
domum reversi sunt cum gaudio. At rex Edwardus  
congregans exercitum quam citius potuit, ivit post eos, Great battle  
in the Fen  
country;  
the Kentish  
troops suffer  
heavy loss;  
Ethelwold  
killed.  
et terram eorum totam prædatus est inter Dicum<sup>5</sup> et  
Usam usque ad paludes in Nord; postea cum inde  
recedere vellet, præcepit per totum exercitum suum ut  
omnes simul recederent: et recesserunt omnes præter  
Centenses, qui remanserunt ultra præceptum regis, et  
rex misit propter eos VII. nuntios. Tunc exercitus  
Dacorum ibi eos interceptit, et pugnavit cum eis;  
ibique occisus est Siulf dux, et Sighelm dux, et Ad-  
elwald baro. regis, et Cenwlf abbas, et Sigebricht filius  
Siulfi, et Eadwold filius Accæ, et plures alii, licet

<sup>1</sup> *Batan*, C. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; *Nordh*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> A.; *Davene*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> S<sup>2</sup>, S<sup>2</sup>. F.; in *Brithende*, A.;  
*Inbrithenden*, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> Henry could make nothing of  
the "dicum" of the Chronicles.  
These "dicas," or fen-dykes, were,  
according to the explanation of

Florence, the boundary of the  
territory of St. Edmund king and  
martyr, i.e. of the monastery of  
Bury St. Edmund's.

A.D. 905. ditiores nominentur. Et ex parte Dacorum occisus est Chr. C. rex Eoric, et Ædelwoldus juvenis, quem elegerant in regem, et Beorthsigf filius Brithnodi adeling, et Isopo<sup>1</sup> hold, et Oscetel hold, et plures alii, quos omnes nominare nequivimus, et multus populus cecidit ex utraque parte; et ex parte Dacorum plures occisi sunt, licet ipsi victoriam obtinuissent. Hoc eodem anno obiit Ealcswid uxor<sup>a</sup> regis Edwardi.

A.D. 906. § 15. Edwardus rex anno quinto, constituit inducias

A.D. 910. cum Estanglis et Nordhumbris apud Itingforde. Anno vero sequenti, misit exercitum rex fortissimum ex Westsexe et Merce, qui prædam maximam ceperunt ab exercitu qui erat in Nordhumbre, tam hominum quam animalium. Multisque Dacorum occisis, manserunt in terra eorum quinque hebdomadis prædantes.

A.D. 911. Anno sequenti, exercitus Dacorum venit in Merce præ- Chr. C.  
Edward meets the Northumbrian Danes in Mercia, and wins a great victory; king Healfdene killed.  
datum. Rex autem congregaverat centum puppes, et misit eas contra exercitum: quas postquam comperuit exercitus, putavit ab eis habere auxilium,<sup>b</sup> et quod securius possent ire quoquo vellent. Porro rex misit exercitum post eos ex Westsexe et Merce, qui consecuti sunt eos a tergo cum domum reverterentur, et cum eis pugnaverunt. Bellum ingens est commissum. Contrivit autem Dominus infideles contritione magna, et ex eis multa millia mors cruenta devoravit, corrueruntque principes eorum in confusione, et devorati in pulvere sorduerunt. Occidit namque rex Haldene, et rex Eowils,<sup>2</sup> et Uthere consul, et Scurfa consul, et Owl<sup>3</sup> hold, et Benesing hold, et Hanlaf niger,<sup>4</sup> et Wrfer<sup>5</sup> hold<sup>6</sup> et Offerd hold, et Offerd hlyte, et Hah-

<sup>1</sup> C. F. S<sup>2</sup>; *Hispo*, A.

<sup>2</sup> F.; *Eotwolf*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Oswulf*, F.

<sup>4</sup> A.; *Hanlafinger*, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> *Werfer*, F.

<sup>6</sup> desunt in F.

<sup>a</sup> Ealhswith was not the wife but the mother of Edward the Elder; his wife's name was Elgiva.

<sup>b</sup> Henry has misunderstood the Chronicler, who merely says that

the Danes, supposing that the chief part of Edward's forces was on board the ships, thought they might plunder in Mercia without disturbance.

C hr.C.

mund hold,' et Gudferd hold, et alius Gudferd.<sup>a</sup> Servi autem Domini victoria tanta potiti, exultantes in Deum vivum, in hymnis et concentibus Dominum exercituum benedicebant. Anno sequente, defuncto Edredo duce Merce, rex Edwardus saisivit Londoniam et Oxinefordiam, omnemque terram Mercensi provinciæ pertinentem.

A.D. 912.  
On the death of the ealdorman of Mercia, Edward seizes London and Oxford.

Edwardus rex anno IX. regni sui construxit Herefordiam, castrum non immensum sed pulcherrimum, inter Beneficiam et Mimeram et Luye, flumina non profunda sed clarissima. Eodem anno construxit burgum quendam Witham in Estsexe, et interea manebat apud Mealdune: et ei subdita est magna pars gentis illius, quæ prius erat in subditione Dacorum. Sequenti vero anno<sup>b</sup> exiit Dacorum exercitus ab Hamtonia et Legecestria, et fregerunt inducias quas rex iis dederat; et fecerunt cædem magnam Anglorum apud Hocheneretune, et ibi circum in Oxinefordscyre. Et postquam domum redierunt, statim exiit alia caterva, et ivit ad Ligetune. Gens autem patriæ illius eos comperiens, pugnavit cum eis, et eos fugavit, et totam prædæ quam ceperant, eis abstulit, et etiam equos eorum.

A.D. 913.  
He fortifies Hertford and Witham.

A.D. 917.

Chr. C.

§ 16. Edwardi regis anno undecimo, venit magnus navalis exercitus ab austro ex Lidwicum, et duo consules Uhter et Rahað; et circuierunt in West, quousque venerunt ad littus Saverne, et ibi prædati sunt in Nordwales ubicunque poterant juxta littora, ceperuntque Camelegeac episcopum et duxerunt eum ad puppes suas. Rex autem Edwardus redemit eum quadraginta libris. Postea exercitus exiit, volens prædari super Yrcingafeldas; et tunc obviaverunt eis Le-

A.D. 918.  
Hostilities in the west of England; the Danes are defeated several times.

<sup>a</sup> The names of Benesing, Anlaf, Thurferth (Wrfer), Osferth, and the two Guthferths, only occur in Chronicles B. and C. The second Osferth of Henry appears to be imaginary.

<sup>b</sup> Henry is here following one or

other of the Chronicles A, B, or C, which have no entry from 913 to 917; thus he falls into the error of describing the events of 917 as happening in the year "following" 913.

- geceastrenses, Herefordiensesque, et homines ex aliis castris quæ ibi erant propinqua, et cum eis pugnantes eos fugaverunt: occideruntque Rahald consulem, et A.D. 918. Geolcil \* fratrem Utheri consulis, magnamque partem exercitus, et fugaverunt eos in castrum quoddam, obsidentes eos ibi, quousque illi dederunt eis obsides, iuraveruntque se recessuros a terra regis. Rex autem fecit custodiri littora Saverne ex australi parte a Walia usque ad Afenam, ita quod ipsi nullo modo ex illa parte irrumperere præsumpserunt. Ipsi tamen bis furtim exierunt; una vice ex orientali parte Weced, alia vice apud Portlocon:<sup>1</sup> et utraque vice pauci evaserunt qui occisi non essent, præter illos qui poterant natare ad puppes. Et tunc manserunt in insula Stepen cum magna miseria, ita quod cibus eis defecit, et multi fame mortui sunt, quia cibum conquirere nequibant. Tunc recesserunt ipsi in Deomedum, et inde in Hiberniam. Eodemque anno rex Edwardus ivit cum exercitu ad Buchingham, ibique mansit quatuor hebdomadis; fecitque vallum ex utraque parte aquæ, antequam inde recessisset. Et Turchetel consul ibi subditus est regi; omnesque consules et meliores barones qui appendebant ad Bedefordiam, et plures ex illis qui appendebant ad Hamtoniam.
- A.D. 902. Edwardi regis anno duodecimo, fuisse proelium apud Chr. c. Holme inter Centenses et Dacos scripturæ veterum dicunt: quis autem victor fuerit nonne indeterminatum relinquant?<sup>b</sup> Secundo ab hoc anno luna valde obscura est, et magno fuit horrore videntibus: tertio anno

and retire  
to Ireland.  
Edward fortifies  
Buckingham;  
the Danes  
in those  
parts submit  
to him.

A.D. 902.  
Battles at  
Holme and  
Totenhale.

A.D. 904.

A.D. 905.

<sup>1</sup> C. F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Portlocon*, C<sup>2</sup>.; *Pordacan*, A. S.

\* This "Geolcil" appears to be a name invented by Henry, and applied to the unnamed brother of Earl Uther, whom the Chronicles mention as having fallen on this occasion.

<sup>b</sup> (In the confusion of dates in this and the next paragraph, see the *Introd.*, § 43. Holme is con-

nected by Ingram (*Sax. Chron.*, p. 125) with "Holmsdale in Surrey," a locality which does not appear on the Ordnance Map. More probably it is the large plain or stony common near Dungeness, between Lydd and the sea, known to this day as "The Holme Stone."

Chr. C. apparuit cometa: quarto<sup>a</sup> anno Legecestria renovata est: A.D. 907.  
 quinto anno corpus S. Oswaldi translatum est a Bar- A.D. 909.  
 denei in Merce: sexto anno Anglici et Daci pugna- A.D. 910.  
 verunt apud Totanhale. Quis autem cuneorum hor-  
 rendos aggressus, ignitas collisiones, formidabiles tin-  
 nitus, feras irruptiones, miserabiles occasus, clamores  
 horrisonos scriptis exequetur? Tandem suos divina  
 pietas victoria decoravit, et Dacos infideles cæde simul  
 et fuga dehonestavit. Eodem anno Edelfled domina  
<sup>1</sup> Merce, quæ sub Etheredo patre suo infirmo regnum  
 Merce regebat, construxit burgum Brimesbirih.<sup>2 b</sup>

Chr. C. § 17. Edwardi regis anno XVIII. mortuus est Ethered A.D. 911.  
 dominus Merce pater Edelfled, qui fuerat diu infirmus, Death of  
 et dedit terram suam filiæ suæ; quia nullum filium Ethered  
 habebat. Secundo ab hoc anno Edelfled domina Merce (see p. 155).  
 construxit burgum ad Scoriæte, et eodem anno burgum A.D. 912.  
 apud Bruge: tertio anno, Edelfled domina Merce construxit burgum ad Scoriæte, et eodem anno burgum  
 apud Bruge: tertio anno, Edelfled domina Merce construxit burgum Tamewrthe in principio ætatis; et  
 ante Augustum, illum apud Stafforde: quarto, Edelfled Ethelfleda, his widow,  
 domina Merce construxit burgum Edesbirih in principio fortifies  
 ætatis; et in fine Augusti illum apud Wirengewic: Tamworth and other  
 quinto, Edelfled domina Merce construxit burgum apud places, A.D. 913.  
 Cereburih post Natale; et illum apud Wardebirih in A.D. 914.  
 æstate; et eodem anno illum apud Rumcoven: sexto, A.D. 915.  
 misit exercitum in Walliam, Walensibusque victis, fregit A.D. 916.  
 Breacanammere; in qua cepit uxorem regis Walensis  
 cum XXXIII. hominibus: septimo, Edelfled domina Merce  
 adquisivit Derebi cum provincia ei appendicia. Cum

<sup>1</sup> desunt in C. F. C<sup>2</sup>.; *domina*  
*quæ*, C. F.

<sup>2</sup> S<sup>2</sup>.; *Brunesburih*, A.; *Bris-*  
*mesbirith*, F.

<sup>a</sup> It should be "quinto"; but it  
 is the *fourth* entry in the inter-  
 calated Mercian narrative of C,  
 which Henry is here following.  
 Similarly the notice of the transla-  
 tion of St. Oswald is the *fifth*, and  
 that of the battle of Totanhale the  
*sixth* entry, in the same narrative.

<sup>b</sup> Bramesbury, Bramsby, or Brans-

by, near Torksey in Lincolnshire.  
 Bransby would be conveniently  
 situated as a post for watching the  
 lower Trent in advance of Lincoln.  
 The Trent was a favourite line of  
 approach with the Danes; Torksey  
 had been the winter quarters of a  
 Danish army in 873.

A.D. 917. *and takes Derby and Leicester from the Danes.* autem multitudo hostium intra Derebi conclusa, egredi contra eam non auderet, castellum acerrime invasit, et in ipso portæ introitu proelii maxima vis exarsit, ubi quatuor duces fortissimi Edelfled cæsi sunt; sed sui Chr. C.

A.D. 918. nihilominus portam et muros fregerunt. Octavo, Edelfled domina Merce conquisivit Legecestriam, et major pars exercitus, qui ibi erat, subdita est; Eboracensesque illi promiserant, et quidam eorum fidem dederant, quidam vero juraverant quod forent in auxilium ejus. Post illam autem conventionem ipsa obiit apud Tamewrthe, duodecim diebus ante festum S. Johannis, octavo anno ex quo obtinuit dominium Merce, et sepulta est apud Gloucestre in porticu S. Petri. Hæc igitur domina tantæ potentia fertur fuisse, ut a quibusdam non solum domina vel regina, sed etiam rex vocaretur ad laudem et excellentiam mirificationis sui. Et ut æstimatum et dictum est, nisi fati velocitate prærepta fuisset, viros virtute transisset universos; unde ad tantæ probitatis memoriam, camenam diuturnitatis largitricem vel pauca dicere compulimus:

*Her panegyric.*

O Elfleda potens, O terror virgo virorum,  
Victrix naturæ, nomine digna viri.  
Te, quo splendidior fieres, natura puellam,  
Te probitas fecit nomen habere viri.  
Te mutare decet, sed solam, nomina sexus,  
Tu regina potens, rexque trophæa parans.  
Jam nec Cæsarei tantum meruere triumphi,  
Cæsare splendidior, virgo virago, vale.

A.D. 919. *Edward deposes his niece Alfwen from*

Edwardus rex vicesimo sexto<sup>1</sup> anno regni sui, ex-Chr. C. hæreditavit ex dominio Merce totius Alfwen sororem<sup>a</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *quarto, F.*

<sup>a</sup> Finding Ælfwyn described in the Chronicles as the daughter of Ethered, whom he supposed to be the father of Ethelfleda, Henry could only infer that Ælfwyn and Ethelfleda were sisters. He might have learned from Ethelwerd that

Ethelfleda was Edward's sister, and from Florence (a. 912) that she was Alfred's daughter and Ethered's wife; but to the chronicle of the first he does not seem to have had access; that of the latter, which in its laborious accuracy and

- Chr. C. Adelfled, quæ postea regnum illud tenuit, magis curans  
an utiliter vel inutiliter ageret,<sup>1</sup> quam an juste vel  
injuste. Postea vero construxit burgum apud Glademuthan. Nec longe post migravit a corpore apud  
Ferandune, et Alfwarde filius ejus cito post patrem  
defecit apud Oxineforde; et sepulti sunt apud Win-  
cestre. Nec multo ante Sidric<sup>2</sup> rex Northumbre occi-  
derat fratrem suum Nigellum: quo scelere patrato,  
rex Reginaldus conquisiverat Eoferwic. A.D. 920.  
the govern-  
ment of  
Mercia.  
A.D. 921.  
A.D. 924.  
Death of  
Edward.
- Chr. E. § 18. Adelstan filius Edwardi electus est rex in  
Merce, et sacratus apud Kingstun: qui regno quidem  
parum vixit, sed clare gestis non parum splenduit; qui  
a fortissimis lacesiri, sed bello nunquam potuit vinci.  
Curriculo siquidem sequentis anni, Gudfridum regem  
Dacorum, patrem Reginaldi prædicti regis, bello laces-  
situs, bello repulit, repulsum fugavit, fugatum perdidit.  
Nec multo post adversa percussus fortuna, fratrem  
suum Edwinum, magni vigoris juvenem, et bonæ in-  
dolis, maris fluctibus flebiliter amisit. At vero rex  
Adelstan, his transactis, gentem perfidam Dacorum  
et infidam Scottorum in exterminium traducere dis-  
ponens, confertissimum duxit exercitum terra et mari  
in Nordhumbram et Scotiam; cui cum non esset qui  
resistere inciperet, vel qui resistere persisteret, ubique  
terrarum progrediens et pro libitu prædans, cum tri-  
umphali rediit lauro. A.D. 924.  
Athelstan  
succeeds.  
A.D. 927.  
A.D. 933.  
A.D. 934.  
His tri-  
umphant  
march  
through  
Northum-  
bria and the  
lowlands of  
Scotland.
- Chr. E. Adelstan rex anno gratiæ DCCCCXLV., regni vero  
sui anno quarto, commisit proelium ad Bruneburh,  
procliorum maximum, contra Anlaf regem Hiberniæ,  
qui vires suas gente Scottorum et Dacorum in Anglia  
conversantium adauxerat. De cujus proelii magnitu-  
dine Anglici scriptores quasi carminis modo prolo-  
quentes, et extraneis tam verbis quam figuris usi, A.D. 937.  
Victory of  
Brunan  
burh

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; deest, Sav.<sup>2</sup> A.; Sedric, Sav.; Sidhric, F.solidity offers so great a contrast | consulted in its continuations. See  
to his own, he seems only to have | Book VII., § 35.

A.D. 937. translatione fida donandi sunt, ut pene de verbo in verbum eorum interpretantes eloquium, ex gravitate verborum gravitatem actuum et animorum gentis illius condiscamus.

Translation  
of the old  
poem de-  
scribing the  
battle.

§ 19. " Rex Adelstan, decus ducum, nobilibus tor- Chr. O.  
" quum dator, et frater ejus Edmundus, longa stirpis  
" serie splendentes, percusserunt, in bello, acie gladii  
" apud Bruneshurh.<sup>1</sup> Scutorum muros fiderunt, nobiles  
" ceciderunt, domesticæ reliquiæ defuncti Edwardi. Sic  
" namque iis ingenitum fuerat a genibus cognationum, ut  
" bellis frequentibus ab infestis nationibus defenderent<sup>2</sup>  
" patriæ thesauros et domos, pecunias et xenia. Gens vero  
" Hibernensium, et puppium habitatores, fatales corru-  
" erunt; colles resonuerunt. Sudaverunt armati, ex quo  
" sol mane prodiit, micans hilariter, lætificans profunda,  
" Dei luminare, fax Creatoris, usque quo idem nobilis  
" ductor occasu se occulit.<sup>3</sup> Ibi viri jacuerunt multi a  
" Dacia oriundi, telis perforati, sub scutis lanceati, simul  
" et Scotti bello fatigati. Gens vero Westsexe, tota  
" simul die, prius electi, post indefessi, invisæ gentis globos  
" straverunt; viri elegantes, hastas cædebant, viri Mercenses  
" acuta jacula mittebant, duro manus ludo. Sanitas ibi  
" nulla his qui cum Anlavo trans maris campos in ligni  
" gremio terram petierunt, Marte morituri. Quinque  
" occubuerunt in loco belli reges, juvenes gladiis per-  
" cussi, ducesque septem regis Anlavi; absque numero  
" ceciderunt Scotti, deperitque Normannorum tumor. Nec  
" enim paucos ad litem belli, duxerant secum: cum paucis vero  
" in maris fluctus<sup>4</sup> rex navi provectus, intrinsecus gamebat.  
" Simul et Froda ductor Normannus, cumque suis notis dux  
" Constantinus, de Martis congressu, jactare nequieverunt,  
" ubi cognationis suæ fragmen apparuit, ubi amici sui  
" corruebant, in statione populi bello prostrati, et filium

<sup>1</sup> *Bruneshurith*, A.; *Brunebirih*,  
F.

<sup>2</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *defendere ut*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>; *occultit*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> F.; *fluctibus*, A.

\* In this version of the famous | printed in smaller type do not  
Brunanburh war song, the words | correctly render the original.

Chr. C. " suum in loco proelii vulneribus demolitum carum reliquit. Nec Gude Dacus declamare potuit, licet verbis blandus, et mente vetustus. Nec Anlaf ipse, cum reliquiis suis mentiri potuit, quod ad hoc negotium sui præstiterint in campo belli, ictuum immanitate, telorum transforatione, in concilio proborum. Matres vero et nurus planxerunt suos belli alea cum Edwardi filiis luisse; cum Normanni, navibus clavatis, et Anlaf tabefactus,<sup>1</sup> ultra profundum flumen, terras suas, mœsto animo, repetissent. Postea frater uterque rediit Westsexe, belli reliquias post se deserentes, carnes virorum in escam paratas. Ergo corvus niger, ore cornutus, et buffo livens, aquila cum milvo, canis lupusque mixtus colore, his sunt deliciis diu recreati. Non fuit bellum hac in tellure majus patratum, nec cædes tanta præcessit istam, postquam huc venerunt, trans mare latum, Saxones et Angli, Brittones pulsuri: clari Martis fabri, Walenses vicerunt, reges fugaverunt, regna susceperunt." His causa recreandi interpositis ad historiam redeamus.

Chr. B. § 20. Adelstanus rex cum regnasset quatuordecim annis, hominibus ultra non apparuit. Successit autem ei in regno Eadmundus filius suus, et regnavit sex annis et dimidio:<sup>2</sup> cujus regni anno quarto occisus est, per proditorem regis Franciæ,<sup>3</sup> Willelmus filius Rollonis, qui terram quæ vocatur Normannia a rege Franciæ conquisierat. A Rollone autem gens Normannorum duxit originem.

Chr. C. Eadmundus rex ducens exercitum in illam partem Merce quæ Paganis diu subdita fuerat usque ad latissimum<sup>4</sup> flumen Humbre, belli sorte, Dacos vicit, et Quinque Urbes victoriosus cepit: Lincolniam, Legecestriam, et Stanfordiam, et Snotingeham, et Derebi. Dacos igitur, qui etiam eo tempore Normanni sunt

A.D. 887.

A.D. 940.  
Death of  
Athelstan;  
his brother  
Edmund  
succeeds.A.D. 942.  
Murder of  
William  
Longue  
Epée.A.D. 941.  
Edmund  
conquers  
the Five  
Burghs.<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F. H.; *labefactus*, Sav.<sup>2</sup> *qui regnavit ix. annis*, H.<sup>3</sup> *per proditorem, comitis fraude Ernulfi*, H.<sup>4</sup> H.; *altissimum*, A. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

vocati, penitus extirpavit, et ab urbibus prædictis infidelitate remota, Dei gratia fidei fulgorem restituit.

A.D. 942.  
Two Danish  
kings converted.

Eo in tempore obiit rex Anlaf, de quo prædiximus: Chr. B.  
postea vero rex Eadmundus suscepit quendam alium Chr. C.  
Anlaf regem Dacorum in baptismo, tam viribus regis cedentem, quam prædicationi credentem. Et post paucos dies Reginaldum regem Eboracensem, de quo prædiximus, quia Eboracum conquisierat, tenuit ad manum episcopi.

A.D. 944. § 21. Eadmundus rex cum redisset ad Westsexe et Chr. C.

honorabili triumpho susceptus esset, reges prædicti Dacorum, scilicet Anlaf filius Sidrici et Reginaldus filius Gudferdi, frugerunt pacem quam cum eo constituerant, deprædantes in parte regni sibi direpta. Rex igitur fortissimus Eadmundus cum militari copia proventus in Nordhumbre, bello commisso, reges utrosque et a regno fugavit, et Nordhumbram primus regum Westsexe in dominio proprio tenuit. Sequenti vero

Expeditions into Northumberland and Cumberland; the latter is given to Malcolm of Scotland as a fief.

A.D. 945.

anno totam Cumberland, quia gentem provinciæ illius perfidam et legibus insolitam ad plenum domare nequibat, prædavit et contrivit; et commendavit eam Malculmo regi Scotiæ hoc pacto, quod in auxilio sibi foret terra et mari.

A.D. 946.  
Edmund is assassinated.

Eadmundus rex invictus cum regnasset feliciter sex Chr. C.  
annis et dimidio, et omnia ei prospere contigissent, et solus diceretur rex in Anglia, nefanda prodicione confossus est et omnibus sæculis detestanda, die S. Augustini; cui morte inæstimata prærepto parcat Christi pia benignitas.

26 May.

Edred succeeds.

§ 22. Edredus frater Eadmundi regis, filiusque regis Chr. B.  
Adelstani, fratri suo successit in regno: et eodem anno Nordhumbras, jugum dominationis suæ ferre nolentes, cum valida armatorum manu petiit, totamque sibi conquisivit. Inde vero in Scotiam vexilla direxit.

A.D. 947.  
He compels the Northumbrians and Scots to submit to his rule.

Scotti igitur nimio terrore percussi, sine bello subdiderunt se regi, et juraverunt ei tam Nordhumbri quam Scotti debitam domino fidelitatem: quod tamen iuramentum diu non duravit. Edredo namque reverso in

Chr. B. australes regni sui partes, Anlaf,<sup>a</sup> qui a regno Nordhumbre aufugatus fuerat, rediit cum magna classe in Nordhumbram, et cum gaudio susceptus est a suis, et regno iterum restitutus: quod in fortitudine tenuit quatuor annis. Quarto autem anno, solita infidelitate utentes, Nordhumbri fugaverunt regem eorum Anlaf, et susceperunt Hyrc filium Haraldi in regem: sed ille iterum brevi tenuit regnum.

A.D. 940.  
But they soon rebel, and choose Anlaf, and afterwards Hyrc, for their king.  
A.D. 952.

Edredus rex eximius,<sup>1</sup> VII. anno regni sui, receptus est iterum in regno Nordhumbre; gens namque patriæ illius dominum diu non perferens unum, tertio anno regni sui Hyrc filium Haraldi, ut leviter acceperat, leviter abjecerat, et regem Edredum ad se sponte vocatum regni sede reponunt.

A.D. 954.  
Hyrc deposed in favour of Edred.

Edredus rex eximius et invictus, cum super omnes partes Angliæ tandem rex solus regnasset, fatis exigentibus, hominem exiit, octavo anno postquam diadematis insigni sublimatus fuerat.

A.D. 955.  
28 Nov.  
Death of Edred; he is succeeded by his nephew Edwy.

Chr. B. § 23. Edwi filius regis Edmundi<sup>2</sup> super universam Angliam post hunc<sup>3</sup> regnavit. Edmundus namque filius b<sup>4</sup> Adelstani probissimi regis, filii Edwardi fortunati principis, filii Alfredi laboriosi ducis, filii Edelwlf magni patris, filii Egbricti, qui regnum Westsexe maxime primus in sublime provexit, et in monarchiam suæ fortitudinis diligentia protelavit, duos filios habuit; Edwi primogenitum, et Edgar<sup>4</sup> minorem, quos secundum ordinem nativitatis ordo regnandi disposuit. Secundo autem anno regni ejus Wlstan archiepiscopus vitali privatus est aura. Rex autem prædictus Edwi non illaudabiliter regni infulam tenuit.

A.D. 956.

Edwi rex anno regni sui quinto, cum in principio regni<sup>5</sup> ejus decentissime floreret, prospera et lætabunda exordia mors immatura perripuit.

A.D. 959.  
Death of Edwy.

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, F.

<sup>2</sup> frater . . . Edredi, H.

<sup>3</sup> pro fratre, H.

<sup>4</sup> Eadgar, G.

<sup>5</sup> F. A<sup>2</sup>.; regnum, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> This was Anlaf Cwiran, a different person from the Anlaf son of Sihtric previously mentioned.

<sup>b</sup> It should be "frater."

A.D. 959.  
Prosperous  
reign of  
Edgar the  
Peaceful.

He was a  
God-fearing  
king, who  
extended  
religion,  
and gave  
his subjects  
peace.

But he  
showed too  
much favour  
to Danes  
and foreign-  
ers.

§ 24. Edgarus pacificus, frater regis prædicti, XVI. Chr. R. annis regnavit: in diebus ejus hæc terra maxime meliorata est, et Dei omnipotentis gratia, quam ipse pro posse suo devotissimus meruit, semper dum vixit in pace regnavit. Ille namque Christi fidem in regno suo validissime dilatavit, et opera salutis exemplo suo clarissime fecundavit. Dilectus namque Deo et hominibus, gentes terræ suæ semper pacificare studuit, nec aliquis prædecessorum suorum tanta pace et gaudio regnum tenere potuit. Ipse siquidem nomen Dei honorabat, et de lege Dei sæpius inquirens, libenter eam discebat, et gaudenter docebat, et verbis et operibus populum suum bonorum operum exercitationi promptus invitabat. Domini autem omnipotentia servo suo Edgardo, bene gesta, non solum in futuro, verum etiam in præsentī sæculo retribuit; quia regulos omnes et consules et patriæ totius gentem cum tremore et amore pro velle suo subdidit, absque prælio et aliqua Martis perturbatione. Fama vero et nomen regis clarissimum terris universis dilatabatur amplissime, et veniebant extranei videre gloriam ejus et audire doctrinam oris ejus. In hoc tamen peccabat, quod Paganos eos qui in hac patria sub eo degebant nimis firmavit, et extraneos huc adductos plus æquo diligens valde corroboravit: nihil enim <sup>1</sup> in rebus humanis perfectissimum est.

Chr. R., a.  
960.

Malm. Gest.  
Reg., ii. 3.

A.D. 963. § 25. Edgari pacifici anno quinto, Edelwoldus vene- Chr. R.

A.D. 964.  
Ethelwold,  
bishop of  
Winchester,  
drives the  
canons from  
his cathed-  
ral, and  
brings in  
monks.

rabilis feliciter episcopatum Winestre suscepit. Hic secundo episcopatus sui anno, quosdam canonicos in veteri monasterio Winestre degentes et ordinem suum pigre et negligenter observantes ejecit, et monachos imposuit. Quæ ecclesia nostris temporibus loco avulsa est, quia nimis conjuncta erat matri ecclesiæ, quæ sedes est episcopi: a consensu igitur episcopi et abbatis

<sup>1</sup> namque, A. F.

\* The secular canons were not expelled only from the cathedral or old minster at Winchester by St.

Ethelwold, but also from the new minster. See *Gest. Pont.*, book ii., § 75. It was not the former, as

ejusdem monasterii extra muros urbis fundata est.<sup>1</sup> A.D. 964.  
 Edelwoldus vero egregius præsul ædificator sepium  
 fuit, avertens semitas iniquitatis, et plantans radices  
 charitatis. Ipse namque seminator optimi consilii fuit;  
 cujus monitis rex Edgarus novellas plantationes et  
 arbusta teneritudinis Deo gratissima instituit. Abba-  
 tiam namque Glastinbirh construxit;<sup>2</sup> abbatiam Aban-  
 dune super Tamesim composuit; abbatiam apud Burch  
 prope Stanfordiam stabilivit; abbatiam Thornei prope  
 illam quæ est apud Burch, in mediis paludibus, loco  
 tamen amœnissimo fixit.<sup>3</sup> Consilio etiam Edelwoldi  
 episcopi, Ailwinus consul ejusdem regis abbatiam Ra-  
 mesei in insula pulcherrima intra easdem paludes fixit.  
 Est autem palus illa, de qua loquimur, latissima, et  
 visu decora, multis fluviis decurrentibus irrigata, mul-  
 tis lacubus magnis et parvis depicta, multis etiam sil-  
 vis et insulis florida: intra quam sunt ecclesia Heli-  
 ensis, abbatia Ramesiensis, abbatia Chateric, abbatia  
 Thorneie, abbatia Crulande; sed juxta eam sunt abba-  
 tia Burgensis, abbatia Spaldinge, ecclesia S. Ivonis  
 super Usam fluvium Huntendonis, ecclesia S. Egidii  
 super Grentam fluvium Cantabrigiæ,<sup>4</sup> ecclesia S. Tri-  
 nitatis in Tedfordia.<sup>b</sup>

Malm. loc.  
cit.

Under his  
guidance,  
Edgar  
founds or  
restores the  
abbeys of  
Glaston-  
bury, Abing-  
don, Peter-  
borough,  
and Thorne-  
y.

Abbeys and  
churches of  
the Fen  
country.

St. Giles'  
church,  
Cambridge.

<sup>1</sup> situm est, H.

<sup>2</sup> quam pater ejus fundaverat, ipse  
perfectit, H, manu paulo recentiore.

<sup>3</sup> Addit H. ad calcem paginæ,  
manu coetaneæ, "Et in Wiltonia  
"monasterium virginum magno

"studio condidit, multa diligentia

"illustravit. Denique per regnum

"Anglorum quadraginta construi

"fecit monasteria, et alia monachis

"alia virginibus deputavit."

<sup>4</sup> Grantebrugie, H.

Henry carelessly writes, but the latter, which was removed outside the walls in 1111, and known thenceforward as Hyde Abbey. The two buildings were so near that the chanting of the two choirs was mutually disturbing.

<sup>a</sup> ecclesia S. Egidii. By this appears to be meant the church of St. Giles on the north side of Cambridge, near the castle, built in the reign of Henry I. on the original

site of the monastery founded by Picot the sheriff, after the monastery had received increased endowments, and been removed to Barnwell. See Lysons' *Magna Britannia*.

<sup>b</sup> The church of the Holy Trinity stood near the old cathedral of Thetford; it was built by bishop Arfast soon after the Conquest. (Martin's *Hist. of Thetford*.)

A.D. 969.  
Devastation  
of the Isle  
of Thanet.

Rex Edgarus undecimo anno regni sui, jussit præ-Chr. E.  
dari insulam Tenet, quia, jura regalia spreverant, non  
ut hostis insaniens, sed ut rex malo mala puniens.

A.D. 972.  
Edgar meets  
his vassal  
kings at  
Chester.

§ 26. Edgarus rex XIII. anno regni sui sacratus est  
in die Pentecostes apud Bathan:<sup>1</sup> inde vero post Pente-  
costen duxit exercitum suum ad Legecestre, ubi vene-  
runt contra eum sex reges, qui omnes ditioni ejus<sup>2</sup>  
subjecti sunt, et omnes illi domino debitam dederunt  
fidem, se terra et mari servituros ei ad ejus imperium.

A.D. 975.

Edgarus pacificus, rex magnificus, Salomon secundus,  
cujus tempore nunquam exercitus advenarum venit in  
Angliam, cujus dominio reges et principes Angliæ sunt  
subjecti, cujus potentia Scotti etiam colla dedere,  
cum regnasset sedecim annis et duobus mensibus, feli-  
citer vivens feliciter obiit. Nec potuit male mori qui  
bene vixerat, qui tot ecclesias Deo fundaverat, qui tot  
bona perennia brevi tempore statuerat: cujus planta-  
tionum greges<sup>3</sup> quanto instantius Deum laudare non  
cessant, tanto beati regis in cœlestibus gloria crescere  
non desistit. De cujus laude musam aliquantulum dicere  
pro meritis promovimus:

Death of  
Edgar.

His panegy-  
ric.

"Auctor opum, vindex scelerum, largitor honorum,  
"Sceptryger Edgarus regna superna petit.  
"Hic alter Salomon, legum pater, orbita pacis;  
"Quod<sup>4</sup> caruit bellis, claruit inde magis.  
"Templa Deo, templis monachos, monachis dedit  
"agros,  
"Nequitia lapsus, justitiæque locum.  
"Novit enim regno verum perquirere falso,  
"Immensum modico, perpetuumque brevi."

Luc. xvi. 9.

A.D. 975.  
Edward  
succeeds.

§ 27. Edwardus filius Edgari regis, qui dicitur Chr. E.  
Sanctus, regnavit pro patre suo: cujus regni principio  
apparuit cometa, signum scilicet maximæ famis quæ  
in anno sequente secuta est. Tunc vero consul qui-  
dam nequissimus, Elfere nomine, abbatias plures quas

Destruction  
of monas-  
teries by

<sup>1</sup> G.; *Bahan*, C. F. S<sup>2</sup>; *Baham*,  
A. C. S.

<sup>2</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>; *cis*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> A. F. H.; *gratia*, Sav., M. H.  
B.

<sup>4</sup> F.; *Quo*, A.

rex Edgarus et Edelwold episcopus construxerant, quorundam potentum assensu et factione destruxit. Inde Dominus ad iram permotus pristinam renovare statuit cladem. A.D. 976.

Chr. E.

Edwardi sancti regis anno quarto, omnes optimates Anglorum ceciderunt a quodam solio apud Calne præter S. Dunstanum, qui trabe quadam apprehensa restitit; unde quidam eorum valde læsi sunt, quidam vero mortui. Signum scilicet Dei excelsi fuit, quod proditione et interfectione regis sui ab amore Dei casuri essent, et a diversis gentibus digna contritione conterendi. A.D. 978.  
Incident at Calne; St. Dunstan; a presage of divine wrath and impending chastisement.

Edwardus rex<sup>1</sup> sanctus cum quinque annis regnasset, occisus est proditione gentis suæ perfidæ, die advesperascente, apud Corvesgate: et inimicitias, quas viventi ingesserant, in mortuum protelantes, sepelierunt eum sine regio honore apud Warham; ut sicut vitam<sup>2</sup> regis extinxerant, ita et nomen ejus extinguerent. Hic vero compertum est, contra divinam providentiam non sufficere pravum cor hominis et inscrutabile. Quem enim perfidi terris abjecerant, Deus in cœlo gloriose suscepit: et memoria æterna insignivit eum Dominus, cujus mentionem proditores obnubilare studuerant. Inde Dominus iterum ad iram promotus et plus solito irritatus, genti pessimæ malum inextricabile conferre cogitavit. Dicitur autem quod noverca ejus, mater scilicet regis Edelredi, dum ciphum ei porrigeret, cultello percusserit.<sup>3</sup> 18 Mar.  
Edward treacherously murdered,  
by the act, as was alleged, of his stepmother.

Flor. Wig.  
a. 978.

Chr. E.

§ 28. Edelred<sup>4</sup> filius Edgari regis, et frater Edwardi, coram ducibus Anglorum sacratus est in regem apud Kingstun omine sinistro, sicut de eo, cum parvulus esset, S. Dunstanus prophetaverat. Minxit namque A.D. 978.  
Accession of his half-brother, Ethelred.

<sup>1</sup> A.; deest, Sav.<sup>2</sup> gentem, A.; sicut regem, F.

<sup>3</sup> Dicitur . . . percusserit, om. H.; alia autem manus, sed coetanea, scripsit in margine hæc quæ sequuntur: "Beatus Dunstanus tale fertur accepisse oraculum,—Quum Angli in sanguinem fratris tui

"regis sanctissimi conspiraverunt, non deficiet ab eis sanguis et gladius, donec superveniens populus ignotæ linguæ eos in exterminium et in ultimam redigat servitutem. Novissime tamen visitabit eos Dominus."

<sup>4</sup> Adelred, F.

- cum baptizaretur in sacro fonte: unde vir Domini Chr. E.  
 exterminium Anglorum in tempore ejus futurum præ-  
 dixit. Post parvum vero tempus ex quo Edeldred  
 A.D. 979. regnavit, transtulit Alfere consul corpus S. Edwardi a  
 A.D. 980. Warham ad Scafesbirh cum debito honore, nutu Dei  
 A.D. 981. compellente. Venerunt autem tertio anno regis Edel-  
Renewed Danish descents on the coast. redi septem puppes Dacorum, quasi prænuntiæ futuræ  
 A.D. 982, 985. vastationis, et prædaverunt Hamptune. Postea vero  
 A.D. 984. Alfere consul prædictus<sup>1</sup> vitam deseruit; cui successit  
Deaths of St. Ethelwold and St. Dunstan. Alfricus, quem rex crudeliter exulavit. Eo tempore S.  
 A.D. 988. Adelwold episcopus, pater monachorum et sidus Anglo-  
 rum, Domini visionem, quam semper optabat, adeptus  
 est. Nec longe post S. Dunstanus archiepiscopus a  
 mundi tenebris transiit ad cœli gloriam. His autem  
 duobus luminaribus Anglorum genti subtractis, caruit  
 Anglia lorica protectionis suæ; et vindictæ Dei præ-  
 meditatæ desolata patuit. Successit vero S. Dunstano  
 A.D. 988. Adelgarus; Adelgaro vero post annum Siricius. Rex  
 autem Edelred crudeliter destruxerat episcopatum Ro-  
 veceastre. Inde iterum Dominus ad iram promotus,  
 quod facere paraverat non distulit; veneruntque Daci  
 ex multis partibus, et operuerunt Angliam quasi nubes  
 A.D. 988. cœli. Ex una igitur parte Wecheporte prædata est. Chr. C.  
 Inde autem Daci progredientes exercitui Anglorum  
 obviati sunt; qui configentes Godam ducem eorum  
 occiderunt, et partem illam exercitus in exterminium  
 redegerunt. Ex alia vero parte Wic prædata est.  
 A.D. 991. Britnod vero consul cum magnis viribus obvians eis  
Battle of Maldon; death of Byrhtnoth. pugnavit et victus est, et gladiis cæsus occubuit, et  
 phalanges ejus in perniciem redactæ sunt.  
 A.D. 991. § 29. Edelredi regis anno decimo tertio, primum Chr. E.  
Tribute first paid to the Danes. statuerunt Angli, consilio infausto Siricii archiepiscopi,  
 quod ipsi census Dacis persolverent, quatenus a rapinis  
 et cæde cessarent: et dederunt eis decem mille libras.  
 Hoc autem malum usque in hodiernum diem duravit,  
 et diu, nisi Dei pietas subveniat, durabit. Regibus  
This "Dane-geld" still paid to the namque nostris modo persolvimus ex consuetudine,

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; dæst, Sav.

Chr. E.

quod Dacis persolvebatur ex ineffabili terrore. Post hæc rex Dacis insidias molitus est. Alfric vero consul, quem rex exulaverat et postea tamen receperat, præmunire fecit exercitum. Jure autem dicitur: "Quem semel graviter læseris, non facile tibi fidelem credi deris." Cum ergo venisset regia classis a Londonia, quibus præerant Alfricus et Toroldus consules, ut interciperent Dacos, præmoniti omnes evaserunt. Tunc exercitus major Dacorum obviam puppibus regiis venerunt, qui navali proelio pugnantes et multos Londoniensium cædentes, puppes totas armatas triumphose ceperunt, et Alfricum consulem qui inerat. Eodem anno S. Oswaldus Eboracensis archiepiscopus transit ad gloriam cæli; et Eadwlf suscepit sedem Eoverwic. Exinde Bebanburh fracta est et prædata, et post inde meavit exercitus in Humber, et prædati sunt ex utraque parte in Lindsey et Nordhumbre. At vero Angli, militaribus copiis aggregatis, cum contra eos acies direxissent, ante ipsam collisionem incepterunt fugam Frena, et Godwine, et Fridegist, qui duces erant exercitus Anglorum. Ea tempestate fecit Edwinus<sup>1</sup> erui oculos Alfgaro filio Alfrici consulis, unde odium et infamia ejus crudelitatis adaucta est. Tunc Ricardo veteri defuncto successit Ricardus filius ejus in Normannia. His transactis, Anlaf et Suain Londoniam impetierunt cum nonaginta quatuor navibus in nativitate S. Mariæ. Cujus gloriosæ virginis auxilio liberati sunt Christiani a Paganis: urbem namque assilientes et flammis demoliri parantes, inæstimata confusione repulsi sunt. Quamobrem spe frustrati in Eastsexe et Cent et Sudsexe et Hamtunescire, acceptis equis, sæviore solito perrexerunt, omnia cæde et incendio replentes. Idcirco rex, missis nunciis, promisit censum eis et cibum; quod concedentes, hiemaverunt in pace apud Hamtune. Rex autem Edelred mittens pro rege Anlaf, datis obsidibus, honorifice suscepit

A.D. 991.  
English  
kings.A.D. 992.  
Treasure of  
Alfric.Death of  
St. Oswald  
of York.

A.D. 993.

Accession of  
Richard II.,  
duke of  
Normandy.  
A.D. 994.  
Olaf and  
Swein foiled  
in an attack  
on London.  
8 Sept.Olaf be-  
comes a  
Christian.<sup>1</sup> Ita omnes codd. pro *Edelredus*.

A.D. 994. eum apud Andovre: tenensque eum ad confirmationem Chr. E.  
and pro-  
mises to  
invade Eng-  
land no  
more. episcopi, multis lætificavit muneribus. Anlaf itaque se  
 nunquam amplius sine pace venturum in terram An-  
 glorum regi promisit; promissumque tenuit. His tem-

A.D. 995. poribus obiit Siricius archiepiscopus; post quem Al-  
 fricus pallio est potitus.

A.D. 997. § 30. Edelredi regis anno decimo nono, Daci circa  
Ravages by  
the Danes  
in the West  
of England. Cornugalliam perrexerunt in Savernam, prædantes in  
 Davene et Sudwales, egredientesque ad Wecheport  
 cum ferro et flamma; inde reversi sunt circa Pen-  
 wihtstrict, ex australi parte, venientesque in Tamre-  
 mutham, et inde apud Lideford, facibus et flammis  
 omnia commendabant; et monasterium Ordulfi apud

A.D. 998. Esingestochē combusserunt. His transactis, perrexerunt  
 hostes in Frommudham, exeuntesque a puppibus per-  
 ambulaverunt Dorsete cum clade solita, nullo resistente.  
 Hoc tamen anno quandoque perendinabant in Vecta  
 insula, et pascebantur de Hamtunescire et Sudsexe.

A.D. 999. Post hæc vero venerunt in Tamesim, et inde per flumen  
 Medewei ad Rovecestriam. Illic igitur Centenses  
 congregati sunt, cuneisque constructis acerrime bellum  
 inceperunt. Daci vero semper et soli bello intenti,  
 Martio tandem potiti sunt campo. Exinde rex Edelred  
 ivit in Cumberland cum exercitu gravissimo, ubi  
 maxima mansio Dacorum erat: vicitque Dacos bello  
 maximo, totamque fere Cumberland prædando vastavit.

A.D. 1000.  
Ethelred  
defeats the  
Danes in  
Cumber-  
land.

A.D. 1001. His actis venit quidam exercitus Dacorum ad Exan- Chr. E.  
 mutham, et ibi castrum expugnare satagentes, viriliter  
 resistantibus cesserunt. Itaque diffusi sunt per patriam  
 circumquaque cum ducibus solitis, Marte et Vulcano.  
 Congregati sunt ergo contra eos Summerseti, et pug-  
 naverunt apud Penho. Daci vero semper bellis exer-  
 citati belli fortuna potiti sunt. Sed jam liber hic  
 Dacorum, magnitudinis suæ meritis, termino donandus  
 est.

§ 31. More autem solito lux apertionis, ex ordinata  
 abbreviatione genita, perstrictis hujus libri summita-  
 tibus, lectori diligenter anteponenda est.

De regno Cantiae pauca dicenda sunt: siquidem cum Egbrictus rex Westsexe, Baldredo fugato, regnum Cantiae in dominio suo tenuisset, Adelstano filio suo moriens illud reliquit. Adelstano vero defuncto, ad fratrem Edelwlfum regem Westsexe regnum illud rediit, quod cum hæreditario jure Adelberto filio suo reliquisset, et alius filius ejus Athelbaldus rex Westsexe post v. annos periisset, regnum utrumque Adelbricto subditum est, et nunquam postea divisum. Hic igitur omnino regnum Cantiae explicit.

*Affairs of the kingdom of Kent.*

*De regno vero Westsexe hæc elucidatio adhibeatur.*

§ 32. Ethelwlfus regnavit XIX. annis, victusque a Dacis apud Carrum perniciose vicit eos apud Aclea. Athelboldus filius regis prædicti regnavit quinque annis; et sepultus est apud Scireburnam.

*Summary of the foregoing book.*

Ethelbricht frater ejus regnavit v. annis; cujus duces et exercitus Dacos vicerunt apud Wincestre.

Athelred frater eorum v. annis, et paulo plus; qui contra Dacos apud Redingum mire, cum fratre suo, conflixit.

Alfredus <sup>1</sup> frater ejus' regnavit XXVIII. annis et dimidio; de quo nihil breviter dici potest, quia multa fecit et miranda.

Edwardus <sup>2</sup> filius Alfredi' XXIII. <sup>3</sup> annis, et pugnavit contra Dacos in Nordhumbre, et in egressione Merce vicit eos gloriose, et occidit reges fortes; vicit quoque Dacos apud Totenhale, et acquisivit Merce.

Adelstan filius Edwardi quatuordecim annis; qui fecit maximum prælium apud Bruneburh.

Edmundus <sup>4</sup> filius Adelstani' VI. annis et dimidio; qui super Dacos Quinque Urbes cepit, et eisdem victis, Nordhumbram in dominio tenuit.

Edredus frater Edmundi IX. annis omnes Angliæ partes feliciter obtinuit.

<sup>1</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> A. F.; xxiii., Sav.

<sup>4</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

Edwi filius Edmundi IV. annis eodem spatio et potentia tenuit.

Edgarus filius Edmundi, XVI. annis pacifice et gloriosius omnibus aliis imperavit.

Edwardus <sup>1</sup> filius Edgari<sup>1</sup> rex sanctus, V. annis regnum tenuit, et feliciter occisus est.

Edelred frater ejus, ira Dei perturbatus, ærumnose regnavit; de quo nobis multa restant dicenda.

Affairs of  
Northumbria,

§ 33. De regno vero Nordhumbre paulisper tangendum est. Osbrictus namque tempore regis Athelwlf regnavit ibidem; quem more suo abjicientes, constituerunt Ellam regem. Qui utrique cum a Dacis occisi fuissent, regnaverunt Daci multo tempore in Nordhumbre: scilicet rex Haldene, et Gudfert, et Nigellus, et Sidric, et Reginaldus, et Anlaf. Confuse autem regnaverunt Daci; ita quod modo ibi rex unus erat, modo duo, modo reguli multi: postea vero Edredo regi Westsexe in dominium contigit et successoribus ejus. Hic igitur omnino regnum Nordhumbre explicit.

of Mercia,  
A.D. 851.

§ 34. De regno vero Merce paucis dicendum est. Brituulf namque rex Merce tertio anno regni sui fugatus est a Dacis. Burhred etiam cum regnasset viginti et duobus annis fugatus est a regno. Daci ergo regnum illud sibi conquisitum prius Ceolwlf ad servandum tradiderunt, postea vero sibi minute diviserunt. Itaque <sup>2</sup> pars patriæ et procerum quandoque erat sub legibus Westsexe: Eadmundus vero rex Westsexe totam sibi in dominium subdidit. Hic igitur regnum Merce dominio Westsexe penitus subjectum explicit.

and of East  
Anglia.

§ 35. Regnum vero Estangle, quod dudum regnis aliis, ut prædictum est, variis modis subjectum fuerat, nunc reges Westsexe vel Cantia in dominio tenebant, nunc alicui vel aliquibus dabant. Igitur rex unus ibi erat aliquando, multi aliquando <sup>3</sup> reguli: ultimus tamen Anglorum sub rege Westsexe regnavit ibidem S. Eadmundus; quo interfecto, regnavit Godrun Dacus: postea

<sup>1</sup> A.; desunt, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Ita quod, A. F.

<sup>3</sup> A. F.; alii, Sav.

regnum minutim Daci partiti sunt, fuitque sub eis usque dum regi Edwardo ex maxima parte subjecta est. Hic igitur regnum Eastangle dominio Westsexe contingens explicit; et jam ad primordia causamque adventus Normannorum pervenimus.

## LIB. VI. DE ADVENTU NORMANNORUM.

§ 1. Anno millesimo ab Incarnatione Domini, Ricardi A.D. 1000. Ethelred desires to marry the daughter of Richard duke of Normandy. consulis Normannorum filiam rex prædictus Edeldred in conjugem assumere præcogitavit ad tuitionem regni sui. Ille enim vir<sup>1</sup> fortissimus erat, et omni regno Francorum formidabilis: ipse autem se suosque valde debilitatos videbat, futuramque cladem non mediocriter horrebat. Hoc autem Dei nutu factum esse constat, ut veniret contra improbos malum. Genti enim Anglorum, quam sceleribus suis exigentibus disterninare proposuerat, sicut et ipsi Brittones peccatis accusantibus humiliaverant,<sup>2</sup> Dominus omnipotens duplicem contritionem proposuit, et quasi militares insidias adhibuit. Scilicet ut hinc Dacorum persecutione sæviante, illinc Nordmannorum conjunctione accrescente, si ab Dacorum manifesta fulminatione evaderent, Nordmannorum improvisam cum fortitudine cautelam non evaderent. Quod in sequentibus apparuit, cum ex hac conjunctione regis Anglorum et filix ducis Normannorum, Angliam juste, secundum Consequences of this union to the English nation. jus gentium, Normanni et calumniati sunt et adepti sunt. Prædixit etiam eis quidam vir Dei, quod ex scelerum suorum immanitate, non solum quia semper cædi et proditioni studebant, verum etiam quia semper ebrietati et negligentix domus Domini dediti erant, eis Predictions of ruin and humiliation. insperatum a Francia adventurum dominium, quod et eorum excellentiam in æternum deprimeret, et honorem sine termino restitutionis eventilaret. Prædixit etiam

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; deest, Sav.

| <sup>2</sup> A. F.; humiliaverat, Sav.

A.D. 1000. quod non ea gens solum, verum et Scottorum, quos vilissimos habebant, eis ad emeritam confusionem dominaretur. Prædixit nihilominus varium adeo sæculum creandum, ut varietas quæ in mentibus hominum latebat, et in actibus patebat, multimoda variatione vestium et indumentorum designaretur. Hac igitur providentia, cum, legatariis ad ducem Normannorum missis, rex Anglorum suæ petitionis concessionem obtinuisset, statuto tempore, tanto digni<sup>1</sup> ministerio, ad dominam suam recipiendam et adducendam, proceres Anglorum mittuntur in Normanniam; quæ longo et digno regibus apparatu dirigitur in Angliam.

A.D. 1002.  
Marriage of  
Ethelred to  
Emma.

13 Nov.  
The massacre  
of St.  
Brice's day.

A.D. 1008.  
Fury of the  
Danes.  
Near Exeter  
they defeat  
the English  
levies in a  
great battle;  
treason of  
Alfred.

§ 2. Millesimo secundo anno, Emma, Normannorum Chr. H. gemma, venit in Angliam et diadema nomenque reginæ suscepit. Quo proventu rex Adelred in superbiam elatus et perfidiam prolatus, omnes Dacos qui cum pace erant in Anglia clandestina proditione fecit mactari una eademque die, scilicet in festivitate S. Bricii. De quo scelere in pueritia nostra quosdam vetustissimos loqui audivimus, quod in unamquamque urbem rex præfatus occultas miserit epistolas, secundum quas Angli Dacos omnes eadem die et eadem hora, vel gladiis truncaverunt impræmeditados, vel igne simul cremaverunt subito comprehensos. Eodem anno rex præfatus Lefsium ducem exulavit, quia Effic regis vicecomitem occiderat.

Millesimo tertio anno, ira Daci exarserunt digna, sicut ignis, quem sagimine<sup>2</sup> velit aliquis extinguere. Advolantes igitur quasi multitudo locustarum, quidam Execestriam venerunt, et urbem totam funditus destruxerunt, et omnia spolia secum, cineribus tantum relictis, deportaverunt. Hugonem vero Normannum, quem ibi jam regina Emma vicecomitem statuerat, in perniciem compegerunt. Congregatæ sunt itaque gentes Hamptunescire et Wiltunescire pugnatum cum

<sup>1</sup> A.; *digno*, Sav.

| <sup>2</sup> A. F.; *sanguine*, Sav.

Chr. E. exercitu. Cum autem appropinquarent ad prælium, A.D. 1003.  
finxit se dux eorum Alfricus infirmum, et cogebat se  
ad vomitum; sicque gentem Anglorum, quam duce-  
bat, prodidit. Et quoniam verum est quod vulgo  
dicitur, "Quando dux deficit, exercitus vilescit," Daci  
videntes defectum hostium, persecuti sunt eos usque  
ad Wiltune, quam prædantes et comburentes venerunt  
ad Salesbiri; et inde ad puppes suas cum præda et  
triumpho remearunt.

§ 3. Anno iv<sup>o</sup>, Suain rex Dacorum fortissimus, cui A.D. 1004.  
Deus regnum Angliæ destinaverat, cum navibus multis Sweyn lands  
venit ad Nordwic, et eam prædatus est et combussit. in Norfolk;  
Quod Wlfketel<sup>1</sup> dux illius provinciae videns, fecit plunders  
pacem cum exercitu; improvisum ejus adventum susti- and burns  
nere non sufficiens. Infra pacem vero exercitus post Norwich  
tres hebdomadas furtim perrexit ad Tedford, et eam and Thet-  
prædatam combussit. Quod comperiens dux Wlfketel, ford.  
mane ex improvise cum parva manu revertenti ad  
puppes occurrit exercitui; quibus graviter et diu re-  
sistere, sed non suffecit persistere.

Chr. E. Anno v<sup>o</sup>, Daci redierunt in patriam suam. Ne tamen A.D. 1005.  
interea plaga carerent Angli, tanta desolatio famis A year of  
Brittanniam invasit, quantam nullus hominum memi- famine.  
nisse potuit.

Anno vi<sup>o</sup>, cum Suain vir audacissimus cum magna A.D. 1006.  
classe redisset ad Sandwic, quem semper comitabantur  
tres sociæ, prædatio, combustio, occisio, frenduit omnis  
Anglia, et commota est velut aruudinetum; Zephiro  
vibrante, collisum. Rex autem, congregato exercitu,  
cum toto auctumno contra eos persisteret, nihil profecit;  
illi namque classem alio dirigentes, ludum solitum  
exercebant. In principio vero hiemis in insula Vecta  
manserunt; et sicut per prophetam dictum est, "Dies Amos viii.  
"festos vertam in luctum," in Natali Domini perambu- 10.  
laverunt Hamtonescire et Bercscire, usque ad Redinges, Hampshire  
and Berk-  
shire over.

<sup>1</sup> A.; *Uketel*, Sav.; *Ulfketel*, F.

A.D. 1006.  
run and laid  
waste by  
the Danes.

inde ad Walingeford, inde ad Coleseige, inde juxta Chr. E. Æsesdune<sup>1</sup> ad Chichelmeslaue. Quocunque autem pergebant, quæ parata erant hilariter comedentes, cum discederent, in retributionem procurationis, reddebant hospiti cædem, hospitio flammam. Revertentibus autem Dacis ad mare, obviavit exercitus Westsex et pugnavit cum eis. Quid autem aliud profecit, nisi quod spoliis suis Dacos victus ditavit? Vidit igitur gens Wincestre exercitum hostilem, superbum et audacem, juxta portas urbis transeuntem, et cibum quem ultra L. milliaria a mari conquisiverat, et spolia quæ a bello victis acceperat, secum deferentem. Rex autem Adelred cum mœstitia et confusione erat ad firmam suam in Salopscire, sæpe rumorum sauciatus aculeis.

A.D. 1007.

Thirty thousand pounds given to them to keep the peace. A new traitor appears, in the person of Edric of Mercia.

§ 4. Anno vii<sup>o</sup>, rex et senatus Anglorum dubii quid agerent, quid omitterent, communi deliberatione gravem conventionem cum exercitu fecerunt; et ad pacis observationem triginta millia librarum ei dederunt. Eodem anno, Dei providentia, ad perniciem Anglorum factus est Edricus dux super Merce, proditor novus sed maximus.

A.D. 1008.

Ship and armour tax laid upon all England.

Anno viii<sup>o</sup>, qui est annus xxx<sup>us</sup> regni prædicti regis, Chr. E. fecit rex parari per totam Angliam ex trecentis et decem hidis navem unam, et ex octo hidis loricam et galeam.\* Hida autem Anglice vocatur terra unius aratri culturæ sufficiens per annum.

A.D. 1009.

§ 5. Anno ix<sup>o</sup>, Ricardo Normannorum duci misit rex nuncios suos, causa consilii et auxilii postulandi. Puppes autem prædictæ congregatæ sunt apud Sandwic, et viri optime armati: nec fuit tantus numerus navium tempore alicujus in Britannia. Illusit autem eos Deus. Siquidem rex exulaverat Wlnod puerum nobilem Sudsexe; ille vero cum xx. navibus coepit

<sup>1</sup> F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Esendune*, A.

\* See a valuable note by Mr. Earle (*Two Saxon Chron.*, p. 336) on this important passage.

Chr. E.

prædari juxta littora maris. Igitur Brictric frater ducis Edrici laudem sibi volens adquirere, LXXX. ex puppibus prædictis secum duxit, et hostem vivum vel defunctum se regi allaturum promisit. Sed inter eundum, ventus ultra modum horribilis naves ejus omnes ad terram perniciose jactavit: Wlnod vero superveniens, statim eas combussit. Sinistris angariatæ nunciis, puppes reliquæ Londoniam redierunt: exercitus quoque divisus est; et sic omnis labor Anglorum cassatus est. Tempore igitur messis, venit exercitus Dacorum novus et innumerabilis apud Sandwic; et inde ad Cantuariam progressi, statim cepissent eam, nisi ter mille libras dando, cives pacem impetrassent. Daci ergo in Vectam devenerunt: et inde Sudsexe et Hamtunescire et Bercscire prædati sunt. Rex autem Ædelred, collectis omnibus Anglorum viribus, regredientibus Dacis obviavit, finemque sævitæ eorum imposuisset, nisi dux Edricus, semper proditor, rumoribus fictis et terroribus falsis regi pugnam dissuasisset. Postea Daci redeuntes hiemaverunt in Tamese, Londoniamque sæpe assilientes, sæpe repulsi sunt. Trans Natale vero perrexerunt per Chiltern ad Oxineford. Qua combusta redeuntes, perstantes in Cantia puppes suas contra se adductas<sup>a</sup> in Quadragesima emendaverunt.

A.D. 1000.  
Disaster  
upon disaster  
befalls  
the English.

The Danes  
burn Ox-  
ford.

Chr. E.

§ 6. Anno x<sup>o</sup>, venerunt Daci apud Gipeswic in die Ascensionis Domini, et insurrexerunt in Wlfketel<sup>1</sup> ducem exercitus; et Estangli protinus fugerunt. Sed homines Grantebrigescire viriliter obstiterunt; unde, dum Angli regnaverunt, laus Grantebrigiensis provinciae splendide floruit. Cuneis vero inter se invincibiliter confligentibus, mortisque casum vilipendenti-

A.D. 1010.  
Fighting in  
Suffolk.

Bravery of  
the men of  
Cambridge-  
shire.

<sup>1</sup> A.; Owlketel, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> *contra se adductas*. These words have no support in the Chronicles or in Florence. They appear to mean, "brought round to meet them."

A.D. 1010. bus, occisus est Athelstan sororius \* regis, et Oswi dux, et Edwi frater Evici, et Wulfric consul, et multi cum  
 The Danes gain the victory, and devastate East Anglia. eis principes. Anglis vero cum memoria fugæ nulla adesset, Turcetil Mireneheved, id est "Caput formicæ," primus fugam incepit, et opprobrium meruit sempiternum. Daci vero victores, terram Estangle tribus mensibus, et etiam paludes præcedenti libro descriptas, cum ecclesiis, vel prædati sunt, vel combusserunt. Destruxerunt etiam Tedford; combusserunt quoque Grantebrige: et inde recedentes per montana amoenissima loci delectabilis qui vocatur Balesham,<sup>1</sup> quosquos invenerunt in eodem loco, neci dederunt; puerosque jactantes super acumina lancearum recipiebant. Qui- Local tradi-  
 The brave man of Balesham. dam vero fama dignus extenta, in gradus turris templi, quod adhuc ibidem stat, ascendit; et tam loco quam probitate munitus, ab omni solus exercitu se defendit. Inde vero Daci transeuntes per Estsexam venerunt ad Chr. E.  
 The invaders overrun Buckinghamshire, Bedfordshire, and Huntingdonshire. Description of Huntingdon. flumen Tamesis. Nec segnes, inde promoverunt acies in Oxinefordscire, et in Bokinghamsaire; et sic juxta Usam ad Bedeford, et sic ad Temesford. Flumen vero Usæ per tria castra, quæ sunt capita provinciarum, decurrit: scilicet, Bukingham, Bedeford, et Huntendune. Huntendonia vero, id est, "Mons venatorum," loco Godmundcestre, nobilis quondam urbis, nunc vero villæ non inamabilis, ex alia parte fluminis sita, castris duobus prædictis, tam situs fulgore quam sui decore, tam prædictarum paludum vicinitate quam ferarum et piscium fertilitate longe præminet. Ad festum vero S. Andreæ diverterunt ad Northamtune. Qua combusta, pertranseuntes cis<sup>2</sup> Tamesim, totam terram combusserunt; et ad Natale classi suæ se rediderunt.

<sup>1</sup> A. A<sup>2</sup>; *Valesham*, Sav.; *Balesham*, F.

<sup>2</sup> circa, A. F.

\* The word in the Chronicle is "aðum," which may mean either son-in-law or brother-in-law.

Chr. C.

§ 7. Anno XI., cum jam Daci prædassent, ex boreali parte Tamesis, Estangle et Grantebrigescire et Oxinefordscire et Bukinhamsire et Estsexe et Middlesexe et Herfordscire et Bedefordscire, et partem Huntedunescire, quæ est ex ea parte fluminis, et multum in Hamtunescire;<sup>a</sup> ex australi parte Tamesis, Kent et Sudreie et Hastings et Sudsex et Beroscire et Hamplescire, et multum in Wiltunescire; metropolim Angliæ Cantuariam obsederunt,<sup>1</sup> et proditione ceperunt. Almar enim, quem Alfegus archiepiscopus a morte liberaverat, eam prodidit. Ingressi igitur ceperunt Alfegum archiepiscopum, et Godwine episcopum, et Lefwine abbatem,<sup>b</sup> et Alfword præpositum regis, et clericos cum monachis, et viros cum mulieribus; sicque victores ad puppes redierunt. Videres autem spectaculum horrendum, faciem urbis antiquæ et pulcherrimæ totam in cineres redactam, cadavera civium per vicos densissime jacentia, sanguine solum flumenque nigrescentia, fletum et ejulatum puerorum et mulierum in captivitate transducendorum, caput fidei fontemque doctrinæ Anglorum vinculis mancipatum opprobriose pertrahi.

A.D. 1011.  
The whole south-east of England ravaged by the Danes.

They besiege, take, and sack Canterbury.

Chr. E.

§ 8. Anno XII., cum Sabbatum adesset in hebdomada Paschali, commoti sunt Daci erga archiepiscopum, quia prohibebat pecuniam dari pro se. Erant etiam ebrii vino, quod venerat ab austro. Adducto igitur archiepiscopo in medio eorum, jactaverunt in eum ossa et capita boum: unde cum Deo omnipotenti grates lætissimas ex intimo corde redderet, percussus est capite cum securi. Cecidit ergo vir Dei, sanctoque æruore terram aspergens, anima beata cœli decoravit

A.D. 1012.  
Martyrdom of St. Alphege, the archbishop.

<sup>1</sup> S<sup>2</sup>. F.; *obsiderunt*, A.

<sup>a</sup> *multum in Hamtunescire*. These words correspond to Chr. C. rather than Chr. E.

<sup>b</sup> It should be "abbatissam;" but the chronicle used by Henry

seems here to have conformed to Chr. E., which has "Leofwine "abb'" (abbatem), rather than to Chr. C., which gives "Leofwine "abb't" (abbatissam).

A.D. 1012. templa. Mane autem episcopi Ednod et Helhun sus- Chr. E.  
ceptum corpus cum debito honore detulerunt, et sepe-  
lierunt ad monasterium S. Pāuli: quo in loco Deus  
merita sancti martyris ostendit. Successit autem ei  
Lefwing archiepiscopus. Tunc vero rex nimis sero  
pacem fecit cum Dacorum exercitu, dans eis VIII.  
millia librarum.\* Nunquam enim tempore opportuno  
pax fiebat, donec nimia contritione terra langueret.  
Subdiderunt autem se regi XLV. puppes Dacorum,  
promittentes quod Angliam tuerentur, rex vero inve-  
niret eis victum et vestitum.

The king  
concludes a  
peace.

A.D. 1013. § 9. Anno XIII., Suain rex Dacorum venit per Hum-  
Sweyn enters the  
ram usque Gainsburh: statimque subditus est ei  
Humber; all the  
Uethred dux Nordhumbre et tota gens illa. Gens  
country north and  
etiam Lindeseie, et gens Urbium Quinque, et omnes ex  
east of Wat-  
boreali parte Watlingestrate dederunt ei obsides. Rex  
ling Street  
vero tradidit obsides et puppes Cnut filio suo custo-  
submits to  
diendas; pergensque ad Oxinefordiam et Wincestriam,  
him; he  
gentes illas in ditionem accepit. Inde revertens Lun-  
takes Ox-  
doniam, populum multum amisit in Tamesi; quia non  
ford and  
curabant ire ad pontem. Cives vero, quia rex Adelred  
Winchester;  
inerat, fortiter ei restiterunt. Suain igitur inde  
even Lon-  
recedens ivit ad Wallingford, et inde ad Bathan: et  
don treats  
omnis Westsex subdita est ei. Postea vero cum Suain  
with him.  
reversus esset ad puppes suas, Londonienses etiam  
Then Ethel-  
subditi sunt ei; quia timebant ne eos in perniciem  
red sends  
redigeret. Quod videns rex Ædelred, misit Emmam  
his wife and  
reginam Ricardo fratri suo in Normanniam: et postea  
sons to Nor-  
Edwardum et Ælfredum filios suos. Suain vero ab  
mandy, and  
omni populo habebatur pro rege, jussitque dari per  
after Christ-  
Angliam victum et censum exercitui suo: Turchil vero  
mas follows  
similiter jussit dari exercitui suo qui erat in Grenewic.  
them him-  
Rex autem Ædelred petiit Withland, quo per Natale  
self.  
moratus, transfretavit fugitivus ad Ricardum Norman-  
niæ ducem.

\* So Chr. E. Chr. C. says "ehta and feowertig þusend punda."

*Malm. Gest.  
Pont., p.155.*

§ 10. Anno XIV., Suain jam rex Anglorum, in exordio regni sui subita morte periit. Exercitus autem ejus elegit Cnut filium suum in regem. Angli vero in Normanniam Ædelredo regi nuncios direxerunt, intimantes ei quod si humanius solito vellet eos tractare, nullum eo libentius se in regem recepturos. Ille autem per Edwardum filium suum præmissum omnia rege et populo digna spondens eis, adveniens ab omni Anglorum gente cum lætitia susceptus est. Cnut vero cum exercitu suo moratus anud Gainsburh usque ad Pascha, cum<sup>1</sup> hominibus Lindeseie concordatus est. Quod audiens rex Adelred, cum maximo exercitu superveniens, provinciam illam combussit, et provinciales pene omnes interfecit. Cnut vero intime dolens gentem illam sui causa destructam, perrexit cum navibus ad Sandwic; ibique emittens obsides nobilissimos, qui erant patri suo traditi, abscidit eis manus et nasum. Præter hoc malum jussit rex exercitui qui erat apud Greenwic reddi XXI. mille librarum. Addidit autem Dominus malis solitis malum insolitum; mare namque ascendens solito superius villas cum populo submersit innumero.<sup>2</sup>

*Chr. B.*

A.D. 1014.  
Sudden death of Sweyn: the army elect Cnut king.

Ethelred returns: he punishes the people of Lindsey for submitting to Cnut.

Anno xv., dux Edricus prodidit Sigeferd et Morchere procures egregios; vocatos namque in cameram suam fecit occidi. Edmundus vero<sup>1</sup> filius Adelredi terram eorum saisivit, et uxorem Sigferdi duxit. Cnut vero rediit a Dacia in Sandwic, veniensque in Westsexe ad Frothemutham, inde prædavit Dorsete et Sumersete et Wiltescyre. Rex vero Adelred jacebat infirmus apud Chosam.<sup>3</sup> Tunc Edmundus filius regis et dux Edricus, congregato exercitu contra Cnut, cum simul venissent, voluit dux prodere juvenem. Ideoque divisi sunt, et proelium dimissum est. Igitur Westsexe subdita est Cnut regi Dacorum.

A.D. 1015.  
Murder of Sigfert and Morcar.

Cnut obtains possession of Wessex.

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; deest, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> In H. addit hic scriba, sed non

eodem atramento, *Post hec ivit Cnut cum exercitu suo in Daciam.*

<sup>3</sup> Chosham, F. S<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1016. § 11. Anno XVI, dux Edricus cum XL. navibus<sup>1</sup> subdens se Cnut regi, et rex cum C.LX. <sup>2</sup>navibus, conveniunt in Tamasim; pergentesque apud Crikelade, Warwicscyre ferro et flamma destruxerunt. Rex autem Adelred fecit edictum ut quicumque Anglorum sanus esset secum in bello procederet. Cum autem congregata esset gens innumera, dictum est regi, quod sui prodere volebant eum. Quamobrem dimisso exercitu rediit Londoniam. Edmundus vero ivit ad Uctred ducem Nordhumbre; prædaveruntque simul in Staffordscire et in Scropscire et in Legeceastre. Cnut vero ex alia parte ivit per Bukingehamscire in Bedefordescire, et sic in Huntendunescire, et inde juxta paludes ad Stanford; et sic in Lincolnescire, et inde in Snotingehamscire, et sic in Nordhumbre erga Everwic. Quod audiens Uctred dimisit prædationem suam et reversus est in Nordhumbre, et necessitate subditus est Cnut, et cum eo tota Nordhumbre; et dedit obsides; et tamen ibi occisus est. Edmundus vero rediit Londoniam ad patrem suum. Sed Cnut statuens Hyrc consulem super Nordhumbre in loco Uctredi, rediit ad puppes suas ante Pascha; post Pascha vero cum navigio suo tendebat Londoniam.

and of  
Northum-  
bria.

Death of  
Ethelred;  
his son,  
Edmund  
Ironside,  
succeeds.

A.D. 1016.

War be-  
tween Ed-  
mund and  
Canute; the  
Danes fail  
to take  
London.

Adelred cum regnasset XXXVII. annis, post multos labores et anxietates vitæ suæ, decessit in Londonia, antequam navigium hostile advenisset.

§ 12. Post quem Edmundus filius ejus electus est in regem, qui cognominatus<sup>3</sup> est "Ireneside," id est, "Fer-  
" reum latus;" quia maximi vigoris, et mirabilis patientiæ bellicis erat in negotiis. Edmundus rex ivit in West-  
sex, et omnis gens ei subdita est. Interea venerunt Dacorum puppes ad Grenewic, et inde Londoniam: facientesque foveam magnam ex australi parte, traxe-  
runt puppes suas ex occidentali parte pontis, fodientesque circa urbem ita quod nemo intrare vel exire pos-

Chr. D.,  
a. 1067.  
Flor. Wig.  
a. 1016.

Malm. Gest.  
Reg. ii. 10.

Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> *puppibus*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> *cxl.* H.

<sup>3</sup> *vocatus*, A. F.

Chr. E.

set, urbem sæpe et graviter assilierunt; sed cives eis A.D. 1016.  
caute et <sup>1</sup>viriliter restiterunt.' De bellis vero regis  
Edmundi, et de fortitudine ejus, nonne hæc scripta  
sunt in historiis veterum cum laude summa?

§ 13. Edmundus primum bellum gessit contra exer- Battles at  
citum Dacorum apud Peonnam juxta Gillinges, suc- Penn and  
cessusque manifestior contigit Edmundo. Secundum Sherston.  
bellum gessit contra Cnut regem apud Sceorstan; ubi  
pugnatum est acerrime.<sup>a</sup> Dux vero Edric et Almer  
Derling erant in prælio contra regem Edmundum:  
igitur multi ex utraque parte ceciderunt, et exercitus  
per se divisi sunt. Tertio cum manu electa bellatorum Siege of  
venit Londoniam; et fugato exercitu ad puppes qui London  
obsederat urbem, fortissime liberavit eam; et cum raised;  
debito triumpho ingressus est in eam. Quartum bellum battle at  
gessit contra eundem exercitum post duos dies apud Brentfor  
Brendforde. Multi autem suorum in eo transitu nimis  
festinantes flumine submersi sunt; ipse tamen belli  
festivum decus obtinuit. Rex igitur Cnut summo  
timore perstrictus, manum suam multis copiis ad se  
mandatis augmentavit. Cogitaverunt etiam Cnut rex  
et dux Edricus, ut quem armis vincere nequibant  
proditione vincerent. Igitur dux Edricus concordatus Edric  
est ei ut eum proderet. Ivit ergo consilio ejus in West- treacher-  
sexe, ut maximum contra Cnut duceret exercitum. ously joins  
Cnut vero interea Londoniam obsidens, terra et aqua Edmund.  
fortiter assilivit: sed cives ei viriliter obstiterunt.  
Quinta vice rex Edmundus transiens iterum Tamasim Edmund  
fluvium apud Brendeforde, ivit in Kent pugnatum cum defeats the  
Dacis. Sed in ipsa obviacione præcedentium vexilla- Danes in  
torum, horror nimius Dacos invasit, et in fugam versi Kent; but  
the victory  
is incom-  
plete  
through

<sup>1</sup> fortiter obstiterunt, A. F.

<sup>a</sup> The traitorous cry of Edric, urging the English to flee because Edmund had fallen, was, according to Malmesbury (*Gest. Reg.* ii. 10),

an incident of this battle of Sherston, not, as Henry represents it of the battle of Assandune.

A.D. 1016.  
treachery  
of Edric.

Final battle  
of Assan-  
dune;  
Canute re-  
mains mas-  
ter of the  
field.

sunt. Edmundus vero persecutus est eos cum occisi-  
one magna usque ad Eilesford.<sup>1</sup> Quod si eos persequi  
persisteret, ultimus ille dies bello Dacisque fuisset.  
Dux vero Edricus consilio nequissimo fecit eum resis-  
tere. Consilium pejus datum non fuerat in Anglia.  
Sextum bellum commisit Edmundus cum maxima gente,  
et Cnut cum omnibus Dacorum exercitibus congregatis,  
in Estsexe apud Esedune. Bello igitur acerrimo et  
finali pugnatum est, et utrique invincibiles, cæde de-  
specta, persistebant. Apparuit autem ibi virtus Edmundi  
juvenis. Cum enim Dacos solito acrius pugnare vide-  
ret, loco regio relicto, quod erat ex more inter draconem  
et insigne quod vocatur "Standard," cucurrit terribilis  
in aciem primam.\* Vibrans igitur gladium electum et  
brachio juvenis Edmundi dignum, modo fulminis fudit  
aciem: abrumpensque mediam pertransiit, seque sequen-  
tibus obruendam dedit. Inde in aciem regalem advolat;  
ubi cum clamor et stridor horrendus inciperet, videns  
dux Edricus ruinam Dacorum imminere, clamavit An-  
glorum genti: "Flet Engle, flet Engle: ded is Edmund:"  
quod sic<sup>2</sup> interpretatur: "Fugite Angli, fugite Angli:  
"mortuus est Edmundus." Sic igitur clamans, fugam  
cum suis primus incepit, quem tota gens Anglorum in  
fugam subsecuta est. Illic igitur miranda strages An-  
glorum facta est: illic occisus est Ednod dux, et Ælfrie  
dux, et Godwine dux, et Wlfketel dux de Estangle,  
et Ailward filius Alfai ducis, et omnis flos nobilitatis  
Brittanniæ. Rex vero Cnut, tanta fretus victoria, Lon-

Chr. E.

Virg. Æn.  
ix. 759.

Local tra-  
dition?

Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> *Illesford*, A.; *Adilesforde*, F. | <sup>2</sup> A. F.; *deest*, Sav.

\* These details about Edmund's behaviour at the battle of Assandune appear to proceed from Henry's own invention. He had already mentioned the dragon (a. 752) as the ensign of Wessex. But the traitorous words of Edric may easily have been transmitted by

local tradition among the men of Essex, and so have come to Henry's ears. In the *Enc. Emma* a speech beginning "O Angli, aut hodie bellabitis," &c., is put in Edmund's mouth at Assandune, but there is no mention of the dragon.

doniam et sceptrā cepit regalia. Septima tamen vice A.D. 1016.  
 congregati sunt exercitus in Gioucestreſcyre. Hinc  
 autem formidantes fortitudinem regis Edmundi, illinc  
 vero regis Cnut, dixerunt inter se proceres: "Cur in-  
 "sensati necis periculum totiens incurrimus? pugnent  
 "singulariter, qui regnare student singulariter." Placuit  
 sententia regibus; nec enim mediocris erat rex Cnut Single com-  
bat between  
Canute and  
Edmund.  
 probitatis. Positi igitur reges in Olanie,<sup>1</sup> duellum in-  
 ceperunt.<sup>2</sup> Telis igitur et lanceis utrinque fractis super  
 arma omnium armorum præstantissima, rem gladiis  
 egere. Audiebant igitur, et videbant horribiles tinnitus  
 et igneas collisiones populus uterque cum gemitu et  
 clamore. Tandem vigor incomparabilis Edmundi ful-  
 minare cœpit. Cui Cnut rex cum magno vigore resistens,  
 et tamen sibi timens, inquit: "Juvenum omnium fortis-  
 "sime, quæ necessitas est alterum nostrum, regnandi  
 "causa, ferro perire. Simus fratres adoptivi, regnumque  
 "partiamur, imperemusque, ego rebus in tuis, tuque in  
 "meis. Dacia quoque tuo disponatur imperio." His  
 verbis juvenis mens generosa delinita est: et osculum  
 pacis invicem datum est. Conveniente igitur populo,  
 et præ gaudio lacrimante, Edmundus tegnum suscepit  
 Westsexe; Cnut vero regnum Merce suscipiens reversus  
 est Londoniam.<sup>2</sup>

Chr. E.

§ 14. Edmundus rex post paucos exhinc dies prodi- 30 Nov  
A few days  
afterwards  
 tione occisus est apud Oxineford. Sic autem occisus

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; *Molania*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Plura hic habet H. in margine, quæ infra in Appendice referuntur.

<sup>2</sup> The language of the Chronicles implies only a peaceful meeting between Canute and Edmund in the isle of Olney, nor does any historian of earlier date than Henry say a word about a *duel*, though Malmesbury and the author of the *Encomium Emmae* speak of Canute having declined a proposal for a combat. Although, therefore, modern attempts to substantiate the

story have not been wanting, (on which see Mr. Earle's note,) historical criticism, guided by present lights, must reject it as fictitious. The circumstantial account given by Ailred in the *Genealogia Regum Anglorum*, which was written between 1151 and 1154, is plainly nothing but a rhetorical expansion of Henry's narrative.

A.D. 1016.  
Edmund is  
treacher-  
ously slain  
at Oxford  
by the son  
of Edric.

est. Cum rex hostibus suis terribilis et timendissimus in regno floreret, ivit nocte quadam in domum evacuationis ad requisita naturæ, ubi filius Edrici ducis in fovea secretaria delitescens consilio patris, regem inter celanda cultello bis acuto percussit; et inter viscera ferrum figens, fugiens reliquit.<sup>a</sup> Edricus igitur ad regem Cnut veniens, salutavit eum dicens: "Ave rex solus." Cui cum rem gestam denudasset, respondit rex: "Ego te ob tanti obsequii meritum cunctis Anglorum proceribus reddam celsiorem." Jussit ergo eum excapitari, et caput in stipite super celsiorem Londoniæ turrin figi.<sup>b</sup> Sic periit Edmundus rex fortis cum uno anno regnasset; et sepultus est juxta Edgar avum suum in Glastengebirh.

Malm. Gest  
Reg.

Canute  
orders the  
assassin to  
be beheaded.

A.D. 1017.  
Canute mar-  
ries Emma,  
Ethelred's  
widow.

§ 15. Cnut rex Anglorum Emmam ducis Norman-  
norum filiam, uxorem regis Adelredi, duxit. Postea vero rex dignam retributionem nequitie Anglis reddidit. Ipse namque in dominio suo Westsexam habebat, Hyrc Nordhumbram, Turchillus Estangle, Edricus Merce. Rex vero Cnut Edricum occidit, Turchillum exulavit,<sup>c</sup> Hyrc fugere compulit:<sup>d</sup> præterea summos procerum aggressus, Normannum ducem interfecit, Edwi Adelinge exterminavit, Adelwoldum detruncavit, Edwi Ceorleking exulavit; Bridric ferro vita privavit. Fecit

Chr. E.

His  
cruelties,  
tyranny,  
and fiscal  
exactions.

<sup>a</sup> The Chronicles and Florence are silent as to the manner of Edmund's death. Malmesbury says that he was murdered by two servants, who were bribed by Edric of Mercia. Florence says that his death happened at London, but considering the recent treaty, and the state of things generally, this seems very unlikely. Henry's statement, that he was murdered at Oxford, is probable enough, but there are no means of verifying it. The author of the *Encom. Emma* lurs the matter over.

<sup>b</sup> All the Chronicles, and Florence following them, say that

Edric was put to death the year after Edmund's murder, i.e. in 1017. Florence adds that Canute performed this act of justice because he feared that Edric would betray him as he had betrayed his former masters, and that he ordered his dead body to be thrown over the walls of London, and left unburied.

<sup>c</sup> Turchil was banished by Canute in 1021, but taken into favour again two years afterwards. How he came to his end is related by Malmesbury, *Gesta Regum*, ii. 11.

<sup>d</sup> The banishment of Eric is mentioned by Malmesbury, but not by the Chronicles, nor by Florence.

quoque per Angliam mirabilem censum reddi, scilicet A.D. 1018.  
LXXII.<sup>1</sup> mille librarum, præter undecies mille librarum  
quas Londonienses reddiderunt. Dignum igitur exac-  
torem Dominus justus Anglis imposuit.

Malm., Gest.  
Reg. II. 11. Cnut tertio anno regni sui ivit in Daciam, ducens A.D. 1019.  
Expedition  
against the  
Wends; in  
which the  
valour,  
shown by  
Godwin and  
his men  
caused  
Canute to  
respect the  
English.  
exercitum Anglorum et Dacorum in Wandalos. Cum  
autem hostibus, crastina die conflicturus, appropin-  
quasset, Godwinus consul Anglorum ducens exercitum,  
rege inscio, nocte profectus est in hostes. Igitur im-  
providos invasit, occidit, fugavit. Rex vero summo  
mane, cum Anglos fugisse vel ad hostes perfide trans-  
isse putaret, acies ordinatas in hostem dirigens, non  
invenit in castris nisi sanguinem et cadavera et prædam.

Chr. E. Quamobrem summo honore deinceps Anglos habuit, nec  
minori quam Dacos. Hic actis in Angliam rediit. Hoc A.D. 1020.  
circa tempus Leving archiepiscopo defuncto, Athelnod<sup>2</sup>  
successor ejus Romam petiit. Cum quo Lefwinus abbas

Eliensis profectus, abbatiam injuste sibi ablatam, papa  
Benedicto jubente, rehabuit. Archiepiscopus vero Roma  
rediens, corpus S. Alfei a Londonia transtulit Can-  
tuariam. A.D. 1022.  
Church  
affairs. A.D. 1023.

Chr. E. § 16. Cnut regis anno octavo, dux Normannorum  
Ricardus secundus, pater Emmæ reginæ Anglorum,  
vivere non adjecit. Post quem Ricardus filius suus A.D. 1024.  
Death of  
Richard II.  
of Nor-  
mandy.

anno prope uno imperavit: et post eum Robertus fra-  
ter ejus octo annis. Anno vero sequenti ivit cum  
exercitu Anglorum rex in Daciam contra Ulf et Eilaf:  
qui gravissimam contra eum multitudinem terra et mari  
adduxerunt de gente Speon.<sup>a</sup> Ibi ergo periit populus  
multus Anglorum et Dacorum ex parte Cnut; et Speon  
vicerunt. A.D. 1025.  
Disastrous  
expedition  
of Canute  
into Den-  
mark.

Cnut rex anno duodecimo ivit ab Anglia cum quin-  
quaginta puppibus in Norwegiam, et bello fugavit Olaf  
regem Norwegensium, regnumque illud recepit in suam A.D. 1028.  
He conquers  
Norway;  
death of  
Olaf.

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; lxxxi., Sav.

| <sup>2</sup> A.; Athelnold, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> For "Sweon"; see p. 77, note 6.

A.D. 1030. subditionem. Cum vero inde redisset in Angliam, rex Olaf rediens in Norwegiam a patriæ illius gente occisus est: remansitque Cnut regnum illud dum vixit.

A.D. 1031. Circa hoc tempus Roberto regi Francorum successit Henricus filius suus. *Malm., Gest. Reg. ii. 11.*

Death of Robert, duke of Normandy; his son, William the Bastard, succeeds. Canute goes to Rome; his lavish gifts and offerings.

Cnut regis anno decimoquinto, Robertus dux Nor-

Chr. E.

manniæ in peregrinatione Ierosolimitana mortuus est;

cui successit Willelmus nothus filius suus, in puerili

ætate. Rex vero Cnut Romam splendide perrexit; et

eleemosynam, quæ vocatur "Romscot," quam ante-

cessores sui dederant ecclesiæ Romanæ, perenniter

assignavit. Quis autem numeret eleemosynas ejus et

dapsilitates ejus et magnalia quæ gessit rex magnus

in peregrinatione illa? Non fuit rex sub occidentali

limite, qui tam splendide, tam famose Romæ sancta

loca petisset. Eodem vero anno Roma rediens perrexit

in Scotiam: et Melcolm rex Scotiæ subditus est ei, et

duo alii reges Melbeathe et Jermarc.<sup>a</sup>

*Flor. Wig. a. 1031. Enc. Emmae.*

Chr. E.

A.D. 1036.  
13 Nov.

Death of Canute. His power and the extent of his dominion.

§ 17. Cnut rex cum viginti annis regnasset, vivere

destitit apud Scafesbirh, et sepultus est apud Wincestre

in veteri monasterio. De cujus regis potentia pauca

sunt perstringenda: nec enim ante eum tantæ magni-

tudinis rex fuerat in Anglia. Erat enim<sup>1</sup> dominus

totius Daciæ, totius Angliæ, totius Norwagiæ, simul et

Scotiæ; enimvero, extra numerum bellorum quibus

maxime splenduit, tria gessit eleganter et magnifice.

Primum est, quod filiam suam imperatori Romano

cum ineffabilibus divitiis maritavit. Secundum, quod

Romam pergens, omnes malas exactiones in via quæ

per Gallias Romam tendit, quæ vocantur tolonea vel

transversa, data pecunia sua, diminui fecit usque ad

*Malm., Gest. Reg. ii. 12.*

Ib. ii. 11.

<sup>1</sup> namque, A. F.

<sup>a</sup> At this place, in one of the Lambeth MSS. (No. 118), and in a MS. in the National Library at Paris of the sixteenth century (No.

6044), which seems to be a copy of Lambeth 118, the laws of Canute, or "Danelage," are inserted at length.

Tradition? medietatem. Tertium,\* quod cum maximo vigore A.D. 1036.  
imperii, sedile suum in littore maris, cum ascenderet, Among other memo-  
statui jussit. Dixit autem mari ascendenti "Tu meæ rable acts,  
ditionis es; et terra in qua sedeo mea est: nec fuit he com-  
qui impune meo resisteret imperio. Impero igitur tibi manded the  
ne in terram meam ascendas, nec vestes nec membra tide not to  
dominatoris tui madefacere præsumas." Mare vero de rise and wet  
more conscendens pedes regis et crura sine reverentia his feet, and  
madefecit. Rex igitur resiliens ait: "Sciant omnes then drew a  
habitantes orbem, vanam et frivolum regum esse poten moral lesson  
tiam, nec regis quempiam nomine dignum præter Eum, from the  
cujus nutui coelum, terra, mare, legibus obediunt æter- futility of  
nis." Rex igitur Cnut nunquam postea coronam auream the com-  
cervi sui imposuit, sed super imaginem Domini, quæ mand.  
cruci affixa erat, posuit eam in æternum, in laudem  
Dei Regis magni: cujus misericordia Cnut regis anima  
quiete fruatur.

Canute's  
humility.

Chr. B. § 18. Haraldus, filius Cnut regis et Ailivæ filiæ Harold I.  
Alfelmi ducis, electus est in regem. Fuit namque succeeds.  
placitum magnum apud Oxenford; ubi Lefricus consul  
et omnes principes ex boreali parte Tamesis cum  
Londoniensibus elegerunt Haraldum, ut conservaret  
Flor. Wig. regnum fratri suo Hardecnut, qui erat in Dacia. God-  
a. 1035. winus vero consul, pater Haraldus postea regis, et prin-  
Chr. B. cipes Westsexe cœperunt contradicere; sed non profuit.  
Consilium ergo inierunt quod Emma regina cum regis  
defuncti familia conservaret Westsexe apud Winestre  
in opus filii sui: Godwinus vero consul dux eis esset  
in re militari.

Haraldus rex exulavit Emmam reginam, novercam A.D. 1037.  
scilicet suam; quæ divertens ad Baldwinum consulem Banishment  
Flandriæ accepit ab eo castrum Bruges, ut ibi et inde of Emma,  
degeret: Willemo namque Normannorum domino ad- the dow-  
huc in ætate puerili cum rege Francorum manente, ager queen.

\* This is the famous story of Canute's commanding the tide to retire; it is found in no writer earlier than Henry, but was eagerly adopted by a crowd of later historians.

A.D. 1033.  
Eadsi made  
archbishop  
of Canter-  
bury.

Normannia fiscus regalis erat. Anno sequente Athel-  
nod archiepiscopo Cantuariensi migrante, successit Eadsi.

Malm. *Gest.*  
Reg. ii. 12.

A.D. 1040.  
17 Mar.  
Death of  
Harold.

§ 19. Haraldus rex cum regnasset iv. annis et men-  
sibus iv. mortem sensit apud Oxenford; et sepultus  
est apud Westminster. In diebus illis redditæ fuerant  
xvi. puppibus ab unoquoque portu<sup>a</sup> viii. marcæ argenti,  
sicut et patris sui tempore.

A.D. 1041.  
17 June.  
Herthacnut,  
Emma's son,  
succeeds.

Hardecnut, filius regis Cnut et Emmæ reginæ, ve-  
niens a Dacia apud Sandwic, illico susceptus est et  
electus in regem simul ab Anglis et Dacis. Hujus  
anno secundo redditus est census exercitui Dacorum:  
scilicet xxi. mille librarum et lxxxix. <sup>1</sup>libræ; <sup>2</sup>et postea  
sunt redditæ xxxii. puppibus xi. mille libræ et xlviii.  
libræ. Eodem anno venit Edwardus filius Edelredi  
regis a Normannia, ad regem Hardecnut fratrem suum:  
ambo etenim erant filii Emmæ, filiæ Ricardi consulis.

He receives  
a visit from  
Edward,  
his half-  
brother.

A.D. 1042.  
His death.

§ 20. Hardecnut rex morte præreptus est cum reg-  
nasset ii. annis, in medio flore juventutis suæ apud  
Lamhuthæ; qui claræ indolis et benignæ juventutis  
fuerat suis. Tantæ namque largitatis fertur fuisse, ut  
prandia regalia quatuor in die vicibus omni curiæ suæ  
faceret apponi, malens a vocatis apposita fercula dimitti,  
quam a non vocatis apponenda fercula repositi; cum  
nostri temporis consuetudo sit, causa vel avaritiæ, vel,  
ut ipsi dicunt, fastidii, principes semel in die tantum  
suis escas antepondere.<sup>b</sup> Sepultus est autem rex Harde-  
cnut in veterimonasterio apud Wincestre, juxta Cnut  
patrem suum.<sup>3</sup> Procures igitur Anglorum, jam Dacorum

Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> xcix., F.

<sup>2</sup> F.; desunt, A.

<sup>3</sup> "Et antequam sepultus esset,  
electus est Edwardus frater ejus  
ab omni populo; et sacratus est

"ab Eadsi archiepiscopo apud  
Wincestre in die Paschæ." Sic  
H. et Sav. in margine. Locus *Pro-  
cures igitur . . . . . indic Pasche*  
deest in H.

<sup>a</sup> Not understanding the "æt  
"elcere hamulan" of the Chroni-  
cle, (which Mr. Earle interprets  
"for each rowlock-thong,") Henry  
renders the words "ab unoquoque  
"portu."

<sup>b</sup> Robert de Mellent is said by  
Malmesbury (*Gest. Reg. v.*) to  
have been instrumental in bringing  
in this custom.

Chr. E.

dominio liberati, hilares pro Alfredo primogenito filio Edelredi, ut regni diademate sublimetur, nuntios mittunt. Ille autem cum esset pater Anglicus, et matre Normannus, aliquos ex consanguineis matris suæ, multos ex coævis commilitantibus a Normannia secum duxit in Angliam. Godwinus vero cum esset consul fortissimus, et proditor sævissimus, præcogitavit se Edwardo fratri minori et simpliciore posse dare filiam suam in reginam. Hunc vero Alfredum,\* quia primogenitus erat et magnæ probitatis, nullo modo filiam suam dignaturum prævidebat. Intimavit igitur proceribus Angliæ, Alfredum nimiam copiam Normannorum secum adduxisse; terras Anglorum eis promisisse; gentem fortissimam et subdolum inter eos instirpare, Anglis securum non esse: hos persolvere pœnas oportere, ne alii post hæc audeant pro regis cognatione se Anglis ingerere. Capti sunt igitur et ligati Normanni qui venerant cum Alfredo: et cum ordine sederent, novem semper excapitati sunt et decimus, remansit apud Gildesforde. Cum autem omnes interfecti essent nisi decima pars, nimium visum est Anglis tot superesse; feceruntque decimam decimari, et sic paucissimi evaserunt. Alfredum vero captum

A.D. 1042.  
The English lords send to Normandy for Alfred, son of Ethelred. He comes over, attended by many Normans. The English, instigated by Godwin, massacre most of the Normans, and carry Alfred to Ely, where his eyes are put out, and he dies.

Chr. C.

et sic paucissimi evaserunt. Alfredum vero captum duxerunt in Ely, et oculos ejus eruerunt, et mortuus est. Miserunt ergo pro Edwardo juniore in Normanniam nuntios et obsides, mandantes ei quod paucissi-

A.D. 1036.

\* The story of the tragic end of Alfred, eldest son of Ethelred, is beset with difficulties and inconsistencies, of which an interesting article in the Appendix to the first vol. of Mr. Freeman's history of the Norman Conquest, gives a clear account. Three different dates are assigned to it, one 1036, while Harold was reigning; this is given by the Chronicles C. and D., and by Florence, and is the most trustworthy: the second 1040, in the interval between the death of Harold and the arrival of Hardacnut; this is the account of Malmesbury:

the third 1042, after the death of Hardacnut; this is the date assumed by Henry, whose version reads like a careless abridgment of the narrative of Florence, transferred to a wrong date, and imputing imaginary motives. The Encomiast rightly describes the maltreatment of Alfred and his followers as having taken place during the reign of Harold; he also seems to implicate Godwin in the deed, though not in express terms; this, however, Mr. Freeman, writing with a bias in favour of Godwin, will not admit.

A.D. 1036. mos Normannorum secum adduceret, et eum in regem  
 A.D. 1043. fidelissime stabilirent. Paruit Edwardus, et cum paucis  
 Edward, the venit in Angliam; et electus est in regem ab omni  
 brother of Alfréd, is chosen king. populo, et sacratus est ab Eadsi archiepiscopo apud  
 A.D. 1044. Wincestre in die Paschæ. Eadsi vero archiepiscopus  
 Eadsi re- dimisit archiepiscopatum propter infirmitatem, et sacra-  
 signs the tatus est Siward in loco ejus. Tunc quoque factus est  
 primacy, Stigandus episcopus Estangle.

Edward § 21. Edwardus rex, in patrocinium regni sui, duxit  
 marries filiam Godwini fortissimi consulis, nomine Edgitham,  
 Edgitha, the sororem regis Haraldi futuri.<sup>1</sup> Circa hoc tempus tanta  
 daughter of Godwin. fames Angliam invasit, quod sextarius frumenti, qui  
 A.D. 1047. equo uni solet esse oneri, venundaretur v. solidis, et  
 Rex autem exulavit Suain consulem, filium Godwini etiam plus. Postea vero Stigandus, qui erat episcopus  
 He banishes in Estangle, factus est episcopus etiam apud Wincestre.  
 her brother Rex autem exulavit Suain consulem, filium Godwini  
 Sweyn. prædicti consulis: qui recedens ad Baldwinum con-  
 A.D. 1049. sulem Flandriæ, ibidem hiemavit apud Bruge.

A.D. 1047. Edwardi regis anno sexto, commissum est bellum  
 Battle of apud Walesdune inter Henricum regem Francorum et Chr. E.  
 Walesdun proceres Normanniæ, qui nolebant Willelmum in do-  
 A.D. 1048. minum recipere. Quos cum dux Willelmus victos  
 Danish free- obtinuisset, quosdam exulavit, quosdam corpore minuit.  
 booters. Venerunt eo tempore duo principes Dacorum, Lothen  
 et Hirling, apud Sandwic; ubi capta innumerabili Chr. E.  
 præda, auri quoque et argenti copia, per mare gyrantes  
 Estsexam prædati sunt. Inde vero dirigentes iter in  
 Flandriam, vendita præda sua, reversi sunt unde vene-

A.D. 1049. Anno sequenti rediit Suain consul in Angliam  
 Sweyn impetratum pacem a rege. Quod cum Haraldus frater  
 allowed to ejus et Beornd consul divertissent, venit postea ad  
 return to Godwinum patrem suum apud Pevense; cui humillime  
 England. supplicans et fratribus suis Haraldo et Tosti et Beornd  
consuli, obtinuit ab eis ut Beornd consul secum pro-  
ficisceretur usque ad Sandwic ad amicitiam regis im-  
petrandam. Beornd igitur introiens in naves Suain

<sup>1</sup> Vide App.

Chr. E.

consulis ad auxilium ejus, nequiter occisus est ab eis: A.D. 1049. He treacherously kills his cousin Beorn.  
 cadaverque ejus projectum sepelierunt amici sui apud  
 Wincestre, juxta Cnut regem avunculum suum. Suein A.D. 1050.  
 vero reversus est in Flandriam. Sequenti vero anno  
 Suein regi concordatus est cautela Godwini patris sui.  
 Eo tempore Leo papa tenuit synodum apud Verzelei, Synod of Vercellæ.  
 ubi Ulf episcopus Dorcescestræ<sup>a</sup> interfuit: et pœne  
 fractus est baculus ejus episcopalis, nisi majus pretium  
 dedisset: nesciebat enim officium suum sicut episcopum  
 deceret. Eadsi archiepiscopus vita cassatus est. Obierat  
 etiam Siwardus successor ejus. Death of Eadsi and of Siward.

§ 22. Edwardus, decimo anno regni sui, dedit Roberto A.D. 1051. Robert, a Norman, raised to the primacy.  
 episcopo Londoniæ archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ. Regi  
 vero delatum est quod Godwinus gener<sup>b</sup> suus, et Suein  
 filius ejus, et Haraldus prodituri eum essent. Quos in  
 causam vocatos, cum sine obsidibus venire recusarent,  
 rex exulavit. Itaque Godwinus et Suein iverunt in  
 Flandriam, Haraldus vero in Hiberniam. Rex vero in  
 iram promotus, dimissa regina, thesaurum suum et ter-  
 ras ei abstulit. Deditque Odoni consulatum Davenesyre  
 et Sumersete et Dorsete: Algaro vero filio Lefrici con-  
 sulis dedit consulatum Haraldi. The king banishes Godwin and his sons.

Edwardi regis anno xi. Emma Normannigena, uxor A.D. 1052. Death of Emma.  
 regum et mater regum, morem mortis pertulit. God-

<sup>a</sup> Dorchester in Oxfordshire. The first West-Saxon see was founded here by Birinus in 635; but when, about forty years afterwards, Mercia began to encroach on Wessex, the seat of the bishopric was moved further south by bishop Headdi (676-703), who translated the relics of S. Birinus to Winchester. A Mercian see of Dorchester was then founded by archbishop Theodore, in 680, with Ætta for its first bishop. How long this bishopric endured is not known; it did not exist in the time of Offa the great king of Mercia (Matt. Paris, *Vita*

*Duorum Offarum*); perhaps it was abandoned about the time (752) of the disastrous defeat of the Mercians by the West Saxons at Burford, one result of which must have been to bring all the upper Thames valley under West-Saxon control. Florence says that the bishopric was re-founded by Edward the Elder, and gives the succession of bishops from Leofwine (about 965) to Remigius, (the next but one after this Ulf,) who, as we shall see, removed the see to Lincoln.

<sup>b</sup> An oversight for "socer."

A.D. 1062. winus autem consul et Suein filius ejus, currentes velis  
 Godwin and his sons harry the English coast. extensis a Flandria ad insulam Wiht, prædati sunt eam ; prædati sunt quoque Portland. Haraldus vero veniens ab Hibernia prædatus est apud Portlocan ; et inde veniens ad patrem suum in Wiht, perrexerunt in Pevensen, et inde ad Nesse et in Rumene, et in Hithe, et in Folcestone, et in Dover, et in Sandwic, et in Scepeie ; ubique accipientes obsides et puppes. Quidam Chr. E. vero exeuntes, Middeltune villam regis combusserunt ; classis vero per Nordmutham tendens in Londoniam, obviavit L. puppibus, quibus rex inerat. Tunc igitur per internuncios, consilio Stigandi episcopi, datis obsidibus, concordati sunt rex et gener suus : reddiditque illi et suis terras et omnia quæ prius habuerant ; et iterum accepit reginam suam. Robertus vero archiepiscopus et omnes Franci, quorum consilio rex consulem exulaverat, exulati sunt. Stigandus autem factus est

The king perforce is reconciled to them : the archbishop, and all the Normans at the court, are banished : Stigand made prime.

A.D. 1054. What earl Siward said when he heard of his son's death in battle. archiepiscopus Cantuariæ. Circa hoc tempus Siwardus consul fortissimus Nordhumbre, poene gigas statura, Chr. D. manu vero et mente prædura, misit filium suum in Scotiam conquirendam.<sup>a</sup> Quem cum bello cæsum patri renuntiassent, ait : "Recepitne vulnus letale in Tradition ?

" anteriori vel posteriori corporis parte ? " Dix-  
 runt nuntii, " In anteriori. " At ille : " Gaudeo plane,  
 " non enim alio me vel filium meum digner funere. "  
 Siwardus igitur in Scotiam proficiscens regem bello  
 Siward's triumphant invasion of Scotland. vicit, regnum totum destruxit, destructum sibi subjuga-  
 vit.

A.D. 1063. Earl Godwin choked § 23. Edwardus XII. anno regni sui cum pranderet apud Windleshores,<sup>b</sup> ubi plurimum manere solebat,

<sup>a</sup> Florence, under 1054, following Chr. D., says that Siward and his son invaded Scotland in that year, and that the son was killed. No trace of the anecdote given in the text occurs in any writer earlier than Henry. Shakspeare has made

use of it in *Macbeth*, Act v., Sc. 8 ; he found it in Holinshed.

<sup>b</sup> *Windleshores*. This seems to be an oversight merely, like Henry's calling earl Godwin the "gener" instead of the "socer" of the king. All the Chronicles, Florence, and

Malm., *Gest.*  
*Reg.*, ii. 13. Godwinus, gener suus et proditor, recumbens juxta eum dicit: "Sæpe tibi, rex, falso delatum est me proditioni tuæ invigilasse; sed si Deus cœli verax et justus est, hoc panis frustulum concedat ne mihi<sup>1</sup> guttur pertranseat, si unquam te prodere vel cogitaverim." Deus autem justus et verax audivit vocem proditoris; et mox, eodem pane strangulatus, mortem prægustavit æternam.<sup>a</sup> Haraldus vero filius ejus habuit consulatum patris sui; sed Algarus consul Cestriæ habuit consulatum Harald.

A.D. 1053.  
In the act of  
perjuring  
himself.

Chr. E. § 24. Edwardi regis anno XIII. pugnaverunt proceres Normanniæ contra gentem Francorum apud castrum quod vocatur Mortuum-mare; et interfectus est Radulphus<sup>b</sup> camerarius, princeps exercitus Francorum; contigitque victoria Normannis. Et quidem rex Henricus Francorum, et dux Willelmus Normannorum bello non intererant. Anno sequente, Siwardus consul rigidissimus, profluvio ventris ductus, mortem sensit imminere, dixitque, "Quantus pudor me tot in bellis mori non potuisse, ut vaccarum mortî cum dedecore reservarer! Induite me saltem lorica mea impenetra-

A.D. 1054  
Battle of  
Mortemer.

A.D. 1055.  
Memorable  
death of earl  
Siward.

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; deest, Sav.

Malmesbury, either expressly say or imply that Godwin's sudden death took place at Winchester.

<sup>a</sup> The Chronicles C. and D., and Florence, speak of Godwin's death as awfully sudden, (it seems to have resulted from a paralytic or apoplectic seizure,) but know nothing of the theatrical circumstances which later writers, desirous from courtly motives of blackening Godwin's character, imported into the narrative. Malmesbury, S. Ailred in his *Vita S. Edwardi Regis*, and Ingulfus, are agreed in saying that Godwin's chief object in his speech was to clear himself of guilt

concerning Alfred; Henry alone represents it as having been to dispel any mistrust that the king might entertain of his loyalty. See Freeman's *Norman Conquest*, ii., note W.

<sup>b</sup> This Radulfus, whom Malmesbury in his account of the battle of Mortemer does not mention, must be the Radulfus de Monte Desiderii (Ralph de Montdidier) named by Orderic. He was not, however, the leader, but only one of the leaders of the French army, nor was he killed in the battle, but taken prisoner.

A.D. 1054. "bili, præcingite gladio, sublimate galea; scutum in  
" læva, securim auratam mihi ponite in dextra, ut mili-  
" tum fortissimus modo militis moriar." Dixerat; et ut  
dixerat, armatus honorifice spiritum exhalavit.<sup>a</sup> Sed  
quia Walteof filius ejus adhuc parvulus erat, datus est Chr. E.

The treason  
of Alfgar.

consulatus ejus Tosti filio Godwini consulis. Eodem  
anno Algarus consul Cestriæ exulatus est, quia de  
proditione regis in consilio convictus fuerat. Ille vero  
pergens ad Griffinum regem Nordwales, rediens cum  
eodem rege combussit Hereford et ecclesiam S. Athel-

A.D. 1057.  
Death of  
Edward, son  
of Edmund  
Ironside,  
and father  
of St. Mar-  
garet of  
Scotland.

Death of  
Leofric  
about this  
time; mun-  
ificent piety  
of his wife,  
Godiva.

brieti. [Postea venit Edwardus filius Edmundi Ironside  
in terram istam; et statim mortuus est, et sepultus  
apud Londoniam in ecclesia S. Pauli. Hic fuit pater  
Margaretæ reginæ Scottorum, et Edgari Atheling.  
Margareta vero fuit mater Matildis reginæ Anglorum,  
et Davidis urbanissimi regis Scottorum.]

Lefricus quo-  
que consul nobilissimus Cestriæ defunctus est eo  
tempore: cujus uxor Godiva, nomine perpetuo digna,  
multa probitate vigit, et abbatiam apud Coventre  
construxit, et auro et argento incomparabiliter ditavit.  
Construxit etiam ecclesiam Stow sub promontorio  
Lincolniæ, et multas alias. Algarus vero filius ejus  
suscepit consulatum Cestriæ.

Malm., *Gest.*  
*Pont.*, § 173.

A.D. 1062. § 25. Edwardi regis anno XXII., cum jam Henrico  
rege defuncto Phillippus filius ejus regnaret, Willelmus  
dux Normannorum subjugavit sibi Cenomanniam. Ha-  
raldus vero transiens in Flandriam, tempestate compul-  
sus est<sup>1</sup> in Ponticam provinciam. Quem captum, consul

Harold, son  
of Godwin,  
being in  
Normandy,

Ponticus Willelmo duci Normanniæ reddidit. Haraldus  
vero juravit Willelmo super reliquias sanctorum mul-

Malm., *Gest.*  
*Reg.*, ii. 13.  
*Ord. Vit.*,  
lib. iii.,  
ch. 11.

<sup>1</sup> venit, A. F.

<sup>a</sup> This story, which Henry per-  
haps heard from some old retainer  
of the great Northumbrian earl, is  
thoroughly Scandinavian in its  
spirit. It may be compared with

the account of the funeral voyage  
of king Hake in the *Heimskringla*,  
and even bears a general resem-  
blance to the narrative of the death  
of Odin.

Chr. E.

Legend.

tas et electissimas, se filiam ejus ducturum, et Angliam post mortem Edwardi regis ad opus ejus servaturum.<sup>a</sup> Summo igitur honore susceptus et muneribus amplis ditatus, cum reversus esset in Angliam perjurii crimen elegit. Anno vero sequenti Haraldus et Tosti perrexerunt in expeditionem in Walliam. Gens vero patriæ subdita est eis, et obsides dedit. Post ea siquidem occiderunt regem suum Griffinum, et attulerunt Haraldo caput ejus; Haraldus vero statuit ibi alium regem. Contigit autem eodem anno quod in aula regia apud Windleshores, Tosti Haraldum fratrem suum regi vina propinantem capillis coram rege ipso arripuerit.<sup>b</sup> Invidia namque et odii fomitem ministraverat, quod cum Tosti ipse primogenitus esset, arctius a rege frater suus diligeretur. Igitur, impetu furoris propulsus, non potuit cohibere manus a cæsarie fratris. Rex autem perniciem eorum jam appropinquare prædixit, et iram Dei jam non differendam. Tantæ namque sævitæ fratres illi erant, quod cum alicujus nitidam villam conspicerent, dominatorem de nocte interfici juberent totamque progeniem illius, possessionemque defuncti obtinerent: et isti quidem justiciarii erant regni. Tosti igitur furiunde discedens a rege et a fratre suo, perrexit ad Hereforde, ubi frater suus corrodium regale maximum paraverat; ubi ministros fratris sui omnes detruncans, singulis vasis vini, medonis, cervisiæ, pigmenti, morati, sicceræ, crus humanum vel caput vel brachium imposuit. Mandavitque regi quod ad firmam suam pro-

A.D. 1062  
swears to  
duke Wil-  
liam that he  
will help  
him to ac-  
quire the  
English  
throne on  
Edward's  
death.

A.D. 1064.  
Success of  
Harold in  
Wales.  
Death of  
Griffin.

Fierce  
quarrel  
between  
Harold and  
Tosti; the  
latter takes  
an atrocious  
revenge,

<sup>a</sup> This account is in general agreement with the narratives of Malmesbury and Orderic, except that whereas Henry places Harold's visit to Normandy in 1063, Malmesbury assigns it to 1065. The Chronicles and Florence are silent.

<sup>b</sup> The legend of the fraternal struggle occurs also in S. Ailred's

*Vita S. Edwardi*, but in a different form; Harold and Tosti are boys playing before their father and the king; it is Harold who pulls Tosti's hair, not Tosti who pulls Harold's. The holy king takes occasion from this boyish quarrel to prophesy the deadly feud between the brothers when grown to manhood.

A.D. 1064.  
for which  
he is sent  
into exile.

perans cibos salsatos sufficienter inveniret, alios secum deferre curaret.\* Rex ergo eum ob scelus adeo infinitum delegari et exulari præcepit.

A.D. 1068.  
Morkar at  
the head of  
a northern  
army advances  
to Northampton:  
the king agrees  
to recognise  
him as earl of  
Northumbria.

§ 26. Edwardi regis anno XXIV. Nordhumbri hæc Chr. E. audientes, Tosti consulem suum, qui multas eis cædes et clades ingesserat, fugaverunt: omnemque familiam suam interficientes tam Anglos quam Dacos, ceperunt thesauros et arma ejus in Eoverwic. Constituerunt igitur Marcherum filium Algari consulis super eos consulem: qui cum gente illa et cum Lincolnesire et Snotinghamsire et Derbisire perrexit usque ad Hamtune; et Edwinus frater suus venit contra eum cum hominibus consulatus sui, et plures Britanni cum eo. Tunc venit Haraldus consul ad eos. Ipsi vero miserunt eum ad regem et nuncios cum eo, precantes ut possent habere Marcherum consulem super eos. Quod rex concessit, et remisit Haraldum ad eos ad Hamtune, qui hoc eis affirmavit. Ipsi vero interim comburentes et prædantes et occidentes, provinciæ illi non pepercerunt, sed multa millia hominum secum abducentes cum petitionem suam obtinuissent, multis annis deterioram partem illam regni reddiderunt. Tosti vero et uxor sua ad Baldwinum consulem Flandriæ divertentes, hiemaverunt.

Tosti takes  
refuge in  
Flanders.

A.D. 1066.

§ 27. Millesimo sexagesimo sexto anno gratiæ, perfecit Dominator Dominus de gente Anglorum quod diu cogitaverat: genti namque Normannorum asperæ et callidæ tradidit eos ad exterminandum. [Enimvero cum basilica S. Petri apud Westminster dedicata esset in die Sanctorum Innocentium, et postea in vigilia Epiphaniæ rex Edwardus mundo decessisset, et sepultus

28 Dec.

5 Jan.

\* This latter part of the Tosti legend seems, as was remarked by Mr. Petric, (M. H. B., p. 761,) to be the result of a careless transfer by Henry to Tosti of the destructive raid made by the Welsh prince

Caradoc in 1065 on the well-stored house which had been prepared by Harold for the king. The cause and manner of Tosti's exile were, of course, widely different from what is here stated.

Chr. E.

esset in eadem ecclesia, quam ipse construxerat et possessionibus multis ditaverat, quidam Anglorum Eadgar Atheling promovere volebant in regem.] Haraldus vero, viribus et genere fretus, regni diadema invasit. Willelmus vero dux Normanniæ tribus de causis mente stimulatus et intrinsecus irritatus est. Primo, quia Alfredum cognatum suum Godwinus et filii sui dehonestaverant et peremerant: secundo, quia Robertum episcopum et Odonem consulem et omnes Francos Godwinus et filii sui arte sua ab Anglia exulaverant: tertio, quod Haraldus in perjurium prolapsus, regnum quod jure cognationis suum esse debuerat, sine aliquo jure invaserat. Principes vero Normannorum convocans, auxilium Angliæ conquirendæ ab eis petiit. Quibus ad se consiliandos euntibus, Willelmus filius Osberti dapifer ducis interfuit: qui gravissimum iter ad Angliam capessendam gentemque Anglorum fortissimam perhibens, contra paucissimos in Angliam ire volentes acerrime litigavit: quod audientes proceres, valde gavis, fidem dederunt ei, ut quod ipse diceret omnes concederent. Ingressus igitur ante eos coram duce, dixit: "Paratus sum in hac expeditione cum omnibus meis devote proficisci." Oportuit ergo omnes Normannorum principes verbum ejus prosequi.\* Classis itaque maxima parata est ad portum qui vocatur S. Walerici.<sup>1</sup> Quod audiens rex Haraldus, vir bellis acerrimus, cum navali exercitu contra Willelmum ducem in mare profectus est. Interea venit Tosti consul in Humbram cum LX. puppibus: Edwinus vero consul veniens cum exercitu fugavit eum. Ille vero fugiens in Scotiam, obviavit Haraldo regi Norwagiæ cum CCC. puppibus: et Tosti, gavisus valde, subditus

A.D. 1066.  
Death of Edward.

Harald seizes on the government.

Irritation of duke William, and its causes.

He consults his barons on the question of asserting his right to England by force. Through a trick of FitzOsbern, they are all entangled in a pledge to assist him in doing so.

A fleet is assembled at St. Valery.

Meanwhile Tosti joins Harald Harfagr king of Norway; their joint forces enter the Humber; they defeat

Ord. Vit.,  
Hb. iii. 11.

Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> S. Odmeri (= Audomeri), H.

\* This story about the conduct of William FitzOsbern, though it fits in well enough with what is said by Ordericus, appears to originate with Henry. William of

Jumièges does not mention FitzOsbern; William of Poitou names him among six or seven chief counsellors of the duke, but that is all.

A.D. 1066.  
Edwin and  
Morcar.  
20 Sept.

est ei. Deinde ambo venerunt in Humbram usque ad Chr. E.  
Eoverwic; et juxta urbem pugnaverunt cum eis Ed-  
winus et Marcherus consules: cujus locus pugnae in  
australi parte urbis adhuc ostenditur. Haraldus vero  
rex Norwagiæ et Tosti cum eo Martis omine gloriosq  
potiti sunt. Quod audiens Haraldus rex Anglorum,<sup>1</sup>  
cum manu valida obviavit eis apud Steinfordesbrige.  
Pugna igitur incepta est, qua gravior non fuerat.

25 Sept.  
Harold  
marches  
against  
them; gains  
a great vic-  
tory at Stan-  
ford bridge;  
Harald and  
Tosti slain.

Coeuntes namque a summo mane usque ad meridiem,  
cum horribiliter ruentes utrinque perseverarent, maxi-  
mus numerus Anglorum Norwagenses cedere sed non  
fugere compulit. Ultra flumen igitur repulsi, vivis  
supra mortuos transeuntibus, magnanimiter restiterunt.  
Quidam vero Norwagensis, fama dignus æterna, super Chr. C.  
pontem restitit, et plus XL. viris Anglorum securi  
cædens electa, usque ad horam diei nonam omnem  
exercitum Anglorum detinuit solus: usquequo quidam  
navim ingressus per foramina pontis in celandis eum  
percussit jaculo. Transeuntes igitur Angli, Haroldum  
regem et Tosti occiderunt, et totam Norwagensium  
aciem vel armis straverunt vel igne deprehensos com-  
busserunt.

Malm. Gest.  
Reg. ii. 12.

Hearing of  
William's  
landing,  
Harold  
marches  
hastily back  
to meet him.

§ 28. Haraldus rex Anglorum eadem die reversus ad *Hist. Ba-*  
Eoverwic cum summa lætitia, dum pranderet, audivit *mes., cap.*  
nuntium dicentem sibi: "Willelmus dux Normanniæ *cxv.*  
" littora australia occupavit, et castellum construxit  
" apud Hastings." Rex igitur non segnis advolans,  
aciem suam construxit in planis Hastings. Willelmus Chr. E.  
vero v. catervas equitum splendide promovit in hos-  
tem; quibus terribiliter dispositis orationem hujusce-  
modi habuit:<sup>2</sup>

§ 29. "Vos<sup>a</sup> alloquor, Normanni, gentium fortissimi,

<sup>1</sup> A. F.; *Angliæ*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Decet oratio quæ sequitur in H.  
et S<sup>2</sup>. Post "promovit in hostem,"

sequitur in H.; "Quidam vero no-  
" mine Taillefer," vid. § 30.

<sup>a</sup> This speech of William before  
the battle is a rhetorical flight of  
Henry's own invention; no con-

temporary author mentions any  
thing of the kind.

Chr. E.

“ non quasi vestræ probitatis incertus, non quasi de  
 “ victoria non securus: quæ nunquam casu aliquo vel  
 “ impedimento a vobis evadere potuit. Quod si semel  
 “ non vincere potuissetis, exhortandi forsitan essetis, ut  
 “ probitas vestra præradiaret. Quod autem nativum  
 “ vobis est et quasi necessarium, qua indiget exhor-  
 “ tatione? O mortalium validissimi, quid potuit rex  
 “ Francorum bellis proficere cum omni gente quæ sunt  
 “ a Lotaringa usque ad Hispaniam contra Hasting<sup>a</sup>  
 “ antecessorem nostrum? Qui quantum voluit Franciæ  
 “ sibi adquisivit, quantum voluit regi permisit; dum  
 “ placuit, tenuit; dum satiat<sup>us</sup> est, ad majora anhelans,  
 “ reliquit. Nonne Rou pater meus, dux primus et  
 “ author nostræ gentis, cum patribus nostris regem  
 “ Francorum Parisius in medio regni sui bello vicit?

A.D. 1066.  
 Speech of  
 William to  
 his troops.

He illus-  
 trates the  
 irresistible  
 valour of  
 the Norman  
 chivalry by  
 reference to  
 signal feats  
 of arms  
 performed  
 by their  
 fathers.

Will. Gemet.  
 ii. 17.

Ib. iv. 7-9.

“ nec Francorum rex potuit sperare salutem, nisi et  
 “ filiam suam et terram, quæ ex vobis Normannia  
 “ vocatur, supplex obtulisset? Nonne patres vestri  
 “ regem Francorum in Rotomago ceperunt et tenuerunt,  
 “ donec Ricardo puero, duci vestro, Normanniam  
 “ reddidit,<sup>b</sup> eo pacto, quod in omni collocutione regis  
 “ Franciæ et ducis Normanniæ gladio dux accinge-  
 “ retur, regem vero nec gladium nec etiam cultellum  
 “ ferre liceret? Hanc æternam sanctionem patres  
 “ vestri regi magno cogentes statuerunt. Nonne idem  
 “ dux patres vestros usque ad Mirmandam<sup>c</sup> juxta

<sup>a</sup> *Hasting*. The proceedings of this barbarian in France and elsewhere are described by Dudo of St. Quentin in his *Chronicle* (Duchesne, *Hist. Norm.*, p. 62), and also in the more polished history written by William of Jumièges. With either or both of these Henry may easily have been familiar.

<sup>b</sup> This is unhistorical. The count Hugo mentioned in the next note pledged himself, after giving up his prisoner Renaud, the son-in-law of

duke Richard II., to appear at Rouen before the latter; mis-reading this story, Henry seems to have transformed it into the groundless fable given in the text.

<sup>c</sup> *Mirmanda* was a place somewhere in Burgundy,—its exact position is unknown,—which was stormed by the Normans under the young Richard, son of duke Richard II., about 1025, when they marched to punish Hugo, the count of Chalons. See Bouquet, x. 190.

A.D. 1066. "Alpes adduxit: et urbis ducem, generum scilicet suum, sponsæ suæ prælians parere coegit? Et ne parum sit vobis homines vicisse, vicit et ipse diabolus, corporaliter colluctans et prosternens, ligansque manus ejus post terga, confusumque victor angelorum reliquit.\* Sed quid prisca narro? Nonne vobis congregredientibus in eo tempore apud Mortemer,<sup>b</sup> Franci præcipites præposuere fugam bellis, calcaria telis? Vos autem, Radulfo summo duce Francorum interfecto, fama spoliisque potiti, naturale bonum solita necessitate tenuistis. Eja! procedat aliquis Anglorum, quos centies antecessores nostri et Daci et Norwagenses bellis vicerunt: demonstretque gentem Rou ex ejus tempore usque nunc semel militiæ naufragia perpersum esse, et ego victus abscedo. Nonne igitur pudori nobis est gentem vinci solitam, gentem arte belli cassam, gentem nec etiam sagittas habentem, contra vos, O fortissimi, quasi bello ordinatam procedere? Nonne vobis pudet regem Haraldum contra me in præsentia vestri, perjurum, faciem suam vobis ostendere ausum fuisse? Mihi tamen stupori est, quod eos, qui parentes vestros cum Alfredo cognato meo proditione nefanda excapitaverunt, oculis vestris vidistis, et eorum capita nefanda adhuc humeris eorum supersunt. Erigite vexilla, viri; nec sit iræ promeritæ modus vel modestia. Ab oriente ad occidentem videatur fulmen gloriæ vestræ; audiat tonitruum impetus vestri, vindicesque generosisimi sanguinis."

He reminds them of the glorious victory which they themselves had gained at Mortemer.

Battle of Hastings.

§ 30. Nondum peroraverat dux Willelmus: omnes ira accensi ultra quam credi potest secundum acies suas impetu ineffabili provolabant in hostem, ducemque jam sibi soli loquentem relinquebant. Quidam vero nomine Taillefer dudum antequam coirent bella-

\* There seems to be a confusion here between duke Richard II. or III. and Robert le Diable, son of

the first-named duke, and father William the Conqueror.

<sup>b</sup> Mortemer. See above, § 24.

tores, ensibus jactatis ludens coram gente Anglorum, A.D. 1066.  
 dum in eum omnes stupeant, quendam vexilliferum  
 Anglorum interfecit.<sup>a</sup> Secundo similiter egit. Tertio  
 idem agens, et ipse interfectus est; et acies sibi offen-  
 derunt: Incipit letifera nubes sagittarum. Tonitruum  
 sequitur ictuum. Insilit ignita collisio galearum et  
 ensium. Cum ergo Haraldus totam gentem suam in  
 una acie strictissime locasset, et quasi castellum inde  
 construxisset, impenetrabiles erant Normannis. Docuit  
 igitur dux Willelmus genti suæ fugam simulare; fugi-  
 entes autem, ad quandam foveam magnam dolose pro-  
 tectam devenerunt: ubi multus numerus eorum cor-  
 ruens oppressus est. Dum igitur Angli insequendo  
 persistunt, acies principalis Normannorum mediam An-  
 glorum catervam pertransiit. Quod videntes qui per-  
 sequebantur per foveam prædictam, redire compulsi  
 ibidem ex magna parte perierunt. Docuit etiam dux  
 Willelmus viros sagittarios ut non in hostem directe,  
 sed in aera sursum sagittas emitterent, cuneum hos-  
 tilem sagittis secarent<sup>1</sup>: quod Anglis magno fuit  
 detrimento. Viginti autem equites strenuissimi fidem  
 suam dederunt invicem, quod Anglorum catervam per-  
 rumpentes, signum regium, quod vocatur Standard,<sup>b</sup>  
 arriperent. Quod dum facerent, plures eorum occisi  
 sunt: pars autem eorum, via gladiis facta, Standard  
 asportavit. Interea totus imber sagittariorum cecidit

Death of  
Taillefer.

<sup>1</sup> cecarent, F.

<sup>a</sup> Henry could not have borrowed this account of Taillefer from Wace, for the *Roman de Rou* was not finished till 1160. Gaimar, in *L'Estorie des Engles*, gives the story in fuller detail; it also occurs in the *Carmen de Bello Hastingensi*, printed in the *Mon. Brit. Hist.*, supposed to be by Wido bishop of Amiens. Taillefer, or "Incisor Ferri," is there described as a mimus or histrio. Malmesbury,

who is followed by Wendover, does not name Taillefer, but says (*Gest. Reg.*, iii. § 242), "Tunc cantilena "Rollandi inchoata, ut martium "viri exemplum pugnatueros ac- "cenderet, inclamatouque Dei aux- "ilio, prælium consertum," &c. Jumièges and Poitou are silent.

<sup>b</sup> William of Poitou and the author of the *Carm. Hasting.* both speak of the English "standard."

A.D. 1066.  
Harold is  
slain.

circa regem Haraldum: et ipse in oculo percussus<sup>1</sup> corruit. Erumpens<sup>2</sup> autem multitudo equitum regem vulneratum interfecit, et Girdh consulem interfecit,<sup>3</sup> Chr. E. et Lewine consulem fratres ejus cum eo. Sic igitur contritus est exercitus Anglorum; Willelmus vero tanta potitus victoria, susceptus est<sup>3</sup> a Londoniensibus pacifice, et<sup>3</sup> coronatus est apud Westminster ab Aldredo Eborancensi archiepiscopo. Et facta est mutatio dexteræ Excelsi; quam cometa ingens in exordio ejusdem anni designaverat. Unde dictum est:

"Anno milleno sexageno quoque seno  
"Anglorum metæ flammæ sensere cometæ."

Commissum est autem bellum mense Octobris,<sup>4</sup> in festivitate S. Calixti. Quo in loco rex Willelmus abbatiā nobilem postea pro defunctis suis construxit, et eam digne nomine Belli<sup>a</sup> vocavit.<sup>b</sup>

A.D. 1007.  
Affairs in  
the North.  
Edgar Atheling be-  
troths his  
sister to  
Malcolm of  
Scotland.  
A.D. 1068.

§ 31. Willelmus rex anno sequenti mare transiit Chr. E. ducens secum obsides et thesauros. Et eodem anno rediens, divisit terram militibus.<sup>5</sup> Sed Eadgar juvenis cum multis militibus pergens in Scotiam, Melcolm regi Scotorum Margaretam sororem suam desponsavit. Chr. E. Cum autem rex Roberto comiti consulatum Nordhumbre dedisset, provinciales eum et cum eo decem homines occiderunt. Tunc Eadgar juvenis cum omni gente Nordhumbre venit Eouerwic, et burgenses cum eo pacem fecerunt. Rex vero adveniens cum exercitu civitate prædata magnam gentis perfidæ stragem dedit. Eadgarus autem reversus est in Scotiam.<sup>c</sup>

A.D. 1009.

§ 32. Willelmi regis anno tertio venerunt duo<sup>d</sup> filii Chr. E.

<sup>1</sup> ictus, F.

<sup>2</sup> Irrumpens, F.

<sup>3</sup> Om. F.

<sup>4</sup> Septembri, F.

<sup>5</sup> militibus suis, C<sup>3</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>a</sup> The full title of Battle Abbey was "Sancti Martini de Bello." See Malm., *Gest. Pont.*, ii. § 97.

<sup>b</sup> The portion of the *Historia Anglorum* printed in the *Mon. Hist. Brit.* ends at this point.

<sup>c</sup> The words *reversus* . . . *Scotiam* are erased in H., and a passage inserted, for which see Appendix, A.

<sup>d</sup> *duo filii*. Chr. D. says, "preo  
"Swegenes suna."

- Chr. E. Swein regis Dacorum et Osbertus <sup>a</sup> consul frater suus cum ccc. puppibus in Humbram. Ad quos Waltef consul et Eadgar juvenis venerunt; junctique simul Daci et Angli castellum de Eouerwic ceperunt, multosque Francorum perimentes, principes eorum vinctos et thesauros ad puppes tulerunt, et inter Usam et Trentam hiemaverunt. Rex autem adveniens Dacos aufugavit, et Anglos illius provinciæ destruxit. At consul Waltef cum rege concordatus est. A.D. 1069.  
A formidable rising in Yorkshire, aided by the Danes and Earl Waltheof, is quelled by William with extreme severity. Waltheof submits to the king.
- Chr. E. Anno sequenti, Baldewino Flandriæ consule defuncto, cujus jam filiam rex Willelmus duxerat, successit filius suus Ernulfus, quem rex Willelmus Anglorum et Philippus rex Francorum manutenebant. Robertus <sup>b</sup> autem Frisiensis frater ejus bello confligens occidit Ernulfum consulem et Willelmum filium Osberti de quo prædiximus, et multa millia hominum utriusque regis. A.D. 1070.  
Affairs of Flanders.
- Orl. Vit., iv. 2. § 33. Willelmi regis anno v., Marcherus et Edwinus consules cæperunt prædari per campos et nemora. Edwinus autem occisus est a suis. Marcherus vero et Hereward <sup>1</sup> et Alwinus episcopus venerunt in Ely. Rex vero ducens exercitum terra et mari, insulam obsedit, pontem paravit, domum belli artificiose construxit, quæ usque hodie perstat; viros prædictos occidit introiens insulam <sup>2</sup> præter Herewardum, qui suos viriliter strenuissimus eduxit. A.D. 1071.  
Edwin and Morkar outlawed; Edwin killed; William takes Ely and kills many of his opponents; Hereward escapes.
- Chr. E. Sequenti anno duxit rex exercitum terra et mari in Scotiam, Melcolm vero rex Scotorum homo suus effectus est, et obsides ei dedit. Anno sequenti rex A.D. 1072.  
Expeditions to Scotland and into Maine.
- Chr. E. A.D. 1073.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Hereward*, A<sup>2</sup>.; | <sup>2</sup> *introiens insulam cepit*, C<sup>3</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Heward*, A., et *Hewardum* infra. | *occidit*, F. A<sup>2</sup>. S.

<sup>a</sup> *Osbertus*. Osbearn, Chr. E.

<sup>b</sup> *Robertus* . . *frater ejus*. Chr. E. only says "mæg," kinsman. In translating the word "frater," Henry follows the erroneous account of Ordericus Vitalis, who knows nothing of the short reign

of Baldwin VI., from 1067 to 1071, in succession to his father Baldwin V. Ernulf, or Arnulph, was the son of this Baldwin VI., and nephew of Robert the Frisian. Malmesbury (G. R., iii., § 256) states the relationship rightly.

duxit exercitum Anglorum et Francorum in Cenomanniam. Angli vero terram illam destruxerunt, villas comburendo, vineas cedendo, et eam regi subdiderunt.

A.D. 1074.  
Edgar Atheling gives himself up to William, and is well treated.

Proximo vero anno ivit rex in Normanniam, et Eadgarus juvenis concordatus ei in curia regis diu permansit. Chr. E.

A.D. 1075.

Norman plot, to which Waltheof is privy, to drive William out of England. It fails; Waltheof is executed, and the other conspirators dispersed.

§ 34. Willelmi regis anno IX., Radulfus, cui rex consulum Estangle dederat, regem a regno expellere præcogitavit, consilio Waltef consulis et Rogeri, qui fuit filius Willelmi filii Osberti; ejus sororem consul prædictus duxit, et in ipsis nuptiis hanc prodicionem prolocuti sunt. Proceres vero regni ejus<sup>1</sup> viriliter obstiterunt, unde ipse naves introiens apud Norwic recessit in Daciam. Rex autem rediens in Angliam, Rogerum consulem cognatum suum misit in carcerem.

A.D. 1076.

Sed Waltef consulem decollari fecit apud Wincestre, et sepultus est apud Crulande. Ceterorum vero qui

A.D. 1075.

nuptiis pravis interfuerant, multos fugavit, multos oculis privavit. Radulfus autem consul adducens Cnut filium Swein regis Dacorum, et Hacun consulem, rediit in Angliam cum cc. puppibus. Sed cum non audent contra regem Willelmum pugnare, transfretaverunt in Flandriam. Eodem anno Edith regina decessit, et sepulta est juxta Edwardum virum suum apud Westminster. Chr. E.

Death of Edgitha, widow of Edward the Confessor.

A.D. 1076.

Anno sequenti rex transfretans obsedit Dol. Britanni autem castellum tenuerunt viriliter, donec rex Franciæ

A.D. 1077.

adveniens liberavit eos. Postea vero rex Franciæ et rex Willelmus concordati sunt. Rex autem Scotorum

A.D. 1079.  
Malcolm ravages Northumberland.

Battle of Gerberoi. William curses his son.

Melcolm prædatus est in Nordhymbre usque ad Tine, et prædam maximam multosque homines in vinculis secum reduxit. Rex quoque Willelmus seditione militari agens contra Robertum filium suum apud Gerberie, quod est castrum in Francia, equo suo propulsus est; et Willelmus filius ejus<sup>2</sup> vulneratus, et multi ex suis

<sup>1</sup> ei, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> filius suus, S<sup>2</sup>. Sav.; ejus, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

- Chr. E. occisi. Maledixit autem rex Roberto filio suo.<sup>a</sup> Porro Nordhymbri proditione occiderunt Walkerum episcopum Dunhelme<sup>1</sup> in quodam palatio pacifice statuto juxta Tinam,<sup>b</sup> et c. homines cum eo. A.D. 1080.  
Walchere,  
the Norman  
bishop of  
Durham,  
killed in a  
riot.
- Chr. E. § 35. Willelmus rex anno xv. duxit exercitum in Walliam, et eam sibi subdidit. Odonem episcopum fratrem suum postea in carcerem posuit. His transactis, regina Matildis obiit. Eo tempore cepit rex ab unaquaque hida Angliæ vi. solidos. Turstanus vero abbas Glastingebiri turpe scelus commisit. Tres namque monachos sub altari positos occidi fecit, et xviii. vulnerati, ita quod sanguis eorum cucurrit ab altari super gradus, et a gradibus super aream.<sup>2</sup> A.D. 1081.  
  
A.D. 1082.  
Death of  
queen Ma-  
tilda.  
A.D. 1083.  
Bloody  
affray at  
Glaston-  
bury abbey.
- Chr. E. § 36. Willelmus rex anno xviii., quo in anno Urbanus effectus est papa Romanus, rediit a Normannia in Angliam, cum tanto exercitu, Francorum, Normanorum, Britannorum, quod mirum videbatur, quomodo hæc terra pascere posset eos. Didicerat enim, fama crebrescente, quod rex Daciæ Cnut et Robertus Frisensis consul Flandriæ volebant ditioni suæ Angliam Martis aggressibus<sup>3</sup> supponere. Cum autem apparatus eorum Deo volente defecisset, remisit magnas partes exercituum ad natale solum. Misit autem de hinc rex potentissimus justitios suos per unamquamque scyram, id est, provinciam Angliæ, et inquirere fecit per jusjurandum quot hidæ, id est, jugera uni aratro sufficientia per annum, essent in unaquaque villa, et quot animalia. Fecit etiam inquire quid unaquæque urbs, castellum, vicus, villa, flumen, palus, silva redderet per annum. Hæc autem omnia in cartis scripta delata sunt ad regem, et in<sup>4</sup> thesauros reposita usque hodie servantur. Eodem anno Mauricius effectus est A.D. 1085.  
The king  
comes over  
from Nor-  
mandy with  
a large  
army.  
  
Royal com-  
mission of  
inquiry.  
  
leading to  
the compila-  
tion of the  
Domesday  
Book.

<sup>1</sup> *Dunelmie*, S<sup>2</sup>.<sup>2</sup> Codd. fere omnes; *arenam*, Sav.; *aeram*, H.<sup>3</sup> Codd.; *gressibus*, Sav.<sup>4</sup> *inter*, A<sup>2</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.<sup>a</sup> For this malediction, uttered by the Conqueror on his son after Gerberoi, Henry appears to be thesole authority. Compare, however, Malmesbury, *G. R.*, iv. 2.<sup>b</sup> *Tinam*, a mistake for *Wine*

A.D. 1085.  
Maurice  
bishop of  
London.  
A.D. 1086.

episcopus Landoniæ, qui templum maximum\* quod necdum perfectum est incepit.

All land-  
owners in  
England  
obliged to  
do homage  
to the king,  
and take  
the oath of  
fealty.

§ 37. Willelmus rex fortis anno XIX. regni sui, cum Chr. E. de more tenuisset curiam suam in Natali apud Gloucestre, ad Pascha apud Wincestre, ad Pentecosten apud Londoniam, Henricum filium suum juniorem virilibus induit armis. Deinde accipiens hominum omnium<sup>1</sup> terrariorum Angliæ cujuscunque feudi essent, juramentum etiam fidelitatis recipere non distulit. Postea rex adquisitis magni thesauri copiis super quoscunque aliquam causam invenire poterat, sive juste sive injuste ivit in Normanniam.

A.D. 1087.  
The subju-  
gation of  
England  
being now  
complete,

§ 38. Anno vicesimo primo regni Willelmi regis, cum jam justam Domini voluntatem super Anglorum gentem Normanni complessent, nec jam vix aliquis princeps de progenie Anglorum esset in Anglia, sed omnes ad servitutem et ad mœrorem redacti essent, ita etiam ut Anglicum vocari esset opprobrio, hujus auctor vindictæ Willelmus vitam terminavit. Elegerat enim Deus Normannos ad Anglorum gentem exterminandam, quia prærogativa sævitæ singularis omnibus populis viderat eos præminere. Natura siquidem eorum est ut, cum hostes suos adeo depresserint, ut adjicere non possint, ipsi se deprimant, et se terrasque suas in pauperiem et vastitatem redigant; semperque Normannorum domini, cum hostes contriverint, cum crudeliter non agere nequeant, suos etiam hostiliter conterunt. Quod scilicet<sup>2</sup> in Normannia et Anglia, Apulia, Calabria, Sicilia, et Antiochia, terris<sup>3</sup> quas eis Deus subjecit, magis magisque apparet.<sup>4</sup> In Anglia igitur injusta telonea et pessimæ consuetudines his temporibus pullulaverunt. Principes omnes auri et argenti cupiditate cæcati adeo erant, ut illud de eis vere

William  
dies.  
The Nor-  
man charac-  
ter noto-  
rious for  
cruelty and  
pugnacity.

Unjust  
taxes, ini-  
quitous  
customs,  
and corrupt  
administra-  
tion were

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *omnium hominum*,  
A., *omisso hominum*.

<sup>2</sup> *liquide*, S<sup>2</sup>. Sav.

<sup>3</sup> *terris optimis*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> S. F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *appararet*, A.

\* According to the Peterborough Chronicle (E.) this minster was burnt down in 1087.

Juv. Sat.  
xiv. 208  
(ex Ennio).

Chr. E.

dici potuisset,<sup>1</sup> Unde habeat nemo quærit, sed oportet habere. Quanto magis loquebantur de recto, tanto major fiebat injuria. Qui justitiiarii vocabantur, caput erant omnis injustitiæ. Vicecomites et præpositi, quorum erat officium justitia et judicium, furibus et raptoribus atrociores erant, et omnibus sævissimis sævi-ores. Rex ipse cum ad firmam terras suas, quanto carius poterat, dedisset, alii magis offerenti, et deinde, alii, semper negligens pactum, et ad majora studens, dabat. Nec erat cura quanta injuria pauperibus a præpositis fieret. In hoc igitur anno pestes infirmitatis et famis Angliæ Deus inmisit, ut qui febribus evaderet fame moreretur. Inmisit etiam tempestates et tonitrua, quibus multos hominum occidit, nec animalibus nec pecori pepercit.<sup>2</sup> Iverat autem hoc anno rex Willelmus in Franciam, prædavitque regnum regis Philippi, et multos suorum neci dedit. Combussit quoque castrum nobile quod vocatur Maante,<sup>3</sup> et omnes ecclesias quæ ibi inerant, plebemque multam, et duos anachoritas sanctos igni tradidit. Quibus de causis Deus irritatus, regem cum inde veniret<sup>4</sup> infirmitati, postea morti concessit. De cujus regis potentissimi vita bona perstringenda sunt et mala, ut a bonis sumantur exempla, et a malis discatur cautela.

A.D. 1087.  
the rule of  
his govern-  
ment.

Plagues and  
calamities  
of all kinds  
afflicted  
the people  
during his  
reign.

William's  
last raid  
into France.

He burns  
Mantes,  
with all the  
churches  
there, and  
two holy  
anchorites.  
On his  
return he  
sickens and  
dies.

His charac-  
ter.

He was gen-  
tle to the  
clergy, but  
stern to all  
that resisted  
his will.

Chr. E.

§ 39. Willelmus omnibus Normanniæ consulibus fortior fuit, omnibus Anglorum regibus potentior fuit, omnibus prædecessoribus suis laude dignior fuit. Erat autem sapiens sed astutus, locuples sed cupidus, gloriosus<sup>5</sup> sed famæ deditus. Erat humilis Deo servientibus, durus sibi resistentibus. Posuerat namque consules et principes in carcerem; episcopos et abbates possessionibus suis privaverat; fratri proprio non pepercerat; nec erat qui resisteret. Auferebat potentissimis etiam auri et argenti millia, ad castella solus

<sup>1</sup> *posset*, C<sup>3</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> S<sup>2</sup>.; *peperit*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>. S.; *Naante*, A.;  
*Anaante*, S<sup>2</sup>.

J 204.

<sup>4</sup> *rediret*, A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *glorioso*, A.

A.D. 1087. omnes fatigabat construenda. Si cervum caperent Chr. B.  
 His rapacity. aut aprum, oculos eis evellebat, nec erat qui obmur-  
 His cruelty in enforcing the forest laws. muraret. Amavit autem feras, tanquam pater esset  
 The New Forest. earum; unde in silvis venationum quæ vocantur Noves-  
 forest<sup>1</sup> ecclesias et villas eradicari, gentem extirpari, et  
 a feris fecit inhabitari. Cum autem raperet suis sua,  
 non pro aliqua necessitate sed præ nimia cupiditate,  
 in intimis cordium amaricabantur, et tabescebant. Ipse  
 vero nihili pendebat iras eorum; sed oportebat omni-  
 bus<sup>2</sup> obsequi regis nutui, si amore ejus vel pecunia<sup>3</sup>  
 vel terris vel vita vellent perfrui. Heu quanto dolore  
 plangendum est, quod aliquis hominum, cum cinis et  
 vermis sit, adeo superbiat, ut super omnes se solum  
 mortis oblitus extollat. Regi quidem præfato Nor-  
 mannia hæreditarie provenerat, Cenomanniam armis  
 adquisierat, Britanniam sibi acclinem fecerat. Super  
 Angliam solus totam regnaverat, ita quod nec ibi una  
 sola hida inerat, de qua nesciret cujus esset, et quid  
 valeret. Scotiam quoque sibi subjugaverat, Walliam-  
 que reverendus in suam acceperat. Pacis autem tan-  
 tus auctor fuerat, quod puella auro onusta<sup>4</sup> regnum  
 Angliæ pertransire posset impune. Si aliquis quem-  
 piam quacunque de causa peremisset, capitali subja-  
 cebat sententiæ; si aliquam<sup>5</sup> vi oppressisset, genitalibus  
 privabatur armis. Construxit autem abbatiam Belli,  
 de qua dictum<sup>6</sup> est, et illam apud Cahom<sup>6</sup> in Nor-  
 mannia, in qua ipse sepultus est. Uxor vero sua  
 Matildis abbatiam sanctimonialium ibidem construxit,  
 in qua et ipsa sepulta est. Quorum animabus mise-  
 reatur, qui solus post mortem medetur. Vos igitur

His intolerable pride.  
  
 His power and possessions.  
  
 Maintains internal order.  
  
 \* He founded Battle abbey, and the monastery at Caen, in the church of which he was buried. His queen founded a nunnery at Caen.

<sup>1</sup> Noveforest, F. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> omnes, A<sup>2</sup>. S.; omnibus, S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; pecuniam, A.

<sup>4</sup> aliquem, Sav., absurdè.

<sup>5</sup> predictum, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S.; Caham, A. F.; Chaam, S<sup>2</sup>.

\* *puella auro onusta*. This is Henry's embellishment; what the chronicle says is, that "an man þe  
 "him sylf aht wære," a man tha t

were himself of any account, might fare unharmed across the kingdom with his bosom full of gold.

Chr. E.]

qui legitis, et viri tanti virtutes et vitia videtis, bona sequentes, et a malis declinantes, pergite per viam directam, quæ ducit ad vitam perfectam. A.D. 1087.

§ 40. Eodem anno pagani super Christianos in Hispania prædati sunt, et partes regni magnas occupaverunt. Amphos<sup>a</sup> vero rex Christianus, accepto circumquaque a Christianis auxilio, resurgens paganos occidit, fugavit, terræ ablatae damna reparavit. Accidit etiam in Dacia quod Daci, nunquam antea in dominum fide læsi, Cnut regem suum in monasterio quodam<sup>b</sup> proditione peremerunt. Affairs in Spain and Denmark.

Willelmus vero rex Roberto filio suo primogenito dimiserat Normanniam, Willelmo secundo filio ejus regnum Angliæ, Henrico tertio thesauri copiam. Pro quo cum Robertus partem ei Normanniæ vendidisset, thesauro habito terram ei abstulit. Quæ res valde Deo displicuit, sed vindictam in tempora distulit. Willelmus vero pergens apud Winestre thesaurum patris sui secundum imperium ejus divisit. Erant autem in thesauro illo lx. m. libræ argenti, excepto auro et gemmis, et vasis et palliis. Deditque inde quibusdam ecclesiis x. marcas auri, quibusdam sex, et unicuique ecclesiæ villæ v. solidos, et misit in unumquemque comitatum c. libras divisum pauperibus. Præcepto quoque patris sui omnes vinctos a vinculis solvit. The Conqueror bequeathed Normandy to Robert, England to William, and a sum of money to Henry. William distributes money to churches and the poor.

Rex igitur novus curiam suam ad Natale tenuit apud Londoniam. In qua adfuerunt Lamfrancus archiepiscopus, qui eum sacraverat in regem, et Thomas episcopus Eboracensis, et Mauricius Londoniensis, et Walkelinus Wintoniensis, et Gaufridus episcopus Exceastre, et Wlnod episcopus sanctus Wireceastre, et Willelmus Tedforde, et Robertus Ceastre, et Willelmus Dunhelme, et Odo episcopus Baiocensis, justitiarius et He holds his first court in London; primate Lanfranc and many bishops attend it.

<sup>a</sup> Alfonsus VI. In the *Chronicon Turonense* (Bouquet, xii. 464) the name appears as "Amphusus." Other forms are, "Andefonsus," "Aldefonsus," "Hildefonsus."

<sup>b</sup> Canute IV. was assassinated in the monastery of St. Alban, at Odensee in the island of Funen. He was the great nephew of Canute the Great.

A.D. 1067. princeps totius Angliæ, et Remigius episcopus Lin- Chr. E.  
colliensis, de quo pauca tangere res exigit.

Remigius  
removes his  
see from  
Dorchester  
on the  
Thames to  
Lincoln.

§ 41. Remigio igitur, qui monachus fuerat apud Fes-  
camb, dederat rex Dorecestræ episcopatum, quæ sita  
est super Tamasi. Cum autem episcopatus ille major  
omnibus Angliæ a Tamasi<sup>1</sup> usque ad Hymbram du-  
raret, molestum visum est episcopo quod in ipso ter-  
mino episcopatus sedes esset episcopalis. Displicebat

Malm. *Gesta*  
*Pont.*, iv.  
§ 177.

He commen-  
ces to build  
a cathedral  
on the castle  
hill.

etiam ei, quod urbs illa modica erat, cum in eodem  
episcopatu civitas clarissima Lincollie dignior sede  
episcopali videretur. Mercatis igitur prædiis, in ipso  
vertice urbis juxta castellum turribus fortissimis emi-  
nens, in loco forti fortem, pulchro pulchram, virgini  
virginum construxit ecclesiam; quæ<sup>2</sup> et grata esset  
Deo servientibus, et, ut pro tempore oportebat, invin-  
cibilis hostibus. Provinciam tamen Lindisse archiepi-  
scopus Eboracensis calumpniabatur,<sup>3</sup> ex antiqua tempo-  
rum serie. Remigius vero nichili ducens impetitionem  
ejus, non segniter<sup>3</sup> opus inceptum peregit; peractum-  
que clericis doctrina et moribus approbatissimis  
decoravit.<sup>4</sup> Erat siquidem statura parvus, sed corde  
magnus, colore fuscus, sed operibus venustus. De  
regia quidem proditioe fuerat impetitus,<sup>b</sup> sed famu-  
lus ejus, ferri igniti judicio dominum purgans, re-  
gio restituit amori, et maculam pontificali detersit de-

The arch-  
bishop of  
York claims  
Lindsey as  
belonging to  
his province.

A personal  
sketch of  
bishop  
Remigius.

<sup>1</sup> S. F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Tamasi*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *Ta-  
masim*, A.

<sup>2</sup> S. S<sup>2</sup>.; *quod*, A.

<sup>3</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *signiter*, A.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *decoravit*, A.

\* This claim of the metropolitan  
see of York had, according to  
Malmesbury (*Gest. Pont.*, i. § 42),  
been disposed of by the wisdom  
and forbearance of Lanfranc in  
1071, when archbishop Thomas  
agreed to take the Humber as the  
southern limit of his province. But,  
if we may trust Florence, he re-  
vived the claim in 1092, just when  
Remigius was about to consecrate

his cathedral. Florence adds that  
William II., on receiving a bribe  
from Remigius, authorised the con-  
secration.

<sup>b</sup> Remigius, who was made bishop  
of Dorchester in 1067, was perhaps  
one of the "plures episcopi et ab-  
bates," who, according to Wend-  
over, were believed to be concerned  
in Ralph de Guader's conspiracy in  
1074.

cori. Hoc tempore, hoc auctore, his causis, incepta A.D. 1087. est ecclesia moderna Lincoliensis.

§ 42. Verum jam rebus usque ad tempora nostra perductis, novis novus liber est donandus. Si autem et hic prædictorum recapitulatio elucidans requiratur, nec ob ista, cum pauca sint, lectori molestus apparebo. Ecce igitur speculum de regibus libri terminati.

Summary of the kings' reigns described in this book, from Ethelred II. to the Conqueror.

Adelred regnavit super universos fines Angliæ xxxvii. annis, semper cum labore.

Edmundus juvenum fortissimus regnavit i. annum, et proditione occisus est.

Cnut omnium prædecessorum suorum maximus regnavit gloriose xx. annis.

Haraldus filius ejus regnavit iiii. annis et xvi. ebdomadis.

Hardecnut munificus, regis Cnut filius, cum regnasset ii. annis, x. diebus minus, morte præreptus est.

Edwardus, rex bonus et pacificus, regnavit in pace, xxiii. annis.

Haraldus rex perjurus uno anno, et tamen non pleno, quem<sup>1</sup> propria perdidit injustitia.

Willelmus, omnium prædictorum summus, xxi. anno gloriifice splenduit. De quo dictum est,

“ Cesariem, Cesar, tibi si natura negavit,

“ Hanc, Willelme, tibi, stella cometa dedit.”

*Explicit liber sextus.*

---

*Incipit liber vii. De Regno Normannorum.\**

§ 1. Hactenus de his quæ vel in libris veterum legendo repperimus, vel fama vulgante percepimus, tractatum est. Nunc autem de his quæ vel ipsi vidimus,

---

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *que*, A.

\* This opening is from C<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1088.  
Rising of  
the Norman  
nobles  
against Wil-  
liam Rufus.

Assault on  
Worcester.

The assail-  
ants dis-  
comfited  
through the  
prayer of  
St. Wulstan.

vel ab his qui viderant audivimus, pertractandum est. Declaratum quidem constat, quomodo Dominus salutem et honorem genti Anglorum pro meritis abstulerit, et jam populum non esse jusserit. Patebit a modo quomodo et ipsos Normannos vindices quidem suos variis cladibus afficere inceperit.<sup>1</sup> Omnes Chr. E. namque nobiliores procerum in Willelmum juniorem non sine perjurio bella moventes, et Robertum fratrem suum in regnum asciscentes, suis quique provinciis debacchati<sup>2</sup> sunt. Odo præsul Baiocensis, princeps et moderator Angliæ, in Cantia seditionem exordiens, regis et archiepiscopi villas invasit et combussit. Rogerus consul de Moretuil circa Pevensey<sup>3</sup> idem incepit. Galfridus episcopus prodiens a Brigestou urbem Bathe et Berkelai et circumjacentia destruxit. Rogerus in castello Norwic sceleris exercitium per Est-angle<sup>4</sup> non segnius inchoavit. Hugo in provincia Legecestræ et Hamtoniæ nihil mitius egit. Willelmus episcopus Dunhelmie in finitimis<sup>5</sup> similia perpetravit. Principes vero Herefordescyre et Salopscyre prædantes combusserunt cum Walensibus provinciam Wireceastre, usque ad portas urbis. Cum autem templum et castellum assilire pararent, Wlstanus episcopus sanctus quemdam amicum familiarem summis in necessitatibus compellavit, Deum videlicet excelsum. Cujus ope, coram altari jacens in oratione, paucis militibus emissis v. millia<sup>6</sup> hostium vel occidit vel cepit; cæteros vero mirabiliter fugavit, Rex autem, congregato Anglorum populo, reddidit venatus et nemora, legesque promisit exoptabiles. Perrexit igitur ad castellum Tunebricge, unde Gile-

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *incepit*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *debacati*, A. F. C<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *Pevensey*, C<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>2</sup>.; *Estanglie*, A.

<sup>5</sup> F. A<sup>2</sup>.; *in finittimis*, C<sup>2</sup>.; *infinittissimis*, A.

<sup>6</sup> Henry multiplies by ten the "five hundred" men who, according to Florence and the chronicles,

fell in the fruitless attack on Worcester.

- Chr. E. bertus ei rebellabat. Cum autem regalis exercitus A.D. 1088.  
jam castellum confringeret,<sup>1</sup> cum rege pacificatus est.  
Rex inde progrediens ad Pevenesei obsedit ibi Odonem  
episcopum et Rogerum consulem vi. ebdomadis.<sup>2</sup> In- Duke Ro-  
terea dux Robertus Normanniæ, Angliam festinans bert unable  
adire, et auxilio prædictorum obtinere, præmisit exer- to effect a  
citus partem in auxilium suorum, disponens cum copiis landing.  
ingentibus eos prosequi. Anglici vero mare custodien-  
tes occiderunt et submerserunt ex illis innumerabiles.  
Igitur qui supererant in Pevenesei, deficiente cibo, The insur-  
castrum regi reddiderunt. Odo siquidem episcopus jura- rection is  
vit se ab Anglia recessurum et castellum Roueceastrie quelled, and  
redditurum. Cum autem ut illud redderet cum regis bishop Odo  
hominibus eo venisset, Eustachius consul et cæteri banished.  
proceres qui urbi inerant fallacia ipsius episcopum re-  
gisque ministros ceperunt, et in carcerem retruserunt.  
Quibus rex auditis. Roveceastriam obsedit, donec  
firmitas reddita est ei, et episcopus Odo non rediturus  
mare transiit. Mittens quoque rex exercitum Dun-  
helmie obsedit urbem, donec reddita est ei. Episcopus  
vero multique proditorum propulsi sunt in exilium.  
Rex vero terras infidelium fidelibus suis distribuit.  
Lanfrancus<sup>3</sup> archiepiscopus, doctor luculentus clerico- A.D. 1089.  
rum, et pater dulcissimus monachorum, a rebus transi- Death of  
toris anno sequente transiit. Quo in anno terræmotus archbishop  
fuit terribilis. Lanfranc.
- Chr. E. § 2. Junior Willelmus anno tertio regni sui ulcisci A.D. 1090.  
paratus injurias quas ei frater suus ingesserat, muneri-  
bus datis adquisivit sibi castellum Sancti Walerici et  
Albemarle. Qui<sup>4</sup> milites suos mittens, prædari et
- Chr. E. comburere terram fraternam cepit. Anno vero sequenti A.D. 1091.  
rex sequens eos concordiam cum fratre suo fecit, eo Treaty be-  
tamen pacto ut castra illa, quæ frater ab illo acqui- tween Wil-  
liam and  
Robert.

<sup>1</sup> *constringeret*, Sav.<sup>2</sup> *per sex ebdomadas*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.<sup>3</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *Lanfrancus*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *Lam-  
francus*, A.<sup>4</sup> *Quo*, S<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1091. sierat, regi remanerent; rex autem adjuvaret eum ad omnia quæ pater suus habuerat conquirenda. Statuerunt etiam, si quis eorum moreretur prior altero sine filio, quod alter fieret hæres illius. Hoc pactum juraverunt<sup>1</sup> xii. principes vice regis, xii. vice ducis. Interea Melcolm rex Scotorum prædatum veniens in Angliam validissime vexavit eam. Venientes igitur in Angliam rex et cum eo Robertus frater suus, direxerunt acies in Scotiam. Itaque Melcolm nimio timore perstrictus homo regis effectus est, et juramento fidelitatis ei subjectus. Robertus autem dux cum fratre suo diu perendinans, cum plus ficti amoris quam veri circa eum reperisset, transfretavit ad propria. Succedente anno rex reædificavit civitatem Carleol, et ex australibus Angliæ partibus illuc habitatores transmisit. Remigius vero præsul, cum ecclesiam Lincolnensem jam perfectam dedicaturus esset, una ante hoc die languore correptus expiravit.

Malcolm  
does homage  
to William.

A.D. 1092.  
Carlisle re-  
built.

Death of  
bishop  
Remigius.

Chr. E.

Malm.,  
*Gesta Pont.*,  
iv. § 177.

A.D. 1093.  
Anselm  
nominated  
to the pri-  
macy.

Affairs of  
the see of  
Lincoln.

Chr. E.

§ 3. Junior Willelmus in Quadragesima infirmatus est apud Gloucestre, vi. anno regni sui; deditque archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ Anselmo abbati, viro sancto et venerabili. Roberto quoque cognomento Bloet<sup>2</sup> cancellario suo, dedit episcopatum Lincolnæ, quo non erat alter forma venustior, mente serenior, affatu dulcior.\* Promisit quoque rex se pravas leges emendaturum, et in domo Domini pacem positurum. Sed ex quo sanus fuit, poenituit eum, et solito pejor effectus est. Condolens igitur quod episcopatum Lincollie non vendiderat, cum archiepiscopo Eboracensi calumpniatus est Robertum episcopum, quod urbs Lincollie et provincia Lindisse archiepiscopo eidem subiacere debuissent. Nec potuit causa terminari, donec Robertus v. m. libras regi pro

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *juraverant*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Bluet*, A.

\* See the remarks on bishop Bloet in the second section of the author's *De Contemptu Mundi*, and

comp. Malmesbury's account of him, *Gest. Pont.*, iii. § 177.

Chr. E. libertate ecclesiæ suæ pepigerit; quod regi quidem si-  
monia, præsulī vero justitiæ deputatum est. Eodem A.D. 1063.  
Death of  
Malcolm,  
king of  
Scotland,  
anno Melcolm rex Scotiæ, in Angliam<sup>1</sup> prædans, ex  
improviso est interceptus et interfectus, et Eadwardus  
filius suus, hæres, si viveret, ejus. Quod ut audivit  
Margareta regina, duplici contritione anxiata est in  
anima usque ad mortem; pergensque ad ecclesiam con-  
fessionem et communionem recepit, et Domino precibus and of  
queen Mar-  
garet.  
se commendans animam reddidit. Scoti vero elegerunt  
Duvenal fratrem Melcolm in regem. Sed Dunecan  
filius Melcolmi regis, qui erat obses in curia regis  
Willelmi, auxilio ejusdem regis superveniens avunculum  
Chr. E. suum fugavit, et susceptus est in regem. Anno vero A.D. 1064.  
sequenti consilio ejusdem Duvenal Scotti regem suum  
Dunecan insidiantes occiderunt.

§ 4. Junior Willelmus septimo anno regni sui, pro-  
vocatus a fratre suo quod jusjurandum non servasset, A fresh  
quarrel be-  
tween Wil-  
liam and  
Robert.  
transfretavit in Normanniam. Cum ergo fratres simul  
venissent, juratores<sup>a</sup> omnem culpam regi imposuerunt.  
Rex vero ferus ea negligens, et iracunde discedens,  
castellum Bures invasit et cepit. E contra dux castellum  
Argentes cepit, et in eo consulem regis, nomine Rogerum  
Pictavensem, et cum eo dcc. milites, et postea castrum  
Hulme. Fecit interim rex summoneri xx. m. peditum  
Anglicorum, ut venirent in Normanniam. Cum autem  
ad mare venissent, rex ab unoquoque eorum pecuniam  
victualem, scilicet x. solidos, accipiens, eos domum re-  
misit. Dux vero Robertus adduxit Philippum regem  
Francorum secum, et exercitum copiosum, ut obsiderent  
regem Willelmum apud Ou.<sup>2</sup> Ingenio autem et pecunia  
regis Willelmi rex Francorum reversus est; et sic totus  
exercitus pecuniæ tenebris obnubilatus evanuit. Rex

<sup>1</sup> *Anglia*, F. Sav.| <sup>2</sup> *Hou*, S<sup>2</sup>.<sup>a</sup> *juratores*. The twenty-four signatories of the treaty between the brothers. See § 2.

- A.D. 1004. vero Willelmus mandavit Henrico fratri suo apud Damfrunt, ut esset in Natali contra eum in Anglia. Henricus ergo in Natali fuit apud Londoniam; rex
- A.D. 1005. vero apud Witsand, unde appulit Doroberniam. Anno Chr. E. vero sequenti misit Henricum fratrem suum in Nor-manniam cum pecunia multa, ut eam loco regis diu-tinis invasionibus<sup>1</sup> expugnaret.

Rebellion  
of Robert  
Mowbray.

He is be-  
sieged by  
the king in  
Bambo-  
rough castle,

and made  
prisoner.

- Cum autem Robertus consul Nordhymbre in super-biam elatus, quia regem Scottorum straverat, curiam regis adire repudiaret, promovit rex exercitum in Nordhymbre; statimque in quadam firmitate quæ voca-tur Novum Castellum, omnes meliores cōsulis procures<sup>2</sup> cepit. Inde vero castellum Tinemuthe conquisivit, et fratrem consulis in eo. Post hæc obsedit consulem ad Bebanburh;<sup>3</sup> quod cum armis inexpugnabile videret, paravit ante illud castellum aliud quod appellavit Malveisin; in quo partem relinquens exercitus recessit. Quadam vero nocte, cum consul recessisset a Babanburh, secutus est eum regalis exercitus, usque in Tinemuthan; ubi cum se defendere conaretur, nec posset, vulneratus est, et captus apud Windlesores<sup>4</sup> in carcere positus. Ergo redditum est castrum regi Bebanburh; fautores vero consulis male pacati sunt. Nam Willelmus de Ou<sup>5</sup> oculis privatus est; Odo consul Campaniæ, cæte-rique complures exhæreditati sunt. Eodem anno rex impiger vexilla direxit in Walliam; causa autem hæc est. Anno præterito multos Francorum occiderant, et procerum firmitates confregerant, et ferro et igne fini-timos invaserant. Anno etiam præsentis castellum Mun-gumeri straverant, et inhabitantes necaverant. Rex igitur pertransiens omnes fines Walliæ, cum in diver-soriis montium et silvarum eos persequi non posset, parum vel nihil proficiens reversus est. Eo tempore

A.D. 1093.  
Expedition  
into Wales.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *invasionis*, A.  
<sup>2</sup> *consules et procures*, Sav.  
<sup>3</sup> S. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Babanburh*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *et apud Wilesores*, C<sup>3</sup>.  
<sup>5</sup> *Hou*, S<sup>2</sup>.

stellæ visæ sunt de cœlo cadere, ita spissæ quod numerari non poterant.

Chr. E.

§ 5. Anno milleno<sup>1</sup> xvi. facta est motio Jerosolimitana<sup>a</sup> prædicatione Urbani papæ. Robertus igitur dux Normanniæ illuc proficiscens, posuit Normanniam in vadimonium fratri suo regi Willelmo. Ivit autem cum eo Robertus dux Flandriæ, et Eustachius consul Buloniæ. Iverunt et ex alia parte dux Godefridus, et consul de Monte Baldewinus, et alius Baldewinus,<sup>2</sup> reges Jerusalem futuri. Iverunt quoque ex tertia parte comes de Sancto Egidio Raimundus, et episcopus Podiensis. Quis autem taceat Hugonem Magnum, fratrem regis Francorum, et Stephanum comitem Blesis? Quis non memoret Buamundum, et nepotem ejus Tancredum. Hoc est miraculum Domini magnum temporibus nostris factum, sæculis omnibus inauditum, ut tam diversæ gentes, tam formosi<sup>3</sup> proceres, relictis possessionibus splendidis, uxoribus et filiis, omnes una mente loca innotissima<sup>4</sup> morte sprete petierint.<sup>5</sup> Ob cuius rei magnitudinem digrediendi veniam a lectore postulo; nec enim si voluero, tam miranda Dei magnalia tacere vel coactus potero, cum nec absit causa, Normannorum ducis occasio.

A.D. 1096.  
The first  
crusade.  
Names of  
the great  
men who  
took part  
in it.

The author  
proposes to  
insert a  
description  
of it, the  
digression  
being justified  
by the  
share which  
the Norman  
duke had  
in it.

6. Alexi igitur apud Constantinopolim imperante, cuncti prædicti proceres consensu imperatoris sive volentis sive obedientis ibidem congregati sunt. Pertranseuntesque mare strictissimum, quod olim Hellespontiacum, nunc brachium Sancti Georgii vocatur, Niceam urbem, quæ caput est Romanæ, obsederunt. Ad portam igitur orientalem consederat dux Norman-

Siege of  
Nicaea.

<sup>1</sup> *millesimo*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. in marg.; om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *tot fortissimi*, C<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>4</sup> *ignotissima*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; stetit autem ab initio *petierunt* in C<sup>3</sup>, quæ est lectio A. et A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Respecting the source or sources whence Henry drew his knowledge respecting the first crusade, see *Introductio*, § 38.

A.D. 1097. niæ Robertus, juxta quem consul Flandriæ; ad portam borealem dux Buamundus, juxta quem Tancredus; ad occidentalem dux Godefridus, juxta quem Podiensis episcopus. Turba autem innumerabilis erat, Angliæ, Normanniæ, Britanniæ, Aquitaniæ,<sup>1</sup> Hispaniæ, Provinciæ, Franciæ, Flandriæ, Daciæ, Saxonæ, Alemanniæ, Italiae, Greciæ, et regionum multarum. Non perlustraverunt radii solares a prima sui creatione tantam tam præclaram militiam, tam verendam, tam numerosam turbam; tot et tam bellicosos duces. Cesset Troia, cessent Thebæ, duces et principes destructionis suæ, ut excusentur, nominare. Hic affuerunt electissimi omnium temporum filii fulgentes Occidentis, omnes signo crucis insigniti, omnes in regnis suis reliquorum fortissimi. Igitur in die Ascensionis Domini lituis undique concinentibus urbs aggressa est. Repletur cœlum clamoribus, nigrescit aer sagittis, mugit terra pro pulsibus, resonant aquæ stridoribus, venit ad murum, fossoribus res agitur. Paganis non sagittæ, non tela, non ligna, non lapides, non fragmenta, non moles, non aqua, non ignis, non ars, non vires, non prosunt missilia amentata. Cum ecce Turcorum exercitus acie terribilis ordinata, ex australi regione vexillis erectis apparuit. Quibus consul Reimundus et Podiensis episcopus, divina virtute protecti et armis terrenis fulgidi, cum suo lætantes<sup>2</sup> occurrunt exercitu. Dum igitur nostri vehementer irruunt in illos, horrore insperato liquefacti Domino jubente dissolvuntur. Magna quidem pars fugientium capitibus minorata<sup>3</sup> est, quæ fundis in urbem projecta non modicum contulerunt inhabitantibus tremorem. Igitur inæstimabiliter exterriti nostris urbem reddunt; nostri vero, secundum quod pepigerant, imperatori.

Magnificent  
array before  
its walls.

The city  
surrenders.

The crusaders  
march

§ 7. Cum ergo per vii. ebdomadas et iii. dies ibi

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Equitanie*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *lentates*, A.

<sup>3</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *minora*, A.

morati fuissent, iter ad Antiochiam dirigunt. Contigit autem quod in die tertia in duo divideretur exercitus, In uno quidem principes erant, dux Normannorum Robertus, Buamundus, Ricardus de Principatu, Tancredus, Everardus de Puisat, Acardus de Monte Merloy, et plures alii. Hos igitur circumdederunt Parthorum,<sup>1</sup> qui modo Turci vocantur, et Persarum, et Publicanorum et Medorum, et Ciliciensium,<sup>2</sup> et Sarracenorum, et Angulanorum,<sup>3</sup> ccc. et lx. m. extra Arabes, quorum non erat numerus. Mittitur ergo nuntius a prædictis principibus ad alium exercitum. Interim vero bellum<sup>4</sup> geritur horrendum. Dum namque Turci, et Persæ, et Medi mortem immittunt sagittis, Cilicienses vero et Angulani telis, Sarraceni quidem et Arabes lanceis, sed Publicani clavis ferratis et gladiis, prostrati sunt vehementer Christiani. Equi namque eorum, insolitum non ferentes clamorem, et buccinarum clangorem, et ictus taburciorum, calcaribus non obtemperabant. Nostrates quoque tanto stridore percussi, quo essent ignorabant. Dum igitur jam fugam Christicolæ vel meditarentur vel inciperent, occurrit Robertus dux Normanniæ, clamans, "Quo, milites, quo fugitis? Equi eorum velociores nostris sunt; fuga non est præsidio: hic potius moriendum est; mecum sentite, me sequi-  
"mini." Dixerat, et in quemdam Paganorum regem lanceæ direxit aciem, quæ lignum et æs, et corpus æque diffidit, stravitque in momento secundum et tertium. Igitur Tancredus impiger et Buamundus belliger, et Ricardus de Principatu, et Robertus de Ansa, dux et miles fortissimus, non segnius indulgent ictibus. Redit animus nostris, pugna committitur gravissima, et horrende prolixa; cum ecce Hugo Magnus et Anselmus de Ripemunt,<sup>5</sup> cum c. tantum

A.D. 1097.  
towards  
Antioch.

Battle of  
Dorylæum.

The Chris-  
tians saved  
from defeat  
by the va-  
lour of duke  
Robert.

Arrival of  
Hugh the  
Great and  
Anselm of  
Ribemont.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *Partorum*, A.; *Pathorum*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Ciliciencium*, F. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *Augulanorum*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *iterum vero bello*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *Ribemunt*, F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Ripemund*, S.

A.D. 1097. militibus alium prævolantes<sup>1</sup> exercitum, defessos Paganos recentes findunt. Erat namque Hugonis lancea quasi fulmen advolans, gladius Anselmi quasi flamma dividua. Tunc duo principes nostrorum cæsi sunt, dum Arabum quanto plures cæduntur, tanto plures ingruunt. Willelmus frater Tancredi, dum regem lancea transfigit, lancea regis ejusdem transfigitur. Godefridus quoque de Monte Scabioso, dum caput Arabis amputat, sagitta Parthi corpus perforatur, lorica calefacta jam non resistente. Pondus et numerum hostium jam Franci ultra perferre nequibant; cum ecce ex adverso silva vexillorum alterius exercitus apparuit. Cum autem bellum durasset usque in horam nonam, innumeri in primo exercitu occisi sunt; nullusque eorum evasisset nisi alius coetus supervenisset. Nec quoquam postea tempore Pagani tam sedulo pugnare.

The battle  
rages till the  
afternoon.

Godfrey de  
Bouillon  
arrives on  
the field.

§ 8. Exercitus autem supervenientis prima Godefridi acies procedebat; ad dexteram ejus Baldwinus uterque aciem dirigebat; ad sinistram vero consul Stephanus, et Usuardus<sup>2</sup> de Nulsione.<sup>3</sup> Aciem quidem Baldewini a longe sequebatur Raimundus consul cum suis, aciem vero Stephani Robertus validissimus consul Flandriæ cum suis; sed aciem Godefridi sequebatur acies procerum, et turba absque numero. Episcopus vero Podiensis ex alio monte cum exercitu invictissimo apparuit. Pugnantes igitur Pagani, dum tot hostes ex insperato prospiciunt, quasi cælum ruiturum super eos esset, animis delicuerunt, et fugæ indulserunt, cum Solimanno duce suo. Christiani autem victoria licet damnosa et spoliis innumeris potiti sunt, primo die Julii.

Complete  
defeat of the  
Saracens,  
July 1st,  
1097.

The Crusaders  
reach  
Tarsus,

§ 9. Porro Franci continuantes propositum Antiochiæ petendæ, venerunt ad Erachiam. Inde ad Tarsum, quæ subdita est Baldewino mirifico comiti. Athena<sup>4</sup> vero et Manustra subditæ sunt Tancredo, viro for-

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *prevolans*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Osuwardus*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *Mulsione*, C<sup>3</sup>. S<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *Atena*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

tissino. Dux autem nobilissimus Normannorum dedit A.D. 1097.  
 quamdam civitatem Turcorum Simeoni. Raimundus  
 vero consul magnus et Buamundus lux belli dederunt  
 aliam civitatem Petro de Alpibus. Inde pervenerunt take Coxa  
and Marasis.  
 Christiani usque ad Coxan, quæ civitas subdita est  
 eis. Princeps autem quidam Petrus de Rosa cepit  
 Rusam et plurima castra. Gens vero Christianorum  
 pervenit Marasim, quæ se dedit eis. Inde pervene-  
 runt ad pontem ferreum. Postea Antiochiam, quæ and lay  
siege to  
Antioch.  
 caput est Syriæ, obsederunt xii<sup>mo</sup>. kalendas Novem-  
 bris. Audiens vero Buamundus quod Turci essent  
 in castro congregati quod vocatur Areth, ivit cum  
 exercitu suo pugnatum contra eos; multosque cum  
 paucis, Deo volente, prostravit, multosque ante portam  
 urbis decollandos, ut cives amareicaret, adduxit. Na-  
 tali vero a Christianis in eadem obsessione celebrato,  
 Buamundus et comes Flandriæ cum xx. milibus bel- Operations  
in the  
vicinity of  
Antioch.  
 latorum in terram Sarracenorum perrexerunt. Con-  
 gregati autem erant multi ab Jerusalem et Damasco,  
 et Alef, et aliis regnis ad succurrendum Antiochiæ.  
 Quibus irruentes unanimiter nostri alios in fugam  
 miserunt, alios occiderunt; revertentesque duces præ-  
 dicti cum spoliis maximis, debito triumpho a nostris  
 suscepti sunt. Interea urbe inclusi obsidentibus acer-  
 rime rebellabant, vexilliferumque Podiensis episcopi et  
 multos alios morti dederunt. A.D. 1098. In Februario vero con-  
 gregatus est mirabilis exercitus Paganorum ultra pon-  
 tem ferreum apud castellum Areth. Dimittentesque<sup>1</sup>  
 omnes pedites in obsidione, omnes milites promove-  
 runt principes ad bellum, et sex acies equitum para-  
 verunt. Primam ducebat dux invictus Normannorum;  
 secundam dux Godefridus Alemannorum; tertiam Rai-  
 mundus, consul egregius; quartam Robertus Flandriæ  
 decus; quintam nobilissimus Podiensis episcopus; sex-  
 tam, quæ maxima erat, cum Tancredo Buamundus.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *Dimittensque*, A.

A.D. 1098.  
The besiegers are attacked by a great Saracen army.

§ 10. Dum ergo fortissime colliduntur hostibus, clamor resonabat ad cœlum; imbres telorum obnubilabant diem; unusquisque percutiebat et percutiebatur. Postquam venit maxima vis Parthorum quæ retro erat, nostros tam acriter invasit, ut paulatim jam cederent. Buamundus vero, bellorum arbiter, et certaminum iudex, cuneum suum adhuc intactum mediis immisit hostibus. Tunc Robertus filius Gerardi, miles optimus et signifer ejus, quasi leo inter agmina gregum, sic proruit inter agmina Turcorum; et semper linguæ vexilli ejus volitabant super capita Turcorum. Quod videntes alii animo recuperato unanimiter invadunt hostes. Dux igitur Normannorum gladio cujusdam caput et dentes et collum et humeros usque in pectora diffidit. Dux vero Godefridus quemdam medium secavit. Cum igitur pars terræ cecidisset, partem domini ferebat equus inter Paganos pugnautes, quo monstro perterriti, simul cuncti fugientes in iram damnationis abierunt. Capita igitur multorum delata sunt ad Antiochiam cum gaudio. Factum est hoc bellum, inchoante Quadragesima.

But defeat them signally.

Progress of the siege.

§ 11. Venerant interea multi de gente amiralii Babilonis in Antiochiam. Cumque nostri constituerent castrum ante portam, ubi pons est et mahumeria, Raimundus et Buamundus ivissent ad portum Sancti Simeonis pro victualibus, exercitus civitatis processit audaciter ad prælium; irruentesque nostris, miserunt eos in fugam, multisque occisis usque in tentoria fugaverunt. Crastina vero die Raimundum et Buamundum invadentes, mille ex suis occiderunt. Duces vero fugientes ad nostros advolarunt. Franci igitur<sup>1</sup> bis sauciati, et in iram compulsi, in campo ante portas urbis statuunt terribiliter castrorum acies ordinatas. Pagani non segniter aciebus dispositis nostros invadunt. At Christiani signum crucis acclamantes tam acriter in prima invasione hostes percusserunt et pro-

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *ibi*, A.

pulerunt, ut statim fugæ darentur; venientesque ad angustum pontem, vel gladiis cæsi sunt, vel flumine submersi sunt. Pauci namque per pontem evadere poterant. Unda fluminis sanguine rubens et aucta torrebat. Itaque XII. amiralii ibidem cæsi sunt, deditque Dominus victoriam clarissimam populo suo. Sed in crastino cum cives suos mortuos sepelissent, nostri diffodientes eos aurum et argentum et pallia quæ circa eos erant ceperunt, et capita eorum projecerunt. Jamque omnis spes et superbia civium evanuerat. Tancredus namque, castellum prædictum ante portam custodiens, spem victualium eis eripuit. Pirrus igitur quidam amiralius de gente Turcorum, sæpe provocatus in amicitiam a Buamundo, providensque<sup>1</sup> suos perituros, III. turres quæ sui juris erant Buamundo reddidit. Erectis itaque<sup>2</sup> vexillis super turres, Franci portis fractis in urbem irruerunt. Turchorum<sup>3</sup> vero alii repugnantes occisi sunt, alii extra urbem fugerunt; quidam autem castellum superius obtinuerunt. Cassianus vero dominus urbis fugiens a Surianis comprehensus est, et caput ejus Buamundo delatum. Sic Antiochia tertio nonas Junii capta est.

Fall of Antioch, June 3rd, 1098.

Flor. Wigorn. a. 1098.

§ 12. Curbaran princeps militiæ soldani Persiæ, et rex Damasci, et rex Jerusalem, adduxerunt secum ad obsidendos Francos, Turcos, Arabes, Sarracenos, Azimitas, Curtas,<sup>4</sup> Persas, Augulanos. Sed quid numerem maris arenam? Igitur obsederunt urbem. Curbaran igitur partem militiæ suæ posuit in superiori castello, qui die nocteque contra nos pugnabant. Cæteri vero obsidebant urbem, ne alimenta intrarent. Tertia quidem die egressi sunt filii Dei, contra filios diaboli. Quibus bello parati putabant se posse resistere. Sed tanta fuit vis et numerus infidelium, quod nostri reintrare urbem coacti sunt, multis hostium armis, multis oppressione ad introitum portæ mortuis.

Kerboga with a great army besieges the Christians in Antioch.

A sally is repulsed with heavy loss.

<sup>1</sup> *providensque*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *ita*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Turcorum*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *Thurcorum*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *Curtos*, B<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1068.  
Cowardly  
flight of four  
Christian  
leaders.

Privations  
of the  
besieged.

Vision.

Apparition  
of St. An-  
drew; in-  
vention of  
the Holy  
Lance.

§ 13. Crastina die III. procures exercitus, scilicet Willelmus, et alius Willelmus,<sup>a</sup> et Albericus, et Lambertus fugerunt latenter ad portum Simeonis; suasionem autem eorum omnis classis victuaria cum eis aufugit. Nostri vero, cum castellanorum crebros incursus perferre non possent, murum inter se et illos construxerunt. Spes igitur crevit paganis, et fames Christianis. Namque dum expectarent imperatoris quem promiserat adventum, gallinam xv. solidis emebant, ovum II. solidis, unam nucem I. denario. Præterea folia arborum et cardui cocta comedebant; sicca<sup>1</sup> etiam coria equorum et asinorum decoquebant<sup>2</sup> et vorabant. Stephanus<sup>3</sup> comes muliebriter aufugiens, obviavit imperatori,<sup>b</sup> cui Francos omnes jam perditos nuntians, flentem fecit reverti.

§ 14. Spes igitur nulla populo Dei jam remanserat, cum fame victi nec arma jam ferre possent. Apparuit autem ignis de cælo, et cecidit inter exercitum Turchorum. Servo autem suo apparuit Dominus in visione, dixitque Deus; "Hæc dices filiis occidentis. Ego Nicæam civitatem vobis tradidi, et omnia bella exterorum et civitatem fortissimam Antiochiæ; quam cum læti et incolumes possideretis, operati estis cum mulieribus Christianis et paganis, unde fœtor ascendit in cælum." Corruens vir Dei ad pedes ejus ait: "Domine, subveni in oppressione tanta." Dixitque Dominus; "Subveni, et subveniam. Dic populo meo, Revertimini ad me, et ego ad vos; et infra v. dies vobis ipse propugnator adero." Apparuit autem cuidam sanctus Andreas apostolus, lanceam unde Salvator percussus fuerat ei revelans, sicut ipse populo firmavit juramento.

<sup>1</sup> sic, C<sup>3</sup>.; *sicca quoque*, F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *decoquebant*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Stephanus igitur*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>a</sup> Instead of a second Willelmus, the *Gesta Francorum* name Wido Tursellus. Tudebodus names seven craven Christians instead of four, among whom are three Williams.

<sup>b</sup> *imperator*. The emperor Alexius, who had advanced as far as Philomena in Pisidia.

§ 15. Peractis igitur triduanis jejuniis, processionibus celebratis, missis solennizatis, eleemosynis datis, vi.<sup>1</sup> aciebus dispositis ductore Deo progrediuntur cum lacrimis ad bellum. Primam<sup>2</sup> aciem ducebat Hugo magnus, et consul Flandrensis; secundam dux Godefridus et Baldewinus; tertiam Robertus fortis Normannus; quartam Podiensis episcopus, et Willelmus de Muntpeller,<sup>3</sup> cum exercitu Raimundi consulis, qui remanserat in custodia civitatis; quintam ducebat Tancredus cum Ricardo principe; sextam Buamundus cum consule de Rusinole.<sup>4</sup> Egressi vero septimam<sup>5</sup> statuerunt in honorem Sancti Spiritus, cui præfuit Reinaldus. Episcopi vero, presbyteri, clerici, monachi, sacris vestibus induti, super muros urbis hymnos Deo concinebant. Ipsi itaque viderunt exercitum coelestem equis albis et phœbeis armis, quorum ductores erant Georgius, Mercurius, et Demetrius. Curbaran vero, nunquam lætior quam tempore illo, dispositis turmis innumeris fecit foenum copiosum ex adverso monte accendi, ut nostri fumo cœcarentur. Dominus autem ventorum præsens<sup>6</sup> ventum convertit, et pagani fumo cœcati sunt, et præcipites fugerunt. Insecuti sunt eos Christiani cæde magna, et tanta nunquam spolia in aliquo bellorum capta sunt. His visis, amiralius qui castellum superius custodiebat reddidit illud Christianis, et Christianus effectus est. Hoc bellum Dominus egit in vigilia Petri et Pauli, et exaltatum est nomen ejus solius in die illa. Christicolæ igitur cum gaudio perendinaverunt in regno illo usque ad kalendas Novembris. Interea quidam procerum, cui nomen Raimundus Piletus,<sup>a</sup>

A.D. 1098.

A successful sally; Kerboga is defeated; June 28th, 1098.

Surrender of the citadel.

Unsuccessful expedition of Raymond.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; v., A. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *primam*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. S.; *Muntepeller*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Mumpeller*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Russinole*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; om. A.

<sup>6</sup> *præses*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> This Raymond Pilet is mentioned by William of Tyre in his history of the Crusade (Book vii.

ch. 9) as serving in the eleventh battalion, formed to sally out of Antioch against the troops of Cor-

A. D. 1098. exercitum congregans, cepit castrum cui nomen Talamannia.<sup>1</sup> Inde venit ad urbem cui nomen Marra, quæ plena erat Sarracenis, qui venerant ab Alef. Præliantes igitur barbari contra nostros primitus fugere coacti sunt; in fine tamen vicerunt, et magna Francorum occisio facta est ibi.

In November the Christians march towards Jerusalem.

§ 16. Mense Novembris congregati sunt duces et exercitus Christianorum ad capessendam<sup>2</sup> viam Jerusalem. Quarto vero die ante Octobrem venerunt ad Marram et assiluerunt<sup>3</sup> eam, et turri lignea super quatuor rotas ducta, et aliis ingeniis debellaverunt eam, XI<sup>o</sup> die Decembris. Manentes igitur in urbe illa in Natali, morati sunt ibi per unum mensem et III. dies, quia iter Jerosolimitanum impeditum erat pro discordia quæ erat inter Buamundum et Raimundum, causa Antiochiæ possidendæ. Ibi tanta fames Christianos invasit, quod de cadaveribus paganorum frusta coquerent, et comederent. Sed XIII. die Januarii exeuntes, ceperunt duo castra, bonis omnibus referta. Postea vero urbem quæ vocatur Zephaila;<sup>4</sup> inde castrum opulentissimum in valle Desem. Mediante vero Februario obsederunt castrum Arche per III. fere menses, ibique Pascha celebratum est. Sed Anselmus de Ripemunt,<sup>5a</sup>

Quarrel between Boemund and Raymond.

A.D. 1099.

Arche besieged.

<sup>1</sup> *Talamania*, F. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; *capescendum*, A. C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *assilierunt*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Zephaila*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>5</sup> *Ribemunt*, S<sup>2</sup>. F.

bagath (Curbaran). The archdeacon of Tyre speaks of twelve battalions, Henry of six; both assign the same leaders to the third and fourth battalions.

\* This is the Anselmus de Riburgismonte of William of Tyre, who enlarges admiringly on his brilliant and extraordinary feats of valour. Some curious particulars are found about him in the *Auctarium Aquicinense* (Auchin, near Douay), published by Pertz as an appendix to

the Chronicle of Sigismund of Gemblours. Anselm was one of the joint founders of the monastery at Auchin, giving as a site the island on which it stood. The grateful monk who compiled the *Auctarium* thus records, under 1099, the death of his benefactor: "Christianis Turcos fortiter debellantibus, eorumque urbes et castra sibi bellando vindicantibus, contigit apud quoddam munitissimum castrum nomine Archas, . .

miles fortissimus, jactu lapidis ibi deperiit, et Willelmus Picardus, et alii multi. Rex vero Camelæ civitatis pacem fecerat cum exercitu. Interea pars exercitus cepit Tortosam civitatem, et urbem Maracleam. Amiralius vero Gibel fecit pacem cum exercitu. Postea ante urbem Tripolim multitudinem civium interfece-  
runt, ita quod aquæ omnes urbis et cisternæ ruberent. Postea vero rex Tripolis ducibus Francorum dedit ccc. peregrinos, et xv. millia bisantia, et xv. equos pretiosos, ut discederent a Tripoli, et a castro Arche,<sup>a</sup> quod suum erat.

A.D. 1099.  
Death of  
Anselm de  
Ribemont.

§ 17. Franci igitur transeuntes per castrum Betelon, applicuerunt in die Ascensionis Domini ad urbem juxta mare quæ dicitur Baruth,<sup>1</sup> inde ad Sagittam, inde ad Surh,<sup>2</sup> inde ad Acram,<sup>3</sup> inde ad Caiphas, inde ad Césaream in Pentecosten; inde ad vicum Sancti Georgii, inde ad Jerusalem, et obsederunt eam VIII. idus Junii; a septentrione dux electissimus Normannorum, ab oriente consul Robertus, ab occidente dux Godefridus et Tancredus, a meridie, scilicet in monte Sion, comes Raimundus. Sæpe igitur urbem assilientes erexerunt castrum ligneum altissimum, contra quod cum turres lapideas pagani construxissent, turrim ligneam nostri dissolverunt, et in alia parte urbis quæ immunita erat erexerunt. Inde igitur urbem opprimentes et scalis muros ascendentes, urbem ceperunt, et multos in templo Domini rebellantes occiderunt, et civitatem sanctam ab inmundis nationibus filii Dei mundaverunt.

Marching  
by Beyrout,  
Tyre, Acre,  
and Caifa,

the Franks  
lay siege to  
Jerusalem,  
June 6th,  
1099,

and take it  
by assault.

Malm. Gest.  
Reg. iv.  
§ 389.

§ 18. Obtulerunt igitur regnum Jerusalem Norman-  
norum duci. Quod quia causa laboris repudiavit, of-

The crown  
of Jerusa-  
lem offered  
to duke

<sup>1</sup> Barut, S. F. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Surth, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Achram, S. S<sup>2</sup>; Acham, F.

" . . . multos perire eorum; cum  
" quibus et Ansellus de Ribodi-  
" monte lapide percussus in capite  
" occumbit, hoc solummodo post

" acceptum vulnus ter repetens  
" verbum: *Deus adjuva me!*"

<sup>a</sup> The Arca of the maps, now  
Tell Arka.

A.D. 1099.  
Robert, who  
refuses it.  
Godfrey of  
Bouillon  
the first  
king; his  
successors.

fensus est in eum Deus; nec prosperum quid deinceps ei contigit. Ipse itaque, et consul Flandriæ, et Raimundus consul ad propria remearunt. Dux vero Godfridus regnavit in Jerusalem, et post eum Baldewinus strenuissimus frater ejus, et postea Baldewinus secundus <sup>1</sup>'nepos eorum,' et post Gaufridus dux Andegavensis,<sup>2</sup> et post eum Gaufridus filius ejus, multa et gravissima bella peragentes; subdideruntque provincias Christo et urbes finitimas, præter Ascalon, quæ adhuc in scelere suo perseverat.

A.D. 1097.

§ 19. Junior Willelmus, anno x<sup>o</sup> regni sui, cum Chr. E. Normanniam, quam a Roberto fratre suo ad Jerusalem profecto in vadimonium acceperat, pro libitu suo disposuisset, rediit ad vigiliam Paschæ in Angliam, et appulit apud Arundel. Cum autem festive diadematus esset ad Pentecosten apud Windlesores, postea cum magno exercitu pergens in Waliam sæpe multas Walensium turmas prostravit, sæpe multos suorum angustiiis locorum amisit. Videns igitur eos plus inexpugnabiles situ terræ quam viribus et armis, fecit parare castella juxta fines Walie, et rediit in Angliam. Anselmus vero archiepiscopus recessit ab Anglia, quia nihil recti rex pravus in regno suo fieri perhitebat, sed provincias intolerabiliter vexabat in tributis quæ numquam cessabant, in opere muri circa turrin Londoniæ, in opere aulæ regalis apud Westminstre, in rapina quam familia sua hostili modo, ubicunque rex pergebat, exercebant. At rex ad festum sancti Martini mare transiens in Normanniam, misit Eadgar<sup>3</sup> juvenem cum exercitu<sup>4</sup> in Scotiam, qui regem Duvenal magno prælio fugavit, et Eadgarum cognatum suum, filium Melcolmi regis, in regem statuit. Eodem anno cometa apparuit.

William  
makes an-  
other expe-  
dition into  
Wales.

Anselm  
leaves  
England.

Edgar  
Atheling  
sent into  
Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> om. H.

<sup>2</sup> om. H.

<sup>3</sup> Edgar, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; om. cum exercitu, A. A<sup>2</sup>.

A<sup>4</sup>. F.

Chr. E.

20. Junior Willelmus anno XI<sup>o</sup> regni sui in Nor-  
 mannia fuit, semper hosticis tumultibus et curis armo-  
 rum deditus, tributis interim et exactionibus pessimis  
 populos Anglorum non abradens sed excorians. In  
 æstate autem visus est sanguis ebullire a quodam  
 stagno apud Finchamstede in Bercescyre. Post hæc  
 apparuit cælum tota nocte pœne tanquam arderet.  
 Eodem anno Walkelinus<sup>1</sup> episcopus in Wincestre de-  
 functus est; et Hugo consul Salopscyre occisus est ab  
 Hibernensibus.<sup>2</sup> Cui successit Robertus de Belem,  
 frater ejus.

A.D. 1066.  
 The king in  
 Normandy.

Death of  
 Hugh de  
 Montgo-  
 mery.

Chr. E.

§ 21. Junior Willelmus XII. anno regni sui rediens  
 in Angliam tenuit primum curiam suam in Nova Aula  
 apud Westmuster. Quam cum inspecturus primum  
 introisset, cum alii satis magnam vel æquo majorem  
 dicerent, dixit rex eam magnitudinis debitæ dimidia  
 parte carere. Qui sermo regi magno fuit, licet parvi<sup>3</sup>  
 constasset,<sup>4</sup> honori.<sup>5</sup> Rursus cum venaretur in Novo  
 foresto, venit ei subito nuntius a Cenomannia, dicens  
 ei familiam suam ibi obsideri. Illico rex festinus ad  
 mare veniens naves introiit. Cui nautæ: "Cur, regum  
 " maxime, tempestate intolerabili maris alta lacesis,  
 " et mortis imminens periculum non formidas?" Qui-  
 bus rex: "De rege fluctibus submerso loqui non au-  
 " vi." Ergo mare transiens, nihil dum viveret egit,  
 unde tantam famam, tantum gloriæ decus haberet.  
 Cenomanniam vero petens, Heliam consulem fugavit,  
 et eam<sup>6</sup> sui juris esse jussit, et in Angliam rediit.

A.D. 1069.  
 Completion  
 of Westmin-  
 ster Hall.

Witty say-  
 ings of king  
 William.

<sup>1</sup> Walchelinus, S. F.; Wacheli-  
 nus, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; apud Hybernensibus,  
 A.; apud Wilcinges, H. S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> parvo, A<sup>2</sup>. et Sav.

<sup>4</sup> constaret, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F. S. S<sup>2</sup>.; honoris, S<sup>2</sup>.; ho-  
 riori, A.

<sup>6</sup> om. Sav.

\* ab Hibernensibus. This is a  
 confusion; earl Hugh was killed  
 on the coast of Anglesey by an  
 arrow shot from a Norwegian ship  
 which bore Magnus king of Nor-  
 way, who was then. and had been

for some years, engaged in war  
 with the Irish. Comp. Ordericus  
 Vitalis, x. 6. The reading apud  
 Wilcinges seems to be a corruption  
 of ab Wicingis, "by the vikings."

A.D. 1099. Anno illo rex Ranulfo, placitatori sed perversori, ex-Chr. E.  
 Ranulf the Flambard appointed to the see of Durham.  
 actori<sup>1</sup> sed exustori totius Angliæ, dedit episcopatum Dunhelme. Hoc etiam anno decessit Osmundus episcopus Salesbiria.

A.D. 1100. § 22. Millesimo centesimo anno, rex Willelmus XIII.  
 The king shot by Walter Tyrril in the New Forest.  
 regni sui anno, vitam crudelem misero fine terminavit. Namque cum gloriose et patrio honore curiam tenuisset ad Natale apud Gloucestre, ad Pascha apud Wincestre, ad Pentecosten apud Londoniam, ivit venatum in Novo foresto in crastino kalendas Augusti, ubi Walterus Tyrril cum sagitta, cervo intendens, regem percussit inscius.<sup>a</sup> Rex corde ictus corruit, nec verbum edidit. Paulo siquidem ante sanguis visus est ebullire Chr. E.  
 a terra in Bercesyre. Jure autem in medio injustitiæ<sup>2</sup> suæ præreptus est; ipse namque<sup>3</sup> ultra hominem erat, et consilio pessimorum, quod semper eligebat, suis nequam, sibi nequissimus, vicinos werra, suos exercitibus frequentissimis et gildis continuis vexabat. Nec respirare poterat Anglia miserabiliter suffocata. Cum autem omnia raperent et subverterent qui regi famulabantur, ita ut adulteria etiam violenter et impune committerent, quicquid antea nequitiae pullulaverat, in perfectum excrevit, quicquid antea non fuerat, his temporibus pullulavit. Invisus namque rex nequissimus Deo et populo, episcopatus et abbatias aut vendebat, aut in manu sua retinens ad firmam dabat. Hæres autem omnium esse studebat; siquidem in die qua obiit in proprio habebat archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ, et episcopatum Wincestræ, et Salesbiræ, et XI. abba-

His character.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *exauctori*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; *justicie*, A.

<sup>3</sup> Post *namque* supplet Sav. *ferus*, absque codicum auctoritate.

<sup>a</sup> Florence, Malmesbury, and Orderic all agree that Walter Tyrril shot the arrow which killed Rufus. The abbot Suger says that Tyrril often denied to himself that he was in any way concerned with it; but

this he might do out of prudential considerations. Chr. E. mentions no name. The flagrant profligacy by which the court was polluted in the time of Rufus is much dwelt upon by Orderic.

- Chr. E. tias ad firmam datas. Postremo, quicquid Deo Deum A.D. 1100.  
que diligentibus displicebat, hoc regi regemque dili-  
gentibus<sup>1</sup> placebat. Nec luxuriæ scelus tacendum ex-  
ercebant occulte, sed ex impudentia coram sole. Se- He is buried  
pultus autem est in crastino perditionis suæ apud at Win-  
Wincestre, et Henricus, ibidem in regem electus, dedit chester.  
episcopatum Wincestriæ Willelmo Giffard, pergensque Henry is  
Londoniam sacratus est ibi a Mauricio Londoniensi consecrated  
episcopo, melioratione legum et consuetudinum opta- king at St.  
bili repromissa. His auditis Anselmus archiepiscopus Paul's, Lon-  
rediens in Angliam, desponsavit Matildem filiam Mel- don ;  
colmi regis Scotiæ et Margaretæ reginæ Henrico regi marries  
novo. Capta vero urbe Jerusalem, ut dictum est, et Matilda of  
ingenti prælio postea victoriose patrato contra exer- Scotland.  
citum amirali Babiloniæ, rediit Robertus dux in Nor-  
manniam mense Augusto, et cum lætitia susceptus est Return of  
ab omni populo. Thomas Eboracensis archiepiscopus, duke  
vir ingenii florentis et Musarum a secretis, hominibus Robert to  
apparere desiit. Normandy.  
Death of  
Thomas,  
archbishop  
of York.
- Chr. E. § 23. Henricus rex cum ad Natale tenuisset curiam A.D. 1101.  
suam apud Westmuster,<sup>2</sup> et ad Pascha<sup>3</sup> apud Winc- Robert  
estre, commoti sunt principes Angliæ erga regem causa lands at  
fratris sui Roberti cum exercitu advenientis. Misit Portsmouth ;  
autem rex in mare navale prælium gessuros contra treaty be-  
fratris sui adventum, sed quædam pars eorum subdidit tween him  
se Roberto venienti. Cum ergo appulisset apud Por- and Henry.  
tesmuthe ante kalendas Augusti, et rex tenderet  
contra eum cum maximis copiis, principes utrinque,  
fra[ter]num bellum non perferentes, concordix foedus  
inter illos statuerunt, eo pacto, quod Robertus uno-  
quoque anno III M. marcas argenti haberet ab Anglia,  
et qui diutius viveret, hæres esset alterius, si alter  
absque filio moreretur. Hoc autem juraverunt XII.  
eximiores procerum utrimque. Robertus igitur in pace

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *regemque diligebat* |  
*diligentibus, A.*

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F. ; *Westmustier, A.*

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *Pascha, A.*

A.D. 1101. perendinavit usque ad festum Sancti Michaelis in regno Chr. E.  
 Ranulf the Fratribus sui, et ad propria rediit. Ranulfus autem per-  
 Flambard versus episcopus Dunhelme, quem rex Henricus posue-  
 stirs up the rat in vinculis consilio gentis Anglorum, cum a carcere  
 the duke against evasisset, clandestine perrexerat in Normanniam, consi-  
 Henry. lio et admonitione sua Robertum promovens in fratrem  
 suum.

A.D. 1102. § 24. Henricus rex quemdam consulem nequissimum Chr. E.  
 Robert de et perfidum, Robertum de Belesme, jure in eum ex-  
 banished. surgens exulavit. Obsedit namque prius castellum  
 Arundel; quod cum gravissimum esset ad conquiren-  
 dum, castellis ante illud<sup>1</sup> constructis ivit et obsedit  
 Bruge, quousque castellum redditum est ei, et Robertus  
 de Belesme gemebundus in Normanniam migravit.  
 Council of Eodem anno ad festum Sancti Michaelis tenuit Ansel-  
 London; mus archiepiscopus concilium apud Londoniam, in quo  
 canonis against in- prohibuit sacerdotibus uxores Anglorum, antea non  
 continent and simoni- prohibitas. Quod quibusdam mundissimum visum est,  
 cal clerks. quibusdam periculosum; ne, dum munditias viribus  
 majores appeterent, in immunditias horribiles ad Chris-  
 tiani nominis summum dedecus inciderent. In illo au-  
 tem concilio multi abbates qui adquisiverant abbatias  
 suas sicut Deus noluit, amiserunt eas sicut Deus voluit.

A.D. 1103. Anno sequenti venit Robertus Normannorum consul Chr. E.  
 in Angliam, causis variis intercedentibus; et cauta  
 regis versutia condonavit ei III. M. marcas quas rex  
 debebat ei per annum. Eodem anno visus est sanguis  
 ebullire a terra in Berescyre apud Hamstude.<sup>2</sup>

A.D. 1104. Curriculo sequentis anni rex et frater suus causis in- Chr. E.  
 A fresh tercedentibus discordati sunt. Misit igitur rex milites  
 quarrel breaks out in Normanniam, qui a proditoribus consulis<sup>3</sup> recepti  
 between the prædis et combustionibus non minimam cladem rebus  
 king and duke. consularibus ingesserunt. Willelmus vero consul More-

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>.; *illuc*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Hamstede*, S.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *consules*, A.

tuil,<sup>1</sup> causa perfidiæ ab Anglia exhæreditatus a regi, in Normanniam discedens, animo perfecto et exercitio ferventi vir probissimus, indixit et infixit regalibus turmis werram calamitate refertam. Hoc anno apparuerunt circa solem in meridie IIII. circuli albi coloris. A.D. 1104.

Chr. E.

25. § Henricus V. anno regni sui perrexit in Normanniam, contra fratrem suum certaturus. Conquisivit igitur Cadomum pecunia, Baiocum armis, et auxilio consulis Andegavensis; cepit quoque plura alia castra, et omnes fere principes Normanniæ regi se subdidere. His actis mense Augusto rediit in Angliam. A.D. 1105.

Henry crosses to Normandy; obtains possession of Caen and Bayeux.

Chr. E.

In anno quidem sequenti venit dux Normannorum ad regem fratrem suum apud Nordhamtune, amicabilem ab eo petens ut ablata sibi fraterna<sup>1</sup> redderet gratia. Cum vero Deus eorum concordiam non assentiret, dux iratus perrexit in Normanniam, et rex ante Augustum secutus est eum. Cum ergo rex obsedisset castrum Tenchebrai, venit dux Normannorum, et cum eo Robertus de Belesme, et consul Moretuil, et omnes fautores ejus. Rex vero secum omnes procures Normanniæ, et robur Angliæ et Andegavis et Britanniam, non improvidus habebat. Igitur cum cornua raucō strepuissent cantu, dux Normanniæ cum paucis multos audacissime aggressus est, assuetusque bellis Jerosolimitanis aciem regalem fortiter et horrendè reppulit. Willelmus quoque consul de Moretuil aciem Anglorum de loco in locum turbans promovit; cum acies equestris Britannorum, (rex namque, et dux, et acies cæteræ pedites erant,<sup>2</sup> ut constantius pugnarent,) aciem ducis ex adverso prouens,<sup>3</sup> subito diffidit, et mole magnitudinis oppressa gens ducis dissoluta est et victa. Robertus vero de Belesme, simul Defeat of duke Robert.

Battle of Tenchebrai.

<sup>1</sup> *paterna*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.; om. *erant*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *promens*, Sav.

\* William of Moretuil was the son of Robert of Moretuil, one of William the Conqueror's half-

brothers. He was taken prisoner by Henry at the battle of Tenchebrai, as mentioned below.

A.D. 1106. hoc aspexit, fuga sibi consuluit. Captus est igitur dux fortissimus Normannorum, et consul de Moretuil. Reddiditque Dominus vicem duci Roberto, quia, cum gloriosum reddidisset eum in actibus Jerosolimitanis, regnum Jerusalem oblatum sibi renuit, magis eligens quieti et desidiæ in Normannia deservire, quam Domino regum in sancta civitate desudare. Damnavit igitur eum Deus desidia perenni et carcere sempiterno. Hujus rei signum in eodem anno cometa apparuerat. Visæ sunt etiam in Coena Domini duæ lunæ plenæ, una ad orientem, alia ad occidentem.

He is con-  
signed to  
perpetual  
imprison-  
ment; a  
just reward  
for his  
refusal of  
the kingdom  
of Jeru-  
salem.

A.D. 1107. § 26. Henricus rex anno VII. regni sui, cum deletis Chr. E. vel subjectis hostibus Normanniam pro libitu dis-possuisset, rediit in Angliam, fratremque suum ducem magnificum et consulem de Moretuil carceralibus<sup>1</sup> ingressit tenebris. Igitur victoriosus, et tunc primum rex fortis, tenuit curiam suam ad Pascha<sup>2</sup> apud Windlesores;<sup>3</sup> in qua proceres Angliæ simul et Norman- niæ cum timore et tremore affuerunt. Antea namque, et dum juvenis fuisset, et postquam rex fuerat, in maximo habebatur despectu; sed Deus, qui longe aliter judicat quam filii hominum, qui exaltat humiles et deprimit potentes, Robertum omnium favore celeberrimum deposuit, et Henrici despecti famam per orbem terrarum clarescere jussit. Deditque ei gratis tria Dominus omnipotens munera, sapientiam, victoriam, divitias; quibus ad omnia prosperans, omnes suos antecessores præcessit.<sup>4</sup> Hoc anno obiit Mauricius epi- scopus, inceptor Londoniensis ecclesiæ, et Edgarus rex Scotiæ, cui successit Alexander frater suus, concessu<sup>\*</sup> regis Henrici.

Death of  
Maurice  
bishop of  
London,

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *carceribus*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; *Pascha*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Winlesores*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Winleshores*, S. F.

<sup>4</sup> In Sav. adduntur verba, *unde omnes suos ditavit.*

<sup>\*</sup> *concessu*. This is one of many indications of an apparent wish and intention on the part of Henry to

prove historically the feudal dependence of the Scottish on the English crown.

Chr. E.

§ 27. Henricus VIII. anno regni sui, cum decessisset A.D. 1106.  
Philippus rex Francorum, transiit in Normanniam and of Philip king of France.

contra Lodowicum<sup>1</sup> filium Philippi, regem novum Franciæ, werram promovens maximam. Anno eodem, Gerardo archiepiscopo Eboracensi defuncto, Thomas postea successit. Tempestate sequentis anni missi sunt A.D. 1109.  
ab Henrico imperatore Romano nuntii, mole corporis Matilda, Henry's daughter, betrothed to the emperor.  
et cultuum splendoribus excellentes, filiam regis in domini sui conjugium postulantes. Tenens igitur curiam suam apud Londoniam, qua nunquam splendidiorem tenuerat, sacramenta depostulans de connubio filiæ suæ ab imperatoris recepit legatis ad Pentecosten.

Obierat autem Anselmus archiepiscopus, Christi philosophus, in Quadragesima. Anno igitur sequenti data Death of St. Anselm. A.D. 1110.  
est filia regis imperatori, ut breviter dicam, sicut de-

Chr. E.

cuit. Rex itaque cepit ab unaquaque hida Angliæ III. solidos.<sup>a</sup> Eodem anno, cum rex curiam suam Heavy taxation on account of the marriage.  
tenuisset ad Pentecosten apud novam Windlesores, quam ipse ædificaverat, exhæreditavit eos qui ei nocuerant, scilicet Philippum de Brahuse,<sup>2</sup> et Willelmum Malet, et Willelmum Bainard. Helias<sup>3</sup> vero consul Cenomanniæ, qui eam sub Henrico rege tenebat, vita Death of Elias, count of Maine.  
privatus est. At consul Andegavensis<sup>4</sup> suscepit Cenomanniam cum filia illius, et tenuit eam contra regem Henricum. Maine is seized by the count of Anjou.  
Hoc in anno apparuit quædam cometa more insolito. Cum namque ab oriente insurgens in firmamentum ascendisset, regredi videbatur. Eodem  
anno Nicholas, pater illius qui hanc scripsit historiam, Death of Nicholas, the author's father.  
mortis legibus concessit, et sepultus est apud Lincoliam.  
De quo dictum est :

“ Stella cadit cleri, splendor marcet Nicholai ;

“ Stella cadens cleri, splendeat arce Dei.”

<sup>1</sup> *Lodowicum, C<sup>o</sup>. A<sup>o</sup>.*

<sup>2</sup> *Brause, S. S<sup>o</sup>. F.*

<sup>3</sup> *Bainnard. Elias, S<sup>o</sup>.*

<sup>4</sup> *Andegavis, S<sup>o</sup>.*

<sup>a</sup> *tres solidos.* The Chronicle merely says, “ þurh gylð þe æe cyng nam “ for his dohter gyfte.”

A.D. 1110. Hoc ideo scriptor suo inseruit operi, ut apud omnes legentes mutuum laboris obtineat, quatenus pietatis affectu dicere dignentur, "Anima ejus in pace requiescat. Amen."

A.D. 1111. § 28. Henricus anno XI. regni sui pergens in Nor- Chr. E.  
 Henry makes war on the count of Anjou. manniam contra consulem Andegavensem, qui Cennanniam eo tenebat invito, werræ leges in eum ferro et flamma exercuit constanter. Decessit autem Robertus consul Flandriæ, qui Jerosolimitano clarissimus interfuerat itineri, unde memoria ejus non pertranseat in æternum. Post quem Baldewinus filius ejus consul effectus est, juvenis omnino strenuus armis.

A.D. 1112. Proximo anno exulavit rex consulem Evreus<sup>1</sup> et Chr. E.  
 Robert de Belesme taken and imprisoned. Willelmum Crispin a Normannia; cepitque Robertum Belesme, virum nequissimum, de quo prædiximus, rediensque anno sequenti in Angliam, posuit eum in Chr. E. carcerem perennem apud Warram.<sup>2</sup>

A.D. 1114. Succedenti anno rex dedit archiepiscopatum Can- Chr. E.  
 Ralph appointed to the primacy, and Thurstan to the see of York. tuariæ Radulfo episcopo Rovecestræ. Tunc quoque, Thoma Eboracensi archiepiscopo defuncto, Turstanus successit. Inter Radulfum vero et Turstanum archiepiscopos orta est magna dissensio,<sup>a</sup> quia Eboracensis

<sup>1</sup> *Ebreus*, C<sup>3</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Ebroicensem*, F.

<sup>2</sup> *Warham*, F. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Warram*, S.

<sup>a</sup> This notice of the dissension between Ralph and Thurstan may have been taken by Henry from Malmesbury's *Gesta Pontif.*, iii., § 122, or the circumstances may have been within his own recollection. The last archbishop of York, Thomas, threatened by the king, had made the required submission to the see of Canterbury in 1109, and then been consecrated. Thurstan, elected in 1114, refused to follow this precedent. The king, therefore, would not allow him to be consecrated, nor to enter upon

his office; but going to Rome, Thurstan obtained a letter in his favour from pope Paschal in 1117. The matter was so far settled by pope Calixtus, that in 1119 he consecrated Thurstan archbishop of York. The king was very angry on hearing this, and banished Thurstan; but after a while was induced by the pope's urgent remonstrances to allow him to return and resume his see. Thurstan died at Pontefract, in the habit of a Cluniac monk, in 1140.

- Cantuariensi de more subijci nolebat. Causa autem sæpe coram rege, sæpe coram apostolico ventilata est, sed necdum definita. Hoc in anno duxit rex exercitum in Waliam: Walenses vero subditi sunt ei, secundum magnificentiam libitus sui. Cometa ingens in fine Maii apparuit. Rex vero transiit in Normanniam, et anno sequenti fecit omnes proceres patriæ fidelitatem domino debitam Willelmo filio suo jurare, et in Angliam rediit.
- Chr. E. A.D. 1114. Dispute between them as to the privileges of their sees. Expedition into Wales.
- Chr. E. A.D. 1115. § 29. Henricus rex xvi<sup>o</sup> anno ad Natale interfuit dedicationi ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, quam dedicavit Robertus venerabilis Lincoliensis episcopus, per Ricardum memorabilem abbatem ejusdem loci.<sup>1</sup> Cum autem rex ad Pascha transfretasset in Normanniam, fuit maxima discordia inter eum et regem Francorum. Causa autem hæc erat. Tedbaldus consul Blesensis, nepos regis Henrici, contra dominum suum regem Francorum arma promoverat; in cujus auxilium rex Anglorum duces suos militiamque misit, et regem Lodewicum<sup>2</sup> non mediocriter afflixit. Spatio igitur sequentis anni gravissimus labor Henrico regi insurrexit. Juraverunt namque rex Francorum et consul Flandrensis et consul Andegavensis, se Normanniam regi Henrico ablaturus, et Willelmo filio Roberti ducis Nor-
- A.D. 1116. Dedication of the minster church of St. Alban's.
- Quarrel between Henry and the king of France.
- A.D. 1117. League formed against Henry to deprive him of Normandy, and give it to

<sup>1</sup> ejusdem loci militem, S<sup>2</sup>.; abbatem, S. F.

<sup>2</sup> Lodouicum, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>a</sup> A full description of the dedication of the minster at St. Alban's in 1116 may be seen in the *Vita Viginti Trium Abbatum*, ascribed to Matthew Paris. He, or whoever made the compilation, must have used in it many biographies, accounts of translations, and other records preserved in the monastery; and some of these, it is reasonable to suppose, were accessible to Henry.

In fact he thus expresses himself in Book IX., after speaking of the dedication of St. Alban's church in 1116, and the translation of the relics in 1129: "De cujus [S. "Albani] miraculis, exceptis his "quæ sequentes Bedam scripsimus, "multa clarissima et vera in eadem "scripta reperiuntur ecclesia." (MS. Grosvenor, *Hist. Anglorum*, lib. ix.)

A.D. 1117.  
the son of  
duke  
Robert.

England  
heavily  
taxed.]

A.D. 1118.  
Continual  
warfare in  
Normandy.

Death of  
Robert de  
Mellent,

and of queen  
Matilda.

mannorum eam daturos. Multi etiam procerum regis Chr. E.  
recesserunt ab eo, quod maximo ei fuit detrimento.  
Rex tamen non improvidus in auxilio suo Tedbaldum  
prædictum et conselum Britannorum habebat. Venerunt igitur rex Francorum et dux Flandrensis cum exercitu in Normanniam; in qua cum una nocte fuissent, formidantes adventum regis Henrici cum Anglis et Normannis et Britannis, ad sua sine bello reversi sunt. Hoc anno pro necessitate regia geldis creberrimis et exactionibus variis Anglia compressa est. Tonitrua vero et grandines in kalendis Decembris affuerunt, et in eodem mense cælum rubens, ac si arderet, apparuit. Eodem tempore maximus terræmotus in Longobardia ecclesias, turres, et domos et homines provolvens destruxit.

§ 30. Curriculo anni proximi continua debellatio jam Car. E.  
dictorum principum gravissime regem vexavit, donec Baldewinus strenuissimus Flandriæ consul apud Ou in Normannia seditione militari funeste vulneratus ad sua recessit.<sup>a</sup> Porro Robertus consul de Meslent, sapientissimus in rebus sæcularibus omnium usque in Jerusalem degentium, et regis Henrici consiliarius, in fine stultus apparuit. Etenim cum terras quas abstulerat<sup>b</sup> sacerdotum suasu reddere,<sup>1</sup> nec confessionem<sup>2</sup> qualem oporteret vellet inire, corde pauperrimus quasi sponte deperiit. Bene igitur dictum est; "Sapientia hujus mundi  
" stultitia est apud Deum." Tunc quoque Matildis

<sup>1</sup> Ita codices; *nec reddere*, Sav. | <sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *confusionem*, A.

<sup>a</sup> Ordericus (xii. 2) gives an account of count Baldwin's death, which was caused by a wound received, not in a "seditio militaris," but from the hand of Hugh de Boterel, in an action fought near Arques, in the district of Eu. Comp. also Malm., *Gest. Reg.*, v., § 403.

<sup>b</sup> What happened at the death-bed of Robert, earl of Mellent, is told by our author at greater length in his Epistle to Walter, § 8; see Appendix. See also Malm., *Gest. Reg.*, v., § 407. "Sponte deperiit" seems to mean, "lost his soul wilfully."

luce caruit. De cujus facietia et morum prærogativa A.D. 1118.  
dictum est :

Prospera non lætam fecere, nec aspera tristem,  
Aspera risus ei, prospera terror erant.  
Non <sup>1</sup> decor effecit fragilem, non sceptrâ superbam;  
Sola potens humilis, sola pudica decens.  
Maii prima dies, nostrarum nocte dierum  
Raptam, perpetua fecit inesse die.

Chr. E.

§ 31. Rex Henricus XII. anno ex quo Normanni Angliam obtinuerunt, regni vero sui anno XIX., pugnavit A.D. 1119.  
contra regem Francorum gloriose. Præposuerat quidem Battle of  
rex Francorum aciem, cui præerat Willelmus filius Roberti fratris Henrici regis; ipse cum maximis viribus Brenville.  
in sequenti erat agmine. Rex vero Henricus in prima <sup>2</sup> acie proceres suos constituerat; in secunda cum propria familia eques ipse residebat, in tertia vero filios suos cum summis viribus pedites collocaverat. Igitur acies prima Francorum agmen procerum Normanniæ statim equis depulit, et dispersit; postea vero aciei qua rex Henricus inerat <sup>3</sup> collidens, et ipsa est dispersa. Acies itaque regales sibi invicem offenderunt, et acerrime pugnatum est. Hastæ franguntur omnes; gladiis res agitur. Interim Willelmus Crispin regis Henrici caput gladio bis percussit; <sup>4</sup> cumque lorica esset impenetrabilis, magnitudine tamen ictuum ipsa lorica aliquantulum capiti regis inserta est, ut sanguis prorumperet. Rex vero percussorem suum ita gladio repercussit, ut cum galea esset impenetrabilis, mole tamen ictus equitem et equum prosterneret; qui mox ante regios pedes captus est. Sed acies pedestris in

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *Nec*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *propria*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *inerat*, A.

<sup>4</sup> According to Ord. Vit. (Book xii.) Crispin struck once at the king, not twice, and was dashed to

the ground by Roger de Bienfaite, not by Henry himself.

A.D. 1119. qua filii Henrici inerant,<sup>1</sup> nondum percutiens, sed mox percussura, lanceis inclinatis ex adverso insurrexit. Quod Franci videntes, horrore insperato liquefacti terga dederunt. Henricus autem rex victoriæ perstitit in campo, donec optimates hostium capti sunt, et ante pedes ejus positi. Reversus vero Rotomagum, in signorum sonitibus et cleri concentibus,<sup>2</sup> Deum et Dominum exercituum benedixit. De cujus magnificentia victoriæ sic quidam scripsit heroice:—

Rout of the French.

Henricus regum rex et decus abstulit altos  
Francigenis animos; Ludovicum namque Nugensi  
Rex regem campo, magnum major superavit.  
Præposuere fugam bellis, calcaria telis,  
Galli præcipites; fama spoliisque potitos  
Laurea Normannos et laus æterna coronat.  
Sic decus iste ducum, sic corda tumentia pressit,  
Oraque Francorum mutire superba coegit.

Election of Guido, archbishop of Vienna, to the papacy; he takes the name of Calixtus II.

Eodem anno papa Gelasius obiit, et sepultus est Chr. E. apud Cluniacum. Tunc Wido Viennensis archiepiscopus, electus in papam, vocatus est Calixtus, et tenuit concilium Remis. Inde profectus est Gisors<sup>3</sup> contra regem Henricum, et colloqui sunt sacerdos magnus et

Death of Baldwin, earl of Flanders.

rex magnus. Baldewinus etiam, consul Flandriæ, per vulnus quod in Normannia receperat decessit; cui successit Karolus cognatus ejus, filius Cnut sancti regis Dacorum.

A.D. 1120. Henry returns to England in triumph. Prince William drowned.

§ 32. Anno M<sup>o</sup>. C<sup>o</sup>. XX<sup>o</sup>. gratiæ, omnibus domitis et pacificatis in Gallia, cum gaudio rediit Henricus in Angliam. Sed in ipso maris transitu duo filii regis, Willelmus et Ricardus, et filia regis, et neptis, et multi procures, dapiferi, camerarii, pincernæ regis, et Ricardus consul Cestriæ naufragati sunt. Qui omnes vel fere omnes sodomitica labe dicebantur et erant irretiti.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *inierant*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; *concentibus*, A.

<sup>3</sup> Gisors, C<sup>3</sup>. S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

Et ecce coruscabilis Dei vendicta ! deperierunt etenim, A.D. 1120.  
et omnes fere sepultura caruerunt. Improvise igitur  
mors absorbit emeritos, cum mare tranquillissimum  
ventis careret. De quibus ita scripsit poeta :

Dum Normannigenæ Gallis clari superatis  
Anglica regna petunt, obstitit ipse Deus.  
Nam fragili torvum dum percurrunt mare cymba,  
Intulit excito nubila densa mari.  
Dumque vagi cæco rapiuntur tramite nautæ,  
Ruperunt imas abdita saxa rates.  
Sic mare dum superans tabulata per ultima serpit,  
Mersit rege satos, occidit orbis honos.

Chr. B.

§ 33. Henricus rex ad Natale fuit apud Bramtune,<sup>1</sup> A.D. 1121.  
Henry mar-  
ries Ade-  
laida of  
Louvain.  
cum Tedbaldo consule Blesensi, et post hæc apud  
Windleshores duxit Adelidam filiam ducis Luvaniæ  
causa pulchritudinis. Dum autem rex ad Pascha<sup>2</sup>  
fuisset apud Berchelea, ad Pentecosten fuit diadematus  
cum regina sua nova apud Londoniam. In æstate  
vero, dum tenderet cum exercitu in Waliam, Walenses Treaty with  
the Welsh.  
ei suppliciter obviantes secundum magnificentiam libi-  
tus sui concordati sunt ei. At in vigilia Natalis  
Domini ventus insolitus non solum domos, sed tures  
dejecit lapideas. De pulchritudine vero reginæ præ-  
dictæ sic quidam dixit elegiace :

Anglorum regina, tuos, Adelina, decores,  
Ipsa referre parans, Musa stupore riget.  
Quid diadema tibi pulcherrima ? quid tibi gemmæ ?  
Pallet gemma tibi, nec diadema nitet.  
Deme tibi cultus, cultum natura ministrat,  
Nec meliorari forma beata potest.  
Ornamenta cave, nec quicquam luminis inde  
Accipis ; illa micant lumine clara tuo.  
Non puduit modicas de magnis dicere laudes,  
Nec pudeat dominam te, precor, esse meam.

<sup>1</sup> Bramtune, S<sup>2</sup>. F.

| <sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. ; Pasca, A.

A.D. 1123.  
The king  
visits  
various  
places in  
England.

Death of  
archbishop  
Ralph.

— A.D. 1123.  
Death of  
Randolph  
the chan-  
cellor,

and of Ro-  
bert Bloet,  
bishop of  
Lincoln.

§ 34. Henricus rex anno sequenti fuit ad Natale Chr. E. apud Norwic, et ad Pascha apud Norhamtune,<sup>1</sup> et ad Pentecosten apud Windleshores. Inde ad Londoniam et Kent, et postea perrexit in Nordhumberland<sup>2</sup> ad Dunhelme. Eodem anno obiit Radulfus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Johannes Bathensis episcopus. Anno vero huic proximo fuit rex ad Natale apud Dunstapele,<sup>3</sup> et inde perrexit ad Berchamstede. Ibi rem dignam Deus ostendit. Erat namque quidam cancellarius regis Radulphus,<sup>4</sup> jam xx. annis infirmitate decoctus, semper tamen in curia juvene promptior ad omnia scelera, innocentes opprimens, terras multas sibi diripiens; eratque ei pro magno, quod, dum corpore langueret, sic animo vigeret. Cum igitur regem ad hospitandum secum duceret, in ipso vertice montis unde castellum ejus prospiciebatur, elatus mente corruit ex equo, et monachus super eum equitavit; unde sic contritus est, ut post paucos dies vita careret. Ecce quanta superbia quam vilissime Deo volente deperiit! Inde ivit rex ad Wodestoke,<sup>5</sup> ad locum insignem, ubi rex cohabitationem hominum et ferarum fecerat. Ibi-que Robertus Lincoliensis episcopus diem clausit ultimum, cujus epitaphium hoc est:

Pontificum Robertus honor, quem fama superstes  
Perpetuare dabit, non obiturus obit.  
Hic humilis dives, (res mira,) potens pius, ultor  
Compatiens, mitis cum pateretur erat.  
Noluit esse suis dominus, studuit pater esse,  
Semper in adversis murus et arma suis.

<sup>1</sup> *Nordhamtune*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> *Nordhumberland*, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. S.;  
*Nordhymbreland*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *Dunestaple*, S. S<sup>2</sup>.; *Dunstaple*,  
F.

<sup>4</sup> *Randulfus*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>5</sup> *Wodestoc*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Wdestoc*, F.

\* Compare the account given of  
this same man, and of his end, by  
our author, in the third section of

his epistle to Walter, *De Con-  
temptu Mundi*, printed in the Ap-  
pendix.

In decima Jani mendacis somnia mundi  
Liquit, et evigilans vera perenne videt.

A.D. 1123.

Chr. E.

§ 35. Postea ad festum Purificationis dedit rex archiepiscopatum Cantuariæ Willelmo de Curbuil, qui fuerat prior apud Chicce.<sup>1</sup> Ad Pascha vero apud Wincestre dedit episcopatum Lincolniæ Alexandro venerabili viro, qui nepos est Rogeri Saresbiriensis episcopi; Rogerus autem justitiarius fuit<sup>2</sup> totius Angliæ, et secundus a rege. Dedit etiam rex episcopatum Bathæ Godefrido cancellario reginæ. At circa Pentecosten mare transiit, et recessit ab eo comes de Mellent,<sup>3</sup> discordia pro-

William Curbuil nominated to the primacy.

The king in Normandy.

Chr. E.

palata. Rex autem castellum ejus, quod vocatur Puntaldemer, obsedit et cepit. Anno vero sequente rex fortunatus glorificatus est. Willelmus namque de Tancherville,<sup>4</sup> camerarius regis, aciebus statutis configens cepit comitem prædictum, et Hugonem de Munfort<sup>5</sup> sororium ejus, et Hugonem filium Gervasii, et tradidit eos regi; rex autem posuit eos in carcerem. Eodem

A.D. 1124.

Flor. a. 1123.

anno obiit Teulfus Wigornensis episcopus, et Ernulfus

Flor. a. 1124.

Rovecestræ episcopus. Sequenti anno toto rex fuit in Normannia, et ibi dedit episcopatum Wigornæ

A.D. 1125.

Flor. a. 1125.

Simoni<sup>6</sup> clerico reginæ. Sifrido quoque abbati Glasingebiri dedit episcopatum Cicestræ. Porro Willelmus archiepiscopus dedit episcopatum Rovecestræ Johanni archidiacono suo.

Chr. E.

§ 36. Ad Pascha vero Johannes Cremensis, cardinalis Romanus, descendit in Angliam, perendinansque per episcopatus et abbatias, non sine magnis muneribus, ad nativitatem Sanctæ Mariæ celebravit concilium solemne apud Londoniam. Sed quia Moyses Dei secretarius in historia sancta parentum etiam suorum, ut virtutes, scripsit<sup>7</sup> et vitia, scilicet facinus Loth,

Visti of the cardinal-legate, John of Crema.

<sup>1</sup> *Cycche*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *est*, H. O<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; *fuit*, S.

<sup>3</sup> *Meslend*, F. S.; *Mesland*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *Tancarville*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *Mundfort*, S.; *Munford*, F.; *Mundeford*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> *Simeoni*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> *scripserit*, C<sup>3</sup>.; *scripsit ita*, F.

A.D. 1126. scelus Ruben, proditionem Simeon et Levi, inhumani- Chr. B.  
tatem fratrum Joseph, nos quoque veram historiæ  
legem de bonis et malis sequi dignum est. Quod si  
alicui Romano vel prælato displicuerit, taceat tamen,  
ne Johannem Cremensem sequi velle videatur. Cum  
igitur in<sup>1</sup> concilio severissime de uxoribus sacerdotum  
tractasset, dicens summum scelus esse a latere mere-  
triciis ad corpus Christi conficiendum surgere, cum  
eadem die corpus Christi confecisset, cum meretrice  
post vesperam interceptus est. Res apertissima negari  
non potuit, celari non debuit.<sup>2</sup> Summus honor ubique  
habitus in summum dedecus versum est. Repedavit  
igitur in sua Dei judicio confusus et inglorius. Eodem  
anno obiit Henricus imperator, gener Henrici regis.  
Operæ vero pretium est audire, quam severus rex  
fuerit in pravos. Monetarios enim fere omnes totius  
Angliæ fecit ementulari, et manus dextras abscidi,  
quia monetam furtive corruperant. Iste est annus  
carissimus omnium nostri temporis, in quo vendebatur  
onus equi frumentarium vi. solidis.

Scandal re-  
sulting from  
it.

Death of the  
emperor  
Henry V.

Hoc etiam anno perrexerunt Romam Willelmus  
Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et Turstanus Eboracensis  
archiepiscopus, et Alexander Lincolniensis episcopus.  
De ejus laudabili munificentia et inextinguibili fama  
sic quidam dixit heroice :

Splendor Alexandri non tam renitescit honore,  
Quam per eum renitescit honor; flos namque vi-  
rorum,

Dando tenere putans, thesauros cogit honoris,  
Et gratis dare festinans, ne danda rogentur,  
Quod nondum dederit, nondum se credit habere.  
O decus, o morum directio, quo veniente  
Certa fides, hilaris clementia, cauta potestas,  
Lene jugum, doctrina placens, correctio dulcis,

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; om. A.

<sup>2</sup> Desunt hæc tria verba in A. | A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; extant in C<sup>3</sup>.; *celari non*  
*potuit*, F.; *deceit*, Sav.

Libertasque decens venere, pudorque facetus.

A.D. 1125.

Lincolniæ gens magna prius, nunc maxima semper;

Talis et iste diu sit nobis tutor honoris.

Chr. B.

§ 37. Vigesimo sexto anno regni sui rex ad Natale

A.D. 1126.

et Pascha et Pentecosten moratus est in Normannia, et confirmatis pactis cum Franciæ principibus, qualia regem victoriosissimum decebat, circa festum Sancti Michaelis rediit in Angliam. Adduxit siquidem secum

The king goes to Normandy, and brings back the empress.

filiam suam imperatricem, tanto viro, ut prædictum

Flor. a. 1126. est, viduatam. Decessit Robertus Cestrensis episcopus.

Anno sequenti rex curiam tenuit ad Natale apud

A.D. 1127.

Winlesores; pergens inde Londoniam, in Quadragesima et Pascha fuit apud Wodestoke; ubi nuntius dixit ei,

He hears that the king of France has given Flanders to William of Normandy.

“Karolus comes Flandrensis tibi dilectissimus nefanda

“proditione occisus est a proceribus suis in templo apud

“Brige; rex autem Francorum dedit Flandriam Willel-

“mo nepoti et hosti tuo, qui jam valde roboratus diversis

“cruciatibus omnes proditores Karoli mulctavit.” Super

his igitur rex angariatus, concilium tenuit ad Rogationes apud Londoniam; et Willelmus archiepiscopus

similiter in eadem villa apud Westmuster.<sup>1</sup> Cum

autem ad Pentecosten fuisset apud<sup>2</sup> Wincestre, misit

filiam suam in Normanniam desponsatam<sup>3</sup> filio consulis Andegavensis, et secutus est eam ipse rex in Augusto.

The empress is betrothed to Geoffrey of Anjou.

Ricardus vero Londoniensis episcopus obierat, cujus

episcopatum dedit<sup>4</sup> Gileberto universali viro doctis-

Flor. a. 1127. simo. Decessit etiam Ricardus Herefordensis episcopus.

§ 38. Henricus rex sapientissimus<sup>5</sup> toto sequenti

A.D. 1128

anno moratus in Normannia,<sup>6</sup> perrexit hostiliter in

Henry invades France.

Franciam, quia rex Francorum tuebatur nepotem et

hostem suum; perendinansque apud Sparnum VIII.

diebus, tam secure ac si<sup>7</sup> in regno suo esset, compulit

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>3</sup>.; Westmenster, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>3</sup>.; om. A.

<sup>3</sup> desponsatum, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> rex dedit, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> fortissimus, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> A<sup>3</sup>.; Normanniam, A.

<sup>7</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>3</sup>. F.; ac in regno, A.

A.D. 1128. regem Lodovicum auxilia comiti Flandrensi non ferre. Ubi cum originem et procursum regni Francorum rex quæreretur Henricus, sic quidam non indoctus respondit:

A courtier relates to him the rise and vicissitudes of the French monarchy.

The first dynasty.

The second dynasty.

“ Regum potentissime, sicut pleræque gentes Europæ, ita Franci a Trojanis duxerunt originem. Antenor namque cum suis, profugus ab excidio Trojæ, in finibus Pannoniæ civitatem Siccambriam nomine ædificavit. Verum post mortem Antenoris constituerunt sui duces super se Torgotum et Francionem,<sup>1</sup> a quo Franci sunt appellati. Quibus defunctis, elegerunt ducem Marcominum;<sup>2</sup> Marcominus autem genuit Faramundum primum regem Francorum. Faramundus rex genuit Clodium crinitum; a quo reges Franci criniti habentur. Clodio decedente, Meroveus cognatus ejus regnavit, a quo reges Franci Merovingi sunt appellati. Meroveus genuit Childericum, Childericus Clodoveum, quem baptizavit sanctus Remigius; Clodoveus Clotarium, Clotarius Chilpericum, Chilpericus Clotarium secundum. Clotarius vero genuit Dagobertum, famosissimum ac dulcissimum regem; Dagobertus Clodoveum; Clodoveus genuit III. filios ex Batilde regina sua sancta, Clotarium, Childericum, atque Theodoricum; Theodoricus rex Childebertum, Childebertus Dagobertum, Dagobertus Theodoricum, Theodoricus Clotarium, hujus prosapiæ regem ultimum; post quem regnavit Hildericus, qui tonsus et in monasterio retrusus est, Pipino rege effecto. Ex alterius autem serie generationis, ex filia Clotarii regis genuit Ansbertus Arnoldum, Arnoldus sanctum Arnulfum, post Metensem episcopum; sanctus Arnulfus Anchisem, Anchises Pipinum majorem-domus, Pipinus Karolum Martellum, Karolus Pipinum regem, Pipinus rex Karolum magnum imperatorem, qui quasi sidus effulsit præcedentium et sequentium. Carolus genuit Lodovicum imperatorem, Lodovicus Karolum imperatorem Calvum,

<sup>1</sup> Francionem, S<sup>2</sup>.

| <sup>2</sup> Marcomirum, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

" Carolus Lodovicum regem, patrem Caroli Simplicis, A.D. 1128.  
 " Carolus Simplex Lodovicum, Lodovicus Lotarium,  
 " Lotarius Lodovicum, hujus prosapiæ regem ultimum.  
 " Lodovico igitur defuncto, Francorum<sup>1</sup> procures regem The third  
dynasty.  
 " super se statuunt Hugonem ducem, qui filius Hugo-  
 " nis magni ducis fuit. Hugo vero rex genuit piissi-  
 " mum regem Robertum. Robertus vero rex genuit  
 " III. filios, Hugonem dulcissimum ducem, et Henricum  
 " regem amantissimum, Robertumque Burgundiæ du-  
 " cem. Henricus rex genuit Philippum regem, qui ad  
 " finem monacatus est, et Hugonem Magnum, qui  
 " in motione magna Jerosolimam cum multis duci-  
 " bus Europæ debellatum eam petiit super Paganos,<sup>a</sup>  
 " anno ab incarnatione Domini millesimo nonagesimo  
 " quinto. Philippus vero rex genuit Lodovicum, qui  
 " regnat in præsentem. Qui si<sup>1</sup> probitatis antiquorum  
 " vestigia teneret, tam secure in regno ejus non qui-  
 " esceres."

Ord. Vit. xii.  
46.

§ 39. His dictis<sup>2</sup> et actis reversus est Henricus in Thierry of  
Alsace lays  
claim to  
Flanders. Normanniam. Advenit autem a partibus<sup>3</sup> Alemanniæ quidam dux Theodoricus, Flandriam calumnians, quosdam procures Flandriæ secum habens, et hoc suasu regis Henrici. Willelmus autem comes Flandrensis aciebus ordinatis obviam venit ei. Pugnatum est acriter. Willelmus consul numerum suorum, cum pauci essent, supplebat probitate inexterminabili. Cruentatus igitur omnia arma sua sanguine hostili findebat ense fulmineo cuneos hostium, nec potuerunt pondus terribile juvenilis brachii perferre hostes perterriti et fugæ dediti. Victoriosissimus itaque consul dum castrum William of  
Normandy  
is mortally  
wounded  
while be- hostile obsideret, et in crastino reddi deberet, jam pœne adnihilatis hostibus, Deo volente, parvo vulnere

F. A<sup>2</sup> ; *Fracorum*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *dictis*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *patribus*, A.

<sup>a</sup> "Super Paganos," though strange Latin, probably represents "sur les Païens," which is good

French ; if so, it would indicate that Henry was here working on a French original.

A.D. 1128. *sauciatus in manu deperiit. Nobilissimus autem juvenum ætate brevi famam promeruit sempiternam. De quo Walo<sup>a</sup> versificator sic ait:*  
*sleping a certain fortress [Alost].*

Mars obit in terris, deflent par sidera sidus,  
 Numina par numen, parque decora decus.  
 Res nova! temporibus moriuntur numina nostris,  
 Amodo credibile est numina posse mori.  
 Unicus ille ruit, cujus non terga sagittam,  
 Cujus nosse pedes non potuere fugam.  
 Nil nisi fulmen erat, quotiens res ipsa monebat,  
 Et si non fulmen, fulminis instar erat.  
 Flandria se jactat tumulo, Normannia cunis,  
 Hic fuit occasus sideris, ortus ibi.<sup>1</sup>

The master of the Temple takes many Englishmen with him to the Holy Land.

Hoc etiam anno Hugo de Paiens,<sup>2</sup> magister militum *Chr. E.* templi Jerusalem, veniens in Angliam secum multos duxit Jerusalem, inter quos Gaufridus<sup>b</sup> Andegavensis consul rex futurus perrexit. Obierunt Radulfus Flam-bard, Dunelmensis episcopus, et Willelmus Giffardus, Wintoniensis episcopus.

A.D. 1129.  
 Henry in England.

Second council of London on clerical celibacy.

§ 40. Sequenti anno Lodovicus rex Francorum fecit sublimari filium suum Philippum<sup>c</sup> in regem. Rex vero Henricus, pacificatis omnibus quæ in Francia, Flandria, Normannia, Britannia, Cenomannia, Andegavi<sup>3</sup> erant, cum gaudio in Angliam rediit. Tenuit igitur concilium maximum ad kalendas Augusti apud Londoniam, de uxoribus sacerdotum prohibendis. Intererant siquidem *Chr. E.* illi concilio Willelmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Turstanus Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Alexander Lincolniensis episcopus, Rogerus Salesbiriensis episcopus,

<sup>1</sup> Desunt hi versus in S<sup>2</sup>., et non-nisi unus (*Mars obit, &c.*) datur in A<sup>2</sup>. C<sup>3</sup>. et S<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Paens*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>3</sup> *Andegavia*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> This is probably Gualo, the Breton poet, whose *Invectio in Monachos*, a satire in Latin hexameters, was first printed by Flaccus Illyricus, and has been reproduced

by Mr. Wright in his *Anglo-Latin Satirists*, a publication in the Rolls series.

<sup>b</sup> *Gaufridus*. Not Geoffrey, but Fulk, count of Anjou, his father.

Gilebertus Londoniensis episcopus, Johannes Roveces- A.D. 1120.  
trensis, Sifridus Sudsexensis, Godefridus Bathensis,  
Simon Wigornensis, Everardus Nordwicensis, Bernardus  
Sancti Davidis, Herveus primus Eliensis episcopus.  
Nam Wintoniensis, et Dunhelmensis, et Cestrensis, et  
Herefordensis obierant. Hi columnæ regni erant et  
radii sanctitatis hoc tempore. Verum rex decepit<sup>1</sup> eos The king  
simplicitate Willelmi archiepiscopi. Concesserunt nam- takes money  
que regi justitiam de uxoribus sacerdotum, et impro- from the  
vidi habiti sunt, quod postea patuit, cum res summo married  
dedecore terminata est. Accepit enim rex pecuniam priests, and  
infinitam de presbyteris, et redemit eos. Tunc, sed lets them  
frustra, concessionis suæ poenituit episcopos, cum pateret keep their  
in oculis omnium gentium deceptio prælatorum et de- wives.  
pressio subjectorum.

Cf. Ord. Vit.  
xii. 48, ad  
fin.

Eodem anno illis quos Hugo de Paiens, de quo præ- Ill fortune  
dictum est, secum duxerat ad Jerusalem, male contigit; of the Chris-  
Deum siquidem offenderant sanctæ telluris incolæ lux- tians in  
uria et rapina et variis sceleribus; ut autem scriptum Palestine  
est in Moyse et Regum libris, Non diu scelera locis  
illis sunt impunita. In vigilia namque sancti Nicholai  
a paucis paganorum multi Christianorum devicti sunt,  
cum antea soleret e contrario contingere. In obsidione  
igitur Damascena, cum magna pars Christianorum pro-  
gressa esset ad victualia perquirenda, mirati sunt  
pagani Christianos plures et fortissimos se muliebriter  
fugientes, et persequentes innumeros occiderunt. Eos  
autem qui fuga salutem sibi quæsierant, in montibus  
tempestate nivis et frigoribus Deus ipsa nocte persecu-  
tus est, ita quod vix aliquis evasit.

Levit. xviii.  
25.  
Deut. xviii.  
12.

Contigit etiam quod filius regis Francorum, qui dia- Accidental  
demate regni fuerat, ut prædictum est, decoratus, dum death of  
cornipedem ludens agitarret obviam suam<sup>a</sup> habuit. Cui Philip, the  
young king  
of France.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *deinceps*, A.

<sup>a</sup> *suam*. This incident occurred in 1131. See Ord. Vit., xii. 48; xiii. 12.

A.D. 1129. cum pedes equi currentes offenderent, cecidit rex novus, et fractis cervicibus expiravit. Ecce res insolita et admiratione dignissima! Ecce quanta celsitudo, quam cito, quam leviter adnihilata est!<sup>a</sup>

A.D. 1130. § 41. Anno tricesimo regni sui fuit rex Henricus ad Natale apud Wirecestre,<sup>1</sup> ad Pascha apud Wodestoke,<sup>2</sup> ubi fuit accusatus Galfridus de Clintune, et infamatus<sup>b</sup> de proditione regis falso.<sup>3</sup> Ad Rogationes fuit apud Chr. E. Cantuariam ad dedicationem novæ ecclesiæ. Ad festivitatem Sancti Michaelis transiit in Normanniam.

A.D. 1131.  
Interview  
between the  
king and  
Pope Inno-  
cent II. at  
Chartres.

Henry re-  
turns to  
England.

Eodem anno decessit Honorius papa. Sequenti anno recepit rex apud Carnotum papam Innocentium, Anacleto subjici recusans.<sup>4</sup> Hos enim utrosque Romani bipartiti elegerant. Expulsus vero ab urbe Innocentius vi Anacleti, qui Petrus de Leues prius vocabatur, auxilio regis Henrici receptus est per totas Gallias. Post quod in æstate rediit in Angliam,<sup>5</sup> secum filiam suam adducens. Fuit igitur in Nativitate Sanctæ Mariæ magnum placitum apud Nordhamtune; in quo, congregatis omnibus principibus Angliæ deliberatum est quod filia sua redderetur viro suo, scilicet consuli Andegavensi, eam requirenti. Missa autem post hæc filia regis viro suo recepta est fastu tanta viragine digno. Post Pascha mortuus est Reginaldus abbas Remesiensis,<sup>6</sup> hujus novæ auctor<sup>7</sup> ecclesiæ. In principio Flor. a. 1031. hiemis obiit Herveus primus Elyensis episcopus.

Malm. Hist.  
Nov. i. § 4.

Malm. Hist.  
Nov. i. § 5.

<sup>1</sup> Wincestre, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Wudestoc, S.

<sup>3</sup> F. A<sup>2</sup>. A<sup>4</sup>.; om. falso, A.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; recusantem, A.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; Anglia, A.

<sup>6</sup> Ramisiensis, C<sup>3</sup>.; Ramesiensis, F.

<sup>7</sup> fundator, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> At this point the Hengwrt MS. and All Souls' xxxi. terminate.

<sup>b</sup> Orderic (viii. 22) states that the charge of treason against Clinton, whom he elsewhere (xi. 2) speaks of as a man of low birth, raised out of the dust to wealth and honour by Henry's favour, was ex-

amined by David king of Scotland. Whether he was found guilty he does not say; this is added by Hoveden, but without, it would seem, any additional information besides what he found in Henry of Huntingdon.

§ 42. Anno sequenti fuit rex Henricus ad Natale A.D. 1132.  
apud Dunstapele,<sup>1</sup> ad Pascha apud Wodestoke. Post Henry in England.  
Pascha fuit magnum placitum apud Londoniam, ubi de Lawsuit between the  
pluribus quidem, et maxime discordia episcopi Sancti bishops of  
Davidis et episcopi Clamorgensis de finibus parochia- St. David's  
rum suarum, tractatum est. Obiit Baldewinus rex and Llandaff.  
Jerusalem, et Gaufridus successit.

Anno xxxiii. fuit Henricus rex ad Natale apud A.D. 1133.  
Winlesores<sup>2</sup> infirmus. Ad caput jejunii fuit conventus Various  
ad Londoniam super episcopos Sancti Davidis et Cla- transac-  
morgensis, et pro discordia archiepiscopi et Lincolien- tions, chiefly  
sis episcopi. Ad Pascha fuit rex apud Oxeneford in ecclesiastical.  
nova aula,<sup>3</sup> et ad Rogationes fuit iterum conventus  
apud Winestre super rebus prædictis. Post Pentecos-  
ten dedit rex episcopatum Elyensem Nigello, episcopa-  
tum Dunhelmie Galfrido cancellario. Fecit etiam rex  
novum episcopatum apud Karloil, et transiit mare.

§ 43. Sequenti anno rex Henricus moratus est in A.D. 1134.  
Normannia pro<sup>3</sup> gaudio nepotum suorum quos genuerat Henry goes  
consul Andegavensis in filia regis. Obiit<sup>4</sup> Gilebertus to Nor-  
Londoniensis episcopus, et Lavendensis<sup>6</sup> episcopus in mandy, and  
via Romæ, pro causa sua tam diu agitata.<sup>b</sup> Hoc anno returns no  
transfretavit archiepiscopus Willelmus, et Alexander more.  
Lincoliensis episcopus, ad regem, pro discordia quæ Dissension  
inter eos erat pro quibusdam consuetudinibus parochi- between the  
arum suarum. primate and  
the bishop  
of Lincoln.

Anno trigesimo quinto rex Henricus continue mo- A.D. 1135.  
ratus est in Normannia;<sup>7</sup> et sæpe, non rediturus in

<sup>1</sup> *Dunstaple*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F

<sup>2</sup> *Windesores*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Codd. ; *præ*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>. ; deest in A.

<sup>5</sup> *Gillebertus*, C<sup>3</sup>. F. ; *Gilbertus*,  
A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> *Lavandensis*, S. S<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>7</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. ; *Normanniam*, A.

<sup>a</sup> This probably refers to Oxford castle, and has nothing to do with the then nascent university. Compare the expression "in nova aula

"apud Westmuster," at § of this book.

<sup>b</sup> The suit was at last determined in favour of the see of St. David's. Comp. Malm., *Hist. Nov.*, i. § 7.

A.D. 1135.  
Quarrels  
between  
Matilda and  
her hus-  
band.

Angliam, redire proponebat; sed detinebat eum filia ejus, discordiis variis<sup>1</sup> quæ oriebantur pluribus causis inter regem et consulem Andegavensem, artibus scilicet filiæ suæ. Quibus stimulationibus rex in iram et animi rancorem excitatus est, quæ a nonnullis causa natura-<sup>2</sup> lis refrigerationis,<sup>3</sup> et postea mortis ejus causa fuisse dictæ sunt. Cum igitur rex a venatu redisset, apud Sanctum Dionysium in silva Leonum<sup>4</sup> comedit carnes murenarum, quæ semper ei nocebant, et semper eas amabat. Cum autem medicus hoc comedi prohiberet, non adquevit rex salubri consilio, secundum quod dicitur,

Cf. Malm.  
Hist. Nov.  
i. § 8.

Henry dies  
of an illness  
caused by  
eating lam-  
preys.

“Nitimur in vetitum semper, cupimusque negata.”

V. Amor.  
III. 4. 17.

Hæc igitur comestio, pessimi humoris illatrix et consimilium vehemens excitatrix, senile corpus letaliter refrigerans subitam et summam fecit perturbationem. Contra quod natura renitens excitavit febrem acutam<sup>3</sup> ad impetum dissolvendum materiei gravissimæ. Cum autem restare nulla vi<sup>4</sup> posset, decessit rex magnus, cum regnasset xxxv. annis et tribus mensibus, in prima die Decembris.

§ 44. Et jam in tanti fine regis finem libro dicamus; cui tamen, si meruit, musam memoriale dare comprecemur:—

Memorial  
verses.

Rex Henricus obit, decus olim, nunc dolor orbis;  
Numina flent numen deperisse suum.  
Mercurius minor eloquio, vi mentis Apollo,  
Jupiter imperio, Marsque vigore gemunt.  
Janus cautela minor, Alcides probitate,  
Conflictu Pallas, arte Minerva gemunt.

<sup>1</sup> om. A.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *refrigerationis*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *refridationis*, A.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *febrem accutam*, A.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *vi ulla*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *in nulla*, A<sup>4</sup>.; *in (seu vi) nullo*, A.

\* St. Denis le Fermont, in the Forêt des Lions, between Lions and Gisors, about six leagues from Rouen.

Anglia quæ cunis, quæ<sup>1</sup> sceptro numinis hujus      A.D. 1135.  
 Ardua splenduerat, jam tenebrosa ruit;  
 Hæc cum rege suo, Normannia cum duce marcet;<sup>2</sup>  
 Nutriit hæc puerum, perdidit illa virum.

*Explicit liber septimus.*

*Incipit liber octavus.*

# LIB. VIII.<sup>a</sup>

## INCIPIT LIBER DECIMUS.<sup>b</sup>

§ 1. Defuncto igitur Henrico rege magno, libera, ut in mortuo solent, judicia populi depromebantur. Alii enim eum tribus vehementer irradiasse splendoribus asserebant; sapientia summa, nam et consilio profundissimus, et providentia conspicuus, et eloquentia clarus habebatur; victoria etiam, quia, exceptis<sup>c</sup> aliis<sup>3</sup> quæ egregie gesserat, regem Francorum lege belli superaverat; divitiis quoque, quibus omnes antecessores suos longe longeque<sup>4</sup> præcesserat. Alii autem diverso studio tribus eum vitiis inficiebant; cupiditate nimia, qua (ut omnes parentes sui,) pauperes opulentus, tributis et exactionibus inhians, delatoriis hamis intercipiebat; crudelitate etiam, qua consulem<sup>5</sup> de Moretuil cognatum suum in captione positum exoculavit; (nec sciri facinus tam horrendum potuit usque quo mors secreta regis aperuit, nec minus et alia proponebant exempla,<sup>d</sup>

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; quo, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F. A<sup>2</sup>.; suo, A., supra-scripto *sevo*.

<sup>3</sup> Codd.; illis, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> Codd.; longe lateque, Sav.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; comitem, A., supra-scripto vel consulem.

<sup>a</sup> Of this book all but one leaf is wanting in S.

<sup>b</sup> "Decimus" in A., on which the text of the present edition is based, because in this MS., as explained in the Introduction, Books VIII. and IX. contain the author's

three epistles, and the treatise *De Miraculis Anglorum*.

<sup>c</sup> *exceptis*. The word seems to be used in the sense of "prætermisiss."

<sup>d</sup> See the *Epistle to Walter*, § 12, in the Appendix.

A.D. 1135. quæ tacemus;) luxuria quoque, quia mulierum ditioni, regis more Salomonis, continue subiacebat. Talia vulgus liberum diversificabat. Successu vero temporis atrocissimi, quod postea per Normannorum rabiosas proditioes exarsit, quicquid Henricus fecerat vel tyrannice vel regie, comparatione deteriorum visum est peroptimum. Venit enim sine mora Stephanus Theobaldi<sup>1</sup> Blesensis consulis frater, junior eo, vir magnæ strenuitatis et audaciæ; et quamvis jurasset sacramentum<sup>2</sup> fidelitatis Anglici regni filiæ regis Henrici, fretus tamen vigore et impudentia, regni diadema Dominum tentans invasit. Willelmus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui primus sacramentum filiæ regis fecerat, eum, proh dolor! in regem benedixit, unde iudicium illud Deus in eum statuit, quod sacerdoti magno Jeremiæ percussori statuerat, scilicet ne post annum viveret.<sup>3</sup> Rogerus magnus Saresbiriensis episcopus, qui secundus sacramentum illud prædictum fecerat, et omnibus aliis prædictaverat,<sup>3</sup> diadema ei et vires auxilii sui contribuit; unde postea justo Dei iudicio ab eodem quem creavit in regem captus et excruciatum miserandum sortitus est exterminium. Sed quid morer? omnes qui sacramentum iuraverant, tam præsules quam consules et principes, assensum Stephano præbuerunt, et hominum fecerunt. Hoc vero signum malum fuit, quod tam repente omnis Anglia, sine mora, sine labore, quasi in ictu oculi ei subjecta est. Diadematus igitur<sup>4</sup> curiam suam tenuit ad Natale apud Lundoniam.

His tyranny a light evil, compared with the miserable anarchy of the next reign. Stephen of Blois claims the throne; he is crowned by the primate.

All Stephen's supporters, who had sworn fealty to Matilda, came to a wretched end.

The corpse of Henry taken to Rouen, and thence to Caen; its horrible condition.

§ 2. Corpus autem regis Henrici adhuc insepultum erat in Normannia. Rex namque Henricus prima dei Decembris obierat; cujus corpus allatum est Rothomagum, et ibi viscera ejus et cerebrum et oculi con-

Jer. xl. 2.  
xviii. 16.

<sup>1</sup> Tedbaldi, S<sup>c</sup>. F.

<sup>2</sup> in sacramentum, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> prædicaverat, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; deest igitur in A. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

▪ With habitual inaccuracy, Henry has confounded together the prophecies uttered against Phassur the priest and Hananias the prophet.

sepulta sunt. Reliquum autem corpus cultellis circumquaque dissecatum<sup>1</sup> et multo sale aspersum coriis taurinis reconditum<sup>2</sup> est, causa foetoris evitandi, qui multus et infinitus jam circumstantes inficiebat. Unde et ipse qui magno pretio conductus securi caput ejus diffiderat, ut foetidissimum<sup>3</sup> cerebrum extraheret, quamvis linteaminibus caput suum obvolvisset, mortuus tamen ea causa pretio male gavisus est. Hic est ultimus e multis quem rex Henricus occidit.<sup>3</sup> Inde vero corpus regium Cadomum<sup>4</sup> sui deportaverunt, ubi diu in ecclesia positum in qua pater ejus sepultus fuerat, quamvis multo sale repletum esset et multis coriis reconditum, tamen continue ex corpore niger<sup>5</sup> humor et horribilis coria<sup>6</sup> pertransiens decurrebat, et vasis sub feretro susceptus a ministris horrore<sup>7</sup> fatiscentibus abjiciebatur. Vide igitur quicumque legis, quomodo regis potentissimi corpus, cujus cervix diademata auro et gemmis electissimis quasi Dei splendore vernaverat, cujus utraque manus sceptris præradiaverat, cujus reliqua superficies auro textili tota rutilaverat, cujus os tam deliciosissimis et exquisitis cibis pasci solebat, cui omnes assurgere, omnes expavescere, omnes congaudere, omnes admirari solebant; vide, inquam, quo corpus illud devenerit, quam horribiliter delituerit, quam miserabiliter abjectum fuerit. Vide rerum eventum, ex quo semper pendet judicium, et disce contemnere quicquid sic determinatur, quicquid sic adnihilatur. Tandem reliquæ regalis cadaveris allatæ sunt in Angliam, et sepultæ sunt intra XII. dies

A.D. 1136.

Reflections.

The remains are brought to England

<sup>1</sup> *desecatum*, Sav.<sup>2</sup> *fediissimum*, A<sup>2</sup>.<sup>3</sup> Deest hæc clausula in A<sup>2</sup>.; reperitur in A. C<sup>3</sup>. S<sup>3</sup>. F.<sup>4</sup> *Cadomum*, Sav.<sup>5</sup> *jugiter*, Sav.<sup>6</sup> *scoria*, Sav.<sup>7</sup> *fatore et horrore*, Sav.<sup>a</sup> On the embalming of the body of Henry I., comp. Malm., *Hist. Nov.*, i. § 10, and Ord. Vit., xiii.

J 204.

19. Orderic says that it was kept in St. Stephen's church at Caen four weeks, waiting for a fair wind.

R

A.D. 1135.  
and buried  
at Reading.

Natalis<sup>1</sup> apud abbatiam Redinges, quam rex Henricus fundaverat, et multis possessionibus ditaverat. Ibique rex venit Stephanus a curia sua quam tenuerat apud Londoniam in ipso Natali contra corpus patru sui, et Willelmus archiepiscopus Cantuariæ, et multi præsules et proceres, et sepelierunt regem Henricum cum debita tanto viro reverentia.

At Oxford  
Stephen  
promises  
various re-  
forms, but  
he did not  
keep his  
word.

§ 3. Inde perrexit rex Stephanus apud Oxeneford, ubi recordatus est et confirmavit pacta, quæ Deo et populo et sanctæ ecclesiæ concesserat in die coronationis suæ. Quæ sunt hæc: Primo vovit, quod defunctis episcopis nunquam retineret ecclesias in manu sua, sed statim electioni canonicæ consentiens episcopis eas investiret. Secundo vovit, quod nullius clerici vel laici silvas in manu sua retineret, sicut Henricus rex fecerat, qui singulis annis implacitaverat eos, si vel venationem cepissent in silvis propriis, vel si eas ad necessitates suas extirparent vel diminuerent. Quod placiti nefandi genus adeo fuit execrabile, ut si alicujus lucum, quem habere pecuniam æstimarent, a longe conspicerent, statim vastatum perhiberent, sive esset sive non, ut eum immerito redimerent. Tertio vovit, quod Dene-geldum,<sup>2</sup> id est, duos solidos ad hidam, quos antecessores sui accipere solebant singulis annis, in æternum condonaret. Hæc principaliter Deo vovit, et alia, sed nihil horum tenuit.

Malm. Hist.  
Nov. i. § 13.

Danegeld  
to be abo-  
lished.

A.D. 1138.  
Stephen  
leads an  
army to  
Durham;  
effects a  
peaceable  
understand-  
ing with  
David of  
Scotland,

§ 4. Stephanus rex primo anno regni sui, cum venisset in fine Natalis ad Oxenefordiam,<sup>3</sup> audivit nuntium dicentem sibi: "Rex Scottorum simulans se pacifice venire ad te gratia hospitandi, veniens in Carloil et in Novum Castellum, dolose cepit utraque." Cui rex Stephanus: "Quæ dolose cepit, victoriose recipiam." Promovit igitur rex impiger exercitum tantum erga David regem Scottorum, quantum nullus in Anglia

<sup>1</sup> Natalis Domini, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A. F.; Danegildum, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Oxneford, C<sup>3</sup>.; Oxeneford, F.

fuisse memorare potuit. Occurrens igitur ei rex David A.D. 1136. apud Dunelmiam,<sup>1</sup> concordatus est ei, reddens ei Novum Castellum; Carloil vero retinuit concessione regis Stephani. Rex tamen David homo regis Stephani non est effectus, quia sacramentum primus laicorum iuraverat filiæ regis, scilicet nepti suæ, de Anglia ei manutenenda post mortem Henrici; filius autem regis David whose son Henry does homage to him. Henricus homo<sup>2</sup> regis Stephani effectus est, deditque ei rex Stephanus burgum quod vocatur Huntendoniam in augmentum.<sup>3</sup> Rediens autem inde rex in Quadragesima tenuit curiam suam apud Lundoniam in sollemnitate Paschali, qua nunquam fuerat splendidior in Anglia multitudine, magnitudine, auro, argento, gemmis, vestibus, omnimodaque dapsilitate.

Ad Rogationes vero divulgatum est regem mortuum esse. Quod audiens Hugo Bigod<sup>4</sup> in castellum<sup>5</sup> Norwici subintravit, nec reddere voluit nisi ipsi regi advenienti, valde tamen invitus. Jam ergo cœpit rabies prædicta Normannorum perjurio et proditione pullulare. Cepit igitur rex castellum de Bakentun,<sup>6</sup> cujus dominus Robertus quidam proditor a rege descierat. Inde obsedit urbem Excestre, quam tenebat Baldewinus de Redvers<sup>7</sup> contra eum, ibique diu morando, machinas multas<sup>8</sup> construendo, multum thesauri sui absumpsit. Sero tamen redditum est ei castellum, et vindictam Stephen puts down the rising in Devonshire, but leaves the traitors unpunished. non exercuit in proditores suos, pessimo consilio usus; si enim eam tunc exercuisset, postea contra eum tot castella retenta non fuissent. Igitur inde<sup>9</sup> rex perrexit in insulam Vectam, et abstulit eam Baldewino de Redvers de quo prædiximus, et exulavit eum ab Anglia. Elatus igitur rex his<sup>10</sup> prospere gestis, venit

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; circa D., A<sup>2</sup>.; apud, *suprascripto vel circa*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; deest homo in A.

<sup>3</sup> *Huntedona in augmentum*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *Bigot*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *castello*, A. C<sup>3</sup>. F.

<sup>6</sup> A. F.; *Bathentum*, C<sup>3</sup>.; *Bathentune*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Bachentune*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>7</sup> *Rivers*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>8</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *suas*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Inde igitur*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *Inde*, C<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>10</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. F.; *hiis*, A.

A.D. 1186.  
He stays at  
Brampton,  
near Hun-  
tingdon.

venatum apud Brantonam,<sup>1</sup> quæ abest miliario ab Huntendona, et ibi placitavit de forestis procerum suorum, id est, de silvis et venationibus, et fregit votum et pactum Deo et populo.

A.D. 1187.  
The king  
goes to Nor-  
mandy; his  
success  
there.

§ 5. Stephanus rex anno secundo fuit ad Natale apud Dunestaple. In Quadragesima vero transfretavit in Normanniam. Transivit autem Alexander Lincolnien-  
sis episcopus et multi proceres cum eo. Ubi rex, Martiis altercationibus assolitus, omnia quæ incepit luculente perfecit; hostium circumventus repulit, hostilia castella depulit, egregie inter summos splenduit, concordiam cum rege Francorum composuit, et Eustachius filius ejus homo regis Francorum effectus est de Normannia, quæ Francorum adjacet imperio. Quod videns consul Andegavensis, qui supremus hostis ejus erat, (qui nimirum filiam regis Henrici duxerat, quæ imperatrix Alemanniæ fuerat, et sacramenta de regno Angliæ acceperat, unde et Angliam calumniabantur sponsus et sponsa,) cepit tamen inducias cum rege Stephano. Videbat enim se ad præsens regias vires non posse perfringere, tam pro multitudine probitatis, quam pecuniæ, quæ adhuc ex abundantia, thesauri regis defuncti supererat. Cunctis igitur prospere gestis, in ipso vestibulo Natalis rediit rex in Angliam clarus. Hi igitur duo anni Stephano regi prosperrimi fuerunt; tertius vero, de quo dicemus, mediocris et intercisus fuit; duo vero ultimi exitiales fuerunt et prærupti.

Comes to  
terms with  
Geoffrey of  
Anjou.

Returns to  
England.

A.D. 1188.

§ 6. Stephanus rex impiger tertio anno in ipso ingressu Angliæ provolavit ad Bedeford,<sup>2</sup> et in vigilia Natalis Domini et in toto Natali obsedit eam. Quod etiam multis Deo displicuisse visum est, quia sollemnitatem sollemnitatum parvi vel nihili pendebat. Reddita autem ei Bedefordia, in Scotiam promovit exercitum. Rex autem Scotorum, quia sacramentum fecerat filiæ regis Henrici, quasi sub velamento sanctitatis per

Expedition  
against  
Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> *Barantonam*, S<sup>2</sup>.

| <sup>2</sup> *Bedefordiam*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

suos execrabili ter egit. Mulieres enim gravidas findebant, et fœtus anticipatos abstrahabant. Pueros super acumina lancearum jactabant, presbyteros super altaria detruncabant, crucifixorum capita abscissa super cœsorum corpora ponebant, mortuorum vero capita mutuant super crucifixa reponebant. Quæcunque igitur Scoti attingebant, omnia erant plena horroris, plena immanitatis. Aderat clamor mulierum, ejulatus senum, morientium gemitus, viventium desperatio. Rex igitur Stephanus insurgens combussit et destruxit australes partes regni regis David, ipso quidem David non audente ei<sup>1</sup> congregari.

Cruelties of the Scotch.

§ 7. Post Pascha vero exarsit rabies proditorum nefanda. Quidam namque proditorum, nomine Talebot, tenuit contra regem castellum Herefordiæ in Wales; quod tamen rex per obsidionem in suum recepit. Robertus consul, filius Henrici regis nothus, tenuit contra eum fortissimum castellum Bristoue,<sup>2</sup> et aliud quod vocatur Slede. Radulfus<sup>3</sup> Luvel tenuit castellum de Cari,<sup>4</sup> Paganellus castellum de Ludelaue, Willelmus de Moium castellum de Dunestore, Robertus de Nicole castellum de Warham, Eustachius filius Johannis castellum de Merton,<sup>4</sup> Willelmus filius Alani castellum de Salopesberi, quod rex quidem cepit armis, captorumque nonnullos suspendit. Quod audiens Walkelinus, qui tenebat castellum de Dovre,<sup>5</sup> reginæ se obsidenti reddidit illud.

Several great barons revolt; Talbot at Hereford, Lovel at Castle-Cary, &c.: Robert of Gloucester holds Bristol.

Occupato igitur rege circa partes australes Angliæ, David Scotorum rex innumerabilem exercitum promo-

King David with a great army invades Eng-

<sup>1</sup> cum eo, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Bristou, A<sup>2</sup>.; Bristowe, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Willelmus, C<sup>2</sup>. S<sup>2</sup>.; Radulfus, A<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>4</sup> Mealtuns, C<sup>2</sup>. F.; Meltone, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> C<sup>2</sup>. F.; Dovre, A<sup>2</sup>.; Douvere, S<sup>2</sup>.; Dovra, A.

\* In the *Gesta Stephani* (Duchesne, p. 942) it is related that Stephen took the castle of Cary about this time, after a troublesome siege. He seems to have entrusted it to the keeping of one of his fol-

lowers, a knight named Tracey, named farther on in the *Gesta*, in order that the post might serve as a check on the strong castle of Bristol, belonging to Robert earl of Gloucester.

A.D. 1138.  
land; the  
English  
forces,  
raised by  
the energy  
of arch-  
bishop  
Thurstan,  
meet him  
near North-  
allerton.

vit in Angliam. Contra quem procures boreales Angliæ, admonitione et jussu Turstani Eboracensis archiepiscopi, restiterunt viriliter, fixo Standard, id est, regio insigni, apud Alvertone. Cum autem morbi causa non posset archiepiscopus interesse pugnæ, misit loco sui Radulfum episcopum Orcadum; \* qui stans in acie media loco eminenti hujusmodi usus est incentivo:—

Address of  
the bishop  
of the  
Orkneys.

§ 8. "Procures Angliæ clarissimi Normannigenæ, me-  
" minisse enim vestri vos nominis et generis prælia-  
" tuos decet, perpendite qui, et contra quos, et ubi,  
" bellum geratis. Vobis enim nemo impune restitit.  
" Audax Francia vos experta <sup>1</sup> delituit: ferox <sup>2</sup> Anglia  
" vobis capta succubuit, dives Apulia vos sortita re-  
" floruit, Jerusalem famosa, et insignis Antiochia, se  
" vobis utraque supposuit. Nunc autem Scotia vobis  
" rite subjecta repellere conatur; inermem præferens  
" temeritatem, rixæ quam pugnæ aptior; in quibus  
" quidem nulla vel rei militaris scientia, vel præliandi  
" peritia, vel moderandi gratia. Nullus igitur verendi  
" locus, sed potius verecundiæ, quod hi quos semper  
" in patria sua petivimus et vicimus, in patria nostra  
" ritu transverso ebrii dementesque convolarunt. Quod  
" tamen vobis ego præsul et archipræsulis vestri loco  
" situs, divina providentia factum denuntio, ut hi qui  
" in hac patria templa Dei violarunt, altaria cruen-  
" taverunt, presbyteros occiderunt, nec pueris nec  
" pugnantibus pepercerunt, in eadem condignas sui  
" facinoris luant poenas. Quod justissimum suæ dispo-  
" sitionis arbitrium per manus vestras hodie perficiet  
" Deus. Attollite igitur animos, viri elegantes, et ad-  
" versus hostem nequissimum, freti virtute patria, immo

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; *ex parte*, A.

| <sup>2</sup> *ferax*, Sav.

\* Ralph Nowel, a priest of York, had been consecrated by archbishop Thomas to the diocese of the Orkneys. From the Chronicle of Thomas Stubbs the Dominican (Twys-

den, p. 1718) who mentions this fact, it appears that all the Scottish sees were at this time subject to York.

" Dei præsentia, exsurgite. Neque vos temeritas eorum A.D. 1138.  
 " moveat, cum illos tot nostræ virtutis insignia non  
 " deterreant. Illi nesciunt armari se in bello, vos in  
 " pace armis exercemini, ut in bello casus belli dubios  
 " non sentiat. Tegitur nobis galea caput, lorica  
 " pectus, ocreis crura, totumque clipeo corpus; ubi  
 " feriat hostis non reperit, quem ferro septum circum-  
 " spicit. Procedentes igitur adversus inermes et nudos  
 " quid dubitamus? an numerum? sed non tam nume-  
 " rus multorum quam virtus paucorum bellum conficit.  
 " Multitudo enim disciplinæ insolens ipsa sibi est in-  
 " pedimento in prosperis ad victoriam, in adversis ad  
 " fugam. Præterea majores nostri<sup>1</sup> multos pauci sæpe  
 " vicerunt. Quid ergo conferet vobis gloria parentalis,  
 " exercitatio sollennis, disciplina militaris, nisi multos  
 " pauciores vincatis? Sed jam finem dicendi suadet  
 " hostis inordinate proruens, et, quod animo valde meo  
 " placet, disperse confluens. Vos igitur, archipræsulis  
 " vestri loco, qui hodie commissa in Domini domum,  
 " in Domini sacerdotes, in Domini gregem pusillum  
 " vindicaturi estis, si quis vestrum prælians occubuerit,  
 " absolvimus ab omni pœna peccati, in nomine Patris,  
 " cujus creaturas fœde et horribiliter destruxerunt, et  
 " Filii, cujus altaria maculaverunt, et Spiritus Sancti,  
 " a quo sublimatos insane ceciderunt."

§ 9. Respondit omnis populus Anglorum, et resonue- Battle of  
the Stand-  
ard.  
 runt montes et colles, Amen, Amen; exclamavitque  
 simul exercitus Scotorum insigne patrium, et ascendit  
 clamor usque in cœlum, Albani, Albani. Extinctus  
 autem clamor est ictuum immanitate et horrendo fra-  
 gore. Principium pugnæ: dum acies Loenensium, qui  
 gloriam primi ictus a rege Scotorum invito præripue-  
 rant, amentatis missilibus et lanceis longissimis super  
 aciem equitum nostrorum loricatam percutiunt, quasi  
 muro ferreo offendentes, impenetrabiles invenerunt.  
 Viri autem sagittarii equitibus immixti obnubilantes

<sup>1</sup> vestri C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>. F.

A.D. 1138. eos nimirum inermes penetrabant. Tota namque gens Normannorum et Anglorum in una acie circum Standard conglobata persistebant immobiles. Percusso igitur sagitta summo duce Loenensium, corruit ipse, et tota gens eorum in fugam conversa est. Offensus namque Deus excelsus erat eis, et omnis virtus eorum tanquam araneorum contextio demolita est. Quod videns acies maxima Scotorum, quæ ex alia parte acerrime pugnabat, animo delicuit,<sup>a</sup> et fugæ indulsit. Regalis autem acies, quam ex pluribus gentibus rex Davidus constituerat, simul hoc vidit, coeperunt,<sup>1</sup> primum sigillatim, postea catervatim aufugere, rege jam pœne solo persistente. Quod amici regis videntes, coegerunt eum sonipede arrepto terga dare. Filius autem regis strenuissimus non attendens ad hæc quæ fieri a suis videbat, sed soli gloriæ et virtuti inhians, fugientibus reliquis fortissime assiluit aciem hostium, et miro impetu percussit. Sola namque acies ejus equis<sup>2</sup> residebat, ex Anglis videlicet et Normannis composita, qui patris in familia conversabantur. Equitantes autem nulla ratione diu persistere potuerunt contra milites loricatos pede persistentes et immobiliter coacervatos; sed lanceis confractis et equis vulneratis aufugere quidem, gloriose tamen re gesta, compulsi sunt. XI. millia Scotorum fama refert occisa, extra eos qui in segetibus et silvis inventi sunt et perempti. Nostri vero minimo sanguine fuso<sup>3</sup> feliciter triumpharunt. Hujus pugnae dux fuit Willelmus consul de Albemarle, et Guillelmus<sup>4</sup> Piperellus de Notingham, et Walterus Espech,<sup>5</sup> et Gillebertus<sup>6</sup> de Laci, cujus frater ibi solus ex omnibus equitibus occisus est. Cujus eventus belli cum regi

Bravery of  
prince  
Henry.

The Scots  
defeated  
with heavy  
loss.

<sup>1</sup> *ceperunt ergo*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *equitibus*, S<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Om. Sav.

*Willelmus*, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *Espec*, A<sup>2</sup>. F.

<sup>6</sup> *Ilebertus*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *Libertus*, S<sup>2</sup>.; *Ibertus*, F.

<sup>a</sup> Compare "animis delicuerunt," Book vii., § 8.

Stephano nuntiatus, esset, ipse et omnes qui aderant A.D. 1188.  
summas Deo gratias exsolverunt.<sup>1</sup>

Hoc bellum Augusti mense factum est. At in Ad-  
ventu Domini concilium apud Lundoniam Albricus  
ecclesiæ Romanæ legatus et Hostiensis episcopus tenuit.  
Ibidem, adnitente rege Stephano, Theobaldus abbas  
Beccensis Cantuariensis archiepiscopus effectus est.

Council held  
at London  
by the  
legate.

Theobald  
raised to the  
primacy.

§ 10. Anno III<sup>to</sup> rex Stephanus post Natale castellum  
de Slede cepit obsidione. Perrexit autem post hæc in  
Scotiam, ubi cum rem Marte et Vulcano ducibus ageret,  
rex Scotiæ cum eo concordari coactus est. Henricum  
igitur filium regis Scottorum secum ducens in Angliam,  
obsedit Ludelawe, ubi idem Henricus unco ferreo equo  
abstractus pœne captus est, sed ipse rex eum ab hos-  
tibus splendide retraxit. Inde re imperfecta<sup>2</sup> Oxene-  
fordiam petiit, ubi res infamia notabilis et ab omni  
consuetudine remota comparuit. Rex namque Rogerum  
episcopum Saresbiriensem<sup>3</sup> et Alexandrum Lincolnien-  
sem ipsius nepotem cum pacifice suscepisset, violenter  
in curia sua cepit, nihil justitiæ recusantes, et iudicii  
æquitatem devotissime poscentes. Ponens igitur ibidem  
Alexandrum episcopum in carcere, episcopum Sares-  
biriensem secum duxit ad castellum ejusdem quod  
vocatur Divise, quo non erat aliud splendidius intra  
fines Europæ. Angarians igitur eum jejunii tormento,  
et filii ejus, qui cancellarius fuerat regius, laqueo  
collum circumnectens ut suspenderetur, tali modo cas-  
tellum sibi extorsit, male recordans bonorum quæ in  
introitu regni sui præ omnibus aliis ei congesserat.  
Talem ei devotionis suæ retributionem exhibuit. Si-  
militer cepit Sireburnam, quod parum Divisis decore  
cedebat; accipiensque thesauros episcopi, comparavit  
inde Constantiam sororem Lodovici regis Francorum  
ad opus Eustachii filii sui.

A.D. 1189.  
Treaty with  
Scotland.

The king  
rescues  
prince  
Henry at  
the siege of  
Ludlow.

At Oxford  
he arrests  
the bishops  
of Salisbury  
and Lin-  
coln;

and thus  
obtains the  
castles of  
Devizes and  
Sherborne  
belonging to  
the former,

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>. F.; *exsolverint*, A.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *perfecta*, A. F.

<sup>3</sup> *Salesbiriensem* hic et alias, C<sup>3</sup>.

A<sup>2</sup>. et F.

A.D. 1139.  
and those of  
Newark and  
Sleaford  
belonging to  
the latter.

§ 11. Rex inde rediens Alexandrum episcopum, quem dimiserat in captione apud Oxeneford, duxit secum ad Newercham.<sup>1</sup> Ibi quidem construxerat episcopus super flumen Trente in loco amœnissimo vernantissimum florida compositione castellum. Quo cum venisset, indixit rex episcopo jejunium non legitimum, astruens fide data eum omni cibo cariturum, donec ei redderetur castellum. Vix igitur episcopus lacrimis et precibus a suis obtinere potuit, ut castrum suum a jure suo in extraneorum custodiam deponerent. Similiter redditum est aliud castellum ejus quod vocatur Eslaforð,<sup>2</sup> neque forma neque situ a prædicto secundum. Nec longe post, cum Henricus Wintoniensis episcopus frater regis jam legatus Romanæ ecclesiæ concilium apud Wintoniam teneret, ipse et Theobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et omnes episcopi qui aderant ad pedes regios devoluti sunt, devotissima supplicatione poscentes ut episcopis prædictis possessiones suas redderet, ut omnia in eos commissa regi benigne condonarent. Sed rex pravorum consilio tot et tantorum tam verendam prosternationem despiciens, nihil eos impetrare permisit. Ob quod patefacta est domus regis Stephani finitimæ condemnationi. Statim namque filia regis Henrici, quæ fuerat imperatrix Alemanniæ, cui Anglia jramento addicata<sup>3</sup> fuerat, venit in Angliam. Quam cum rex obsedisset apud Arundel, vel perfida credens consilia, vel quia castrum videbat inexpugnabile, ire permisit ad Bristowe.

The king's  
harshness  
brought on  
merited  
retribution,  
through the  
troubles en-  
suing on the  
landing of  
the empress.

Death of  
Roger  
bishop of  
Salisbury.

Reflections  
on the in-  
stability of  
fortune.

Eodem anno Rogerus prædictus episcopus, tam mœrore quam senio confectus, demarcuit. Stupeant igitur omnes lecturi tantam tam subitam rerum permutationem. Viro namque præfato tot a juventutis exordio bona contigerant, et sine interpolatione<sup>4</sup> in cumulum creverant, ut diceremus omnes in eo fortunam suæ vo-

<sup>1</sup> *Newercham*, C<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> *Eslaforð*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *dedicata*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> *interpellatione*, Sav.

lubilitatis oblitam. Nec aliquibus adversis in tota vita sua potuit affici,<sup>1</sup> donec tantæ miseriæ cumulus simul confluens in extremis eum præfocavit. Nullus igitur de felicitatis assiduitate confidat; nullus de fortunæ stabilitate præsumat; nullus in rota volubili sedem confixam diu superesse contendat. A.D. 1139.

Cf. Flor.  
Wig. an.  
1140.

§ 12. Quinto anno post Natale fugavit rex Stephanus Nigellum episcopum Eliensem de episcopatu suo, quia nepos prædicti episcopi Saresbiriensis erat, a quo odii incentivum in progeniem ejus traxerat. Ubi autem ad Natale vel ad Pascha fuerit, dicere non attinet. Jam quippe curiæ solemnes, et ornatus regii scematis ab antiqua serie descendens, prorsus evanuerant. Ingens thesauri copia jam deperierat; pax in regno nulla; cædibus, incendiis, rapinis, omnia exterminabantur; clamor et luctus et horror ubique; unde sic dictum est elegiace: A.D. 1140.

Confusion  
and blood-  
shed pre-  
vail through-  
out the  
kingdom.

Quis mihi det fontem, quid enim potius, lacrimarum?

Et lacrimæ patriæ gesta nefanda meæ.

Advenit caligo Stigis dimissa profundo,

Quæ regni faciem conglomerata tegit.

Ecce furor, fremitus, incendia, furta, rapinæ,

Cædes, nulla fides, consociata ruunt.

Jam furantur opes et opum dominos, et in ipsis

Sopitos castris, o nova furta! premunt.

Perjurare, fidem mentiri, nobile factum;

Prodere vel dominos actio digna viris.

Concio prædonum cimiteria, templa, refringunt:

Namque sacerdotes, res miseranda, rapit.

Detorquent unctos Domini, simul et mulieres,

Proh pudor! ut redimant excruciare student.

Affluit ergo fames; consumpta carne gementes

Exhalant animas ossa cutisque vagas.

Quis tantos sepelire queat cœtus morientum?

Ecce Stigis facies, consimilisque lues.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>1</sup>.; vocabulum pœne erasum est in A.; *effici*, F.

A.D. 1141.  
Stephen  
lays siege  
to Lincoln.  
The earls of  
Chester and  
Gloucester  
approach to  
raise the  
siege.

§ 13. Sexto anno rex Stephanus Lincolnæ urbem infra Natale obsedit, cujus munitiones fraudulenter ceperat Rannulfus<sup>1</sup> comes Cestriæ; seditque ibi usque ad Purificationem Sanctæ Mariæ. Tunc namque prædictus Rannulfus<sup>1</sup> adduxit secum Robertum filium regis Henrici socerum suum, et procures alios validissimos, ad obsidionem regis dissolvendam. Cum autem consul audacissimus paludem poene intransibilem vix transisset, in ipsa die aciebus dispositis regem bello aggressus est. Ipse cum suis aciem primam construxerat; secundam illi quos Stephanus rex dehæreditaverat; tertiam Robertus dux magnus cum suis. A latere vero erat turma Walensium, magis audacia quam armis instructa. Tunc consul Cestriæ vir bellicosus et armis insignibus coruscans Robertum consulem procuresque reliquos sic alloquitur:

Speech of  
the earl of  
Chester.

§ 14. "Gratias tibi multas, dux invictissime, vobisque, procures et commilitones mei, cum summa devotione persolvo, qui usque ad vitæ periculum amoris effectum mihi magnanimiter exhibuistis. Cum igitur sim vobis causa periculi, dignum est ut periculo me prius ingeram, et infidissimi regis, qui datis induciis pacem fregit, aciem prius illidam. Ego quidem tam de regis injustitia quam de mea confidens virtute, jam jam regalem cuneum diffindam, gladio mihi viam per hostes medios parabo. Vestræ virtutis est sequi præeuntem, et imitari percutientem. Jam videor animo mihi præsago regias acies transvolare, procures pedibus conculcare, regem ipsum gladio transverberare."

Reply of  
the earl of  
Gloucester.

Dixerat: dux autem Robertus sic juveni respondit, et in loco stans eminenti hujusmodi orationem habuit:

§ 15. "Non indignum est quod ictus primi dignitatem poscis, tam ex nobilitate quam virtute quam præcellis. Si tamen de nobilitate contendas, ego

<sup>1</sup> *Ranulfus, A<sup>2</sup>.*

" filius regis nobilissimi et nepos summi regis non A.D. 1141.  
 " antecellor; si de virtute, hic multi sunt electissimi,  
 " quibus nemo viventium probitate potest præferri.  
 " Sed longe alia me movet ratio. Rex enim, contra  
 " sacramenta quæ sorori meæ fecit, regnum crudeliter  
 " usurpavit, et omnia conturbans multis millibus causa  
 " necis extitit, et exemplo sui nihil juris habentibus  
 " terras distribuit, jure possidentibus diripuit. Ab  
 " ipsis ergo nequiter de hæredatis, summo iudice Deo  
 " cooperante et vindictam subministrante, prius ag-  
 " grediendus est. Respiciet, qui judicat populos in æqui-  
 " tate, de excelso cœlorum habitaculo, et injustum juste  
 " appetentes in hac tanta necessitate nequaquam relin-  
 " quet. Unum vero est, procures fortissimi militesque  
 " universi, quod vobis animo firmiter ingerere volo,  
 " quod<sup>1</sup> per paludes, quas vix pertransistis, nulla po-  
 " test esse fugientibus reversio. Hic igitur vel vin-  
 " cendum vel occumbendum; spes fugæ nulla; hoc  
 " solum superest, ut in urbem gladiis viam paretis.  
 " Si quid autem veri conjecturat animus mihi, hoc  
 " quod fugere nusquam potestis, illud est quod hodie  
 " Deo vobis adjuvante<sup>2</sup> victoriam præstabit. Necesse  
 " est enim ut ad probitatem confugiat, cui non potest  
 " aliud esse diffugium. Cives autem Lincolnenses,  
 " qui stant urbi suæ proximi, in impetus gravedine  
 " animis liquescentibus ad domos suas transfugere  
 " victoriosi videbitis. Veruntamen contra quos bellum  
 " geratis attendite. Alanus Britonum dux contra vos,  
 " immo contra Deum, procedit armatus; vir nefandus,  
 " et omnium genere scelerum pollutus, malitia paris  
 " nescius, cui nunquam nocendi defuit affectus, cui  
 " se non esse crudelitate incomparabilem<sup>3</sup> solum et  
 " supremum videtur opprobrium. Procedit quoque con-

He analyses  
 the composi-  
 tion of the  
 opposing  
 forces, and  
 the char-  
 acter of the  
 leaders.

The Lincoln  
 burghers  
 will not  
 stand for a  
 moment.  
 Alan of  
 Brittany is  
 a villain  
 stained with  
 every crime.

<sup>1</sup> Deest in A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> vobis Deo adj., C<sup>3</sup>.; nobis Deo adj., A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; comparabilem, A. F.

A.D. 1141. "tra vos comes Mellensis, doli callidus, fallendi artifex,  
 The earl of "cui innata est in corde nequitia, in ore fallacia, in  
 Mellent is "opere pigritia, corde gloriosus, ore magnificus,<sup>1</sup> opere  
 a coward. "pusillanimis,<sup>2</sup> ad congregiendum ultimus, ad digre-  
 "diendum primus, tardus ad pugnam, velox ad fu-  
 Hugh, earl "gam. Procedit contra vos Hugo consul, cui parum  
 of Norfolk, is "visum est se contra imperatricem perjurum<sup>2</sup> fuisse,  
 a perjurer. "nisi et secundo se patentissime perjuraret, affirmans  
 "regem Henricum Stephano regnum concessisse, et  
 "filiam suam abdicasse, qui nimirum fallaciam virtu-  
 tem credit, et elegantiae perjurium ducit. Proce-  
 dit consul de Albemarle, vir in crimine singularis  
 constantiae, ad agendum volubilis, ad relinquendum  
 immobilis, quam sponsa sua causa spurcitiae into-  
 lerabilis fugitiva reliquit. Procedit consul ille, qui  
 consuli praedicto sponsam abripuit, adulter paten-  
 tissimus<sup>3</sup> et excellenter impurus, Baccho devotus,  
 Marti ignotus, vino redolens, bellis insolens. Procedit  
 Simon comes Hamtoniensis, cujus actus sola locutio,  
 cujus datum sola promissio, qui cum dicit, fecit, cum  
 promittit, dedit. Procedunt caeteri consules et pro-  
 cures regi suo consimiles, latrociniis assueti, rapinis  
 delibuti, homicidiis saginati, omnes tandem perjuria  
 contaminati. Vos igitur, viri fortissimi, quos magnus  
 rex Henricus erexit, iste dejecit,—ille instruxit, iste  
 destruxit,—erigite animos, et de virtutibus vestris,  
 immo de Dei justitia confisi, vindictam vobis a Deo  
 oblatam de facinorosis praesumite, et gloriam immar-  
 cessibilem vobis et posteris vestris praefigite. Et  
 jam, si vobis idem animus est, ad hoc Dei judicium

Rad. de Di-  
 ceto Abbr.  
 Chron. a.  
 1135.

The earl of  
 Albemarle  
 is a man of  
 infamous  
 life.

The earl of  
 Northamp-  
 ton noto-  
 rious for  
 breaking  
 faith.  
 The others  
 are all of  
 similar  
 character.

<sup>1</sup> magnanimus, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> perjurium, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>; potentissimus, A.

\* Here, as in scores of other places, the Arundel MS. followed in this edition differs from the majority of the MSS. by adopting a different order of words. The reading of the Cambridge MS. and of Reg. 13, B. vi. is "gloriosus corde,

"magnanimus ore, pusillanimis opere." The cause of these divergences must apparently be traced in a taste for variety on the part of the scribe of the Arundel MS.

“perpetrandum progressionem vovete, fugam abjurate, A.D. 1141.

“erectis in cœlum unanimiter dextris.

§ 16. Vix finierat, et omnes, extensis in cœlum manibus, terribili clamore fugam abjuraverunt, et se in armis colligentes in hostem splendide progrediuntur. The troops swear not to give way.

En. viii. 19. Rex interea Stephanus curarum magnis exæstuan- Stephen pre- pares for battle.

fluctibus missam in tanta sollemnitate audierat. Cum autem de more cereum rege dignum Deo offerens manibus Alexandri episcopi imponeret, confractus est. Bad omens.

Hoc fuit regi signum contritionis. Cecidit etiam super altare pixis, cui corpus Domini inerat, abrupto vinculo, præsentē episcopo. Hoc fuit regi signum ruinæ. Proinde rex strenuissimus egreditur, aciesque cum summa securitate bello disponit. Ipse pedes omnem circa se multitudinem loricorum equis abductis strictissime collocavit, consules cum suis in duabus aciebus equis pugnatos instituit. Sed admodum parvæ equestres acies illæ comparuerunt. Paucos enim secum ficti et factiosi consules adduxerant; acies autem regalis maxima erat, uno tantum scilicet ipsius regis insignita vexillo. Tunc, quia rex Stephanus festiva carebat voce, Baldewino filio Gilleberti, magnæ nobilitatis viro et militi fortissimo, sermo exhortatorius ad universum cœtum injunctus est.\* He draws up his army in two lines; but there was a paucity of cavalry.

Memoratus igitur Baldewinus loco stans excelso, Speech of Baldwin Fitz-Gilbert. omnium oculis in eum erectis, ubi attentionem eorum modesta taciturnitate stimulavit, sic exorsus est:

\* “At the foot of this page is a fair drawing in outline representing a crowned figure with three attendant knights, all in chain armour and bearing the kite-shaped shield, addressing [addressed by] a figure also in armour, but without helmet, standing upon an eminence, and leaning upon a battle-axe. The king’s attendant is ascending the

“hill before him, leading a horse and bearing a shield. The rubricated inscriptions are nearly defaced; over the three knights is the word *exercitus*, and above the figure upon the eminence appears . . . *bal . . . filius Gilleberti . . . us . . . di was*.” [Note by the transcriber of the Arundel MS.]

A.D. 1141.  
A just cause,  
numbers,  
and courage  
are all on  
our side.

Our brave  
king will  
fight  
amongst us

The other  
side are not  
formidable;  
earl Robert  
is a loiterer,  
the earl of  
Chester rash  
and un-  
steady; his  
Welsh levies  
are but half  
armed.

§ 17. "Omnes qui aciebus dispositis conflicturi sunt,<sup>1</sup>  
tria prævidisse oportet, primum justitiam causæ, de-  
inde militum copiam, postremo adstantium probitatem.  
Justitiam causæ, ne periculum animæ incurratur  
copiam militum, ne hostium numerositate compri-  
matur; probitatem adstantium, ne numero confisa  
debilibus tamen innixa subruatur. In his omnibus  
negotium, quo tenemur, expeditum conspicimus. Cau-  
sæ namque nostræ justitia est, quod regi ea quæ  
coram Deo vovimus servantes, contra suos in eum  
perjuros in periculo mortis adstamus. Numerus vero  
nobis in equitibus non inferior, in peditibus con-  
fertior. Probitatem vero tot consulum, tot procerum,  
militum quoque bellis assuetorum semper, quis vo-  
cibus exæquet? Virtus autem ipsius regis infinita  
vobis loco perstabit millium. Cum igitur sit in  
medio vestrum dominus vester, unctus. Domini, cui  
fidem devovistis, votum Deo persolvite, tanto dona-  
tivum majus a Deo accepturi, quanto fidelius et con-  
stantius pro rege vestro, fidi contra infidos, legitimi  
contra perjuros pugnaveritis. Securi quinetiam et  
summa repleti confidentia, contra quos bellum ge-  
ratis perpendite. Roberti ducis vires notæ sunt.  
Ipse quidem de more<sup>2</sup> multum minatur, parum ope-  
ratur; ore leoninus, corde leporinus, clarus eloquentia,  
obscurus inertia. Consul autem Cestrensis, vir au-  
dacie irrationalis, promptus ad conspirandum, in-  
constans ad perficiendum, ad bellum impetuosus,  
periculi improvidus, altiora se machinans, impossi-  
bilibus anhelans,<sup>3</sup> assiduorum paucos adducens, con-  
venarum dispersam multitudinem congregans, nihil  
habet quod timeri debeat. Semper enim, quicquid  
viriliter inceptit, effeminate reliquit. In omnibus  
quippe gestis suis infortunate rem agens, vel in  
congressibus victus aufugit, vel si raro victor extitit,

Codd.; *estis*, Sav.  
C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; *morte*, A. F.

<sup>2</sup> C<sup>3</sup>.; *anelans*, A<sup>2</sup>.; *hanelans*,  
A. F.

“ *majora victis detrimenta sustinuit. Walenses autem* A.D. 1141  
 “ *quos secum adduxit solos,<sup>1</sup> vobis<sup>2</sup> despectui sint, qui*  
 “ *inermem bello præferunt temeritatem, et arte et usu*  
 “ *belli carentes, quasi pecora decurrunt in venabula.*  
 “ *Alii vero, tam proceres quam milites, transfugæ et*  
 “ *gyrovagi, utinam numero plures adducerentur, qui*  
 “ *quanto numero plures, tanto effectu deteriores. Vos*  
 “ *igitur consules, et viri consulares, meminisse namque*  
 “ *vos decet vestræ virtutis et nobilitatis, hodie probitates*  
 “ *vestras numerosas in cacumen florentissimum extol-*  
 “ *lite, et patrum imitatores filiis vestris splendorem sem-*  
 “ *piternum relinquit. Assiduitas itaque victoriarum*  
 “ *incentivum sit vobis configendi; assiduitas infortuni-*  
 “ *orum incentivum fiet illis fugiendi. Jam siquidem,*  
 “ *nec fallor, eos advenisse pœnitet; jam de fuga medi-*  
 “ *tantur, si locorum asperitas admittat. Cum ergo*  
 “ *nec illis configere nec confugere sit possibile, quid*  
 “ *aliud egerunt, nisi quod vobis, Dei nutu, et se et*  
 “ *impedimenta sua obtulerunt? Equos itaque eorum* Your victory  
is certain.  
 “ *et arma, et ipsorum corpora, ditioni vestræ sub-*  
 “ *jecta conspicitis. Extendite igitur animos vestros,*  
 “ *et dexteras inexpugnabiles, viri bellicosi, ad diripi-*  
 “ *endum cum summo tripudio quod ipse vobis obtulit*  
 “ *Deus.” Sed jam antequam orationis seriem termi-*  
 “ *naret, clamor adest hostium, clangor lituorum, equorum*  
 “ *fremitus, terræ sonitus.*

§ 18. *Principium pugnæ. Acies exhæredatorum, quæ* Battle of  
Lincoln.  
*præibat, percussit aciem regalem, in qua consul Alanus,*  
*et ille de Meslent, et Hugo consul de Estangle, et*  
*Simon comes, et ille de Warennæ inerant, tanto impetu,*  
*quod statim quasi in ictu oculi dissipata est, et divisio*  
*eorum in tria devenit. Alii namque eorum occisi sunt,*  
*alii capti, alii aufugerunt. Acies cui principabatur*  
*consul de Albemarle, et Willelmus Yprensis, percussit*  
*Walenses qui a latere procedebant, et in fugam coegit.*  
*Sed acies consulis Cestrensis perculit cohortem prædicti* The king's  
army put to  
flight.

<sup>1</sup> F.; cæteri codices, *soli*.

| <sup>2</sup> *nobis*, A<sup>2</sup>.

J 204.

A.D. 1141. consulis, et dissipata est in momento sicut acies prior. Fugerunt igitur omnes equites regis, et Willelmus Yprensis, a Flandria oriundus, vir exconsularis et magnæ probitatis. Qui cum esset belli peritissimus, videns impossibilitatem auxiliandi regi,<sup>1</sup> distulit auxilium suum in tempora meliora. Rex itaque Stephanus cum acie sua pedestri relictus est in medio hostium. Circuierunt igitur undique aciem regalem, et totam in circuitu expugnabant, sicut castellum solet assiliri. Tunc vero horrendam belli faciem videres in omni circuitu regalis aciei, ignem prosilientem ex galearum et gladiatorum collisione, stridorem horrendum, clamorem terrificum; resonabant colles, resonabant urbis muralia. Impetu igitur equorum regalem turmam offendentes, quosdam cædebant, alios<sup>2</sup> sternebant, nonnullos abstractos capiebant. Nulla eis quies, nulla respiratio dabatur, nisi in ea parte quæ rex fortissimus stabat, horrentibus inimicis incomparabilem ictuum ejus immanitatem. Quod ubi comes Cestrensis comperit, regis invidens gloriæ cum omni pondere armatorum irruit in eum. Tunc apparuit vis regis fulminea, bipenni maxima cædens hos, diruens<sup>3</sup> illos. Tunc novus oritur clamor; omnes in eum, ipse in omnes. Tandem regia bipennis ex ictuum frequentia confracta est. Ipse gladio abstracto dextra regis digno, rem mirabiliter agit, donec et gladius confractus est. Quod videns Guillelmus<sup>4</sup> de Kahaines, miles validissimus, irruit in regem, et eum galea arripiens voce magna clamavit: "Huc omnes, huc! regem teneo." Advolant omnes, et capitur rex. Capitur etiam Baldewinus qui orationem fecerat persuasoriam, multis confossus vulneribus, multis contritus ictibus, ubi egregie resistendo gloriam promeruit sempiternam. Capitur etiam Ricardus filius Ursi, qui in ictibus dandis recipiendisque clarus et gloriosus comparuit. Adhuc, capto rege, pugnabat acies regalis, nec enim circumventi fugere poterant, donec omnes vel

Stubborn resistance of Stephen and his immediate followers.

The king made prisoner by William de Kahaines.

Fitz-Gilbert and Fitz-Urse are also taken.

<sup>1</sup> Codd.; *reges*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Codd.; *quosdam*, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> Codd.; *ruens*, Sav.

<sup>4</sup> *Willelmus*, C<sup>s</sup>. A<sup>s</sup>. F.

capti vel cæsi sunt. Civitas ergo hostili lege direpta est, et rex in eam miserabiliter introductus est.

A.D. 1141.

Lincoln is taken and plundered.

Stephen is placed in confinement at Bristol.

The empress is submitted to everywhere except in Kent.

§ 19. Dei ergo iudicio circa regem peracto, ducitur ad imperatricem, et in turri de Bristou captivus ponitur. Imperatrix ab omni gente Anglorum suscipitur in dominam, exceptis Kentensibus, ubi regina et Willelmus Yprensis contra eam pro viribus repugnabant. Suscepta prius est a legato Romano Wintoniensi episcopo, et mox a Lundoniensibus. Erecta est autem in superbiam intolerabilem, quia suis incerta belli prosperavissent, et omnium fere corda a se alienavit. Igitur, sive subdolorum instinctu, sive Dei nutu, immo, quicquid homines egerint, Dei nutu, expulsa est a Lundone.<sup>1</sup> Irritata igitur muliebri angore, regem unctum Domini in compedibus poni iussit. Post dies autem cum avunculo suo rege Scotorum, et fratre suo Roberto, viribus coactis veniens obsedit turrim Wintonensis episcopi. Episcopus autem misit pro regina et Willelmo Yprensi, et pro universis fere proceribus Angliæ. Factus est igitur exercitus utrimque magnus. Dimicabant quotidie, non congressibus acierum sed militarium anfractuum circuituionibus. Non igitur, sicut in belli cœcitate, confundebantur gesta, sed patebat cujusque probitas, et gloria pro meritis aderat, ut mora illa pro his omnibus voluptuosa videretur in illustrium splendoribus excelsis. Venit tandem exercitus Lundoniensis, et aucti numerose qui contra imperatricem contendebant, fugere eam compulerunt. Capti sunt in fuga multi; captus est etiam Robertus frater imperatricis, in cujus turri rex captivus erat, cujus sola captione rex evadere poterat. Absolutus est uterque. Sic igitur rex Dei justitia miserabiliter captus, Dei misericordia mirabiliter liberatus est, et ab Anglorum proceribus cum magno susceptus<sup>2</sup> gaudio.<sup>a</sup>

London rebels against her.

Warfare near Winchester.

Defeat of the empress Robert of Gloucester taken prisoner.

He and Stephen are exchanged.

<sup>1</sup> *Lundonia*, C<sup>3</sup>. F.

| <sup>2</sup> Codd.; *susceptus est*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> The work of the first continuator of Florence ends at this point.

A.D. 1142.  
Fighting in  
Wiltshire.

§ 20. Septima anno rex Stephanus construxit castrum apud Wiltoniam. Tunc superveniens multitudo nimia hostium ex insperato, cum regii milites circuitationibus bellicis incepissent, et non potuissent resistere, regem in fugam compulerunt. Capti sunt autem ex suis plerique; captus est etiam Willelmus Martel, dapifer regis, qui pro redemptione sua dedit insigne castellum de Sireburna. Eodem anno rex obsedit imperatricem apud Oxenefordiam post festum Sancti Michaelis usque ad Adventum Domini. In eo quippe termino non procul a Natali aufugit imperatrix per Tamasim glaciata circumamicta vestibus albis, reverberatione nivis et similitudine fallentibus oculos obsidentium. Fugit autem ad castellum de Walingeforde, et sic Oxeneforde regi tandem est reddita.<sup>a</sup>

The king  
besieges Ox-  
ford castle;  
the empress  
escapes by  
night.

A.D. 1143.  
In a council  
held in  
London by  
Henry of  
Winchester,  
a canon is  
passed to  
restrain  
assaults on  
clerical per-  
sons.

§ 21. Octavo anno rex Stephanus interfuit concilio Lundoniæ in media Quadragesima. Quod, quia nullus honor vel clericis vel ecclesiæ Dei a raptoribus deferebatur, et æque capiebantur et redimebantur clerici ut laici, tenuit Wintonensis episcopus, urbis Romanæ legatus, concilium<sup>b</sup> apud Lundoniam, clericis pro tempore necessarium. In quo sancitum est, ne aliquis qui clerico violenter manus ingesserit ab alio possit absolvi quam ab ipso papa, et in præsentia ipsius; unde clericis aliquantulum serenitatis vix illuxit.<sup>1</sup>

Geoffrey  
Mandeville,  
being forced  
to surrender  
his castle,  
seizes on  
Ramsey  
abbey, and  
drives out  
the monks.

Eodem anno cepit rex Gaufridum de Magnavilla in curia sua apud Sanctum Albanum, magis secundum retributionem nequitiae consulis, quam secundum jus gentium, magis ex necessitate quam ex honestate. Nisi enim hoc egisset, perfidia consulis illius regno privatus fuisset. Igitur, ut rex liberaret eum, reddidit ei turrim Lundoniæ et castellum de Waledene et illud de Plais-seiz. Possessionibus igitur carens consul prædictus

Gest. Steph.  
a. 1142.

<sup>1</sup> Codd.; *eluxit*, Sav.

<sup>a</sup> From this point the invaluable authority of Malmesbury is wanting; his *Historia Novella* terminates at the end of 1142.

<sup>b</sup> *concilium*. The word is unnecessary, but Henry seems to have forgotten that he had begun the sentence with a relative.

invasit abbatiam Ramesiensem, et monachis expulsis A.D. 1143.  
 raptores immisit, et ecclesiam Dei speluncam fecit latro-  
 num. Erat autem summæ probitatis, sed summæ in  
 Deum obstinationis, magnæ in mundanis diligentiae,  
 magnæ in Deum negligentiae. Ipso anno ante Natale  
 Wintonensis episcopus, et postea Cantuariensis archi-  
 episcopus, Romam petierunt de legatione acturi, mortuo  
 jam Innocentio papa, cui successit Celestinus.

§ 22. Nono rex Stephanus anno Lincolniam obsedit; A.D. 1144.  
 ubi cum munitionem contra castellum, quod vi obtine- Stephen besieges  
Lincoln, but  
without  
success.  
 bat consul Cestrensis, construeret, operadores sui ab  
 hostibus præfocati sunt, fere octoginta. Re igitur im-  
 perfecta rex confusus abcessit. Anno autem ipso  
 consul Gaufridus de Magna Villa regem validissime  
 vexavit, et in omnibus valde gloriosus effulsit. Mense  
 autem Augusti miraculum justitia sua dignum Dei  
 splendor exhibuit; duos namque qui monachis avulsis  
 ecclesias Dei converterant in castella, similiter pec-  
 cantes simili poena multavit. Robertus namque Mar- Divine re-  
tribution  
falls on two  
church  
robbers,  
Marmion  
and Mande-  
ville,  
 mion, vir bellicosus, hoc in ecclesia de Coventre  
 perversus exegerat; porro Gaufridus, ut diximus, in  
 ecclesia Ramesiensi scelus idem patraverat. Insurgens  
 igitur Robertus Marmion in hostes, inter ingentes  
 suorum cuneos coram ipso monasterio solus interfec-  
 tus est, et excommunicatus morte depascitur æterna.  
 Similiter Gaufridus consul, inter acies suorum confertas,  
 a quodam pedite vilissimo solus sagitta percussus est.  
 Et ipse, vulnus ridens, post dies tamen ex ipso vulnere who are  
both killed  
in battle  
while lying  
under ex-  
communication.  
 excommunicatus occubuit. Ecce Dei laudabilis, omni-  
 bus sæculis prædicanda, ejusdem sceleris eadem vindicta!  
 Dum autem ecclesia illa pro castello teneretur, ebullivit  
 sanguis a parietibus ecclesiæ et claustrî adjacentis, in- Portent at  
Ramsey  
abbey.  
 dignationem divinam manifestans, exterminationem sce-  
 leratorum denuntians; quod multi quidem, et ipse ego,  
 oculis meis inspexi. Quia igitur improbi dixerunt  
 Deum dormire, excitatus est Deus, et in hoc signo, et  
 in significato. Eodem quippe anno, et Ernulfus filius The penal-  
ties of sacri-  
lege fall also  
 consulis, qui post mortem patris ecclesiam incastella-

A.D. 1144.  
on Mandeville's son,  
and on his accomplices.

tam retinebat, captus est et per hoc exulatus; et princeps militum suorum in hospitio suo ab equo corruens, effuso cerebro exspiravit. Princeps autem pedum suorum, Reinerus nomine, cujus officium fuerat ecclesias frangere vel incendere, dum mare cum uxore sua transiret, ut multi perhibuerunt, navis immobilis facta est. Quod monstrum nautis stupentibus, sorte data rei causam inquirentibus, sors cecidit super Reinerum. Quod cum ille nimirum totis contradiceret nisibus, secundo et tertio sors jacta in eum devenit. Positus igitur in scapha est, et uxor ejus, et pecunia scelestissime adquisita, et statim navis cursu velocissimo ut prius fecerat pelagus sulcat, scapha vero cum nequissimis subita voragine circumducta in æternum absorpta est. Eodem anno, Celestino papa defuncto, Lucius substituitur.

The earl of Gloucester loses Far-  
rington castle.

§ 23. Decimo rex Stephanus anno prius in agendis circa discursus Hugonis Bigot occupatus fuit. Sed in æstate Robertus consul et omnes inimicorum regalium cœtus castellum construxerant apud Ferendone. Rex non segnis viribus coactis advolat, et Londonensium terribilem et numerosum adduxit exercitum. Assilientes igitur totis diebus castrum, dum Robertus consul et fautores sui copias majores non procul ab exercitu regis expectarent, gloriosissima<sup>1</sup> probitate non sine magna sanguinis effusione ceperunt. Tunc demum regi fortuna in melius cœpit permutari, et in sublime protelari. Eodem anno episcopus Lincolniensis Alexander, iterum Romam pergens, munificentissime se ut prius habuit. Itaque honorifice susceptus est ab Eugenio papa novo, viro summa dignitate condigno, cujus mens semper benigna, cujus discretio semper æqua, cujus facies semper non solum hilaris, sed et jucunda. Rediens autem sequenti anno cum summa ipsius papæ et totius curiæ gratia, a suis cum summa reverentia et gaudio susceptus est. Ecclesiam vero suam, quæ com-

Bishop Alexander, visiting Rome, is honourably received by pope Eugenius.

On his return he

<sup>1</sup> A. F., *laboriosissima*, A<sup>2</sup>, quod et in A. superius scriptum est.

bustione deturpata fuerat,<sup>a</sup> subtili artificio sic reformavit, ut pulchrior quam in ipsa sui novitate compareret, nec ullius ædificii structuræ intra fines Angliæ cederet.

A.D. 1145.  
rebuilds  
Lincoln  
cathedral in  
a style of  
singular  
magnifi-  
cence.

24. Undecimo rex Stephanus anno magnum congregans exercitum castellum construxit inexpugnabile situ contra Walingforde, ubi Rannulfus comes Cestrensis jam regi concordia conjunctus cum magnis interfuit copiis. Dehinc vero consul ipse ad regis curiam cum pacifice venisset apud Norhantonam, nihil tale metuentem cepit, et in carcerem intravit, donec redderet ei clarissimum Lincolnæ castellum, quod ab eo dolose ceperat, et cætera quæcunque fuerant ditionis suæ castella. Sic igitur consul ejectus carcere, in liberum restitutus est arbitrium.

A.D. 1146.  
The earl  
of Chester  
deprived by  
the king  
of all his  
castles.

§ 25. Duodecimo rex Stephanus anno ad Natale Domini in urbe Lincolnensi diademate regaliter insignitus est, quo regum nullus introire prohibentibus quibusdam superstitiosis ausus fuerat. Unde comparet quantæ rex Stephanus audaciæ et animi pericula non reformidantis fuerit.<sup>b</sup> Post discessum vero regis venit consul Cestrensis Lincolniam, cum militaribus copiis, ut assiliret eam. Dux igitur ejus, vir fortis et invictissimus, in introitu portæ Borealis occisus est, et ipse consul pluribus amissis fugere compulsus est. Cives igitur victoriosi, summo gaudio repleti, Virgini virginum protectrici eorum laudes et gratias insigniter exsolverunt.

A.D. 1147.  
The earl  
of Chester  
makes a  
fruitless  
attempt to  
recover  
Lincoln.

Ad Pentecosten rex Franciæ Lodovius, et consul Flandrensis Theodericus, et consul de Sancto Egidio, et innumerabiles exercitus de universo Franciæ regno, et multi de gente Anglorum, crucibus assumptis iter Jherosolimitanum arripuerunt, ut paganos qui ceperant urbem Roheis expugnarent. Majorem tamen exercitum

The second  
crusade, led  
by Louis  
VII., king  
of France,  
and the  
emperor  
Conrad.

<sup>a</sup> "In 1124 his [bishop Alexander's] cathedral suffered greatly by fire, which he rebuilt, and arched it over with stone to prevent the like accident." *Ac-*

*count of the antiquities in the Cath. Church of St. Mary, Lincoln : 1771.*

<sup>b</sup> Here end the MSS. C., S<sup>2</sup>, F., and F<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1147. duxit imperator Alemanniæ Conradus, transiitque exercitus uterque per imperatorem Constantinopolis, qui eos postea prodidit.<sup>1</sup>

Bishop Alexander visits the pope at Auxerre. Soon after his return he falls sick and dies.

Mense Augusto profectus est Alexander Lincolnensis episcopus Altisiodorum ad Eugenium papam, qui prius Parisius, tunc ibi morabatur. Ipse quidem a papa honorifice susceptus est, sed ex intempestiva caloris nimietate seminarium languoris attulit in Angliam; unde mox infirmitati, deinde languori, tandem morti succubuit.

A.D. 1148. Sketch of his life and character.

§ 26. Anno igitur tertio decimo regis Stephani, mortuus est Alexander episcopus, et sepultus apud Lincolniam in capite jejunii. Dicenda sunt igitur de viri moribus secundum consuetudinem Moysi vera. Nutritus igitur in summis deliciis a Rogero avunculo suo Sarebiriensi episcopo, majores inde animos contraxit, quam opportunum esset suis; siquidem præterire volens principes cæteros largitione munerum et splendore procurationum, cum proprii redditus ad hoc sufficere non possent, a suis summo studio carpebat, unde egestatem suam nimietate prædicta comparatam complere posset; nec tamen complere poterat, qui semper magis magisque dispergebat. Fuit autem vir prudens, et adeo munificus, ut a curia Romana vocaretur magnificus.

Ill-success of the crusade; how to be explained.

§ 27. Anno eodem exercitus imperatoris Alemanniæ et regis Francorum, qui summis ducibus illustrati cum summa incedeabant superbia, ad nihilum devenerunt, quia Deus sprexit eos. Ascendit enim in conspectu Dei incontinentia eorum, quam exercebant in fornicationibus non occultis; in adulteriis etiam, quod Deo valde displicuit, postremo in rapinis et omni<sup>2</sup> genere scelestorum. Prius itaque fame consternati proditione imperatoris Constantinopolitani, postea ferro hostili emarcuerunt. Rex autem Franciæ et imperator Alemanniæ cum paucissimis prius Antiochiam, postea Iherosolimam ignominiose aufugerunt. Tunc vero rex Franciæ, quasi

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *prodit*, C<sup>3</sup>. A.

| <sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>.; *omnium*, C<sup>3</sup>. A.

aliquid acturus ad detrimentum famæ refocillandum, auxilio militum Templi quod est in Jerusalem, et viribus undique congestis, obsedit Damascum; sed gratia Dei carens et ideo nihil proficiens rediit in Galliam.

A.D. 1148.  
An attack  
on Damas-  
cus fails.  
Louis re-  
turns home.

Interea quidam exercitus navalis virorum non potentium, nec alicui magno duci innixi nisi Deo omnipotenti, quia humiliter profecti sunt, optime profecerunt. Civitatem namque in Hispania, quæ vocatur Ulixis-bona,<sup>a</sup> et aliam quæ vocatur Almaria, et regiones adjacentes a multis pauci Deo cooperante bellis obtinuerunt.

But an expedition of poor men, most of whom came from England, achieved great things.

Pet. v. 5.

Vere Deus superbis resistit, humilibus autem dat gratiam. Exercitus namque regis Francorum et imperatoris splendidior et major fuerat quam ille qui prius Iherosolimam conquisierat, et a paucissimis contriti sunt, et quasi telæ aranearum determinati sunt et demoliti. His autem pauperibus de quibus prædixi nulla multitudo resistere poterat, sed quando eis plures insurgebant, debiliores efficiebantur. Pars autem eorum maxima venerat ex Anglia.<sup>b</sup>

§ 28. Eodem anno appropinquante Natali Robertus cujus cognomen est de Querceto, archidiaconus Legrecstrensis, juvenis omni laude dignus, electus est in episcopum Lincolnensem. A cunctis igitur honore tanto dignus habitus, rege et clero et populo cum summo gaudio annuente, benedictionem pontificalem ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi suscepit, et in Epiphania Domini<sup>1</sup> apud Lincolniam cum summo tripudio, magnus expectatione, major adventu, a clero et populo cum devotione susceptus est. Prosperet ei Deus tempora prava, et juventutem ejus foveat rore sapientiæ, et exhilaret faciem ejus jucunditate spirituali.<sup>c</sup> Amen.

The arch-deacon of Leicester is elected to the see of Lincoln. He takes possession of his see amidst universal joy.

<sup>1</sup> C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>2</sup>.; in A. et apud Sav. nullum temporis indicium reperitur.

<sup>a</sup> See the curious narrative of the taking of Lisbon by one Osbern, printed by Prof. Stubbs in vol. i. of *Chronicles of the reign of Richard I.* (Rolls series).

<sup>b</sup> Here ends Lamb. 327.

<sup>c</sup> At this point the Arundel MS.,

which has been hitherto followed, comes to an end. The remainder of the text is taken from the MS. Reg. 13, B. vi., in the British Museum, designated in this edition as A<sup>2</sup>, collated with Bod. 521.

A.D. 1149.  
Fearing a  
Scottish  
invasion,  
Stephen  
occupies  
York.

§ 29. Anno XIII. Henrico nepoti suo David rex Scottorum virilia tradidit arma. Cum autem congregati essent in solemnitate illa, rex Scottorum cum viribus suis, et nepos suus cum occidentalibus Anglie proceribus, timens rex Stephanus ne Eboracum invaderent, venit in urbem cum magno exercitu, ibique moratus est per mensem Augustum. Eustachius vero filius regis Stephani, (nam et ipse eodem anno virilia sumpserat arma,) irruit in terras procerum qui erant cum Henrico filio imperatricis. Nullo igitur contradicente, Marte et Vulcano comitantibus non modicum ei<sup>1</sup> damnum inflixit.

Both armies  
retire.

Rex vero Anglorum et rex Scottorum, quorum alter erat apud Eboracum, alter apud Carloil, sibi mutuo caventes et offendere timentes per se ipsos divisi sunt, et ad domicilia regnorum repedaverunt.

A.D. 1150.  
Stephen  
takes and  
burns  
Worcester;  
the castle,  
belonging to  
the earl of  
Mellent,  
holds out.

§ 30. Anno xv. rex Stephanus agminibus congregatis urbem Wirecestrie pulcherrimam assiluit, et captam incendio deturpavit. Castellum tamen quod urbi inerat capere non potuit. Urbs namque illa Waleramni consulis de Mellent<sup>2</sup> erat, quam ipse rex Stephanus malo suo ei dederat. Ditatæ igitur spoliis urbis direptæ regales turmæ per terras inimicorum remearunt, et inde prædam innumerabilem nullo resistente secum reducerunt.

A.D. 1151.  
Council at  
London;  
the new  
practice of  
appeals to  
Rome comes  
into promi-  
nence.

§ 31. Anno xvi. Teobaldus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apostolicæ sedis legatus, tenuit concilium generale apud Lundoniam in media Quadragesima, ubi rex Stephanus et filius suus Eustachius et Angliæ proceres interfuerunt, totumque illud concilium novis appellationibus infrenduit. In Anglia namque appellationes in usu non erant, donec eas Henricus Wintoniensis episcopus, dum legatus esset, malo suo crudeliter intrusit; in eodem namque concilio ad Romani pontificis audientiam ter appellatus est. Rex autem Stephanus eodem anno iterum Wircestre<sup>3</sup> irrupit, et quia castel-

Stephen  
makes  
another vain

<sup>1</sup> *illis*, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> Bod. 521; *Meulent*, A<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Bod. 521; *Wincestriam*, A<sup>2</sup>.

lum anno prædicto capere non potuerat, ad ejus cap-  
tionem totis viribus desudavit. Porro cum viriliter  
inclusi restarent, duo castella ad illud expugnandum  
construxit. Quosdam igitur ex proceribus suis ibidem  
relinquens ad propria remeavit. Sed quia mos regius  
erat, quod multa strenue inciperet, et segniter exse-  
queretur, arte consulis de Legecestria castella regis  
obsidentia demolita<sup>1</sup> sunt, et obsessum callide liberatum  
est. Consul etenim prædictus frater erat consulis de  
Mellent. Itaque regis studium et labor emarcuit et  
evanuit. Eodem anno consul Andegaviæ, regis Henrici  
gener, regis Jerosolimitani filius, vir magnus et cla-  
rissimus, mortis concessit legibus. Igitur Henrico filio  
suo primogenito Andegaviam et Normanniam contradi-  
dit; et jus hæreditarium, quod in Angliæ regno licet  
carens obtinebat, ei concessit. Contigit autem quod  
Lodovicus rex Francorum a sponsa sua filia consulis  
Pictaviensis per cognationis jusjurandum divideretur.  
Henricus igitur dux novus duxit eam, et per eam con-  
sulatum Pictaviensem summis honoribus ampliatus  
possedit. Ea tamen desponsatio incentivum fomesque  
odii maximi fuit et discordiæ inter regem Francorum  
et ipsum ducem.

A.D. 1151.  
attempt  
to take  
Worcester  
castle.

Death of  
Geoffrey  
Plantagenet,  
count of  
Anjou.

His son  
Henry  
marries the  
divorced  
wife of  
Louis VII.;  
important  
consequen-  
ces of the  
marriage.

Insurgens itaque Eustachius filius regis Stephani  
cum ipso rege Francorum non modicis assultibus Nor-  
manniam oppugnabant. Dux utrisque et omnium  
Francorum exercitui robustissime restabat. Rex tamen  
quoddam castellum, quod vocatur Novum Mercatum,  
copiis omnibus aggregatis assiliit, et potentissime pcene  
inexpugnabile cepit et obtinuit, et Eustachio filio regis  
Angliæ, qui sororem ejus duxerat, tradidit.

Prince  
Eustace and  
Louis VII.  
invade  
Normandy;  
fall of the  
castle of  
Neuf  
Marché.

§ 32. Anno XVII. rex Stephanus Eustachium filium  
suum regio diademate proposuit insignire. Postulans  
igitur ab archiepiscopo prædicto et cæteris episcopis,  
quos ibidem congregaverat, ut eum in regem ungerent,  
et benedictione sua confirmarent, repulsam passus est.  
Papa siquidem litteris suis archiepiscopo prohibuerat,

A.D. 1152.  
Stephen  
wishes to  
have prince  
Eustace  
crowned,  
but the  
bishops, at  
the bidding  
of the pope,  
refuse to

<sup>1</sup> Bod. 521; *demollita*, A<sup>2</sup>.

A.D. 1152.  
perform the  
ceremony.  
The king's  
anger and  
vexation.

Stepher:  
takes New-  
bury, and  
besieges  
Wallingford  
castle: the  
besieged  
send for  
help to their  
lord, Henry  
of Anjou.

A.D. 1153.  
Henry  
comes over  
to England.

Imaginary  
poetical  
address of  
England to  
her deli-  
verer.

ne filium regis in regem sublimaret; videlicet quia Stephanus regnum contra jusjurandum præripuisse videbatur. Intimo igitur dolore decoctus, et ira nimia fervescens tam pater quam filius, in domo quadam omnes includi jusserunt, et vehementer angariantes, ut postulata peragerent, compellebant. Illi summo timore perterriti, (nam rex Stephanus nunquam clericos liquido dilexerat, et pridem duos incarceraverat episcopos,) restiterunt tamen, capitem suorum pericula metuentes.<sup>1</sup> Recesserunt tamen illæsi, possessionibus quidem spoliati, quas postea rege pœnitente rehabuerunt. Rex eodem anno castrum Neubiriæ, quod non procul a Wintonia est, obsidens oppugnavit, et tandem expugnavit. Inde castellum de Walingeforde obsedit, et in ipso pontis ingressu castellum obsessorium construxit, quod inclusis escarum illationem et liberam progressionem prohibuit. Tunc igitur primo gravissime compressi, a domino suo duce Normannorum petierunt vel auxilii exhibitionem, vel castellum in manus regias reddendi licentiam.

§ 33. Anno igitur regis Stephani XVIII. dux Normanniæ tanta necessitate compulsus insperatus advolvit in Angliam. Tunc vero miserabilis Anglia pridem destructa, sed jam per adventum ejus quasi vitam rehabitura, in hæc verba cum lacrymis prorupit:

Dux Henrice, nepos Henrici maxime magni,  
Anglia celsa ruo, nec jam ruo tota ruina.  
Dicere vix possum, Fueram; Sum namque recessit.  
Si mihi, quæ miseris superest, vel spes superesset,  
Clamarem, Miserere, veni, succurre, resiste.  
Nam sum jure tui juris, potes, erige lapsam;  
Sed nunc ora rigent; nunc vox, nunc vita recedunt.  
At quis clamor adest, venit, ingeminant quoque,  
venit?  
Quis dux ille ducum, puer annis, mente senilis?  
Gemma virum, vir, ave, mea spes, dum spes mihi,  
salve,

<sup>1</sup> nihil metuentes, Sav.

Sero venis; perii: clames tamen, Anglia, surge, A.D. 1153.  
 Immo resurge: tuam refero tibi mortua vitam.  
 Ad vocem rediviva tuam post fata resurgam.  
 Ergo reviviscens video quod inhorreo; cernis  
 Prælia quanta movet Stephanus; moveat volo;  
 quippe

Gloria nulla foret, si prælia nulla moveret.  
 Quot contra Stephanum, cui copia multa virorum,  
 Duxisti? paucos: cur paucos? gloria major  
 Est multos paucis, quam multos vincere multis.  
 Cum rex Francorum, comites proceresque sed omnes  
 In te consurgunt, levis est jactura; repugno  
 His absens, pugno tibi præsens; cur simul, edam;  
 Si non pugna duplex, nec erit mihi gloria duplex:  
 Multo magisque nitet reges, quam vincere regem;  
 Quis tibi signifer est? ipsius gratia Christi,  
 Quam mihi conciliat mea, nec minus actio regis.  
 Namque placet pax sola mihi, discordia regi.  
 Pacem sero sero, pacem tibi sanguine quæro,  
 Dulcis alumna mei, cui tanta pericula sumpsi.  
 Te patiar, si pax tamen per me potiare,  
 Si secus, emoriar, ne te videam morientem.

§ 34. Cum igitur dux gloriosus Angliæ littora tem-  
 pestate propulsus occupasset, subitis afflata rumoribus  
 infrenduit terra, velut arundinetum Zephyro vibrante  
 collisum. Transvolans itaque fama, ut assolet, aliis  
 semina sparsit exultationis et lætitiæ, aliis formidinis  
 et mœstitiæ. Sui tamen de adventu ejus admodum  
 tripudiantes, super hoc, quod secum paucos duxerat,  
 aliquid tantulum commovebantur. Hostium vero confusio  
 ex eadem paucitate non modicum relevabatur. Utri-  
 que tamen super hoc mirabantur. Et, quod in medio  
 hiemis mare tempestuosum intrasset, sui magnamini-  
 tatem, alii audaciam judicabant. At juvenis strenuis-  
 simus congregans suos, tam quos invenerat quam quos  
 adduxerat, mora maxime perosa castellum de Mal-  
 mesburie obsedit. Et quia viri tanti probitates magnæ  
 sunt et multæ, breviter quidem perstringendæ sunt, ne

The young  
 duke brings  
 over only a  
 small force.

He takes  
 Malmesbury  
 castle by  
 assault;

A.D. 1153.  
but the  
tower held  
by Jordanus  
resists him.

Stephen  
marches to  
the assist-  
ance of  
Jordanus.

Storm of  
rain and  
wind.

Near  
Malmes-  
bury the  
armies are  
drawn up  
facing each  
other, with  
a river be-  
tween them.

rerum gestarum copia plenius elucidata nimietatem congerat prolixitatis. Obsessum igitur castrum, nunquam enim moram gerendis intermiscebat, assilivit moxque cepit. Expugnata tamen urbe turris excellentissima Jordani, quam regali conservabat imperio, sola fame domabilis remansit. Unde Jordanus cum summa festinatione egrediens, rem gestam regi Stephano propalavit. Sinistris angariatus nuntiis rex sui vultus dignitatem obducto mœrore commutavit. Non segniter tamen copiis omnibus congregatis non longe a Malmesbiria fixit tentoria. Crastina vero adventus sui die acies equitibus electissimis refertas, legibus bellicis distinctas, eleganter ordinavit. Erat quidem exercitus ingens, procerum numerositate condensus, insignibus aureis coruscus, valde terribilis et decorus; sed procul ab iis recesserat Deus, in quo solo tota salus. Apertis etenim cataractis cœli tantas in facies eorum misit inundationes, tantas acerrimi frigoris obstinationes, tantas ventuosi turbinis impulsiones, ut Deus ipse videretur pro duce rem agere. Ibant tamen aciebus dispositis, quasi contra Dei potentiam contendentes, horrendis quidem exagitati cruciatibus. Stabat e regione juvenilis exercitus, magis viribus confisus quam numero, præcipue tamen Dei gratia roboratus, quam eis justitia causæ, pro qua scilicet astabant, misericorditer contraxerat.

Stabant equidem non procul ab urbis præfatæ muralibus prope fluentia fluminis, quod pluviarum et nivium inundatio tanto impulsu tanta immensitate ducebat, ut ingressuris horrorem incuteret,<sup>1</sup> ingressis egressum negaret. Præcedebat suos juvenis nobilissimus, armis tanto duce dignis insignitus, animi plenitudinem specie corporis imaginans, quem adeo formæ dignitas commendabat, ut, si dicere licet, eum non tantum arma decerent, quantum ipsius decor arma splendificaret. Erat quidem ei suisque tempestas a tergo; regi suisque in faciem, ut nec arma sustinere, nec lanceas im-

<sup>1</sup> Sav. : *incurreret*, A<sup>2</sup>.

bribus profluentes contrectare possent. Et quia præ-  
 viderat Deus, quod puero suo terram sine sanguinis  
 effusione contraderet, cum nullus eorum flumen trans-  
 gredi posset, nec rex tantas illuviones ultra perferre  
 sufficeret, repedavit Londoniam opera cassatus, molestia  
 confectus. Igitur turri quam obsederat duci reddita,  
 properavit exhilaratus ad id pro quo venerat, videlicet ut  
 castro de Walingeforde jam fame perituro succurreret.  
 Congregata igitur militum copia, quæ victualibus infe-  
 rendis castri Walingeforde esset subsidio, prosperavit  
 Deus et hoc inceptum, tranquillum ei largiens effectum.  
 Erant equidem castella numerosa in circuitu militia  
 regali referta, nec tamen impedire venientes vel red-  
 euntē Deo volente potuerunt. Parvum fuit medii  
 spatium temporis, et jam dux validissimus, omni militia  
 quæ sibi adhærebat coadunata obsedit castellum de  
 Craunmers. Rem arduam et inæstimatam laudabiliter  
 incipiens, cinxit castellum regis et exercitum suum  
 vallo maximo, ut suis egressus tantum pateret per  
 castellum, de Walingeforde, obsessis vero nullus per-  
 mitteretur exitus. Quod rex audiens, tunc prorsus  
 omnibus copiis suæ ditioni pertinentibus agglomeratis  
 duci supervenit terribilis. Terrore tamen nullo dux  
 permotus, licet copiis impar esset regi, vallum, quod  
 exercitui suo fuerat pro munimento, statim dejici jussit;  
 et obsidionem relinquens aciebus dispositis contra regem  
 splendide processit. Videns igitur inopinate regalis exer-  
 citus acies hostium ordinatas in faciem suam exsurgentes,  
 timore insperato percussi sunt. Rex autem nullo timore  
 compressus suorum quoque turmas castrorum terribiliter  
 dispositas progredi jussit. Insurrexerunt autem proceres,  
 imo proditores Angliæ, de concordia inter eos agentes,  
 nihil tamen magis quam discordiam diligentes, sed bel-  
 lum committere nolēbant, quia neutrum illorum exaltare  
 volebant, ne, altero subacto, alter eis libere dominaretur,  
 sed semper alter alterum metuens, regiam in eos  
 potestatem exercere non posset. Inducias igitur inter se  
 rex duxque constituerunt coacti nolentes, uterque pro-

A.D. 1153.  
 Stephen  
 retreats:  
 the tower  
 held by  
 Jordanus  
 surrenders.

Henry then  
 relieves  
 Wallingford  
 castle,

and lays  
 siege to the  
 king's  
 castle of  
 Crowmarsh.

Stephen  
 raises  
 another  
 army, and  
 marches  
 into Oxford-  
 shire.

A battle is  
 imminent,  
 but the  
 chief men  
 on each side,  
 desiring  
 that neither  
 king nor  
 duke should  
 be all-  
 powerful,  
 effect a  
 reconcilia-  
 tion?

A.D. 1153. ditionem suorum comperientes. Juveni tamen suo Deus honorem de more contulit. Castrum namque regium, quod dux obsederat, ex ejus compactione foederis dejectum est. Locuti sunt postea rex solus et dux solus, amne interposito, de pace perpetua inter eos constituenda, de proditione procerum suorum anxie conquerentes uterque. Prælibatum est illud pacis negotium, sed tamen in aliud tempus delatum est.

Crowmarsh castle is to be razed.

Matt. Paris, a. 1152.

Death of prince Eustace, and of Simon earl of Northampton.

§ 35. Nondum enim sopita discordia, cum ad sua remeassent, diluculum felicitatis duci magno serenissime comparuit. Suos etenim hostes immanissimos et summa potentia præditos, filium scilicet regis Eustachium et Simonem comitem de Norhamtune, Dei providentia nil tale metuentes in eodem demolivit tempore, unde virtus et spes omnium ei rebellantium ex improvviso emarcuit eventum. Uterque juvenis eodem morbo eadem deperierunt hebdomada. Sepultus est autem Simon comes apud Northamptune, plenus omnium quæ non licebant, omnium quæ non decebant. Sepultus est filius regis in abbazia, quam mater sua fundaverat, apud Faveresham, militia quidem probatus, sed in ea, quæ Dei sunt, obstinatus, rectoribus ecclesiarum durissimus, persequentibus eam devotissimus. Exstirpatis igitur hostibus Henrici dilecti sui fortissimis, jam Deus ipse tranquillitatem regni ipsius præparabat benignissime.

Sieges of Stamford and Ipswich.

§ 36. Tertiam igitur obsidionem congessit circa castellum de Stanford. Capta statim urbe, rebellantes ei, qui turri inerant, nuntios regi miserunt, auxilium inclusis poscentes. Rex autem obsederat castellum de Gipeswic, quod Hugo Bigot contra eum tenebat, cujus obsidionem cum nollet dimittere, nec auxilium inclusis impendere, redditum est castellum Henrico principi magno; sed et castellum, quod rex obsederat, regi redditum est. A Stanfordia dux Normannorum discedens, Nothingham petiit, et statim urbem cepit. Illi vero qui castello urbis illius inerant, urbem ipsam combusserunt. Dux pietate commotus urbisque dolens combustionem alio promovit exercitum.

§ 37. Interim vero Theobaldus archiepiscopus cum rege de concordia cum duce componenda magno opere tractabat, ipse frequenter regi colloquens, duci vero per internuntios. Erat autem ei coadjutor Henricus Wintoniensis episcopus, qui prius regnum funeste turbaverat, Stephano fratri suo regni diadema contradens; nunc autem poenitentia motus, cum omnia videret rapinis, incendiis, cædibus demolita, ad tantorum finem malorum concordie principium invigilabat. Dispositio præsertim Dei, faciens pacem et creans malum,<sup>1</sup> condignis Angliæ flagellis finem destinans, dedit eis proventum<sup>2</sup> incepti, et ab eo per ipsos pacis serenitas, concordia sacramentis confirmata, resplenduit. O quam inestimabile gaudium! quam beata dies! cum in urbe Wintoniensi processione pontificum et heroum coruscante, et innumerabilis populi frequentia congratulante, juvenis clarissimus ipso rege ducente gloriose susceptus est. Ipsum siquidem rex in filium suscepit adoptivum, et hæredem regni constituit. Exinde rex ducem Londonias secum duxit, nec ibi minori gaudio ab innumerabilis conventu plebis, processionibus luculentissimis, ut tantum decebat virum, susceptus est. Sic Dei misericordia pacis auroram et noctis ærumnosæ finem regno diruto contribuit Anglorum.

A.D. 1153.  
Efforts of  
archbishop  
Theobald  
to procure  
peace;  
they are  
seconded  
by Henry,  
bishop of  
Winchester.

Peace concluded:  
friendly  
meeting of  
Stephen and  
Henry at  
Winchester.

They visit  
London  
together.

§ 38. His igitur actis, cum gaudio<sup>3</sup> et amore rex Stephanus et filius ejus novus nuper conventuri discesserunt, hæc etenim concordia ante Natale Domini confirmata est. Ad octavas autem Epiphanie rursus convenerunt apud Oxenforde, cum jam dux per annum fere in expugnatione, imo in resuscitatione Angliæ in ipsa commoratus fuisset. Igitur ibi principes Anglorum jussu regis hominum et domino debitam fidelitatem duci simul exhibuerunt, regi tamen honorem debitum fidemque, dum viveret, conservaturi. Ab hoc

A.D. 1154.  
Parliament  
at Oxford;  
the great  
feudatories  
do homage  
to Henry as  
their future  
king.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; bonum, Sav.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>2</sup>; eventum, Sav.

<sup>3</sup> summo gaudio, Sav.

A.D. 1154.  
Meeting at  
Dunstable;  
Henry dis-  
pleased be-  
cause the  
king is slow  
to destroy  
the robber  
castles.

conventu magnifico pace nova fruentes ad propria cum gaudio discesserunt. Nec longa fuit medii mora temporis, cum iterum apud Dunestable convenerunt. Ibi aliquantulum quidem clarissima dies obnubilata est. Displicebat enim duci, quod castella post mortem Henrici regis in pessimos usus circumquaque constructa non diruerentur, sicut confirmatum et sancitum fuerat inter eos in concordiae firmissimo foedere; pars quidem magna jam erat diruta; quibusdam tamen suorum castellis regis clementia vel versutia parcens, pacti communionem debilitare videbatur. Dux igitur super hoc regem angarians, repulsam passus est. Sed tamen, patri novo consentiens, ægre quidem rem distulit, ne concordiae lumen extinguere videretur. Utrunque igitur discessum<sup>1</sup> est in pace; et non multo post accepta dux a rege licentia victoriosissimus Normanniam repedavit.

Henry re-  
turns to  
Normandy.

The author  
excuses the  
brevity of  
his narra-  
tive.

§ 39. Hæc sunt gesta Henrici juvenum strenuissimi in secundo adventu suo in Angliam. Nec succenseat mihi quispiam, quod de multis ab eo splendide gestis pauca scriptis tradiderim; nec enim de tot tantisque regibus, neque de rebus per tot sæcula gestis historiæ plenitudinem contexere potui, quod multos exigeret codices; sed potius historiarum abbreviationes, ne posteros res gestæ prorsus laterent, in unum volumen contraxi. Nunc ad propositum revertamur. Itaque dux gloriosus in Gallias rediens, a genitrice sua et fratribus et omni gente Normanniæ et Andegavis, Cenomaniae et Pictavis, debita lætitia et honore susceptus est. Rex autem Stephanus in pace tunc primo regnans, quæ regio debebantur honori adoptivi gratia filii potentissimus obtinuit. O dira mortalium rabies! O nefanda perversitas! Quidam filii hominum, quorum dentes arma et sagittæ, et lingua gladius acutus, inter regem præsentem et ducem absentem summopere stimulum discordiæ studebant seminare. Rex autem vix eorum persua-

The position  
of Stephen  
strengthened  
by his recon-  
ciliation with  
Henry.

Some men  
endeavour  
to sow dis-  
cord be-  
tween them.

Chr. E.,  
2. 1140.  
Ps. 56.

<sup>1</sup> Sav.; *discussum*, A.<sup>2</sup>

sionibus restare poterat, et processu temporis, (ut æstimabant nonnulli,) jam non restabat; et pravorum consilia non invitus, sed tamen quasi nollet dissimulans, æquo licentius audiebat. Sed aliter filii hominum, aliter judicabat Deus, qui, ut decebat incepta perficiens, pravorum consilia perversasque machinationes ad nihilum redigebat. Cum itaque castellum quod vocatur Drache juxta Eboracum obsedisset, et obsessum tandem cepisset, aliaque multa victor castella diruisset, Doroberniam petiit cum comite Flandrensi locuturus. Cui colloquens, infirmitate et tandem morte præreptus est, octo diebus ante festivitatem Omnium Sanctorum, et in abbatia de Faversham juxta uxorem suam et filium sepultus est, cum fere XIX. annis laboriose nimis et infelicitè regnasset.

A.D. 1154.

Siege of Drake.

At a meeting with the count of Flanders at Canterbury, Stephen is taken ill and dies. He is buried at Faversham.

§ 40. Miserunt itaque Theobaldus archiepiscopus et quamplures ex Angliæ proceribus nuntios festinanter pro domino suo duci Normannorum, ut regnum suscepturus incunctanter adveniret. Impeditus tamen ventis et mari, causisque quampluribus, paucis diebus ante Natale, cum conjuge, fratribusque suis, multisque potentibus, magnisque copiis applicuit apud Noveforest. Fuit igitur Anglia sine rege quasi sex hebdomadis, nec tamen Dei gratia præveniente pace caruit; vel pro regis amore venturi, vel timore. At vero cum, ut dictum est, applicuisset, Lundoniam petens, ut decebat tantum et tam beatum virum, cum summa lætitia et multis præ gaudio lacrymantibus, in regem benedictus est, et in thronum regni splendidissime collocatus. De cujus temporis beatitudine sic diximus heroice:

The archbishop and barons send for Henry, who embarks after some delay, and lands at Lynton a few days before Christmas.

His coronation.

Rex obiit, nec rege carens caret Anglia pace,  
 Hæc, Henrice, creas miracula primus in orbe.  
 Rex nondum, præsens nondum, tamen efficis illud  
 Quod rex non potuit præsens, dignissime sceptris.  
 Quam bene sceptræ geres, qui regni flectis habenas.

Encomium Henrici.

Nondum sceptrā gerens, dum trans maris alta moraris.

Per te, sed sine te, fruitur tamen Anglia pace;

Hæc aurora tuos præcessit, Phœbe, nitores;

Ecce venit radians: radii sunt advenientis

Certa fides, hilaris clementia, cauta potestas,

Lene jugum, vindicta decens, correctio dulcis,

Castus amor, libratus honor, frenata voluptas.

His igitur radiis dum sceptrā decora decoras,

Tu diadema magis, quam te diadema perornat.

Anglia, letali jamdudum frigore torpens,

Nunc solis fervore novi rediviva calescens,

Erigis impressum terræ caput, et vacuatis

Mœstitiæ lacrymis, præ lætitia lacrymaris.

Cum lacrymis hæc verba tuo profundis alumno;

Spiritus es, caro sum; te nunc intrante revixi.

Et jam regi novo novus liber donandus est.

*Explicit liber x<sup>us</sup>; hic incipit liber undecimus de  
Henrico juniore.\**

---

\* The passage, *Et jam . . . juniore*, is from the Corpus MS., C<sup>2</sup>.

---

## APPENDIX.

---



## APPENDIX.

---

### A.

---

Passages relating to the descendants of Edmund Ironside,  
inserted in the Hengwrt MS.

---

The Hengwrt MS. (Introd. § 29) was written at the end of the twelfth century. An insertion at the close of the Fourth book seems to show that the writer was "Edmundus capellanus," that he was sixty-four years old in 1197, the time of writing, and had been thirty-three years a priest. The following passages, written either by the same or a contemporary hand on the margins and blank spaces of the leaves, under the years 1016, 1044, and 1067, are of considerable interest:—

*Historia*, vi. § 13, ad fin.

"Volens dominus Cnut tam fratres Edmundi sci-  
"licet S. Edward et Aluredum qui in Normannia  
"exulabant quam . . . et parvulos [?] . . . . . [?]<sup>1</sup>  
"spe regni penitus privare, jubet adesse summi [sum-  
"mos ?] regni procures, quæritque ab eis quem sibi  
"designaverit rex Edmundus heredem, quem filiis  
"adhuc infantibus custodem deputaverit, quid de fra-  
"tribus suis Aluredo et Edwardo præscripserit. At  
"illi, ut regi placerent, dicunt regem Edmundum sibi  
"pocius curam regni [quam] filiorum suorum delegasse,  
"cum ipse fratres suos heredes designaverit, et puero-  
"rum custodiam deputaverit. Cum enim Cnut monar-  
"chiam insule faventibus illis obtinuisset, quicquid de

---

<sup>1</sup> Several words are here wholly | top part of the leaf having been cut  
or partially illegible, owing to the | off.

“ regio semine superstes repperit, vel regno reppulit vel  
 “ occidit. At puerulos, scilicet filios Edmundi, ferire  
 “ metuens pro pudore, ad regem Swanorum eos inter-  
 “ ficiendos transmisit. Rex vero Swanorum nobilium  
 “ puerorum miseratus ærumnam ad Hungariorum eos  
 “ regem destinavit nutriendos. Quos ipse benigne  
 “ susceptos benignius fovit, benignissime sibi in filios  
 “ adoptavit. Porro Edmundo filiam suam dedit uxorem,  
 “ Edwardo filiam germani Henrici imperatoris in  
 “ matrimonium junxit. Sed paulo post Edmundus de  
 “ temporalibus ad æterna transfertur; Edwardus sospitate  
 “ et prosperitate perfruitur.”

Lib. vi. § 21, in margine:—

“ Cum autem rex Edwardus pacem tam a suis  
 “ quam ab extraneis obtinuisset, et vicinis regibus et  
 “ principibus gratus et amabilis extitisset, dirigit nuntios  
 “ ad Romanum imperatorem, rogans ut nepotem  
 “ suum Edwardum, filium fratris sui regis Edmundi  
 “ Ireneside, sibi regni Angliæ debiti futurum heredem,  
 “ mittere dignaretur. Imperator autem regis nuntios  
 “ gratanter excipiens, non parvo tempore summo cum  
 “ honore detinuit. Tandem paratis navibus, et omnibus  
 “ quæ navigaturis necessaria videbantur illatis,  
 “ Edwardum cum uxore sua Agatha, germani sui  
 “ filia, liberisque ejus Edgardo Edeling, Margareta,  
 “ atque Christina, cum magna gloria ac divitiis, sicut  
 “ rex petierat, ad Angliam mittit. Qui prospero cursu  
 “ in Angliam veniens tam regem quam populum suo  
 “ lætificavit adventu.”

Lib. vi. § 31, post “stragem dedit”—

“ Edgar autem Edeling cernens res Anglorum undique  
 “ perturbari, ascensa navi cum matre et sororibus  
 “ reverti in patriam in qua natus fuerat conabatur,  
 “ sed orta in mari tempestate in Scotiam applicare  
 “ compellitur. Hac occasione ortum est ut Margareta  
 “ regis Malculmi nuptiis traderetur. Soror quoque  
 “ ejus Christina in Christi sponsam benedi-

" citur. Nati sunt reginæ Margaretæ sex filii et duo  
 " filiæ. Quorum tres, Edgarus, Alexander, et David,  
 " reges fuerunt. Horum soror Matildis gloriosissimo  
 " regi nupsit Henrico. De hac igitur excellentissima  
 " et Christianissima regina nata est Matildis, quæ  
 " primum imperatori Romano nupsit, deinde Gaufrido  
 " Andegavensium comite. De qua nati sunt rex Hen-  
 " ricus II., Gaufridus, et Willelmus. Maria vero filia  
 " reginæ Margarete traditur in uxorem Eustachio  
 " Boloniensi, de qua nata est Matildis quæ nupsit  
 " comiti Mauritanis, postea vero regi Anglorum Ste-  
 " phano. Hic genuit ex hac regina Wilelmum comi-  
 " tem Warenniæ, et Eustachium comitem Boloniæ."

## B.

EPISTOLA AD WALTERUM DE CONTEMPTU MUNDI.<sup>a</sup>

Exemplar autem tertiæ epistolæ de contemptu mundi Prologue.  
 per ea que ipsi vidimus hoc est:—

Valtere,<sup>1b</sup> quondam decus juvenum, quondam deliciæ  
 rerum, nunc, proh dolor! diutino dolore decoqueris,  
 nunc lamentabili dolore consumeris. In ætatis <sup>2</sup> nostræ

<sup>1</sup> *Waltere*, Wh.<sup>2</sup> *A<sup>s</sup>*; *etate*, A.

<sup>a</sup> It has been stated in the Introduction (§ 2) what editions of this Epistle have at various times appeared. The copy of it in Part II. of Wharton's *Anglia Sacra* was founded on a collation of the Lambeth MSS. 118 and 179. The text is full of blunders, but most of these are corrected in the margin. An accurate version was given by Luc D'Achery in his *Spicilegium*, (vol. viii. 178 of the earlier, vol. iii. 512 of the later edition,) who

probably used either the Paris or the Rouen MS. The Abbé Migne, for what reason I do not know, instead of reprinting the good text of D'Achery, adopted the bad text of Wharton. The version now given is founded on MS. A., collated with A<sup>s</sup>. In the "Varia Lectio" Wharton's edition is indicated by "Wh.," that in the *Spicilegium* by "Ach."

<sup>b</sup> The "Walter" whom Henry addresses has not been identified

Scripture  
and philo-  
sophy alike  
teach us the  
contempt of  
the world.

jocundabili flore librum tibi epigrammaton poetice composui; carmen etiam in amorem<sup>1</sup> acceptabile contexui. Juvenis quidem<sup>2</sup> juveni juvenilia, nunc senex seni senilia destino. De contemptu igitur mundi quædam tibi et mihi scripsi, in quibus te languens exerceas, et ipse potissimum sæpe legendo recurram; nec disserendo rhetorice, nec tractando philosophice; (id unum omnis pagina divina intonat, omnia philosophorum ingenia desudant;) sed loquendo omnia<sup>3</sup> simpliciter, ut pateat pluribus, id est minus doctis, et de his quæ tu et ego vidimus, hinc jam senes contemnere contemptibilia discamus. Nihil igitur de historiis, nihil de ante relatis, sed quæ videndo scimus, quia tale testimonium nec aliud lex admittit, apponimus. Quod si temporis nostri nomina posteris barbara videantur, vel, quia tot apponuntur, asper et obliquus tædeat tractatus, nonne saltem mihi et tibi proderit?

I. Recent  
changes in  
the diocese  
of Lincoln.

§ 1. Sit igitur primum capitulum de his quæ in ecclesia nostra contigerunt. Igitur a pueritia omnia fere vitia præter luxuriam pullulant, inter quæ<sup>4</sup> cacumen erigit rigidissimum et principatur<sup>5</sup> nimius amor præsentium. Cum autem ætatis naturali bono mala multa pueritiæ<sup>6</sup> vacuentur, velut inscientia,<sup>7</sup> levitas,

<sup>1</sup> amore, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> autem, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> omnino, Wh. A<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> hinc quia, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> principatum, Wh.

<sup>6</sup> pueritia, Wh.

<sup>7</sup> A<sup>6</sup>; in scientia, A. Wh.

with certainty. He died before the Epistle was finished, that is in 1135; he cannot therefore have been abbot Walter of Ramsey, who lived to 1160, nor Walter Calenius, archdeacon of Oxford, who was alive at the date of the revision of the Epistle in 1145. From the use of the expression "consors" (§ 15) it seems reasonable to infer that he was one of Henry's brother archdeacons. If so, it must have

been the Walter archdeacon of Leicester, "vir omnino laudandus," who is mentioned in § 4. The absence, in the MSS. representing the original version, of the mention (due to the revision of 1145) of Robert de Chesney among the archdeacons of Leicester, shows that archdeacon Walter must have died between 1135 and 1145; he may therefore be the person addressed.

mutabilitas et alia, hoc prædictum, quod jucundius est cæteris et melle venenato conditius, remanet et crescit. *Ætatis* tamen magno processu pungere videntur quæ mulcebant, et amaricare quæ indulcabant. Usu tamen mali velut hamo inextricabili captæ mentes divitiis et deliciis fugientibus retinentur. Quod a me ipso didici. Cum namque puerulus, cum adolescens, cum juvenis, Roberti præsulis nostri gloriam conspicerem, scilicet equites decentissimos, adolescentes nobilissimos, equos pretiosissimos, vasa aurea et deaurata, ferculorum numerum, ferentium splendorem, vestes purpureas et byssinas, nihil nimirum beatius æstimare potui. Cum igitur omnes,<sup>1</sup> et ipsi etiam qui de mundi contemptu legebant in scholis, ei obsequerentur, et ipse, quasi pater et deus<sup>2</sup> omnium æstimatus,<sup>3</sup> mundum valde diligeret et amplexaretur, si quis tunc mihi hæc pulcherrima, quæ omnes admirabantur,<sup>3</sup> contemnenda diceret, quo vultu, quo animo ferrem? Insaniores Oreste, importuniorem Thersite judicassem. Nihil tanti viri tantæ beatitudine obesse posse putabam. Vir tamen effectus, narrationem audiavi de turpissimis omnino conviciis ad eum dictis; quæ si mihi nihil habenti in tanta audientia dicta fuissent, semimortuum me ducerem. Cœpi ergo illam inæstimabilem beatitudinem minoris pendere.

Bishop  
Robert.

§ 2. Quia vero multis sæcularibus solent ante mortem acerbissima contingere, quid ante finem ei contigerit, edisseram. Qui justitarius totius Angliæ et ab omnibus summe formidatus fuerat, in ultimo vitæ suæ

His mis-  
fortunes

<sup>1</sup> *omnis*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> *dominus*, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *admirabamur*, A<sup>5</sup>. Wh.

<sup>4</sup> Malmesbury, among the suppressed passages of the first draft of the *Gesta Pontificum*, has one (p. 313, Rolls edition) in which he gives a far more unfavourable picture of Robert Bloet than that drawn by Henry. Knyghton calls him "vir libidinosus," but he wrote

at the end of the 14th century, and against his testimony the terms of praise used by Henry at the end of § 2 must be set. See also the short lives by Gerald de Barri and John de Scalby in vol. vii. of the works of *Giraldus Cambrensis* (Rolls Series).

anno bis implacitatus est a rege per quemdam justitiarium ignobilem, et damno gravissimo cum dedecore bis afflictus. Unde tanto stupore mentis angariatus est, ut cum ego jam archidiaconus ejus inter prandium juxta eum recumberem, lacrymas eum fudisse viderim. Causam quæsitus: "Quondam," inquit, "astantes mihi pretiosis induebantur. Nunc multæ regis, cujus semper gratiæ studui, compegerunt eos agnini vestiri." Tanta vero post hæc desperatione de regis amicitia usus est, ut cum laudes egregiæ, quas rex de eo absente dixerat, ei retractarentur,<sup>1</sup> suspirans dixerit,<sup>2</sup> "Non laudat rex quempiam suorum, nisi quem voluerit funditus delere."<sup>3</sup> Rex namque Henricus, si dicere fas est, summæ simultatis erat, et mentis inscrutabilis. Post paucos exhiñq dies, apud Wodestoke, ubi rex conventum hominum et ferarum statuerat, cum episcopus loqueretur cum rege et episcopo Salesburiensi, qui summi erant in regno, percussus est apoplexia. Vivus tamen, sed elinguis, in hospitium suum deportatus, præsentem rege  
and death. mox expiravit. Rex magnus, cui semper servierat, quem valde dilexerat et metuerat, quem tanti ducebat, in quem adeo confidebat, nihil pluris in necessitate summa fuit mendico. Animadvertite igitur non frustra  
Jer. xvii. 5. dictum: "Maledictus, qui confidit in homine, et qui ponit carnem brachium suum." Dum igitur puer vel adolescens vel juvenis conspiciunt beatos, præcogitent<sup>4</sup> quam sit eorum finis ambiguus, et in hoc etiam mundo marcescere incepturi sint in miseriis. Fuit autem Robertus præsul mitis et humilis, multos erigens, nullum deprimens, pater orphanorum, deliciæ suorum; hoc tamen usus est fine.

Bishop  
Remigius

§ 3. Tractandum autem erat de præcessore ejus Remigio, qui cum Willelmo rege in Angliam<sup>5</sup> venit, et bello interfuit; qui postea episcopatum Dorkeestriæ

<sup>1</sup> *recitarentur*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> *dixit*, Wh. Ach.

<sup>3</sup> *lædere*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *percogitent*, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>5</sup>. Ach.; *Anglia*, Wh.

prædicto rege<sup>1</sup> largiente suscepit, qui deinde<sup>2</sup> sedem episcopatus a Dorkecestria<sup>3</sup> in Lincoliam transtulit;<sup>a</sup> qui ecclesiam nostram fundavit, fundatam possessionibus variis ditavit, ditatam personis honestissimis inflo-  
ravit. Sed<sup>4</sup> non loquimur nisi de auditis et visis, eum autem non vidimus; clericos autem venerabiles, quos in ecclesia primos imposuit, omnes vidimus; quorum paucos memorabimur paucis.<sup>5</sup> Radulfum<sup>6</sup> igitur, sacerdotem reverendum, constituit decanum. Reinerum vero, in cujus loco Gaufridus nepos ejus adhuc degit, thesaurarium<sup>7</sup> exhibuit. Reinerus vir adeo religiosus fuit, ut sæpe<sup>8</sup> in tumulto quem morti suæ præparaverat, psalmodiam exerceret, et domui æternitatis se assuescens diutius orabat, ut cum orare non posset, ibidem recumbens a Dei pietate visitaretur. Felix exemplum viri clarissimi. Nec tacendus est Hugo sacerdos, vir memoria dignus, principium et quasi fundamentum ecclesiæ. Cui succedit Osbertus, vir omnino comis et desiderabilis. In quorum loco jam Willelmus exstat, juvenis magnæ indolis. Guerno vero cantor effectus est. Hujus in loco Radulfus inpræsentiarum cantor degit. Nec prætereo Albinum Andegavensem, magistrum quippe meum. Cujus fratres honestissimi et socii<sup>9</sup> mei, qui trino pollebant habitu, scientia pro-

and his  
cathedral  
clergy.

<sup>1</sup> Verba, in Angliam . . . prædicto rege incuria librarii desunt in A.

<sup>2</sup> demum, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> Dorecestria, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> Scilicet, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> quorum . . . paucis ponit in margine Wh.

<sup>6</sup> Radulfum, Wh. Aeh.

<sup>7</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; thesaurum, A.

<sup>8</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; sæpe, A.

<sup>9</sup> consocii, A<sup>5</sup>. Wh.

<sup>a</sup> See Book VI., § 41. The exact date of the translation of the see to Lincoln cannot be decided, but it was probably somewhere about 1078, as Le Neve is of opinion. The removal was undoubtedly in pursuance of a decree passed by the council held in London by

archbishop Lanfranc in 1075 (Wilkins, i. 368), ordering that the decrees of former popes, and the canons of the councils of Sardica and Laodicea, forbidding bishops to place their sees in villages, should be carried out in the case of the sees of Sherborne, Selsey, and

fundissima, castitate clarissima, innocentia summa, occulto tamen Dei iudicio lepra percussi sunt; sed jam purgamento mortis mundati sunt.

The seven archdeacons of his nomination.

§ 4. Septem autem archidiaconos septem provinciis, quibus præerat, Remigius imposuit. Richardum archidiaconum Lincollie, cui successit Albertus Longobardus, cui etiam successit Willelmus Bajocensis, et nunc Robertus<sup>a</sup> junior, omnium archidiaconorum, qui in Anglia sunt, ditissimus.<sup>1</sup> Cantebriensi et Huntendonensi et Hertfordensi<sup>2</sup> Nicolaum: quo nullus erat corpore formosior, nec moribus corpori multum absimilis erat. Cujus circa transitum cum Cantebriensis provincia ab episcopatu nostro separata, novum episcopum suscepisset,<sup>b</sup> duabus reliquis provinciis archidiaconus ei<sup>3</sup> ipse successi. Nigellum vero archidiaconum Hamtonie præposuit, cui successit Robertus; quibus modo Willelmus,<sup>c</sup> nepos Alexandri episcopi nostri egregius. Leicestrie vero Randulfum; cui successit Godefridus, quibus Walterus vir omnino laudandus, nunc vero Robertus de Querceto, vir fama dignus.<sup>4</sup> Oxinefordie quidem præposuit Aluredum, cui successit Walterus<sup>d</sup> superlative rethoricus. Bukingeham præposuit Aluredum parvum; cui successit Gislebertus, versibus et prosa et habitu

<sup>1</sup> *et nunc . . . . . ditissimus desunt in A<sup>5</sup>.*

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; om. A. <sup>3</sup> *et*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *nunc . . dignus desunt in A<sup>5</sup>.*

Lichfield, which were to be removed to Salisbury, Chichester, and Chester respectively. As to other sees similarly situated, the council deferred coming to any definite decision till the return of the king from Normandy. Brompton (Twysden, p. 975), who places this council in 1076, expressly includes the translation from Dorchester to Lincoln among the diocesan changes to which its decree gave rise.

<sup>a</sup> Le Neve wrongly identifies this "Robert the younger" with Robert de Querceto or de Chesney.

<sup>b</sup> Cambridgeshire was assigned to the see of Ely, on its foundation in 1109. See Malm. *Gest. Pont.*, p. 325.

<sup>c</sup> William de St. Clere; he died in 1168.—Le Neve.

<sup>d</sup> Walter of Wallingford, called also Walter Calne: Le Neve. This Walter Calenius is the person who brought over from Brittany, and gave to Geoffrey of Monmouth, according to the allegation of the latter, the original Breton version of his *Historia Britonum*.

curialissimus. Quibus successit Rogerus, jam Cestrensis episcopus<sup>a</sup> effectus. Postea<sup>1</sup> Ricardus,<sup>b</sup> nunc vero David<sup>c</sup> frater Alexandri venerabilis episcopi, a primo quintus. Septimum vero archidiaconum Bedefordiae præposuit Osbertum. Cui successit Radulfus, miserande occisus. Quibus Hugo, a primo tertius; nunc vero Nicolaus,<sup>d</sup> a primo quartus.<sup>2</sup> Cæteri vero clerici honestissimi, ne prolixitatis arguar, taceantur. Cogita igitur, quomodo prædictæ personæ venerabiles exinanitæ sunt, et mox oblivione etiam absorbendæ sint. Immo mente revolve omnes, quos in choro dextro, omnes quos in choro sinistro prius vidimus. Nec unus quidem jam<sup>3</sup> superest. Amabant quæ amamus; optabant quæ optamus; sperabant quæ speramus; mors omnes dedit oblivioni. Cogitemus igitur, quia similiter et nos eadem manet oblivio. Curemus omni nisu quærere quod duret, quod stabile sit, quod differat a somno; imo quod aliquid sit, quia hæc nihil sunt.

§ 5. Secundum capitulum ad contemptum mundi est de his, quos in summis deliciis educatos vidimus, summis miseriis tandem deletos. Ideo autem per capitula tibi scribo, ut, quia diversorum nomina et gesta ubique dispersa intermiserentur, hinc apertior<sup>4</sup> et dilucidior fiat tractatus. Vidimus igitur Willelmum filium regis, vestibis sericis et auro consutis indutum, famulorum et custodum turba consertum, gloria quasi cœlesti coruscantem. Ipse unicus erat regis et<sup>5</sup> reginæ filius; nec dubitabat<sup>6</sup> se diademate sublimandum.

II. The falls of princes.

William, son of Henry I.

<sup>1</sup> nunc vero Ricardus a primo quartus, A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> nunc vero . . quartus desunt in A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> Om. Wh.

<sup>4</sup> aptior, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> Verba, quasi . . regis et desunt in A.

<sup>6</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; dubitat, A.

<sup>a</sup> i.e. bishop of Lichfield, Chester, and Coventry, to which see Roger de Clinton was elected in 1129.

<sup>b</sup> Richard de Urvilla: Le Neve.

<sup>c</sup> This David was alive in 1171: Le Neve.

<sup>d</sup> Alive in 1172: Le Neve.

Enimvero nescio quid magis afferebat ei certa spes in futurum regnandi, quam patri suo ipsa essentia regni; quia patri<sup>1</sup> magnum regnandi spatium jam præterierat, filio vero totum adhuc reservabatur. Pater etiam jam de amissione cum mentis angaria cogitabat; filius vero tantum ad habendum cum gaudio totus inhiabat. Displicebat autem mihi, et in animo meo<sup>2</sup> eadem futuram portendebat nimius circa eum cultus et nimius in ipso fastus; et dicebat animus meus: Hic adeo delicatus nutritur<sup>3</sup> in cibum ignis. Ille autem semper de regno futuro, de fastigio superbo, tumidus cogitabat. Deus autem dicebat: Non sic, impii, non sic. Contigit igitur ei, quod pro corona auri rupibus marinis capite scinderetur; pro vestibis deauratis nudus in mari volutaretur; pro celsitudine regni maris in fundo piscium ventribus sepeliretur.<sup>4</sup> Hæc fuit mutatio dexteræ Excelsi. Ricardus etiam Cestrensis consul, filius unicus Hugonis consulis, summo splendore nutritus, summa expectatione patris hæres eximius, adhuc imberbis, in eadem nave deperiit, et eandem sepulturam habuit. Ricardus quoque filius regis nothus,<sup>4</sup> ab episcopo nostro Roberto festive nutritus, et in eadem qua degebam familia a me et aliis celebriter honoratus, cujus indolem mirabamur, et magna quæque exspectabamus, in eadem nave, cautibus illisa, cum mare ventis careret, subita morte raptus est, et a mari voratus est.<sup>b</sup> Cum igitur Willelmus regis nepos, filius scilicet Roberti ducis Normannorum, jam

His half-  
brother  
Richard.

William  
Clito, son of  
duke  
Robert.

<sup>1</sup> *pater*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> Om. Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *nutritus*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *notus*, A.

<sup>a</sup> See above, p. 242.

<sup>b</sup> Of this Richard, Malmesbury writes, "quem [rex Henricus] ante regnum ex provinciali femina suscepit, juvenis magnanimus, et patri pro obsequio acceptus." His name frequently occurs in the

chronicle of Ordericus, and all that is recorded of him there is to his honour, as a brave and humane soldier. At the time of his death he was affianced to the daughter of Ralph de Guader, the powerful lord of Breteuil.

solus regius esset hæres, et omnium expectatione dignus judicaretur, et probitate ineffabili consulatum Flandriæ adeptus esset, et vigore inextiminabili Theodoricum signis collatis superasset, parvo ictu sauciatus in manu<sup>1</sup> deperiit.<sup>2</sup> Omnes qui eum regem futurum securi expectabant, et quosvis ad libitum præjudicabant, illusi sunt.

§ 6. Si<sup>2</sup> singula sequeretur exempla, fieret epistola codex magnus. Nunc autem decanum nostrum Simonem non prætereo, qui filius Roberti præsulis nostri fuit; quem genuerat dum cancellarius Willelmi magni regis esset. Qui, ut decebat, regaliter nutritus, et adhuc impubis decanus noster effectus, in summam regis amicitiam et curiales dignitates mox proventus est. Erat autem celer ingenio, clarus eloquio, forma venustus, gratia coruscus, ætate junior, prudentia senilis, sed superbiæ vitio respersus. Ex superbia crevit invidia, ex invidia odium, ex odio detractioes, jurgia, delationes. Bene igitur prophetavit de se dicens: "Ego curialibus interponor, quasi sal anguillis viventibus." Sicut enim sal anguillas excruciat, sic delationibus suis omnes regi famulantes distorsit. Sicut sal anguillarum destruitur humore, sic ipse omnium aspiratione annullatus est.<sup>3</sup> Hujus tamen prophetiæ partem priorem intellexit, alteram non prævidit. Veruntamen de se dixit nescius. Summus igitur in fastigio curiæ et regni, post dies in summum regis odium devolutus est; et in carcerem positus, per latrinam aufugisse dicitur; et in exsilium et miseriam juvenis intravit. Bene igitur in illo illud propheticum patuit: "Qui in

Dean Simon,  
son of  
bishop  
Bloet.

Thren. iv. 5.

"croceis nutriebantur, amplexati sunt stercora." Non igitur magni æstimemus,<sup>4</sup> cum nobiles pueros vel ju-

<sup>1</sup> in manu, om. Wh.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; Sed, A.

<sup>3</sup> adnullatur, Wh

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; estimus, A.

<sup>5</sup> See above, p. 250.

venes viderimus, tam forma quam divitiis et favoribus præradiare;<sup>1</sup> cum sæpenumero in summas miserias redigantur. Tunc<sup>2</sup> omnis exspectatio stultorum dissoluta est, et quod nihili erat, ad nihilum redigitur.<sup>3</sup>

III. The  
falls of  
statesmen  
and scho-  
lars. .

Prosperity  
and power  
of Robert,  
count of  
Mellent.

§ 7. Tertius erit tractatus ad hujus vitæ labentis despectum, (quæ utinam despici posset a me quantum animus optat meus, et dignitas exigit sua,) de sapientia hujus mundi, scilicet de hoc quod potissimum est in mundo. Illa namque pretiosior est cunctis opibus terræ; et omnia, quæ in mundo desiderantur, huic non valent comparari. Scriptum est tamen: "Sapientia<sup>1</sup> 1 Cor. iii. 19. " hujus mundi, stultitia est<sup>4</sup> apud Deum." Quod apostoli signaculum visis prosequar<sup>5</sup> exemplis. Fuit igitur Robertus consul de Mellend in rebus sæcularibus sapientissimus omnium hinc usque in Jerusalem degentium. Fuit scientia clarus, eloquio blandus, astutia perspicax, providentia sagax, ingenio versipellis, prudentia insuperabilis, consilio profundus, sapientia magnus. Possessiones igitur magnas et varias, quas vulgo vocant honores, et urbes et castella, vicos et villas, flumina et silvas, prædictis acquisierat instrumentis. Erant autem honores ejus non solum in Anglia, sed etiam in Normannia et Francia. Pro libitu suo igitur reges Francorum et Anglorum nunc concordēs uniebantur, nunc discordēs præliabantur.<sup>a</sup> Si adversus aliquem surgebat, contritus humiliabatur. Si prodesse volebat, gloriosus exaltabatur. Hinc thesauri copia, scilicet auri et argenti, gemmarum et palliorum, incredibiliter ei confluit.

<sup>1</sup> *perradiare*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> *Nunc*, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *redigetur*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> Om. Wh.

<sup>5</sup> *prosequitur*, Wh.

<sup>a</sup> For a remarkable illustration of the influence possessed by the count of Mellent over the mind of William Rufus, see Ordericus, x., ch. 7. The character given to him

by Malmesbury, except that he says nothing in his dispraise, is in close agreement with that drawn by Henry. Mellent died in 1118: (Ord. Vit., xii. 1).

§ 8. Cum igitur in summo statu gloriæ suæ degeret, <sup>The change in his fortunes.</sup> contigit quemdam alium consulem sponsam ei tam factione quam dolosis viribus arripuisse. Unde<sup>1</sup> in senectute<sup>2</sup> sua mente turbatus et angaria obnubilatus, in tenebras moeroris incidit; nec usque ad mortem se lætum vel hilarem sensit. Cum igitur post dies dolori<sup>3</sup> dedicatos in<sup>4</sup> infirmitatem mortis prænuntiam incidisset, rogatus est ab archiepiscopo et sacerdotibus, cum ei confessionis purgatorium impenderent officium, ut terras quas vi vel arte multis abstulerat, poenitens redderet, et erratum lacrymis lavaret. Quibus respondens ait: "Si terras quas aggregavi multifariam divisero, quid miser filiis meis relinquam?" Cui contra ministri Domini: "Sufficient filiis tuis hæreditates<sup>5</sup> pristinæ, et quas juste terras acquisisti. Cætera redde. Alioquin animam devovisti gehennæ." Respondit autem consul: "Filiis omnia tradam; ipsi pro salute defuncti misericorditer agant." Eo autem<sup>6</sup> defuncto, filii ejus magis injuste congregata injuste studuerunt augere, quam aliquid pro salute paternæ<sup>7</sup> distribuere. Liqueat igitur summam viri sapientiam in fine, quod<sup>8</sup> laus canitur, non solum in summam stultitiam, sed in cœcam devenisse insaniam.

§ 9. Quid memorem Gislebertum cognomine Universalem, episcopum Londoniensem? Non fuit adusque Romam par ei scientia. Artibus erat eruditissimus, theoria singularis et unicus; fama igitur celebris et splendidus. Quapropter dum scholas regeret Nivernis<sup>9</sup> in Gallia,<sup>10</sup> ad summum Londoniæ sacerdotium vocatus est, et exoratus concessit.<sup>11</sup> Qui magna expectatione susceptus cœpit avaritiæ crimini deservire; multa

His impenitent death.

Gilbert the Universal, bishop of London.

<sup>1</sup> Unde et, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; senectæ, A.

<sup>3</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; dolori post dies, A.

<sup>4</sup> et in, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; hereditas, A.

<sup>6</sup> Om. Wh.

<sup>7</sup> patria, Wh.

<sup>8</sup> qua, A<sup>5</sup>. Ach.; quo, Wh.

<sup>9</sup> Naverinis, A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>10</sup> in Nivernis Gallia, Wh.

<sup>11</sup> accessit, Wh.

Ralph the  
chancellor.

perquirens, pauca largiens. Moriens siquidem nihil di-  
visit; sed infinitam thesauri copiam rex Henricus in  
ejus deliciis invenit. Ocreæ etiam episcopi auro et ar-  
gento refertæ in fiscum regium allatæ sunt. Unde vir  
summæ scientiæ ab omni populo habitus est pro stul-  
tissimo.<sup>a</sup> Quid etiam de Randulfo regis cancellario?<sup>b</sup>  
Qui cum esset vir sagacissimus, astutus et callidus,  
omnem vim sapientiæ suæ convertit ad simplices de-  
heritandos et pecunias eradendas. Sed inter agendum  
decidit in languores interminabiles. Tunc vero quasi  
Deo renitens et naturæ victor, facinus cumulare, quos  
poterat devorare non destitit. Crescebat autem cum  
cruciatu cupiditas, cum infirmitate impietas, cum do-  
loribus<sup>1</sup> dolus; donec, cum ex equo corrueret,<sup>2</sup> super  
eum monachus equitavit, et insolita morte demolitus<sup>3</sup>  
est. Ex infinitorum silva exemplorum ad mundi sa-  
pientiam, immo fallaciam, discernendam jam dicta suffi-  
ciant.

IV. The  
falls of  
nobles.

§ 10. Quarto subdetur loco virorum magni nominis  
felicitas; quam scilicet se dedisse regi David Dominus  
ipse pronuntiat his verbis: "Feci quoque tibi nomen<sup>2</sup> Reg. vii. 2.  
"grande juxta nomen magnorum qui sunt in terris."  
Ille igitur hanc felicitatem feliciter habuit, nostri au-  
tem<sup>4</sup> infeliciter. His namque temporibus non perveni-  
tur ad magnum nomen nisi summis sceleribus. Thomas<sup>c</sup>

Thomas of  
Laon.

<sup>1</sup> dolore, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> quo rueret, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> A<sup>4</sup>.; demolitus, A.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>4</sup>.; autem nostri, A.

<sup>a</sup> Gilbert the Universal was by origin a Breton. After having taught with distinction in the schools of Auxerre and Nevers, he was selected for the diocese of London by Henry I. in 1127. He died in 1134. In spite of his vast reputation, Gilbert is only known as the author of a *Gloss on the Old and New Testaments*, of which but a small part can have been original,

and a *Commentary on the Lamentations*.

<sup>b</sup> See p. 244.

<sup>c</sup> Thomas de Merle, lord of Coucy. Full particulars of the career of this monster may be found in the 12th volume of Bouquet, taken from the abbot Suger's *Life of Louis le Gros*, the *Chronicles of St. Denis*, and the *Annals of Gilbert de Nogent*. A portion of what

Ps. 114.

princeps magnus juxta Laudunum in Gallia principans, magnus erat nomine, quia summus erat scelere. Ecclesiis igitur circumjacentibus hostis,<sup>1</sup> omnes in fiscum suum redegerat. Si aliquem vi vel dolo in captione sua tenebat, non falso dicere poterat: "Dolores inferni circumdederunt me." Cædes humana, voluptas ejus et gloria. Comitissam contra solitum in carcere posuit. Cui crudelis<sup>2</sup> et spurcus, compedes et supplicia diebus, ut pecuniam extorqueret, stuprum noctibus inferebat, ut eam<sup>3</sup> derideret. A carcere in lectum Thomæ<sup>4</sup> crudelissimi quaque nocte ferebatur,<sup>5</sup> a lecto quaque<sup>6</sup> die in carcerem referebatur.<sup>7</sup> Pacifice loquens proximum, in corde non sine risu gladio transpungebat. Unde gladium sæpius sub chlamide nudum ferebat, quam vaginatum. Hunc igitur omnes<sup>8</sup> timebant, venerabantur, adorabant. Fama omnis Galliæ

His atrocious cruelty and rapacity.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *hostilis*, Wh.; *hostiis*, A.<sup>2</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *fidelis*, A.<sup>3</sup> *eadem*, A.<sup>4</sup> *homines*, Wh.<sup>5</sup> *ferebant*, Wh.<sup>6</sup> *quaqua*, Wh.<sup>7</sup> *referebant*, Wh.<sup>8</sup> *homines*, Wh.

is said by the last-named writer is subjoined, from which it will appear that Henry did Thomas of Laon no injustice. "Is ab ineunte adolescentia prædas de pauperibus et Hierosolymitanis peregrinis faciens, et incestuosis matroniis coalescens, ad innumerabilem hominum exitium plurimum visus est attigisse potentiam. Cujus crudelitas nostris est intantum sæculis inaudita, ut aliqui qui etiam crudeles putantur mitiores videantur in nece pecudum quam iste in hominum. Nam non modo eos gladio simpliciter, et pro certo, ut fieri solet, reatu interimit, sed horrendis excarnificando suppliciis." A number of instances of revolting and atrocious punishment are then given;

and the abbot proceeds, "Dici ab ullo non potest, quot in ejus carceribus fame, tabo, cruciatus, et in ejus vinculis expirant. \* \* \* \* \* Quidam de captivis saucius proficisci non poterat. Interrogat hominem cur non celeri gradu graderetur; ille respondit se non posse. 'Sta,' inquit, 'ego faciam ut ægre peres.' Equoque desiliens, gladio ei utrumque succidit pedem, unde et mortuus est." Being at last attacked in 1130 by king Louis as a public pest and malefactor, he was mortally wounded by Ralph count of Vermandois, and taken to Laon, where he died without the sacraments.

His end.

circa illum. Crescebat in dies ei<sup>1</sup> possessio, crescebat thesaurus, crescebat servitus. Audire finem sceleratī desideras? Gladio lethaliter percussus, pœnitentiam recusans, et a corpore Domini collum retorquens, sic periit; ut bene dici posset:

“Conveniens vitæ mors fuit ista tuæ.”

Ovid. Am.  
ii. 10.

Robert de  
Belesme.

§ 11. Vidisti Robertum de Belesme: qui princeps Normannensis in carcerem positus<sup>2</sup> erat Pluto, Megæra, Cerberus, vel si aliquid horrendius scribi potest. Nec curabat captos redimere, sed interimere. Filioli sui<sup>3</sup> oculos sub chlamide positi quasi ludens pollicibus extraxit;<sup>3</sup> homines utriusque sexus ab ano usque in ora palis transforabat. Erat ei cædes horribilis hominum cibus jucundus animæ. Erat igitur in ore omnium positus, ut diceretur in proverbii: “Mirabilia “Roberti de Belesme.” Tandem veniamus ad finem, scilicet ad rem optabilem. Qui cæteros carcere<sup>4</sup> vexaverat, in carcere perenni a rege Henrico positus,<sup>b</sup> longo supplicio sceleratus deperiit. Quem tantopere fama coluerat, dum viveret, in carcere utrum viveret vel obisset, nescivit: diemque mortis ejus obmutescens ignoravit. Hos igitur duos inter multos descripsi. Nec jam amplius de gente ipsis<sup>5</sup> dæmonibus horrenda loquendum duxi.

V. The  
miserable  
lot of kings.

§ 12. Quinto tractabitur de summis hominum, qui sic sunt in rebus humanis, ut generalissima in prædicamentis. Reges ergo gentium subditis suis quasi

<sup>1</sup> ejus, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> positus, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> extinxit, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; carcerem, A.

<sup>5</sup> A<sup>5</sup>. Ach.; ipsius, A. Wh.

<sup>a</sup> Filiolus = *filieul*, godson. Malmesbury's account is,—“Puerulum “ex baptismo filiolum quem in “obsidatum acceperat, pro modico “delicto patris excæcavit, lumina “miselli unguibus nefandis abrum-

“pens.” Even the mild Ordericus is moved to expressions of unusual strength when describing the habitual acts of this detestable wretch. See his Chronicle, viii. 5.

<sup>b</sup> See above, p. 238.

Deus sunt, quibus omnes juramento se devoverunt, quibus stellæ cœli deservire videntur. Horum igitur cacuminum mundi tanta sublimitas est, ut in eos videndo, cæteri non satientur, ut eis cohabitantes super homines æstimentur. Nec mirandum est, si ad eos inspiciendos mulierum turba vel juvenum, vel etiam viri levitatis prosiliunt. Sed etiam sapientes et discretionē<sup>1</sup> graves ad videndum sæpe visos, nescio qua gratia mulcente, impelluntur. Quid igitur est? quid jucundius? quid beatius esse potest? Vellem tamen unum ex eis tibi colloqui, et mentis suæ secreta funditus revelare. Longe aliter judicares. Cum eos alii beatos judicent, ipsi dolore detorquentur, timore decoquantur. Nemo in regno eorum par eis miseriis, par sceleribus. Unde dicitur: "Regia res scelus est." Rex Henry I. Henricus fratrem suum et dominum Robertum in carcerem perennem posuit, et usque dum moreretur detinuit. Neptum<sup>2</sup> suarum oculos erui fecit; \* multos<sup>3</sup> proditione cepit; multos subdole<sup>4</sup> interfecit; multa

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>s</sup>.; *discretionēs*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Neptum*, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *et multos*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *dolose et subdole*, Wh.

\* Though the real facts of the case were bad enough, they do not altogether justify Henry in saying that the king "caused the eyes of" his grand-daughters to be put "out." Eustace of Breteuil, who had married one of the king's illegitimate daughters, Juliana, claimed from him—in 1119—the surrender of the castle of Ivry, which he declared to have always belonged to his ancestors. The king put him off with fair words, promising to surrender the castle at a future time, and giving up to him as a hostage for the fulfilment of the promise the young son of the seneschal Ralph Harenc, while he

received Eustace's two daughters, his own grand-children, as hostages for the good behaviour of his son-in-law. Eustace, at the instigation of Amalric de Montfort, caused the eyes of his hostage to be plucked out, and sent them to his father Ralph Harenc. The father came to the king, who in great wrath gave up the daughters of Eustace and Juliana to Harenc, to wreak any vengeance he chose upon them. Not to be outdone in cruelty, Harenc, besides putting out the eyes of the hapless girls, cut off the ends of their noses. See Ord. Vit., lib. xii. (Bouquet, xii. 716).

contra sacramentum egit; semper cupiditati et avaritiæ deservivit. Quos terrores sensit, dum frater ejus Robertus in eum exercitus a Normannia in Angliam duceret! Concordiam quidem territus cum eo instituit; sed in ea procerum optimos perjurare fecit; quia pacem fregit et fratrem cepit. Quos terrores habuit, dum consul Andegavensis castella ejus diriperet, nec ipse procedere auderet! Quos terrores habuit, dum Baldewinus consul Flandrensis Normanniam ipso præsentente inflammaret, nec ipse procedere auderet! Quomodo mente contribulatus est, cum filii ejus et filiæ et proceres pelago devorati sunt! Quibus curis demollitus<sup>1</sup> est, dum nepote suo Willelmo Flandriam adipiscente, se diadema regni amissurum pro certo putaret! Hic tamen beatissimus regum habitus est. Sed certe miserrimus est.

Philip I. of  
France and  
Louis his  
son.

§ 13. Quid de Philippo rege Francorum et Lodoveo filio ejus, qui temporibus nostris regnaverunt? Quorum deus fuit venter,<sup>a</sup> immo funestus hostis Phil. iii. 12. fuit. Adeo namque voraverunt, ut se ipsos pinguedine amitterent, nec sustinere se possent. Philippus olim pinguedine defunctus est.<sup>b</sup> Lodoveus adhuc juvenis, pinguedine tamen jam mortuus est. Quid autem de felicitate eorum? Nonne Philippus a suis sæpe victus est, et a personis vilissimis sæpe fugatus est? Nonne Ludovicus per regem Henricum a Martio campo expulsus est;<sup>c</sup> et a suis, ut patet, sæpenumero fugatus

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *demollitus*, A.

<sup>a</sup> Philip I. died in 1108; Louis VI., surnamed le Gros, was still alive when the first version of this Epistle was written; he died in 1137.

<sup>b</sup> "Philippus rex Francorum regi nostro nec utilis nec infestus fuit, propterea quod esset ventri magis quam negotiis deditus."

Malm. *Gest. Reg.*, v. Orderic, in the fine description of the Council of Rheims in his twelfth book, speaking either as an eye-witness, or as a reporter for an eye-witness, describes Louis le Gros as a man with a very pale face, tall in stature, and corpulent.

<sup>c</sup> See above, p. 242.

est? Rex vero Norwagensis fratrem suum regem The king of Norway. nuper bello cepit,<sup>a</sup> oculos capto<sup>1</sup> eruit, mentulam abscidit, pedem dextrum ademit, filium ejus lactentem excapitavit, pontificem ejus laqueo suspendit. Infelix æque rex uterque.

§ 14. Sed oppones: Cur igitur regem Henricum in Historia tua tantis laudibus extollis, quem hic tantis criminibus subvertis? Ad quos respondeo: Regem sapientia magnum dixi,<sup>b</sup> consilio profundum, providentia clarum, armis insignem, gestis sublimem, divitiis singularem; et tamen omnia quæ hic apposui vera nimis sunt, et utinam falsa essent. Sed forsitan adhuc dices: Triginta et quinque annis jam regnavit, et multo plura, si numeres, prospera sensit quam adversa. Contra quod ego: Imo nec millesima pars fortunæ ejus prosperitati potest adhiberi. Ea namque quæ prospera videbantur, doloribus semper mixta<sup>1</sup> erant. Cum regem Franciæ prælio vicit, quam longa

The author justifies the favourable terms which he had used of Henry I. in his history.

<sup>1</sup> *innixta*, A<sup>5</sup>. Wh.

<sup>a</sup> The terrible story is a little over-coloured, as is the way with Henry. Its details may be read in the thirteenth book of the *Heimskringla*, chap. 8. The mutilated king was Magnus IV.; the perpetrator of the deed was Harald Gille, the uncle (not brother) of Magnus. Harald had come to Norway during the reign of Sigurd, Magnus' father; and by undergoing a severe fiery ordeal was thought to have established the truth of his claim to be considered a son of Magnus Barefoot, the father of Sigurd. Jealousy and ill-will naturally sprang up between Magnus Sigurd's son and the interloper. When Sigurd died, Magnus succeeded him, but Harald became king over a portion of

Norway. War soon broke out between him and Magnus, in the course of which the latter was surprised by Harald at Bergen; a chain stretched across the mouth of the harbour prevented him from escaping by sea; he was taken alive, and treated in the manner described in the text. This was early in 1135. Snorro says nothing of the murder of an infant, or the hanging of a bishop. The career of the blinded king did not end here; he made several attempts, with the help of disaffected jarls, to recover his kingdom, and almost succeeded in doing so. He fell in battle in 1139.

<sup>b</sup> See Book VII., § 26.

Prediction  
of the king's  
speedy  
death.

turbatione mentis breve illud gaudium adeptus est! Breve dico; quia mox alius exercitus insurgens mentis febribus aliis eum contribuit.<sup>1</sup> Quod si diuturnitatem vitæ et regni miraris, jam non per biennium regnaturum vir Dei prædixit.<sup>a</sup> Nuper itaque videbis miseræ vitæ miserum finem. Quod utinam, si fieri potest, absit! sed tamen non aberit. Non igitur mireris reges istos infelices; sed Deum solum felicem, et regna felicia suis dantem.

VI. Vanish-  
ing of the  
great whom  
they had  
known from  
the stage of  
life.

The bishops,  
their con-  
temporaries.

§ 15. Sextus autem, qui et ultimus erit, tractatus de regni nostri proceribus habeatur, qui nuper potentissimi fuerunt, nec jam impotentes sunt. Jam enim<sup>2</sup> nihil sunt, nusquam sunt; et per excessum pœne dici potest, nunquam fuerunt. Nunc etenim fere nemo eorum recordatur. Omnis memoria eorum interire incepit; mox nulla erit; ad nihilum devenient tanquam aqua decurrens. Audi igitur, Waltere consors charissime, sermocinationem de viris illustribus, sed tamen in audiendo tædiosum, licet eos oculis nostris inspexerimus.<sup>3</sup> Splenduit igitur temporibus nostris Lanfrancus<sup>4</sup> archiepiscopus,<sup>b</sup> vir philosophus, vir perspicuus. Cui successit Anselmus, philosophus et sanctissimus. Vidimus post eos Radulfum, dignum tanta celsitudine habitum. Postea vero sedit Cantuariæ Willelmus, cujus laudes dici nequeunt; quia non sunt. Inpræsentiarum Tedbaldus,<sup>c</sup> vir omni laude dignus. Fuit etiam tem-

<sup>1</sup> A. A<sup>5</sup>.; *conturbavit*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> *vero*, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *inspeximus*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *Lamfracus*, A.

<sup>a</sup> This prediction is not noticed, so far as I am aware, by any other writer.

<sup>b</sup> See § 25 of the Introduction, note <sup>1</sup>.

<sup>c</sup> As Theobald did not succeed to the primacy till the beginning of 1139, this sentence could not have been in the Epistle as originally

composed, for Henry I. was then living (see above, § 14), and he died at the end of 1135. This and many other notices of living bishops which follow, were inserted in the Epistle in or about the year 1145. The original passage on the bishops is preserved in the Corpus MS. at Cambridge, and also in Addit-

poribus nostris Walchelinus, Wintoniensis episcopus; cui successit Willelmus Giffardus, vir nobilissimus. Hi quoque exinaniti sunt, et ad nihilum devenerunt. Nunc autem sedet in loco illorum Henricus nepos Henrici regis; qui futurus est novum quoddam monastrum ex integro et corrupto compositum, scilicet monachus et miles. Fuit etiam tempore nostro Ingulfus præsul Rovecestrensis; post quem Radulfus; post quem Arnulfus;<sup>a</sup> deinde Johannes. Hi omnes exinaniti sunt. Nunc autem sedet mox Ascelinus<sup>1</sup> periturus. Tem-

<sup>1</sup> Om. Wh.

24,061 in the British Museum. It is as follows: "Splenduit igitur temporibus nostris Lanfrancus . . . . . sanctissimus. Vidi- mus post eos Radulfum, dignum tanta celsitudine habitum. Im- præsentiarum vero sedet Cántuarie Willelmus, cujus laudes dici nequeunt, quia non sunt." The entry for Winchester is the same as in the text. For Rochester the entry is: "Fuit etiam tempore nostro Ingulfus præsul Rovecestrensis, post quem Radulfus, post quem Ernulfus. Hi omnes exinaniti sunt. Nunc autem sedet Johannes, mox periturus. Tempore nostro episcopus Londoniensis Mauricius decessit; post quem Ricardus, post Gilebertus, magnus philosophus. Et hi exinaniti sunt. Bade vero Johannes medicus et Godefridus; et hi jam nihil sunt. Wirecestrie Samsonem vidi clarissimum; post hunc Teulfum. Nunc autem ibidem Simonem videmus." The entry for Lichfield and Coventry is the same in both versions. Then—"Norwiciæ sedit Herbertus, vir benignus et doctus, cujus extant

"scripta. Cui successit Everardus." The entry for Ely is the same. That for Salisbury is the same in both, except that the final words, "nunc vero Jocelinus," are omitted in the two MSS. now under consideration. The entry for Exeter is,—“Execestris vero sedet Robertus, qui nondum est mortuus, sed pridem cæcus. In Cicestris vero sedit Radulfus; in cujus loco sedet Pelochin vir Gnatonicus. Dunelmis vero sedit Willelmus qui occisus est; post quem Randulfus, qui . . . . succendit. Quibus successit Galfridus. Vidimus autem Gerardum archiepiscopum Eboracensem; post eum Thomam, post eum Thurstanum omnino laudandum. Lincolnis vero,”—the rest of the entry is the same in both versions.

<sup>a</sup> This Arnulfus or Ernulfus is a name familiar to the readers of *Tristram Shandy*; they will remember the tremendous form of anathema "procured out of the leger-book of the church of Rochester, writ by Ernulphus the bishop."

pore nostro episcopus Londoniensis Mauricius <sup>a</sup> decessit; post quem Ricardus; post Gilebertus magnus philosophus. Nunc vero Robertus, vir animo magnus. Et hi exinaniti sunt. Bade<sup>1</sup> vero Joannes medicus, et Godefridus. Nunc vero sedet ibidem Robertus: et hi jam nihil sunt. Wirecestriæ Samsonem vidi clarissimum: post hunc Theulfum.<sup>2</sup> Nunc autem ibidem Simonem videmus. Cestriæ vero vidimus Robertum pontificem; deinde alium Robertum, qui cognominatus est Peccatum. Nunc autem sedet Rogerus, mox nihilum futurus. Norwiciæ sedit Herbertus, vir benignus et doctus, cujus exstant scripta. Cui successit Everardus, vir crudelissimus, et ob hoc jam depositus. Nunc vero sedet ibidem Willelmus. Heliensis episcopus primus<sup>3</sup> Herveus, cui successit Nigellus. Salesberiensis episcopus fuit Osmundus; cui successit Rogerus, vir magnus in sæcularibus, nunc vero Jocelinus.<sup>4</sup> Excestriæ vero sedit Robertus nuper mortuus,<sup>5</sup> et pridem cæcus; nunc vero nepos ejus Robertus.<sup>6</sup> In Cicestria<sup>7</sup> vero sedit Radulfus; in cujus loco sedet Pelochin, vir Gnatonicus,<sup>b</sup> et ob hoc jam depositus. Dunelmæ vero sedit Willelmus, qui occisus est; post quem Randulfus, qui totam raptor Angliam succendit. Quibus successit Galfridus: impræsentiarum Willelmus. Vidimus autem Gerardum archiepiscopum Eboracensem; post eum Thomam; post eos Turstanum omnino laudandum; sed nunc Willelmum ejusdem ecclesiæ thesaurarium. Lincolniæ vero tempore nostro Remigius deguit episcopus. Cui successit Robertus, vir clementissimus. Quibus successit Alexander, vir fidelis et munificus. Hactenus de episcopis.

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>6</sup>; *Badthe*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Teulfum*, C<sup>3</sup>. A<sup>6</sup>; *Leulfum*, Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *primus fuit*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *regis justitarius*, Wh.; *Jocelinus*, Ach.

<sup>5</sup> *mortuus est*, A.

<sup>6</sup> Om. Wh.

<sup>7</sup> *Sicestria*, Wh. Ach.

<sup>a</sup> See Book VII., § 26 of the History. | <sup>b</sup> See Glossary.

§ 16. Nonne vidisti Hugonem consulem Cestriæ, et Ricardum filium ejus, et Randulfum successorem eorum, et nunc alium Randulfum? et hi omnes exinaniti sunt. Vidisti<sup>1</sup> virum nequissimum, sapientissimum<sup>2</sup> in sæcularibus, de quo prædixi, scilicet Robertum consulem de Mellent, et nunc filium ejus Robertum<sup>a</sup> laude parvum. Nonne vidistis Henricum consulem de Warewic, et filium ejus Rogerum, qui nunc degit, animis ignobilem? Vidistis Willelmum consulem Warenniæ, et Robertum consulem de Belesme, et Robertum consulem de Moretuil: de quibus in Historia Anglorum locuti sumus, et Simonem consulem Huntendonæ, et Eustachium Buloniæ, et alios multos. Et ipsa memoria tædiosa est. Qui cum potentissimi et aspectu intento dignissimi viderentur, nunc nec pronuntiatione digni sunt. Sed et pellis ovina, in qua depinguntur eorum nomina, perdita videtur omnino, nec invenimus oculos, qui eam perlegere velint. Testis est hæc epistola, quam pro nominibus potentissimorum et omnium assurrectione dignissimorum nemo tamen vel vix aliquis potest perlegere.

§ 17. Quid memorem Alwinum,<sup>3</sup> dominum meum, abbatem Ramesiæ, et successorem ejus Bernardum, et postea Reinaldum<sup>4</sup> virum callidum sed inclementem, nunc Walterum<sup>b</sup> virum elegantem? Et hi ubi sunt?

<sup>1</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; *Vidistis*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *et sap.*, Wh. A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>3</sup> *Aldwinum*, A<sup>5</sup>; *Aldwinum*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *Remaldum*, Wh.

<sup>a</sup> This was probably one of the two young men, sons of Robert de Mellent, of whose successful logomachies at Gisors with the cardinals in the train of pope Calixtus, Malmesbury in his Fifth book gives so amusing an account.

<sup>b</sup> Aldwin was abbot of Ramsey from 1091 to 1103, in which year he was superseded by Bernard, a

monk of St. Alban's, who sat till his death in 1107. Aldwin was then restored. On his death in 1113, the election fell on Reginald, who finished the abbey church in 1123, and died in 1133. Walter succeeded him, and sat to 1160. Of him says the Cottonian MS., Vesp. A. xviii., "Iste sustinuit multas " tribulationes tempore Willielmi

Earls of Chester, and other Norman nobles.

Abbots whom they had known at Ramsey and Peterborough.

Turaldus abbas Burgensis, et Ernulfus, et Matthias, et Godricus, et Joannes, et Martinus,<sup>a</sup> quos omnes vidimus, exinaniti sunt, et ad nihilum devenerunt. Quæris autem, cur post mortuos et in fine vivos interponam, et jam ad nihilum devenisse dicam? Cujus causa hæc est. Sicut enim mortui ad nihilum devenerunt, ita et isti mox devenient: immo, ut liberius dicam, jam devenerunt. Nostra namque, quæ dicitur, vita, ut Tullius ait, mors est. Ex quo incipis vivere, incipis mori.<sup>1</sup> Prætereo viros clarissimos, scilicet Radulfum Basset, et filium ejus Ricardum, justitiarior totius Angliæ, et Galfridum Ridel, justitiarium totius Angliæ,<sup>2</sup> et alios absque numero; quibus jamdudum magni constanti<sup>3</sup> servitium impendere jucundum esse mihi videbatur; nunc autem mortuis brevissimam scribendi operam vile videtur impendere.

Reflections  
on the  
nothingness  
of life.

§ 18. Cogita igitur, Waltere, quam nihil sit hæc præsens vita. Cum namque videamus potentissimos, qui ejus divitias plenarie adepti sunt, nihil effecisse, ne et nos nihil efficiamus, quæramus aliud iter vitæ, in qua beatudinem speremus et<sup>4</sup> adipiscamur. Surge,

<sup>1</sup> Scriptum est supra lineam in A., "hoc est, ad mortem festinare  
"non cessas."

<sup>2</sup> et . . Angliæ, om. Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *constamenti*, A<sup>5</sup>. Ach.; *custamenti*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> A<sup>5</sup>; deest, A.

"de Say et Galfridi de Mandevill,  
"qui apud Borewell interfecti fuerunt." See above, p. 277.

<sup>a</sup> Turolf, the first Norman abbot of Peterborough, to whom the authorship of the great epic poem of the *Chanson de Roland* has been with some probability assigned, governed the monastery from 1070 to 1098. Matthias was elected in 1102, but died the following year; then there was an interregnum for some years, and in 1107 Ernulfus (Sax. Chron.), who had been

prior of Canterbury, was made abbot. In 1114 Ernulfus was raised against his will to the bishopric of Rochester, to the great sorrow of the monks. John a monk of Sieyes was then appointed abbot; he died in 1125; and in 1127 the king appointed one Henry, a relative of his, and a shameless pluralist. Henry was forced to surrender the abbey in 1132, and then the king gave it to Martin, the prior of St. Neot's. No Godric is mentioned in the Peterborough Chronicle.

frater, surge et quære; quia in hac vita quod quæ-  
sisti nunquam invenisti. Nonne rex Alexander, vir,  
ut ita dicam, plus quam potentissimus, parvo tandem  
veneno demollitus<sup>1</sup> est? Non invenit quod quæsivit.  
Nonne et Julius Cæsar, vir æque vel magis potens,<sup>2</sup>  
cum omnia subjugasset, stilo<sup>3</sup> exinanitus est? Quod  
quæsivit invenit.<sup>4</sup> Quære igitur quod invenias, quære  
vitam post vitam, quia vita non est in hac vita. O  
Deus magne, quam juste mortales dicimur?<sup>5</sup> Mors  
enim nostra, ex quo vivimus, continua est; illa autem  
quæ dicitur mors, finis nostræ mortis est. Quidquid  
enim agimus, quidquid dicimus, ex quo actum est vel  
dictum, statim moritur. Memoria quidem eorum, ut  
circa mortuum, aliquandiu vivit. Cum autem et illa  
deperierit, jam quasi secunda mors facta omnia et  
dicta nostra omnimode annihilavit. Ubi est quod  
heri feci? ubi quod dixi? Ad nihilum devenerunt.  
Ubi et quod præterito anno, hodierna die, feci vel  
dixi? Æterna morte oblivionis absorpta sunt. Opte-  
mus igitur in hac morte mortem; quia non evademus  
hanc vivendi mortem, nisi corporis morte;<sup>6</sup> quæ sci-  
licet medius terminus est mortis et vitæ.

§ 19. Sed antequam epistolam hanc perfinierim, The author  
hears of the  
death of his  
correspond-  
ent. nuntiatum est amicum meum, cui scribebam, mortis  
legibus concessisse. O mortalium sors abjecta nascendi,  
misera vivendi, dura moriendi. O mors, quam cito  
proruis? quam inopinate irruis? quam magnifice sub-  
ruis? Ille igitur qui post mortem est medicus, donet  
tibi, Waltere, antidotum suæ pietatis ad capessendam  
vitam continuæ sanitatis. Jam tibi quidem epistola  
mitti non potest, sed epitaphium; breve scilicet monu-  
mentum cum lacrymis<sup>7</sup> scribendum est.

<sup>1</sup> *demollitus*, Wh. Ach.

<sup>2</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *stilis*, A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> *non invenit*, A<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> *dicimus*, Wh.

<sup>6</sup> *mortem*, Wh.

<sup>7</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; om. A.

Henricus tibiserta gerens, epigrammata primum,  
 Prælia mox Veneris, gramina<sup>1</sup> deinde tuli.  
 Nunc, Waltere, tibi fero carmen funebre totus,  
 Alter ab Henrico qui tibi<sup>2</sup> sertas tulit.  
 Dimidius perii: periit meus et decor et lux;  
 Formaue, mensque viri, mens caritura<sup>3</sup> pari:  
 Mens assueta viri<sup>4</sup> dare magna, tamen pudibunde;<sup>5</sup>  
 Mente minora sua se tribuisse videns.  
 Mens assueta viri quantumlibet alta parare;  
 Sed cum multa paret xenia, parva timet.  
 Mens assueta viri festivo tradere vultu,<sup>6</sup>  
 Lætitiæque pari congeminare datum.  
 Mens assueta viri dare sic, ne danda rogentur,  
 Præueniens vocem bina<sup>7</sup> ferente manu.  
 Nil medium nil par magnis vir summus habebat;  
 Summa Dei sit ei gratia, grata quies.

---

<sup>1</sup> *gaudia*, A<sup>5</sup>.; *germina*, Wh.

<sup>2</sup> *tria*, A<sup>5</sup>. Wh.

<sup>3</sup> *caritate*, Wh.

<sup>4</sup> *viris*, Wh.

<sup>5</sup> *pudibunda*, Wh.

<sup>6</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *dare sic ne danda rogentur*, A.; quæ tamen verba postmodum erasa sunt.

<sup>7</sup> A<sup>5</sup>.; *bina*, A.

---

## GLOSSARY.

---



## GLOSSARY.

---

AMIRALIUS, an emir (ameer) or prince, 224.

ANGARIATUS (*ἀγγαρεύειν*), lit. compelled to go a journey, hence, distressed, afflicted, 265, 300.

ASSIDUI, regular adherents, retainers, 272.

CALUMNIARI, to challenge, lay claim to, 173, 249.

CASSARE (cassus), to make void, to frustrate, 177.

CERVISIA, beer; the word is of Gaulish origin; 197.

CORRODIUM; other forms are *con-redium* and *corredium*; food, board, alimony; here, a banquet, 197.

COSTAMENTUM (Low Latin *custus*, *costus*), cost, costliness, 318.

ELEGANS, distinguished, gallant, 262. Hence seems to have come, by a transposition of the letters, the French "galant," our "gallant." The original sense of "galant" (see the passages in Ducange) was "daring adventurer"; "galants de la feuillée," like our "knights of the road," or bushrangers. This sense could not have come from the old French verb *galer* to rejoice, or the Italian *gala*, one or other of which is the etymology of *galant* commonly received; but

from such expressions as "vir elegans" it might easily have proceeded.

FIRMA, a farm, 197.

FRAMEA. Huntingdon, with other mediæval writers, probably means by it *a broadsword*: in Tacitus (Germ. 6) it is used for *a spear*. See Ducange. 56.

GAGAS (*γαγάτης*, because found in abundance near the river Gages in Lycia), an agate, 6.

GELDUM, GILDUM (A. S. geldan), a tax, 240.

GNATONICUS or GNATHONICUS, a parasite, a flatterer; the word is derived from Gnatho, the *parasitus* of Thraso in the Eunuchus of Terence; see John of Salisbury's *Nugæ Curialium*, VIII., i.; 316.

HALECIUM, HALECIUS (*halec* or *alec*, brine?), properly, a cured herring; here, a herring, 5.

HIDA, a plough-land, *i.e.* as much land (about thirty acres) as one plough could cultivate in a year, with the woodland and pasture appertaining to it, 176, 207.

HOMINIUM, homage, 208.

HONOR, an honour, *i.e.*, a group of manors under one jurisdiction, 306.

IMPETITIO, an assault, 58.

IMPLACITARE (*placitum* in the sense of plea), to implead, 300.

ISICIUM, pickled salmon, from *isox*, *esox*; but Beda, and Huntingdon following him, use the word as equivalent to *esox*, salmon, 5.

MAHUMERIA (Mahum, a corruption of Mohammed), a mosque, 224.

MEDO (A.S. *meodo*), mead, 197.

MIRENEHEVED, as if from A.S. *mire*, an ant, but the word is *Myran-heafod*, mare's head, 178.

MORATUM (*morum*), a drink consisting of wine and mulberry juice, 197.

PATRINUS (Fr. *parrain*), a godfather, 147.

PLACITARE, to plead, to institute suits, 260.

PLACITATOR, a pleader, a promoter of suits, 232.

PLACITUM, an assembly of the estates of a kingdom, 189.

PRASSINUS, PRASINUS (*πράσινον*), green as a leek, 5.

PROBITAS (Fr. *prouesse*), a deed of valour, 273, etc.

PROBUS (Fr. *prou*, *prou*), valiant, *passim*.

SAGIMEN, fat, or more properly, dripping, 174.

SAISIRE (origin uncertain), to seize, 146.

SEXTARIUS, a pint, sester, a measure both of dry objects and liquids. Its capacity varied in different places, but it could never have meant a "horse-load" of corn, 192.

SICERA (*σίκερα*), cider, strong drink, 197.

TABURCIUM, for Tamburcium (Arabic *tambor*), a tambour or drum, 221.

TOLONEUM, TELONEUM, THELONEUM (*τελωνεῖον*), a toll, 188, 208.

TUF, TUFFA, TUPA (late Greek *τῦφα*), a kind of standard made of plumes or *tufts* of feathers, 57.

WERRA, guerra, war, 238.

---

## INDEX.

---



# INDEX.

## A.

Aaron, a martyr, 29.  
 Abandune, *Abingdon*, abbey of, founded by bishop Athelwold, 165.  
 Acca, bishop of Hexham, 111; dies, 117.  
 Acemanecestria, *Bath*, 9.  
 Achard de Mont Merloy, a Crusader, 221.  
 Aclea, council at, 127; another, 129; battle fought near, 140.  
 Acra, now *Acre*, 229.  
 Ad Murum, *Walton* or *Walbottle*, 96.  
 Adelbold, Æthelbald, king of Mercia, 111; takes Somerton, 114; his power, 115; ravages Northumbria, 119; defeated at Burford, 121-2; killed at Seckington, 122.  
 Adelbriht, Æthelbriht, son of Æthelwulf, king of Kent, then of Wessex, 142.  
 Adelburth, daughter of king Anna, 94.  
 Adelered, Ethelhere, brother of king Anna, 97.  
 Adelgar, Æthelgar, archbishop of Canterbury, 168.  
 Adelida, Adelina, of Louvain, second queen of Henry I., 243; verses on, *ib.*  
 Adelfred, Æthered, or Æthelred, son of Æthelwulf, 142; aids Burhred against Hinguar, 143; battles, 144; dies, 145.  
 Adelstan. *See* Athelstan.  
 Adewold, Æthelwald, king of Sussex, 61.  
 Adewold, Ethelwald, son of St. Oswald, 99.

Adelwulf, Æthelwulf, son of Egbert, 132, 134; his fights with the Danes, 139-141; his victory at Aclea, 141; aids Burhred, 141; tithes his kingdom, *ib.*; marries Judith and dies, *ib.*  
 Adgebrin, *Yeverin in Glendale*, 86.  
 Adilwalut, Ælwald, Adelwald, Æthelwalh, king of Sussex, 102.  
 Adrian, I., pope, 128.  
 Ædan, king of the Scots; defeated by Ethelfrid, 55.  
 Ædbert, for Cuthberht, archbishop of Canterbury, 119; his death, 125.  
 Ædbold, succeeds Æthelbert, 56, 80; dies, 58; 64, 82, 90.  
 Edelbert, Æthelbert, son of Ermenric, king of Kent, 51; a Bretwalda, *ib.*, 52, 54; dies, 56; 64, 67, 72; his laws, 80.  
 .....grants leave to Augustin to preach, 68; founds church of St. Andrew at Rochester, 77.  
 Ædeldrida, Æthelthryth, St. Awdry, wife of Egfrid of Northumbria, 63.  
 Ædelhard, Æthelheard, king of Wessex, 114; dies, 119.  
 Ædelwold, nephew of Alfred, 152; joins the Danes, 153; killed, 154.  
 Æglea, Iglea, 147.  
 Aegnesham, Eynsham, 52.  
 Aeilestreu, *Aylesford*, battle at, 41.  
 Aelesbury, *Aylesbury*, 52.  
 Ælfgar. *See* Algar.  
 Aelle, Ella, founds the kingdom of Sussex, 44, 46; dies, 47.  
 Æsesdune. *See* Escesdune.  
 Actius, 35.  
 Afena, the Bristol *Avon*, 156.  
 Agatha, niece of the emperor Henry III., 296.

Agatho, pope, 105.  
 Aidan, St., brought from Iona by Oswald, 91; founds see of Lindisfarne, 92; his friendship with Oswine, 95.  
 Ailbert, Agilbert, a French bishop, 93, 99.  
 Ailiva, Ælfgifu, reputed mother of Harold I., 189.  
 Alan of Brittany, 269.  
 Alaric, 34.  
 Alban, St., his martyrdom, 28.  
 Alban's, St.; church dedicated by Robert Bloet, 239 (note); Mandeville arrested there, 276.  
 Albani, the Scottish war cry; the old name for Scotland, 263.  
 Albemarle, *Aumale*, in Normandy, 215.  
 Alberic of Grantmaison, brother of William, 226.  
 Alberic, bishop of Ostia, papal legate, 265.  
 Albert the Lombard, archdeacon of Lincoln, 302.  
 Albinus of Anjou, master of Henry of Huntingdon, 301.  
 Alcmund, bishop of Hexham, 125.  
 Alctan, Ealhstan, bishop of Sherborne, 140; dies, 143.  
 Aldelud (Dumbarton), 15, 34, 35.  
 Aldene. *See* Halfdene.  
 Aldhelm, St., bishop of Sherborne, 110.  
 Aldred, archbishop of York, 204.  
 Aldulf, Ealdulf, a Northumbrian, 126.  
 Aldulf, Ealdwulf, king of East Anglia, 88, 103.  
 Aldulf, bishop of Rochester, 112.  
 Aldwin, abbot of Ramsey, 317.  
 Alef, *Aleppo*, 223, 228.  
 Alemannia, South Germany, 220.  
 Alexander of Blois, bishop of Lincoln; prol. addr to him, 1.  
 ....., encouraged the author to write, 3; his nomination to the sec, 245; goes to Rome, 246; verses in praise of his munificence, *ib.*, 250; his quarrel with the archbishop, 253; goes to Normandy with Stephen, 260; seized and imprisoned by Stephen's order, 265;

#### Alexander of Blois—*cont.*

is with the king at Lincoln, 271; visits Rome, 278; repairs the minster, *ib.*; goes to Auxerre to see pope Eugenius, 280; dies soon after his return, *ib.*; his character, *ib.*, 316.  
 Alexander, king of Scotland, by grant of Henry I., 236, 297.  
 Alexander Severus, 26.  
 Alexius Comnenus, emperor of Constantinople, 219.  
 Alfege, Ælfeah, St., archbishop of Canterbury, 179; murdered by the Danes, *ib.* translation of his relics, 187.  
 Alfonsus VI., king of Castile, 211.  
 Alfredus, Aluredus, king of Wessex, a Bretwalda, 52; sent to Rome in early youth, 141; helps his brother Æthelred against the Danes, 144; succeeds him, 145; his battles, *ib.*; is hard pressed, 146; his victory at Heddington, 147; sends gifts to pope Marinus, 148; builds ships of war, 151; dies, 152; verses upon, *ib.*  
 Alfred, Ælfred, son of Ethelred and Emma, 180; visits England, 191; is seized by order of Godwin and blinded, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; 202, 295.  
 Alfric, Ælfric, archbishop of Canterbury, 170.  
 Alfric, Ælfric, ealdorman of Mercia, 168; his treason, 169, 175.  
 Alfrid, son of Oswi, 97; succeeds Egfrid, 106; dies, 111.  
 Alfwald, Ælfweard, son of Edward the Elder, 159.  
 Alfwen, Ælfwyn, daughter of Æthelfled, the lady of Mercia, 158.  
 Alfwine, brother of Egfrid of Northumbria, 63.  
 Alfwold, king in Northumbria, 126; killed by Sigan, 129.  
 Algar, Ælfgar, son of Leofric, 193, 195; exiled for treason, 196; succeeds his father, *ib.*  
 Alle. *See* Ella.  
 Allectus, 28.  
 Alleluia, the victory so called, 42.

- Almar, *Ælfinær*, betrays Canterbury to the Danes, 179.  
 Almaria, in Spain, 281.  
 Almer, *Ælmær*, Derling, 183.  
 Aloc, ancestor of Ida, 50.  
 Alred, Alhred, king of Northumbria, 125, 126.  
 Alric, a Northumbrian, 131.  
 Alwin, Egelwine, bishop of Durham, 205.  
 Ambrosius Aurelianus, 40.  
 Amphleot, *Ambleteuse*, 74.  
 Amphos. *See* Alfonsus.  
 Anacletus, an antipope, 252.  
 Anastasius, the emperor, 44.  
 Andeligum, *Andelys*, 94.  
 Andovre, *Andover*, 170.  
 Andredecester, Anderida, *Pevensey*, 44; taken by the Saxons, 45.  
 Andredeslaige, the weald of Kent and Sussex, 149; the ancient forest of Anderida, 44.  
 Andredeswald, the weald of Sussex, 123.  
 Andrew, St., reveals the holy lance to the Christians, 226.  
 Androgeus, a Briton, 18.  
 Andun, a South Saxon noble, 102.  
 Anfrid, Eanfrith, son of *Æthelfrith*, king of Bernicia, 91; relapses into idolatry, *ib.*  
 Anglecescola, the English school at Rome, 145.  
 Angenwit, ancestor of Ida, 50.  
 Angles, the, 38; their settlements in Britain, 39; their national character, 131.  
 Angulani, or Augulani, part of the Moslem army, 221, 225.  
 Anlaf Cwiran, a Danish king, 163.  
 Anlaf, a Danish king, receives baptism, 162.  
 Anlaf, king in Ireland, 159, 160, 161, 162.  
 Anlaf, Olaf, St., attacks London, 169; receives baptism, 170; murdered by his subjects, 188.  
 Anna, king of East Anglia, 59; killed by Ponda, *ib.*; succeeds Egrice, 96.  
 Anselm, St., archbishop of Canterbury 216; compelled to leave England by the tyranny of William I., 230; returns, 233; holds a council, 234; his death, 237, 314.  
 Anselm de Ribemont, a crusader, 221; his death at Arche, 228 (note).  
 Antenor, the legendary ancestor of the Franks, 248.  
 Antioch, 221, 223; besieged by the crusaders, 223; great battle under its walls, 224; it is taken, 225; the second siege, 225-7, 280.  
 Appeals to Rome, first came into use under Stephen, 282.  
 Apulia, conquered by the Normans, 262.  
 Arabs, in the Moslem army, 221, 225.  
 Aræ Philistinorum, 15.  
 Arcadius, the emperor, 33.  
 Arche, now *Tel Arka*, 228, 229.  
 Ardulf, Eardulf, king of Northumbria, 130, 132.  
 Arelas, *Arles*, 69.  
 Areth, 223.  
 Arian heresy, 31.  
 Arius, 29.  
 Armorica, *Britanny*, 32, 43.  
 Arthur, his victories over the Saxons, 48.  
 Arundel, 230, 266.  
 Arwald, king of the Isle of Wight, 103.  
 Ascalon, 230.  
 Ascelin, bishop of Rochester, 315.  
 Ascenminstre, *Axminster*, 128.  
 Athelnod, *Æthelnoth*, archbishop of Canterbury, 187; dies, 190.  
 Athelstan, *Æthelstan*, king of England, 159; overruns Scotland, *ib.*; his victory at Brunanburh, 159; 160; dies, 161.  
 Athelstan, son-in-law of Ethelred, 178.  
 Athena, now *Adana*, 222.  
 Attila, his conquests, 35.  
 Augustin, St., sent to preach to the English, 67; lands in Thanet, 68; interview with king Ethelbert, and removal to Canterbury, *ib.*; his life there, 69; goes to Arles and is consecrated archbishop, *ib.*; receives the pallium, 70; letter about his miracles, 72, 73; conference with

Augustin, St.—*cont.*

British bishops at Augustin's oak, 77 ;  
his prediction, 78 ; his death, 79 ; epi-  
taph on the tomb, *ib.*

Augustine, St., bishop of Hippo, 33.

....., his death, 36.

Augustus Cæsar, 19.

Aurelian, the emperor, 27.

Aurelius Victor, quotation from, 20.

Awuldre, *Appledore*, 149, 150.

Azimitæ, part of Kerboga's army, 225.

## B.

Babylon, the amiral or emir of, 224.

Badecestre. *See* Bathau.

Badonis mous, *Bath* ? victory of Arthur  
at, 49.

Baiocum. *See* Bayeux.

Bakentun, *Baginton* ? *Bathampton* ? 259.

Baldulf, bishop of Whitherne, 129.

Baldwin of Edessa, 219 ; king of Jerusalem  
after Baldwin I., 230 ; dies, 253.

Baldwin, Fitz-Gilbert, his speech to the  
king's troops before the battle of Lincoln,  
271 ; wounded and taken, 274.

Baldwin V., count of Flanders, 189, 192 ;  
dies, 205.

Baldwin VII., count of Flanders, 238, 239,  
240 ; his death, 240 (note), 242.

Baldwin de Monte, brother of Godfrey de  
Bouillon, 219 ; at Antioch, 227 ; king  
of Jerusalem after Godfrey, 230.

Baldwin de Redvers, 259 ; deprived of  
his castles and exiled, *ib.*

Balesham, *Balsham*, incident at, 178.

Bamborough castle, 50, 169, 218.

Banchor, Brancor, *Bangor*, monastery of,  
78.

Bangor, *see of*, 10.

Bardenic, *Bardney*, 109.

Baruth, now *Beirút*, 229.

Basing, battle at, 145.

Basreg, Bagsecg, a Danish king, 144,  
175.

Bathan, *Bath*, 153 ; plundered, 214.

....., *see of*, 9.

Bath, bishops of. *See*—

John.

Godfrey.

Robert.

Battle abbey, 204 *note*, 210.

Bayeux, taken by Henry I., 235.

Beamfled, *Benfleet*, in Essex, 149.

Beandune, *Bampton*, battle of, 56.

Bebanburgh. *See* Bamborough.

Beda, a son of Port, 46.

....., St. ; his *Eccl. Hist.* used by the  
author, 3 ; dedicates his history to  
Ceolwulf, 114 ; his death, 115 ; account  
of his life and writings, *ib.* ; state of the  
Anglo-Saxon Church in his time, 116.

Bedeford, *Bedford*, 52, 156, 178, 260.

Bedfordshire, 9.

Belinus, brother of Cassibellanus, 17.

Belli abbatia. *See* Battle abbey.

Belvacis, *Beauvais*, 6.

Benedict Biscop, St., founder of Wear-  
mouth, 105.

Beneficia, the river *Beane*, 155.

Benetune, *Bensington*, battle at, 52, 126.

Beonoc, ancestor of Ida, 50.

Beornd, Beorn, cousin of Harold II., 192 ;  
killed by Sweyn, 193.

Beornred, king of Mercia, 123.

Beornwulf, king of Mercia, 132 ; killed, 133.

Beranburi, *Barbury*, battle at, 51.

Berct, Northumbrian general, 106 ; killed,  
109.

Bercun, a South Saxon noble, 102.

Bereford, *Burford*, battle at, 121.

Berkelai, *Berkeley* in Gloucestershire, 214,  
243.

Berkhampstead, 244.

Berkshire, 9.

Bernard, bishop of St. David's, 251 ; his  
contention with the bishop of Llandaff,  
253.

Bernard, abbot of Ramsey, 317.

Betelon, now *Batroum*, 229.

Biedca, grandfather of Erchenwin, 49.

- Birinus, sent by pope Honorius to the West Saxons, 93; founds the see of Dorchester, *ib.*
- Bishoprics, list of English, seventeen in number, 9.
- Blecca, the governor of Lincoln, 86.
- Bledda, brother of Attila, 35.
- Boniface, third bishop of East Anglia, 96.
- Boniface IV., pope, 80; his letter to Justus, sending the pall, 82; letters to Eadwine and Æthelburg, 83.
- Bononia, *Boulogne*, 75.
- Bosa, bishop of the Deiri, 101.
- Bramtune, *Bramton*, near Huntingdon, 243.
- Brecanammere, *Brecknock*, 157.
- Bredune, *Bredon*, 114.
- Brendforde, *Brentford*, battle at, 183.
- Bretwaldas, list of the, 51.
- Bricii festioitas, *St. Brice's day*, massacre upon, 174.
- Brietric, Brihtric, Bridric, brother of Edric, 177; killed by Canute, 187.
- Bridgnorth, a castle belonging to Robert de Belesme, 234.
- Bridius, son of Meilocon, 92.
- Brige. *See* Bruge.
- Brihtric, king of Wessex, 128; dies, 131.
- Brihtwold, archbishop of Canterbury, 108; dies, 114.
- Brihtwulf, king of Mercia, 140.
- Brimesbirih, *Bransby*, 157.
- Bristol, 261.
- Britain, description of, 5; the Romans leave it; 34.
- British cities, list of, 7.
- Britnod, *Byrhtnoth*, 168.
- Britons, the; of Trojan ancestry, 18; numbers of them settle in Brittany, 32; they rally and expel Picts and Scots, 36; driven out of Kent, 41; defeat the Saxons with the aid of St. Germanus, 42; intestine strife among, 43; fight against the Saxons, 54; harassed by Ceolwulf, 55; defeated by Cynegils and Cwichelm, *ib.*; recover ground in Northumbria, 106; defeated by Cuthred and Æthelbald, 119; by Cuthred, 122; by Egbert, 132.
- Brocmail, a British chief, 79.
- Bruge. *See* Bridgnorth.
- Bruge, *Bruges*, in Flanders, 189, 192, 247.
- Bruge, Bruges, *Brie*, monastery of, 94.
- Bruneburh, Brunanburh, *Bromborough* in Cheshire?, 159; poem on battle of, 160.
- Brutus, great grandson of Æneas, 13.
- Buamund, Bohemond, count of Apulia, 219, 220, 221; takes Areth, 223, 224; at Antioch, 225, 227; his quarrel with the count of Toulouse, 228.
- Buchingaham, *Buckingham*, 156, 178.
- Buckinghamshire, 9.
- Budingtune, *Buttington*, on Severn, 150.
- Burch. *See* Peterborough.
- Bures, castle of, 217.
- Burg. *See* Peterborough.
- Burhred, king of Mercia, 140, 141; driven away by the Danes, 145; dies at Rome, *ib.*
- Byzantine emperors, contemporary with Ina, 113.

## C.

- Cadomum. *See* Caen.
- Cadzi, *Chezy*, the Danes at, 149.
- Caen, abbeys founded at, by Will. I. and Matilda, 210; taken by Henry I., 235, 257.
- Caer-leon, an old archiepiscopal see, 7, 10.
- Cæsar, Augustus, 19.
- Cæsar, Julius, 16, 17, 18.
- Cæsarea, now *Kaisariyeh*, 229.
- Cahom. *See* Caen.
- Caiphæ, now *Cai'fa*, 229.
- Calixtus II., pope, 242.
- Caligula, 20.
- Calne, incident at, 167.
- Cambridge, xxv., 165.
- Cambridgeshire, 9; bravery of the men of, 177.
- Camela, 229.
- Camelegeac, a Welsh bishop, 155.
- Candida Casa, *Whithorne*, see of, 92.

- Candidan, a British king, 53.  
 Cantabrigia. *See* Cambridge.  
 Canterbury, ransomed, 177; sacked by the Danes, 179; St. Paul's minster at, 180; dedication of the new church, 251.  
 ....., archbishops of. *See*—  
     Augustin, St.  
     Laurentius.  
     Mellitus.  
     Justus.  
     Honorius.  
     Deusdedit.  
     Theodore.  
     Britwold.  
     Tatwine.  
     Nothelm.  
     Ædbert (for Cuthbert).  
     Iambert.  
     Edelred.  
     Wulfred.  
     Ceolnod.  
     Plegmund.  
     Dunstan, St.  
     Adelgar.  
     Siric.  
     Alfric.  
     Alfege, St.  
     Lyfing.  
     Athelnod.  
     Eadsi.  
     Siward.  
     Robert.  
     Lanfranc.  
     Anselm, St.  
     Ralph.  
     William of Curbuil.  
     Theobald.  
 ....., *see of*, 9.  
 Canute, 180; is chosen king, 181; Wessex submits to, 181; and Northumbria, 182; his battles with Edmund Ironside, 183; treaty with, 185; marries Emma, Ethelred's widow, 186; imposes heavy taxes, 187; expeditions, 187; subjugates Norway, 188; visits Rome, *ib.*; Malcolm of Scotland submits to him, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*; extent of his dominion, Canute—*cont.*  
     *ib.*; story of his ordering the tide to retire, 189; his humility, *ib.*; his policy about the Saxon princes, 295.  
 Canute IV., called the saint, king of Denmark, 207, 211.  
 Caracalla, 26.  
 Carausius, 28.  
 Carleol. *See* Carlisle.  
 Carlisle, rebuilt by William II., 216; made a bishop's see, 10, 253; taken by the Scots, 258; and retained by them, 259, 282.  
 Carlisle, *see of*, 10.  
 Carnotum. *See* Chartres.  
 Carrum, *Charmouth*, battles at, 133, 140.  
 Cassian, Turkish governor of Antioch, 225.  
 Cassibellanus, 17; his city taken, 18.  
 Castle Cary, 261.  
 Cataracta, *Catterick*, 86.  
 Catiger, son of Vortigern, 40, 41.  
 Ceadda, Cedd, bishop of the Mid-Angles, then of the East Saxons, 98; baptizes Swithhelm, 99; dies at Lastingham, *ib.*  
 Ceadda, St. Chad, bishop in Mercia, 99, 100; his see at Lichfield, 101.  
 Cealchide, Chalk-hythe, council at, 128.  
 Ceaulin, son of Cinric, 51, 52, 53; dies, 54.  
 Cedwalla, Ceadwalha, king of Wessex, 63; kills Æthelwath king of Sussex, 102; conquers the Isle of Wight, 103, 105; sends Ml into Kent, 106; abdicates, 107; baptized at Rome, and dies there, *ib.*  
 Cedwalla, Cadwalla, a British king, 89, 90; slain at Denisesburn, 91.  
 Celestine, pope, 36.  
 Celestine II., pope, 277, 278.  
 Celibacy, enjoined by Council of London, 234.  
 Cenomannia, *Maine*, 196, 206; conquered by William I., 210.  
 Cenred, king of Mercia, 109; takes the cowl, *ib.*

Cenred—*cont.*

- ....., king of Northumbria, 111.  
 Cenwalh, succeeds Cynegils, 58; defeats the Britons at Penn, 60; defeated by Wulfere, 61; dies, *ib.*, 93.  
 Cenwine, Centwine, king of Wessex, 62; dies, 63.  
 Cenwulf, Ceolwulf, king of Mercia, 130; invades Kent, 131.  
 Cenwulf, king of Mercia, 132.  
 Ceolfrid, abbot of Wearmouth, Jarrow, 112.  
 Ceolnod, archbishop of Canterbury, 133.  
 Ceolred, king of Mercia, 110; engages the West Saxons at Wanborough, 111; dies, *ib.*  
 Ceolric, succeeds Ceaulin, 54; dies, *ib.*  
 Ceolfwulf, king of Mercia, 132.  
 Ceolwulf, king of Mercia under the Danes, 145.  
 ....., king of Northumbria, Beda's patron, 114; resigns his crown, 117, 118; and becomes a monk, 119; dies, 125.  
 ....., king of Wessex, succeeds Ceolric, 54; his genealogy, 55; dies, *ib.*  
 Cereburih, *Chirbury*, 157.  
 Certic, Cerdic, lands in Britain, 45; 46, 47, 50; dies, *ib.*  
 Certicesore, *Yarmouth*? 45; Stuf lands at, 47.  
 Certichesforde, *Charford*, battles at, 46, 48.  
 Cestria, *Chester*, 195.  
 Charlemagne, begins to reign, 125, 127; his death, 132, 248.  
 Charles the Fat, killed by a boar, 148.  
 Charles, count of Flanders, son of Canute IV., 242; assassinated, 247.  
 Chartres, 252.  
 Chateric, *Chatteris*, abbey of, founded in 980 for Benedictine nuns by Alfwen, wife of Athelstan Half-king, earl of East Anglia, 165.  
 Chedder hole, 12.  
 Chenewulf, Cynewulf, bishop of Lindisfarne, 117.  
 Cherlus, Cearl, succeeds Wippa, 54.  
 Cheshire (Ceastresyre), 10.  
 Chester, battle at, 55, 78.

Chester—*cont.*

- ....., see of, 10.  
 ....., bishops of. *See*—  
     Robert I.  
     Robert II., surnamed Pécché.  
 Chioce, *Chick St. Osyth*, in Essex, 245.  
 Chichelmeslaue, *Cuckhamsley*, 176.  
 Chichester, 8, 11.  
 ....., bishops of. *See*—  
     Ralph.  
     Sifrid Pelochin.  
 ....., see of, 9.  
 Chiltern, the Chiltern hills, 177.  
 Chosam, *Corsham*, 131.  
 Christina, granddaughter of Edmund Ironside, a nun, 296.  
 Ciceastre, *Chichester*, 150.  
 Cilicienses, part of the Moslem army, 221.  
 Cineburga, Cyneburg, daughter of Penda, 96.  
 Cinric, Cynric, Kinric, son of Cerdic, 46, 48, 50; succeeds his father, 50; defeats the Britons, 50, 51; dies, *ib.*  
 Cipenham, *Chippenham*, 146, 147.  
 Cirencester, 53, 147; battle at, 57.  
 Cissa, son of Ella, 43; succeeds his father, 47.  
 Claudius, the emperor, 20, 21.  
 ..... secundus, 27.  
 Clodoveus. *See* Clovis.  
 Clovis, king of the Franks, 248.  
 Cluni, monastery of, 242.  
 Clyht, the *Clyde*, 34.  
 Cneban, a Kentish noble, 52.  
 Cneburh, sister of Cudburh, 112.  
 Cnut. *See* Canute.  
 Coel, a British king, 29.  
 Coellec, Cellach, bishop in Mercia, 98.  
 Coif, the Angle priest, 85; destroys the heathen altars, 86.  
 Colchester, 29, 30.  
 Coleseige, *Cholsey*, 176.  
 Colman, bishop of Lindisfarne, 99.  
 Colossus, the, 21, 25.  
 Columba, St., 92; converts the northern Picts, *ib.*  
 Columbanus, St., 80.

Comets, 114, 157, 166, 204, 280, 236, 237, 239.  
 Commagil, a British king, 53.  
 Commodus, the emperor, 23.  
 Compendium, *Compiègne*, 100.  
 Condé, occupied by the Danes, 148.  
 Conrad, emperor of Germany, joins the second crusade, 280.  
 Constance, sister of Louis VII., married to Eustace of Blois, 265.  
 Constantia, *Coutances*, 29.  
 Constantine, the emperor, 29, 30; builds churches in Rome, *ib.*; his character, 31; his religious zeal, 73.  
 Constantine, king of the Scots, 160.  
 Constantinople, 35, 280.  
 Constantinus, emperor in Britain, 34.  
 Constantius, a count, kills Constantinus, 34.  
 Constantius, the emperor, 29, 31.  
 Corn, high price of, 246.  
 Cornwall, 9.  
 Corvesgate, *Corfe Castle*, 167.  
 Council of Hatfield, 104.  
 Councils; at London, 234; at Westminster, 247; at London, 250; ditto, 265; ditto held by Henry of Blois, as papal legate, 276; its decrees for the protection of the clergy, *ib.*; ditto held at London by Theobald, 282.  
 Counties, thirty-five in England; their names, 9.  
 Coventry abbey, founded by Godiva, 196.  
 Coxa, now *Gogsyn*, 223.  
 Creganford, *Crayford*, battle at, 41.  
 Crida, first king of Mercia, 53; dies, 54.  
 Crikelade, Criclade, *Cricklade*, 153, 182.  
 Crowmarsh, a royal castle, attacked by Henry, 287; to be razed, 288.  
 Crulande, *Croyland*, 206.  
 Crusades: account of the first, 219-230; the second, 279; its failure, 280; the crusade which rescued Lisbon from the Moors, 281.  
 Cudburh, wife of Ecgfrid, founds abbey of Wimborne, 112.

Cudred, Cuthred, king of Kent, 132.  
 Cudred, king of Wessex, 119; defeats Æthelbald at Burford, 121; dies, 122.  
 Cumberland, reduced by Edmund, 162; ravaged by Ethelred, 170.  
 Cumbra, a West Saxon ealdorman, 122; put to death by Sigebert, 123.  
 Cundoet. *See* Condé.  
 Curbaran, Kerboga, general of the Soldan of Persia, 225; besieges the Christians in Antioch, *ib.*; defeated, 227.  
 Curtæ, part of Kerboga's army, 225.  
 Cutha, brother of Ceaulin, 52.  
 Cuthbert, St., bishop of Lindisfarne, warns Ecgfrid not to attack the Picts, 106.  
 Cuthwine, son of Ceaulin, 53; killed, *ib.*  
 Cwihelm, son of Cynegils, 55; is converted, 58, 83.  
 Cymen, son of Ella, 43.  
 Cymenesore, *Shorcham*, 44.  
 Cynegils, succeeds Ceolwulf, 55; dies, 58; baptized by St. Birinus, 93.  
 Cynewisse, a Mercian queen, 97.

## D.

Dagan, a bishop of the Scots, 80.  
 Dagobert I., Frankish king, 90.  
 Dalreudini, the Scots so called, 14.  
 Damascus, 223; sieges of, 251, 281.  
 Damian, bishop of Rochester, 96.  
 Danegeld, instituted under Ethelred, 168; still endures, *ib.*  
 ....., its amount, 258; Stephen promises to remit it, *ib.*  
 Danes, the, 8; their first raid in England, 128, 130; series of raids, 133, 137-155; settle in Northumbria and Mercia; raids in France, 148.  
 ....., reduced to order by Edmund, 161.  
 ....., raids in the time of Ethelred, 168-170, 174-185; treaty with, 180.  
 Daniel, bishop of Winchester, 110; his death, 120.

David, brother of bishop Alexander, archdeacon of Buckingham, 303.  
 David, king of Scotland, 196, 297; takes Newcastle and Carlisle, 258; comes to terms with Stephen, 259; had sworn fealty to Matilda, *ib.*; his son does homage to Stephen, *ib.*; he again invades England, 261; atrocities practised by his troops, *ib.*; reaches Northallerton, 262; his behaviour in the battle, 264; 275; dubs Henry of Anjou a knight, 282.  
 David's, St., see of, 10.  
 Dearmao, *Durrough*, monastery of, 92.  
 Decius, the emperor, 27.  
 Degsastan, Dawston? 55.  
 Deiri, the, 76.  
 Demetrius, St., of Thessalonica, martyred under Maximian, 227.  
 Deomedum, Demetia, *S. Wales*, 156.  
 Deorham, *Dirham*, battle at, 53.  
 Derbyshire, 10.  
 Derebi, *Derby*, 157, 158; reduced by Edmund, 161.  
 Desem (Sem, Issem, Dessem), site unknown, 228.  
 Deusdedit, archbishop of Canterbury, 61, 96.  
 Devizes, seized by Stephen, 265.  
 Devonshire, 9.  
 Dilwald, Edilwald, a son of St. Oswald, 97.  
 Diocletian, the emperor, 28, 29.  
 Diuna, bishop of the Mid-Angles, 98.  
 Dol, in Brittany, 206.  
 Dolobellus, 16.  
 Domitian, the emperor, 22.  
 Donemuth, monastery of, *Jarrow*, 130  
 Dorchester, bishops of. *See*—  
     Birinus.  
     Hedde.  
     Ednod.  
     Ulf.  
 ..... , see of, 193 n., 212; transferred to Lincoln, 301.  
 Dorcic, *Dorchester*, on the Thames, see of, 93.  
 Dore, in Northumbria, 133.

Dormeceastre, *Caistor*, 7.  
 Dorobernia. *See* Dover.  
 Dorovernensis civitas. *See* Canterbury.  
 Dorsetshire, 9.  
 Dorubrevis. *See* Rochester.  
 Dover, 217; the castle surrendered to Stephen's queen, 261.  
 Drache, Drake castle, near York, 291.  
 Dragon, the, standard of Wessex, 121, 184.  
 Driffeld, *Driffild*, 111.  
 Dudda, a Saxon leader, 133.  
 Douglas, victories of Arthur at the, 48.  
 Dun, bishop of Rochester, 119.  
 Dunecan, Duncan, son of Malcolm, king of Scotland, 217.  
 Dunelmia, Dunhelme. *See* Durham.  
 Dunstable, 244, 253, 260.  
 Dunstan, St., his escape at Calne, 167; crowns Ethelred, *ib.*; dies, 168.  
 Dunster castle, 261.  
 Durham, 11; siege of, 215; 244.  
 ..... , see of, 10.  
 ..... , bishops of. *See*—  
     Alwin.  
     Walker or Walchere.  
     William de St. Carilef.  
     Ranulf Flambard.  
     Geoffrey.  
     William.  
 Duvenal (for Dunewal, Dunwald, Donald), brother of Malcolm III., expelled from the throne of Scotland, 217; reinstated, *ib.*; again expelled, 230.

## E.

Eadbald. *See* Ædbold.  
 Eadbert, king of Northumbria, becomes a monk, 124; dies, 125.

- Eadbrict, Eadbert Pren, king of Kent, 130.
- Eadhed, bishop of Lindsey, 101.
- Eadmund, St., king of East Anglia, his martyrdom, 144.
- Eadred, a kinsman of Cenwalh, 59.
- Eadric, Edric, king of Kent, 106.
- Eadsi, archbishop of Canterbury, 190, 192; resigns the see, *ib.*; dies, 193.
- Eadwine, king of Northumbria, a Bretwalda, 52; succeeds Æthelfrid, 56; defeats Cynegils, 57; killed at Heathfield, 58, 89; story of his conversion, 83-86; builds St. Peter's church at York, 86, 87.
- Eadwinesclive, *Eildon hills*? 125.
- Eadwulf, Ealdulf, archbishop of York, 169.
- Ealcswid, Ealcswith, wife of Alfred, 154.
- Ealdbriht, a West Saxon exile, killed, 112.
- Earpwald, son of Redwald, king of East Anglia, converted, 58; killed by Penda, *ib.*, 87; rather by Righert, 88.
- Earthquakes; in 1089, 215; in 1117, 240.
- East Anglia, 8, 48; beginning of kingdom, 52; lists of its kings, 65, 172; conversion of, 87; ravaged by th Danes, 178.
- Eata, bishop of Lindisfarne, 99, 101.
- Ebereurn, *Abercorn*, 106.
- Eboracum. *See* York.
- Egbrichtestan, *Brixton Deveril*, 147.
- Ecgfrid, son of Oswi, a hostage in Mercia, 97; expels bishop Wilfrid, 101, 103; killed in Pictland, 106.
- Ecgrice, king of East Anglia, slain by Penda, 59, 96.
- Edbert, Æthelberht, archbishop of York, 127.
- Edbriht, Eadbriht, king of Northumbria, 119.
- Edbrit, Eadbriht, king of Kent, 120.
- Edelbald, Æthelbald, son of Æthelwulf, king of Wessex, 140; dies, 142.
- Edelbert, Æthelberht, bishop of Whitherne, 126.
- Edelbricht, Æthelbriht, king of Kent, 125.
- Edelbriht, Æthelbriht, St., murdered, 129; his church at Hereford, 196.
- Edelburga, or Tate, Æthelburg, daughter of Æthelberht, wife of Eadwine, 83; takes refuge in Kent, 90; sends her children to France, *ib.*
- Edelburh, wife of Ina, 112.
- Edelfert, Æthelfrith, succeeds Edelric, 54; defeats the Scots, 55; and the Britons, *ib.*, 78; defeated and slain, 56, 85.
- Edelfied, Æthelfied, Alfred's daughter, the "lady" of Mercia, 157; her conquests from the Danes, 157; dies, 158; verses on, *ib.*
- Edelhelm, Æthelhelm, slain by the Danes, 139.
- Edelhere, Æthelhere, succeeds Anna, 59.
- Edelhun, Æthelhun, an ealdorman of Wessex, 120, 121.
- Edelmund, Æthelmund, ealdorman of the Hwiccas, 131.
- Edelred, Æthelred, king of Mercia, 62; ravages Kent, *ib.* 101, 103; fights with Egfrid, 63; has Ostrith to wife, *ib.*; becomes a monk, 109.
- Edelred, (mistake for Ædelbert), 77.
- Edelred, Æthelred, son of Moll, king of Northumbria, 126; expelled, *ib.*; restored, 129; murdered, 130.
- Edelred, Æthelheard, archbishop of Canterbury, 129; dies, 181.
- Edelred, Æthelred II., son of Edgar the Peaceful, 167; his cruelty, 169; ravages Cumberland, 170; marries Emma, 174; orders a massacre of the Danes, 174; sends his wife and children to Normandy, 180; goes there himself, *ib.*; ravages Lindsey, 181; dies, 182.
- Edelric, Æthelric, succeeds Ella, 54.
- Edelstan, Æthelstan, son of Egbert, 134; defeats the Danes, 141.
- Edelwold, Athelwold, bishop of Winchester, 164; replaces the canons by monks, *ib.*; founds or restores several monasteries, 165; dies, 168.
- Edendune, *Heddington in Wilts*, battle at, 147.
- Edesbirih, *Eddesbury*, in Cheshire, 157.

Edgar, son of Edmund, 163; his prosperous reign, 163; too favourable to Danes and foreigners, *ib.*; crowned at Bath, 166; vassal kings, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; verses on, *ib.*

Edgar Atheling, grandson of Edmund Ironside, 196, 199; his ineffectual attempts after battle of Hastings, 204; joins the Yorkshire rising, 205; is received into favour by William I., 206; sent to Scotland by William II., 230; his proceedings there, *ib.*; is thrown with his sisters on the coast of Scotland, 296.

Edgar, son of Malcolm III., king of Scotland, 230; dies, 236; 297.

Edgitha, daughter of Earl Godwin, 192; married to Edward the Confessor, *ib.*; sent away, 193; returns to court, 194; dies, 206.

Edilwold, Æthelwold, bishop of Lindisfarne, 117.

Edmund, Eadmund, brother of Æthelstan; at Brunanburh, 160; becomes king, 161; is sole king in Northumbria, 162; murdered, *ib.*

Edmund Ironside, marries the wife of Sigfert, 181; visits Uctred, 182; succeeds his father, *ib.*; his battles with the Danes, 183, 184; single combat with Canute (?), 185; assassinated, *ib.*; his arrangements about his kinsfolk and his kingdom, 295.

Edmund, son of Edmund Ironside, brought up in Hungary, 296; marries the king's daughter, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*

Edmund, St. *See* Eadmund.

Ednod, Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, 180.

Edred, ealdorman of Devonshire, 153.

Edred, Æthered, ealdorman of Mercia, dies, 155, 157.

Edred, son of Edward the Elder, 162; invades Scotland, *ib.*; paramount in Northumbria, 163; dies, *ib.*

Edric, ealdorman of Mercia, 176; his treason, 177, 181; joins Canute, 182; 183.

Edric—*cont.*

....., his conduct at Assandune, 184; beheaded by order of Canute, 186.

Edward the Confessor, son of Ethelred, 180, 181; visits Hardecnut, 190; is invited to England, 191; and chosen king, 192; marries Edgitha, *ib.*; banishes Godwine and his sons, 193; lets the Northumbrians have Morkar for their earl, 198; dies, *ib.*; his exile, 295, 296.

Edward, son of Edmund Ironside, comes to England and dies, 196; marries the emperor's niece, 296; his visit to England, *ib.*

Edward the Elder, son of Alfred, 152; his operations against the Danes, 153; victories, 156; disinherits Ælfwyn, 158; dies, 159.

Edward the Martyr, 166; murdered, 167; his body interred at Shaftesbury, 168.

Edwi, Edwy, son of Edmund, 163; dies, *ib.*

Edwi Ceorleking, Eadwig, king of the churls, banished, 186.

Edwi Adelinge, Eadwig the etheling, banished by Canute, 186.

Edwin, *i.e.*, Edilwin, employed to kill Oswine, 95.

Edwin, Ædwine, brother of Æthelstan, 159.

Edwin, son of Ælfgar, 198; opposes Tosti, 199, 200; killed, 205.

Edwin. *See* Eadwine.

Effic, Æfic, the high reeve, 174.

Egbert, Egbricht, Egberht, king of Wessex and Bretwalda, 52, 131; defeats Beornwulf of Mercia, 132; annexes Kent, Surrey, &c., *ib.*; annexes Mercia and Northumbria, 133; fights with the Danes, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*

Egbert, Egberht, teaches the monks at Hii the right observance of Easter, 93, 112; dies, 112.

Egbert, archbishop of York, 125.

Egbriht, king of Kent, 61; dies, 62, 64.

Egfert, Ecgferth, son of Offa, made king of Kent, 128; succeeds his father, 130.

Egrice. *See* Egrice.

Egfrid, Egfrith, succeeds Oswi, 61; war with Mercia, 63.

Eilaf, Eglaf, 187.

Eilesford, *Aylesford*, 184.

Elafius, a Briton; his son healed by St. Germanus, 42.

Elfhære, Ælfhære, a destroyer of abbeys, 166, 168.

Elfeda, daughter of Oswi, a nun at Hartlepool, 97; abbess of Streonshalch, 98.

(Hely), 13.

Ella, Alle, king of Northumbria, 51; his genealogy, *ib.*; dies, 54; 76.

Ella, Ælla, supplants Osbriht on the throne of Northumbria, 143; killed, *ib.*

Ella. *See* Aelle.

Ellendune, *Allington*, battle at, 132.

Ely, 11, 191, 205; church of, xxiv., 165; see of, 9.

Ely, bishops of. *See*—

Hervé.

Nigel.

Emma, sister of duke Richard II., marries Ethelred, 173, 174; sent to Normandy, 180; is established at Winchester, 189; banished by Harold I., and goes to Flanders, *ib.*; dies, 193.

Enbald, Eanbald, archbishop of York, 127; dies, 130.

Enbald, Eanbald II., archbishop of York, 130.

Englafeld, *Englefield*, battle at, 144.

Eoppa, father of Ida, 50.

Epernon; Henry I. encamps there, 247.

Eppa, a priest, preaches in Wight, 61.

Erachia, now *Eregli*, 222.

Erchenwald, St., bishop of London, 101.

Erchenwin, or Æscwine, king of Essex, 49.

Ercombert, king of Kent, 58; dies, 61; 64; his queen Sexburg, 94; he promotes Christianity, *ib.*

Ercungota, daughter of king Ercombert, 94.

Ermenric, Irmirie, a king of Kent, 49, 64.

Ermin Street, 12.

Ernulf, Arnulph, king of the Franks, 149.

Ernulf, Arnulph, count of Flanders, 205 w.

Ernulf, son of Geoffrey Mandeville, 277.

Ernulf, bishop of Rochester, 245, 315.

Erysipelas unknown in Britain, 11.

Esa, grandfather of Ida, 50.

Esc, son of Hengist, 41, 44, 46, 64.

Escesdune, *Ashdown*, battle at, 144.

Escwine, Æscwine, king of Wessex, 62.

Esedune, Assandune, in Essex, battle at, 183.

Esingestoche, for Tefingstoce, *Tavistock*, 170.

Eslaford. *See* Sleaford.

Essex, kingdom of, 8; begins, 49; list of its kings, 65; conversion of, 77; London its capital, *ib.*

....., county of, 9.

Ethelbald. *See* Adelbold.

Ethelbert. *See* Ædelbert.

Etheldreda, St., xxiv.

Ethelfied. *See* Edelfied.

Ethelfrith. *See* Edelfert.

Ethelingæie, *Athelney*, 147.

Ethelred I. *See* Adelred.

Ethelred II. *See* Edelred.

Ethelwulf. *See* Adelwulf.

Etherius, Ætherius, archbishop of Arles, 69.

Eu, in Normandy, 217, 240.

Eubonia, or Man, 7.

Eugenius III., pope, 278, 280.

Eustace, son of king Stephen, 260, 297; marries Constance, sister of Louis le Jeune, 265; ravages the lands of the partizans of Henry of Anjou, 282; harasses Normandy with French aid, 283; dies, 288; buried at Feversham, *ib.*

Eustachius, Eustace, count of Boulogne, 215; assumes the cross, 219.

Eutropius, quotations from, 19, 21, 22, 23, 26.

Everard de Puisat, a crusader, 221.

Everard, bishop of Norwich, 251; his cruelty caused him to be deposed, 316.

Exanceastre, *Exeter*, 146, 149, 150; destroyed, 174.

Exanmutha, mouth of the Exe, 170.

Exeter, see of, 9.

Exeter, bishops of. See—

Geoffrey.

Robert (for William).

Robert.

## F.

Famines, 175, 192, 209, 246.

Farinmagil, a British king, 53.

Farringdon castle, taken by Stephen, 278.

Fedhanlea, *Fretherne*? 53.

Felix, a Burgundian, sent by Honorius to preach in East Anglia, 88; assists Sigbert in founding schools, 96.

Fin, ancestor of Hengist, 39; of Ida, 50.

Finan, bishop, 96; builds a church at Lindisfarne, 99.

Finchamsted, in Berkeshire, 231.

Five Burghs, 180.

Flocwald, ancestor of Hengist, 39.

Forthere, bishop of Sherborne, 117.

Foss Way, 12.

Franci, the Franks, or French, 38, 222, 224, 242.

Frealof, ancestor of Hengist, 39; of Ida, 50.

Fredulf, ancestor of Hengist, 39; of Ida, 50.

Frens, an English leader, 169.

French monarchy, the; lists of the kings of each dynasty, 248.

Fresi, the Frisians, aid the Danes in their raids, 139.

Fridebert, bishop of Hexham, 125.

Fridegida, queen, 117.

Fridwald, Frithewald, bishop of Whitherne, 125.

Fronmudha, Frothemutha, mouth of the *Frome*, 170, 181.

Fulnham, *Fulham*, 147, 148.

Fulk, count of Anjou, aids Henry I. against Robert, 235; seizes Maine, 237, 239.

## G.

Gainsburh, *Gainsborough*, 180; Canute at, 181.

Gallienus, the emperor, 27.

Gant, *Ghent*, 148.

Gavelford, battle at, 133.

Geata, mythical ancestor of Ida, 50. See *Ieta*.

Gedingum, *Gilling*, 95.

Gelasius II., pope, 242.

Genealogies of kings, 49, 50, 51, 55, 57, 108, 109, 117, 123.

Genseric, king of the Vandals, 36.

Geoffrey Plantagenet, son of Fulk count of Anjou, 247; marries the empress Matilda, *ib.*; agrees to a truce with Stephen, 260; his death, 283.

Geoffrey, brother of Henry II., 297.

Geoffrey (for Fulk) of Anjou, king of Jerusalem, 230, 250, 253.

Geoffrey (for Baldwin III., son of Fulk), king of Jerusalem, 230.

Geoffrey de Clinton, 252 and note.

Geoffrey, or Gosfrith, bishop of Contances, plunders Bath, 214.

Geoffrey, bishop of Durham, 253, 316.

Geoffrey, bishop of Exeter, 211.

Geoffrey Mandeville, arrested by Stephen's order, 276; surrenders his castle as the price of his liberation, *ib.*; seizes Ramsey abbey, 277; being wounded slightly he dies, *ib.*

Geoffrey Ridel, justiciary, 318.

Geolcil, brother of Uhter, 156.

George, St., 227.

George, St., channel of, the *Dardanelles*, 219.

Georgii, St., Vicus, now *Ramla*, 229.

Gerard, archbishop of York, 237, 316.

Gerberie, *Gerberoi*, battle of, 206.

Gerente, king of Wales, 111.

Germanus, St., 89, 42; dies, 43.

Gewissi, or West Saxons, 81, 93, 102.

Gessoriacum, *Boulogne*, 6.

Gibel, now *Djebeli*, 229.

Gilbert, archdeacon of Buckingham, 302.

Gilbert of Clare, lord of Tunbridge, rebels against William II., 214.  
 Gilbert de Lacy, 264.  
 Gilbert the Universal, bishop of London, 247, 251, 307; dies, 253; his avarice, 308.  
 Gildas (Nennius), 49.  
 Gillinges, *Gillingham*, 188.  
 Gipeswic. *See* Ipswich.  
 Girdh, Gyrth, son of earl Godwine, 204.  
 Gisors, 242.  
 Glademuth, mouth of the *Cleddy*, Milford Haven, 159.  
 Glamorgan (Llandaff), *see* of, 10.  
 Glastinbirh, *Glastonbury*, abbey of, 165, 186; monks slaughtered, 207.  
 Gloucester, 10, 53, 158, 232.  
 Gloucestershire, 10.  
 Godefridus, Godfrey de Bouillon, 219, 220, 222; his prowess, 224; besieged in Antioch, 226; at Jerusalem, 229; is elected king, 230.  
 Godefridus de Rusinole, Godfrey, count of Roussillon, 227.  
 Godefridus de Monte Scabioso, Godfrey de Ribemont, a crusader, 222.  
 Godfrey, bishop of Bath, 245, 251, 316.  
 Godiva, wife of earl Leofric, 196.  
 Godmundcestre, *Godmanchester*, 178.  
 Godmundingeham, *Goodmanham*, 86.  
 Godrun, a Danish king, 145; agrees to become a Christian, 147; retires into East Anglia, 148; his death, 149.  
 Godwine, bishop of Rochester, 179.  
 Godwine, earl, attends Canute on an expedition, 187; opposes the election of Harold I., 189, 192; banished, 193; takes to piracy, 194; is reinstated, *ib.*; his perjury and death, 195.  
 Godwulf, ancestor of Ida, 50.  
 Gordian, the emperor, 26.  
 Gortimer, son of Vortigern, 40, 41.  
 Goths, the, 32, 33, 36; allied to the Danes, 139.  
 Gratian, emperor in Britain, 33.  
 Gratian, the emperor, 32.  
 Grantebrige. *See* Cambridge.  
 Gregory the Great, pope, 23, 54; sends Augustin to England, 67; and other

Gregory the Great, pope—*cont.*  
 missionaries, 69; his letter to Augustin granting him the pallium, 70; writes to Mellitus, *ib.*; and again to Augustin, concerning his miracles, 72; and to Ethelbert, with presents, *ib.*; dies, 75; his writings and character, *ib.*; story of the English boys, 76.  
 Grenewic, *Greenwich*, 180, 181, 182.  
 Grenta, the river *Cam*, 165.  
 Griffin, king of North Wales, 196; killed by the Welsh, 197.  
 Gudfrid, father of Reginald, 159.  
 Guerno, precentor of Lincoln, 301.  
 Guidi, a town in Scotland, 34.  
 Guido, archbishop of Vienne (Calixtus II.), 242.  
 Guthlac, St., of Croyland, 113.

## H.

Hadfeld, Heathfield, battle of, 89, 90.  
 Hadrian, the emperor, 24.  
 Haldene, a Danish king, killed, 154.  
 Haldene, a Danish king, 144; winters in Lindsey, 145; seizes the land near the Tyne, 146; his brother killed in Devonshire, 147.  
 Hampshire, 9.  
 Hamton. *See* Northampton.  
 Hamtona. *See* Southampton.  
 Hamtonia. *See* Northamptonshire.  
 Hamptune. *See* Southampton.  
 Hamstude, Finchamstead, in Berkshire? 234.  
 Harald I., son of Canute, 189; dies, 190.  
 Harald Gille, mutilates his uncle the king of Norway, 313.  
 Harald, Harold II., son of Godwine, 192; an exile in Ireland, 193; shipwrecked on French coast, 196; his oath to William, 197; his successful invasion of Wales, *ib.*; his cruelty and rapacity, *ib.*; employed between the king and the Northumbrians, 198; seizes the crown, 199; defeats Tosti and Harald Hardrada,

Harald, Harold II.—*cont.*

200; marches back to Hastings, *ib.*, 202; slain in the battle, 204.

Harald Hardrada, king of Norway, 199; attacks York, 200; slain at Stanford-bridge, *ib.*

Hardecnut, 189; son of Emma, 190; chosen king, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; his love of good living, *ib.*

Haselberge, *Haslebury-Plucknett*, in Somersetshire, xxix.

Hasting, a Danish king, 149; his treachery, *ib.*; an ancestor of the dukes of Normandy, 201.

Hastings, 200; battle of, 202.

Hatfield, *Hatfield*, 104.

Hatfield, council held at, A.D. 680, 63.

Heahmund, bishop, slain, 145.

Hedde, Headda, bishop of Dorcie or Dorchester; transfers the see to Winchester, 93, 113.

Helena, the empress, 29, 30.

Helhun, *Ælfhun*, bishop in Essex, 180.]

Helias, or Elias, count of Maine, 231; dies, 237.

Hellespont, the *Dardanelles*, 219.

Hely. *See* Ely.

Hengist, 39, 40, 41, 43; his death, 44, 64.

Hengistesdune, *Hingston Down*, battle at, 138.

Hengwrt MS., account of, 295; passages from, 295-297.

Henricus, Henry I., king of France, 188, 192, 195; dies, 196.

Henry I., son of the Conqueror, 61; made a knight, 208; treasure left him by his father, 211; at Domfront, 218; succeeds William II., 232; marries Matilda, 238; his treaty with duke Robert, *ib.*; conquers Caen and Bayeux, 235; his victory at Tenchebrai, *ib.*; takes possession of Normandy, 236; his unexpected rise to power and fame, *ib.*; makes war on Louis VI., 62, 237; gives his daughter in marriage to the emperor, *ib.*; war with Fulk of Anjou, 238; fresh quarrel with France, 239; imposes heavy taxes, 240; defeats the king of France, 241;

Henry I.—*cont.*

his danger, 241; meets Pope Calixtus at Gisors, 242; comes to terms with the Welsh, 243; marries Adelaide of Louvain, *ib.*; quarrels with Waleran de Melent, 245; his severity against coiners, 246; makes a long stay in Normandy, 247; gives the empress to Geoffrey Plantagenet, *ib.*; invades France, *ib.*; supports Thierry of Alsace, 249; has an interview with Innocent II. at Chartres, 252; returns to England, *ib.*; falls sick at Windsor, 253; is at Oxford castle, *ib.*; then in Normandy, *ib.*; troubled by the quarrels of his daughter with her husband, 254; his death and its causes, *ib.*; verses on, *ib.*; popular opinions concerning him, 255; his cruelty, *ib.*, 311; his remains taken to Rouen, 256; the attempt to embalm them fails, 257; they are taken to Caen and thence to England, *ib.*; and buried at Reading abbey, 258; he causes his grandchildren to be blinded, 311 *note*; his faithlessness and avarice, 312; a prey to terror and anxiety, *ib.*; his reign will soon be at an end, 314.

Henry II., son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Matilda; knighted by his great uncle, David of Scotland, 282; succeeds his father, 283; marries the divorced wife of Louis VII., *ib.*; summoned to the help of his partizans in England, 284; poetical address to, *ib.*; sensation caused by his arrival, 285; takes Malmesbury castle, 286; relieves Wallingford, 287; terms of peace, 288; takes Stamford and Nottingham, *ib.*; is displeased that all the castles of the robber barons are not destroyed, 290; returns to Normandy, *ib.*; endeavours are made to sow dissension between him and Stephen, *ib.*; on Stephen's death he is summoned to England, 291; where the people welcome him with joy, *ib.*; verses on the happiness of his reign, *ib.*

Henry V., emperor of Germany, 237; dies, 246.

- Henry, son of king David of Scotland, 259; his gallantry at Northallerton, 264; nearly killed at Ludlow, 265.
- Henry of Blois, bishop of Winchester, 266; intercedes for the imprisoned bishops, *ib.*; espouses the cause of the empress, 275; papal legate, *ib.*; turns against Matilda, and is besieged in Winchester castle, *ib.*; goes to Rome, 277; introduces appeals, 282; his endeavours for peace, 289; a compound of monk and knight, 315.
- Henry, archdeacon of Huntingdon, account of his life and writings, xxx-xxxvi; his *Historia Anglorum*, ix-xxx; his epigrams and amatory pieces, 298; brought up by bishop Bloet, 299; appointed archdeacon, 302.
- Henry, earl of Warwick, 317.
- Heraclius, the emperor, 55, 89.
- Herbert de Losinga, bishop of Norwich, xix, 316; an author, 316.
- Hereford, *Hertford*, 155; fortified by Edward, *ib.*
- Hereford, 196, 197; held by Geoffrey Talbot, 261.
- Hereford, bishops of. *See*—Richard.
- Hereford, *see of*, 10.
- Herefordshire, 10.
- Hereward, his valiant defence at Ely, 205.
- Hertfordshire, 9.
- Hervé, bishop of Ely, 251; dies, 252, 316.
- Hexham, 129.
- Hexham, bishops of. *See*—  
Acca.  
Trumbert.  
Fridebert.  
Alcmund.  
Tilbeth.
- Hide, definition of, 176; basis of taxation, 207.
- Higebald, a West-Saxon general, 111.
- Higebriht, archbishop in Mercia, 128.
- Hinguar, a Danish leader, 143.
- Hispania. *See* Spain.
- Hocheneretune, *Hook Norton*, 155.
- Holme, *the Holme Stone*, battle at, 156.
- Homer, 1.
- Honorius, the emperor, 33, 34; his character, 35.
- Honorius, pope, writes to king Eadwine, 87; to archbishop Honorius, 88; to the Scots on the observance of Easter, 89.
- Honorius, archbishop of Canterbury, sends Felix into East Anglia, 88; consecrated by Paulinus at Lincoln, 88; 90; dies, 96.
- Horace, quoted, 1.
- Horsa, 39, 40; killed, 41.
- Hugh Capet, founder of the Capetian line, 249.
- Hugo de Bigod, earl of Norfolk, 259, 270, 278, 288.
- Hugo, Fitz-Gervase, 245.
- Hugo, a priest of Lincoln, 301.
- Hugo Lupus, earl of Chester, 214.
- Hugo Magnus, brother of Philip I. of France, 219, 221, 227, 249.
- Hugo, count de Montfort, 245.
- Hugo, Norman sheriff of Exeter, 174.
- Hugo de Paiens, Master of the Temple, 250, 251.
- Hugo, earl of Shrewsbury, 231.
- Hungary, the king of, receives and adopts the children of Edmund Ironside, 296.
- Huns, the, 31, 32.
- Huntendune, *Huntingdon*, description of, 178.
- Huntingdon, Henry earl of, son of David of Scotland, 259.
- Huntingdonshire, 9.
- Hunwald, betrays Oswine, 95.
- Hyrc, Yric, Eric, king in Northumbria, 163.
- Hyrc, placed by Canute over Northumbria, 182; banished, 186.

## I.

- Iambeth, Iambryht, archbishop of Canterbury, 125; loses part of his province, 128; dies, 129.
- Ida, first king of Northumbria, 50; dies, 51.

Idle, the river, battle near, 56.  
 Idolatry; pope Gregory directs Mellitus how to deal with it, 71.  
 Ieta, *Geat*, 39.  
 Ii, *Iona*, monastery of, 92; granted to St. Columba, *ib.*; privileges of its abbots, *ib.*  
 Ikenild Street, 12.  
 Ine, Ina, king of Wessex, 108; invades Kent, 109; defeats Gerente, king of Wales, 110; battle with Ceolred, 111; raid in Sussex, 112; resigns his crown, *ib.*  
 Ingirvum, *Jarrow*, 112.  
 Ingui, ancestor of Ida, 50.  
 Ingulf, bishop of Rochester, 315.  
 Innocent II., pope, 252, 277.  
 Iorna, the *Yonne*, 149.  
 Ipswich, 168, 177; taken by Stephen from Hugo de Bigod, 288.  
 Ireland, description of, 14; Columba sets out from it to preach to the Picts, 92; Danes retire to, 156; invaded by Beret, 106.  
 Italy, occupied by the Lombards, 54.  
 Itamar, Ithamar, bishop of Rochester, 95, 96.  
 Ithamestre, in Essex, near the Blackwater, 98.  
 Itingforde, *Ifford*? treaty made at, 154.  
 Ivo, Ives, St., church of; built in 1001 in honour of St. Yvo by Ednoth, abbot of Ramsey.

## J.

Jacobus, a deacon, administers the see of York, 90.  
 Jaruman, bishop in Mercia, 100.  
 Jermarc, a Scottish king, 188.  
 Jerome, St., quotation from, 26.  
 Jerusalem, 30, 219, 223; besieged and taken by the Christians, 229; English crusaders proceed thither, 250.  
 Jews, the, 24.

Jocelin, bishop of Salisbury, 316.  
 John, the arch-chanter, 105; dies at Tours, *ib.*  
 John the archdeacon, bishop of Rochester, 245, 251, 315.  
 John, bishop of Bath, 244, 316.  
 John, St., of Beverley, 113.  
 John of Crema, cardinal-legate, 245; holds a synod in London, *ib.*; harangues against married priests, 246; scandalous conduct attributed to him, *ib.*  
 John IV. pope, writes to the Scots about Easter, 80.  
 Jordanus, holds a tower against Prince Henry, 286; surrenders it, 287.  
 Jovian, the emperor, 31.  
 Juheta, Judith, daughter of Charles the Bold, 148.  
 Julian the apostate, 31.  
 Julianus Campanensis, 33.  
 Julianus, Didius, 25.  
 Julius, a martyr, 29.  
 Justin, the emperor, 47, 51.  
 Justus, sent by pope Gregory to England, 69; ordained by Augustin to Rochester, 77; departs with Mellitus to Gaul, 81; is recalled, 82; succeeds Mellitus at Canterbury, 82; his death, 88.  
 Jutes, the, 38.  
 Juvenal, quotation from, 21.

## K.

Kaerlegion, Chester, battle at, 55.  
 Kala. Cale, *Chelles*, 94.  
 Karolus Magnus. *See* Charlemagne.  
 Kent, 8, 9; beginning of the kingdom, 41; Æthelbert driven into, 52; king and people of converted, 54; lists of kings, 64, 134, 171; ruled by Ecgferth, son of Offa, 128; the Kentishmen will not obey the empress Maude, 275.  
 Kineard, Cyneheard, brother of Sigebert king of Wessex, 127; kills Cynewulf, *ib.*

Kinebold, bishop of Lindisfarne, 127.  
 Kinegils. *See* Cynegils.  
 Kinemeresford, Kempesford, battle at, 181.  
 Kinewulf, Cynewulf, king of Wessex, 123;  
 battle with Offa, 126; banishes Cyne-  
 heard, 127; who kills him, *ib.*  
 Kingstun, *Kingston-on-Thames*, 159, 167.  
 Kinric. *See* Cinric.  
 Kinric, son of Cuthred, killed in a mutiny,  
 120.

## L.

Labienus, 16, 17.  
 Lambertus Pauper, his cowardice, 226.  
 Lamhuth, *Lambeth*, 190.  
 Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, 211;  
 holds a council at London, *ib.*; his  
 death, 215; 314.  
 Laurentius, sent to Rome by Augustin,  
 69; succeeds the latter in the primacy,  
 79; writes to the Celtic churches on the  
 observance of Easter, 80; is prevented  
 by a vision from quitting his see, 81;  
 dies, 82.  
 Lefric, Leofric, earl of Mercia, 189; dies,  
 196.  
 Lefsi, Leofsig, exiled by Ethelred, 174.  
 Lefwine, abbot of Ely, 187.  
 Lefwine, for Leofwine, abbess of St. Mil-  
 dred's, 179.  
 Lefwing, Lyfing, archbishop of Canterbury,  
 180; dies, 187.  
 Legecestrin, *Chester*, Danes besieged in,  
 150; Edgar's court there, 166.  
 Legecestrin, *Leicester*, 101, 155, 158, 161.  
 Leicestershire, 9.  
 Leo III., pope, 181.  
 Leo IV., blesses and adopts the young  
 Alfred, 141.  
 Leo IX., pope, 193.  
 Lestingaeu, *Lastingham*, 99.

Leutherius, bishop of the West Saxons,  
 94.  
 Lewine, Leofwine, son of Earl Godwine,  
 204.  
 Liceffeld, *Lichfield*, 101.  
 Lichfield, bishops of. *See*—  
 Aldwine.  
 Lideford, *Lidford*, 170.  
 Lidwicum, *Britanny*, 155.  
 Lienberig, *Leighton*? 52.  
 Ligetune, *Leighton*, 155.  
 Limene, *Lymne*, 149.  
 Lincoln, 9, 11, 12; belongs to Mercia, 86.  
 ...., *see of, ib.*; extent of the diocese,  
*ib.*; cathedral church built by Paulinus,  
 86; Honorius consecrated there, 88;  
 reduced by Edmund, 161, 212; the  
 minster finished, 216, 237; besieged by  
 Stephen, 268; battle of, 271; plundered  
 by the victors, 275; again besieged,  
 277; surrendered to Stephen, 279; 281.  
 Lincoln, bishops of. *See*—  
 Remigius.  
 Robert Bloct.  
 Alexander.  
 Robert de Querceto.  
 ...., the clergy of, in the time of  
 bishop Remigius, 301-302.  
 Lincolnshire, 9.  
 Lindisfarne, bishops of. *See*—  
 Aidan.  
 Finan.  
 Colman.  
 Tuda.  
 Eata.  
 Cuthbert, St.  
 Kinebold.  
 ...., *see of, founded by St. Aidan*, 92;  
 destroyed by the Danes, 130.  
 Lindisse. *See* Lindsey.  
 Lindisse, district of Lindsey, 169, 180,  
 181.  
 Lindisse, province of, converted by  
 Paulinus, 86.  
 Lindsey, 212; line of its bishops, 101.  
 Lisbon, taken by the English crusaders,  
 281.  
 Liud, a British prince, 17.  
 Lodovius. *See* Louis.

Loenenses. *See* Lothian.

London, 11, 33; capital of Essex, 77; the people will not receive Mellitus back, 82; 145, 148; repaired by Alfred, *ib.*, 150, 155; Olaf and Swein repulsed from, 169; the citizens submit to Sweyn, 180; 182, 177; relieved by Edmund Ironside, 183; occupied by Canute, 185; 232, 234, 247; sides with the empress, 275; expels her, *ib.*; sends a large force to the aid of Stephen, 278.  
....., *see of*, 9, 70, 77; founding of St. Paul's, 77.

London, bishops of. *See*—  
Mellitus.  
Erchenwald, St.  
Maurice.  
Richard.  
Gilbert.

Longobardi, occupy Italy, 54.

Lotar, Hlothere, king of Kent, 62, 64, 108; dies, 105.

Lotaringa, *Lorraine*, 201.

Lothen, a Danish freebooter, 192.

Lothian, the men of, claim the privilege of beginning the battle at Northallerton, 263; they are utterly routed, 264.

Louis VI., king of France; defeated at Brenville, 62, 241; 237, 239, 240; his incapacity, 249; has his son crowned, 250; 312.

Louis VII., joins the second crusade, 279; besieges Damascus without success, 281; returns to France, *ib.*; takes Neuf Marché, 283.

Lucan, quotation from, 18.

Lucheman, a Saxon admiral, slain, 151.

Lucius II., pope, 278.

Ludecan, king of Mercia, 183.

Ludhard, a French bishop, 68.

Ludlow castle, 261.

Lupus, bishop of Troyes, 42.

Luye, the *Lea*, 150, 155.

## M.

Maante. *See* Mantes.

Macrinus, 26.

Magnus, IV., king of Norway, mutilated by his uncle, 313.

Maine, 281; conquered by William Rufus, *ib.*; seized by Fulk of Anjou, 237. *See* Cenomannia.

Malculm, Malcolm I., Scottish king, 162.

Malmesbury castle, taken by Prince Henry, 286.

Malua, a supposed river, 15.

Malveisin, castle of, 218.

Man, Isle of, 7.

Mantes, burnt down with all the churches by the Conqueror, 209.

Manuscripts of the *Historia Anglorum*, xxxvi-xliii.

Manustra, in Syria, 222.

Maraclea, now *Marakia*, 229.

Marasis, now *Marasch*, 223.

Marchere, Morkar, son of Ælfgar, chosen earl of Northumbria, 198; defeated by Tosti, 200; goes to Ely, 205.

Marcus Aurelius, 24.

Margaret, St., queen of Scotland, 196, 204; her death, 217; comes with her parents to England, 296; her marriage to Malcolm, 296; her children and grandchildren, 297.

Maria, daughter of St. Margaret, 297; marries the count of Boulogne, *ib.*

Marianus Scotus; compilation ascribed to him, xlv, 1.

Marinus, pope, sends gifts to Alfred, 148.

Marna, the *Marne*, 149.

Marra, now *Marrah*, 228.

Masefeld, battle at, 95.

Matilda, daughter of the count of Boulogne, Stephen's queen, 297; recovers Dover, 261; holds Kent against the empress, 275.

Matilda, daughter of Henry I., 297; married to the emperor, 237; and afterwards to Geoffrey Plantagenet, 247; reconciled to her husband, 252; comes to England, 266; is allowed to go to

**Matilda—cont.**

- Bristol, *ib.*; is recognised all over England, except in Kent, 275; her pride, *ib.*; the Londoners expel her; she besieges Winchester castle, *ib.*; is besieged in Oxford, 276; escapes by night, *ib.*
- Matildis, Matilda, of Flanders, wife of the Conqueror, 207; founds a church at Caen, 210.
- Matildis, Matilda, queen of Henry I., 196, 233; dies, 240; verses on, 241; her parentage, 297.
- Maurice, bishop of London, 208, 211, 233, 316; dies, 236.
- Mauritania, 15.
- Mauritania. *See* Moretaine.
- Mauritius, the emperor, 70, 73.
- Maxentius, 30.
- Maximian, the emperor, 26, 29.
- Maximin, the emperor, 28, 30.
- Maximus, the emperor, 32, 34.
- Mealdune, *Maldon*, 155.
- Meampari, the *Meanware* in Hants, 102.
- Medes, the, part of the Moslem army, 221.
- Medewei, the *Medway*, 170.
- Megla, son of Port, 46.
- Meilocon, a Pictish king, 92; grants Isle of Iona to St. Columba, *ib.*
- Melbeathe, Macbeth, 188.
- Melcolm, Malcolm III., king of Scotland, 204; does homage to William, 205; ravages the Tyne valley, 206; does homage to William II., 216; killed, 217.
- Mellent. *See* Robert and Waleram de Mellent.
- Mellitus; sent to England by Pope Gregory, 69; converts the East Saxons and is made bishop of London, 77; visits Rome, 80; is expelled from his see, 81; departs to Gaul, *ib.*; is recalled, but cannot return to London, 82; succeeds Laurentius at Canterbury, *ib.*; power of his prayers, *ib.*
- Melmin, Melmin, *Millfield* in Northumberland, 86.
- Mercia, 9, 48; beginning of kingdom under Crida, 53; conversion of the people, 60, 96; lists of the kings, 65, 136, 172.
- Mercresburne, battle at, 44.
- Mercsware, Mersware, people of Romney Marsh, 139.
- Mercurius, St., a Cappadocian soldier martyred under Decius, 227.
- Meredune, *Marden*, battle at, 145.
- Mereseige, *Mersea*, in Essex, 150.
- Meretune, *Merton* or *Marden*, 127.
- Meroveus, founder of the Merovingian line, 248; his successors, *ib.*
- Merton castle, 261.
- Mesc, the *Meuse*, 148.
- Mevanise Insulæ, 83.
- Middlesex, 9.
- Middletune, *Milton*, in Kent, 149.
- Mimera, river *Maran*, 155.
- Mirmanda, Milmandum, in Burgundy, 201*n*.
- Mol Edelwold, Moll Æthelwold, king of Northumbria, 125.
- Montgomery, castle of, 218.
- Morchere, Morcar, 181.
- Moretaigue, count of. *See* Stephen.
- Morini, 16.
- Mortemer, battle of, 195; French defeated, 202.
- Mul, brother of king Cedwalla, killed, 107.
- Mungumeri. *See* Montgomery.

## N.

- Naiton, king of the Picts, 112.
- Nazaleod, a British king, 46.
- Nazaleoi, *Nelley*, 46.
- Nennius, his history quoted, 15, 39, 40, 41, 48.
- Nero, 21.
- Nerva, the emperor, 23.
- Nesse, *Dungeness*, 194.
- Nevers; Gilbert the Universal presided in the schools there, 307.
- Newark castle, 266.
- Newbury, 284.
- Newcastle; taken by William II., 218; taken by the Scots, 258; restored, 259.

New Forest, formed by the destruction of villages and churches, 210; 231; William Rufus killed there, 232; Henry II. lands there, 291.  
 Nicæa, siege of, by the crusaders, 219; 226.  
 Nicholas, the father of Henry of Huntingdon, his death, 237; verses on, *ib.*  
 Nicolas, archdeacon of Bedford, 303.  
 Nicolas, archdeacon of Huntingdon, 302.  
 Nigel, archdeacon of Northampton, 302.  
 Nigel, bishop of Ely, 253, 316; exiled by king Stephen, 267.  
 Ninian, St., founds the see of Whitherne.  
 Niverni. *See* Nevers.  
 Nogent, battle of Brenville fought near, 242.  
 Nordmutha, the *Nore*, 194.  
 Nordwic, *Norwich*, 175.  
 Norfolk, 8, 9, 52.  
 Norhamtune. *See* Northampton.  
 Norman, Northman, son of Leofwine, 186.  
 Normans, the, 8; origin of their claim upon England, 173; never conquered in war, 202; their character for cruelty, rapacity, and turbulence, 208.  
 Northampton, 155, 166, 178, 244; great council held at, 252; 279; surrounding country ravaged, 198.  
 Northamptonshire, 9.  
 Northumberland, 10.  
 Northumbria, 9; kingdom founded by Ida, 50; conversion of, 83; lists of its kings, 65, 135, 172.  
 Norwagenses, the Norwegians, 139.  
 Norwegia, *Norway*, conquered by Canute, 187; cruelty of a king of, 313.  
 Norwich, 206, 243, 259.  
 Norwich, bishops of. *See*—  
     Herbert.  
     Everard.  
     William.  
 Norwich, see of, 9.  
 Nothelm, archbishop of Canterbury, 117.  
 Nottingham, 161, 288; the town burnt, 288.  
 Nottinghamshire, 10.  
 Noves-forest. *See* New Forest.

Novum Castellum. *See* Newcastle.  
 Nugensis campus. *See* Nogent.

O.

Octa, king of Kent, 64.  
 Odo, bishop of Bayeux, half-brother to William I., 207, 211; heads a rising in Kent, 214; banished, 215.  
 Odo, Eudes count of Champagne, 218.  
 Offa, father of Erchenwin, 49.  
 Offa, king of Mercia, 123; his victories, 124; founds monastery of St. Alban's, and institutes Peter's Pence, *ib.*; battles, 126, 128; puts to death S. Ethelbriht 129; his death, 130; 131.  
 Offa, son of Sighere, king of Essex, 109.  
 Offrid, Osfrith, son of Eadwine, 90.  
 Olanie, island of *Olney*, 185.  
 Omens, 128, 129.  
 Orcaes, their position and number, 6.  
 Ordulf, his monastery at Tavistock, 170.  
 Origen, his numerous works, 26.  
 Orthography of Huntingdon, liii.  
 Osbert, Osbeorn, a Danish prince, 204.  
 Osbert, archdeacon of Bedford, 303.  
 Osbriht, king of Northumbria, 143.  
 Oslaf, a Kentish noble, 52.  
 Osmund, bishop of Salisbury, 232, 316.  
 Osred, king of Northumbria, 111, 129; killed, *ib.*  
 Osric, succeeds Eadwine in Deira, 91; relapses into idolatry, *ib.*  
 Osric, king of Northumbria, 111, 114.  
 Ostrith, Osthryth, queen of Mercia, 63; murdered, 109.  
 Osulf, Oswulf, king of Northumbria, 124; treacherously slain, 125.  
 Oswald, St., king of Northumbria, a Bretwalda, 52, 58, 93; finishes St. Peter's church at York, 86, 90; his victory at Denisesburn, 91; brings Aidan from Iona, *ib.*, 93; slain in battle, 95.  
 ....., translation of his relics, 157.  
 Oswald, a West Saxon prince, 114.  
 Oswald, St., archbishop of York, 169.  
 Oswi, succeeds St. Oswald, a Bretwalda, 52, 95; defeats Penda, 69, 97; dies, 61, 101.

Oswine, king of Deira, murdered, 95.  
 Oswine, a Northumbrian rebel, 125.  
 Otanford, *Otford*, battle at, 126.  
 Ou. *See* Eu.  
 Oxfordshire, 9.  
 Oxineford, *Oxford*, 10, 155, 159; burnt, 177; 180; Edmund Ironside murdered at, 185; assembly at, 189; 190, 258, 265; surrenders to Stephen, 276.

## P.

Paganel, holds Ludlow against Stephen, 261.  
 Palladius sent to preach in Ireland, 36.  
 Pantheon, the, transformed into a church, 80.  
 Parisius, *Paris*, 148, 149, 201.  
 Parthians, the, now called Turks, 221, 224.  
 Paschal controversy, 78; letter of Laurentius upon, 80, 91.  
 Paul, St., the apostle, 21.  
 Paul's, St., church, London, 196; rebuilt by bishop Maurice, 208, 236.  
 Paulinus, sent to England by pope Gregory, 69; goes with Ethelburga to Northumbria, 83; baptizes great multitudes there, 86; tradition of his look and carriage, 87; escapes into Kent, 90; takes the diocese of Rochester, 90; dies, *ib.*  
 Peartaneig, *Partney*, near Spilsby, 87.  
 Peda, Penda, succeeds Penda, 60; becomes a Christian, 96; murdered, 98.  
 Pedredesmuth, mouth of river Parret, battle near, 140.  
 Pelagius, 38; his heresy, 42, 89.  
 Pelochin, bishop of Chichester, 816.  
 Penda, king of Mercia, 57; his genealogy, *ib.*, 58; his victories, 59; killed by Oswi, 60, 97; 93; his attitude towards Christianity, 96.  
 Peneltune, *Kinnel*, 85.  
 Penho, *Pinho*, near Exeter, 170.  
 Penta, the river Freshwell, in Essex, 98.

Penwiltstrict, *The Lands End*, 170.  
 Penn, battle at, 60.  
 Peonna, *Penn* in Kent, battle at, 188.  
 Persæ, 221; part of Kerboga's army, 225.  
 Pertinax, the emperor, 25.  
 Peter, St., 21; martyrdom of, *ib.*  
 Peter, first abbot of Canterbury, 74; drowned in crossing to France, *ib.*; his body found and buried at Boulogne, 75.  
 Peter de Alpibus, Pierre de Aliphi, a crusader, 223.  
 Peter de Leves. *See* Anacletus.  
 Peter de Rosa, a crusader, 228.  
 Peterborough, succession of the abbots, 318.  
 .. .., abbey of, 165; its patron saints, xxvii.  
 Pevense, *Pevensey*, 192, 194, 214, 215.  
 Philip, the emperor, 26.  
 Philip I., king of France, 196, 205, 217; dies, 287; became a monk, 249; 312.  
 Philip, son of Louis VI., accidentally killed, 251, 252.  
 Philip de Brahuse, 287.  
 Phocas, the emperor, 55, 75, 80.  
 Picts, the, 8; have utterly perished, 12; of Scythian origin, 13; settle in Scotland, 14; invade Britain, 84; driven out, 86; renew their attacks, 87; defeated at Stamford, 88, 55; grant island of Hii to Scottish monks, 92; St. Columba preaches to, *ib.*; invaded by Ecgfrid, 106; kill Beret, 109; defeated by Berfrid, 111; attacked by Halfdene, 146.  
 Pipin le Bref, king of the Franks, 125.  
 Pipin, founder of the Karling or Carolingian line, 248; his successors and progenitors, *ib.*  
 Pirrus, a Turkish emir, betrays Antioch to the Christians, 225.  
 Plaissez. *See* Plessis.  
 Plessis castle, in Essex, 276.  
 Pleumund, Plegmund, archbishop of Canterbury, 149.  
 Podiensis. *See* Puy.  
 Pontica, provincia, *Ponthieu*, 6, 196.  
 Popes, contemporary with Ina, list of, 113.  
 Port; lands in Britain, 46.

Portes mudham. *See* Portsmouth.  
 Portlochan, *Porlock*, 156, 194.  
 Portsmouth, 46; battle at, 139; 233.  
 Portus S. Simeonis, the ancient port of Antioch, 224, 226.  
 Predictions, 173, 174.  
 Probus, the emperor, 27.  
 Prosper, St., 83.  
 Provincia, *Provence*, 220.  
 Publicani, a tribe of Asia Minor, 221.  
 Puntaldemer, *Pont Audemer*, in Normandy, 245.  
 Purveyance, abuse of, under William II., 230.  
 Putta, bishop of Rochester, 100, 101.  
 Puy, Ademar bishop of, 219, 220, 222, 223; at Antioch, 227.

## Q.

Quadrage, *Quat*, near Bridgnorth, 150.

## R.

Raculf, *Reculver*, 108.  
 Radulfus, Ralph de Guader, his plot, 206; it fails, *ib.*  
 Radulphus, the chamberlain, 195 *note*, 202.  
 Radulphus, chancellor of Henry I., 244; his miserable end, *ib.*, 308.  
 Rainer, son of Redwald, killed at the Idle, 56, 85.  
 Ralph, archbishop of Canterbury, 238, 314; dissension with Thurstan of York, 238; dies, 244.  
 Ralph, bishop of Chichester, 316.  
 Ralph, bishop of the Orkneys; his speech before the battle of the Standard, 262.  
 Ralph, bishop of Rochester, 315.  
 Ralph Basset, justiciary, 318.  
 Ralph Lovel, rebels against Stephen, 261.  
 Ramesei, *Ramsey*, abbey of, founded by Ailwin and St. Oswald of York in 969, 165; seized by Mandeville, 277; a portent there, *ib.*  
 Randulf, archdeacon of Leicester, 302.  
 Randulf, dean of Lincoln, 301.  
 Ranulf, earl of Chester, revolts against Stephen, 268; addresses the army before Lincoln, *ib.*; character imputed to him, 272; 274, 277; arrested by Stephen and forced to surrender Lincoln, 279; his fruitless attempt to recover it, *ib.*  
 Ranulf, or Ralph, Flambard, bishop of Durham, 232, 316; imprisoned by Henry I., 234; escapes and joins Duke Robert, *ib.*; dies, 250.  
 Raven, the Danish standard, 147.  
 Ravenna, 43.  
 Raymund, count of St. Gilles or of Toulouse, 219, 220, 222, 224; quarrels with Bohemond about Antioch, 228; at Jerusalem, 229, 230.  
 Raymund Pilet, 227; takes Talamannia, 228.  
 Red Sea, the, 15.  
 Redford, *Redbridge*, 103.  
 Redinges, *Reading*, battle at, 144.  
 Redlesham, *Rendlesham*, 99.  
 Redwald, king of East Anglia, a Bretwalda, 51, 53; defeats Æthelfrid of Northumbria, 56, 84; his imperfect conversion, 87.  
 Reginald, Regnold, king of Northumbria, 159; becomes a Christian, 162.  
 Reginald, abbot of Ramsey, 252, 317.  
 Reinaldus, Raynald, count of Toul, 227.  
 Reiner, a satellite of Geoffrey Mandeville; his miserable fate, 278.  
 Reiner, treasurer of Lincoln, 301; his piety, *ib.*  
 Remi. *See* Rheims.  
 Remigius, bishop of Lincoln, 211; a monk of Fecamp, 212; appointed to the see of Dorchester, *ib.*, 301; removes the see to Lincoln, *ib.*; his personal appearance, 212; his death, 216.  
 Repandune, Rependune, *Repton*, 122, 145.  
 Reptacestir. *See* Rutubi portus.

- Reuda, a Scottish leader, 14.  
 Rheims, council held at, 242.  
 Ricardus de Principatu, Richard of Principato in Italy, a crusader, grandson of Robert Guiscard, 221, 227.  
 Richard I., duke of Normandy, 169, 173.  
 Richard II., succeeds Richard I. as duke, 169, 180; his death, 187.  
 Richard III., son of duke Richard II., 187, 201.  
 Richard, natural son of Henry I., 242; drowned, *ib.*, 304; brought up by bishop Bloct, 304.  
 Richard, abbot of St. Alban's, 239.  
 Richard, son of Ralph Basset, justiciary, 318.  
 Richard, earl of Chester, drowned in the White ship, 242, 304.  
 Richard Fitz Urse, taken prisoner at Lincoln, 274.  
 Richard, bishop of Hereford, 247.  
 Richard, archdeacon of Lincoln, 302.  
 Richard, bishop of London, 247, 316.  
 Rigbert, Ricbert, murders Earpwald, 88.  
 Robert, eldest son of the Conqueror, 206, 207, 211; attempts to seize the kingdom, 214; the enterprise fails, 215; treaty with William II., 216; mortgages Normandy to him, and takes the cross, 219, 220; his bravery at the battle of Dorylæum, 221, 223; at Antioch, 224, 227; at Jerusalem, 229; rejects the crown of Jerusalem, 230; returns to Normandy, 233; makes a treaty with Henry I., *ib.*; again in England, 234; defeated at Tenchebrai, 235; and made prisoner, 236.  
 Robert duke of Normandy, father of the Conqueror, 187; dies on pilgrimage, 188.  
 Robert, the Frisian, count of Flanders, 205, 207.  
 Robert II., count of Flanders, 219, 222, 223, 227; at Jerusalem, 229, 230; dies, 238.  
 Robert of Gloucester, natural son of Henry I., 261; holds his castle against Stephen, *ib.*; marches to relieve Lincoln, 268; his speech to the troops, *ib.*;  
 Robert of Gloucester—*cont.*  
 character imputed to him by his enemies, 272; aids the empress, 275; is taken prisoner and exchanged for Stephen, *ib.*; loses Farringdon castle, 278.  
 Robert de Ansa, a crusader, 221.  
 Robert de Bakentun, 259.  
 Robert, bishop of Bath, 316.  
 Robert de Belesme, earl of Shrewsbury, 231; driven out of England by Henry I., 234, 235; taken in Normandy and imprisoned at Warham, 238; his crimes and their punishment, 310.  
 Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, a Norman, 193; banished, 194.  
 Robert I., bishop of Chester, 211, 316.  
 Robert II., bishop of Chester, 247, 316.  
 Robert, bishop of Exeter, nephew of bishop Warlewast, 316.  
 Robert (for William) Warlewast, bishop of Exeter, 316.  
 Robert Fitz Gerard, a crusader, 224.  
 Robert Bloct, bishop of Lincoln, 216; purchases the immunity of his see from William II., *ib.*; consecrates the church at St. Alban's, 239; his sudden death at Woodstock, 244, 300; verses on, 244; his wealth, 299; and misfortunes, 300; his character, *ib.*  
 Robert the younger, archdeacon of Lincoln, 302; his wealth, *ib.*  
 Robert Marmion, seizes Coventry abbey, 277; slain, *ib.*  
 Robert de Mellent, a statesman under Henry I., 240; his death, *ib.*; his commanding ability and influence, 306; calamity overtakes him, 307; manner of his death, *ib.*  
 Robert Mowbray, killed by the men of Northumbria, 204.  
 Robert Mowbray, earl of Northumberland, 218; rebels against William Rufus, *ib.*  
 Robert de Nicole, 261.  
 Robert, archdeacon of Northampton, 302.  
 Robert Péché, bishop of Chester, 316.  
 Robert de Querceto (de Chesney), archdeacon of Leicester, 302; elected bishop of Lincoln, 281.  
 Robert de Sigillo, bishop of London, 316.

Rochester, 11, 148; destroyed, 62; 170; siege of, 215.

....., see of, 9; Justus first bishop, 77; see suppressed by Ethelred II., 168.

Rochester, bishops of. *See*—

Justus.

Romanus.

Paulinus.

Itamar.

Putta.

Tobias.

Aldulf.

Dun.

Godwine.

Ingulf.

Ralph.

Ernulf.

John.

Ascelin.

Roger, bishop of Salisbury and chief justiciary, 245, 250; supports the pretensions of Stephen, 256; seized and imprisoned by Stephen's order, 265; compelled to give up his castles, *ib.*; his death, 266; educated his nephew, bishop Alexander, in luxury, 280; 316.

Roger de Clinton, archdeacon of Buckingham, 303.

Roger, earl of Hereford, son of William Fitz Osbern, 206.

Roger, earl of Moreuil, 214, 215.

Roger, earl of Norfolk, rebels against William II., 214.

Roger of Poitou, 217.

Roheis, *i.e.* Edessa, 279.

Rollo, first duke of Normandy, 161.

Roman pontiff, the, appeals to, 282.

Roman roads, 12.

Romania, Roum in Asia Minor, 219.

Romans, the, 8; quit Britain, 35.

Romanus, bishop of Rochester, drowned, 90.

Rome, sack of by Alaric, 34.

Rome-scot, assigned to the Roman see by Canute, 188.

Rotomagus. *See* Rouen.

Rou, Rollo, first duke of Normandy, 201.

Rouen, battle of birds there, 61; 201, 242, 256.

Rovecestria. *See* Rochester.

Ruffinians, 69.

Rumcoven, *Runcorn*, 157.

Rumene, *Romney*, 194.

Rusa, now *Ruiah*, near Antioch, 223.

Russcada, 15.

Rutubi portus, *Richborough*, 6.

## S.

Sagitta, now *Saida*, *i.e.* Sidon, 229.

Salisbury, 8, 175; battle at, 50.

Salisbury, bishops of. *See*—

Osmund.

Roger.

Jocelin.

....., see of, 9.

....., bishops of. *See* Osmund Roger.

Samson, bishop of Worcester, 316.

Sandwic, *Sandwich*, Danes defeated near, 141; 175, 176, 177, 181, 192.

Saracens, ravages of, 114, 221, 225.

Saverne. *See* Severn.

Saxnat, ancestor of the East-Saxon kings, 49.

Saxones Antiqui, *Old Saxons*, 39; converted, 126, 127.

Saxons, their heptarchy, 8; called in by the Britons, 37; arrive in Britain, 38; their settlements there, 39.

Scaftesbirh, *Shaftesbury*, 168.

Scanlauda, *St. Lo*, 149.

Scat, the *Scheldt*, 148.

Sceorstan, *Sherston*, battle at, 183.

Scobrih, *Shoebury*, 150.

Scoriate, *Shergate*, 157.

Scotland, invaded by earl Siward, 194.

Scots, the, 8, 13, 14; their origin, 15; settle in Ireland, *ib.*; their inroads into Britain, 34; driven out, 36; renew their attacks, 37; defeated at Stamford, 38, 55; submit to Edred, 162; and to Edgar, 166.

Sebbi, king of *Essex*, takes the cowl, 118.

Secana, the *Seine*, 148, 149, 151.

- Secandune, *Seckington*, battle at, 122.  
 Sedrid, stepdaughter of king Anna, 94.  
 Selesheu, *Selsey*, 102.  
 Seleuude, *Selwood*, 147.  
 Selred, king of East Anglia, 120.  
 Sepeige, *Isle of Sheppey*, 133; Danes there, 142.  
 Sergius, pope, 107.  
 Severn, the river, 10, 155.  
 Severus, the Emperor, 25; his wall, 26, 34.  
 Severus, bishop of Treves, 42.  
 Sexburg, daughter of king Anna, 94.  
 Sexburgh, succeeds Cenwalh in Wessex, 61.  
 Sherborne, bishops of. *See*—  
     Aldhelm.  
     Forthere.  
     Alcstan.  
 Sherborne, taken by Stephen, 265.  
 Ship-tax, imposed by Ethelred, 176.  
 Shooting stars, 219.  
 Shropshire (*Salopshire*), 10.  
 Siberet, *Sæberht*, king of Essex, 50, 57; converted, 77; dies, 80.  
 Sidric, *Sihtric*, king of Northumbria, 159.  
 Sidroc, a Danish jarl, 144.  
 Sifrid, bishop of Chichester, surnamed *Pelochin*, 245, 251.  
 Sigan, *Sigga*, a Northumbrian, 129, 130.  
 Sigbert, king of East Anglia, converted by St. Felix; 58, 59, 88, 95; establishes schools, 96; receives St. Fursey, *ib.*; becomes a monk, *ib.*; slain in battle, *ib.*  
 Sigbert, succeeds Siberet, 57.  
 Sigbert II., succeeds Sigbert I., 57; converted, 60, 98.  
 Sigbert, king of Wessex, 122; expelled by his people, 123; killed by a swineherd, *ib.*  
 Sigefard, *Sigfert*, 181.  
 Sigewulf, ancestor of Erchenwin, 49.  
 Sighere, king of Essex, 100, 109.  
 Silchester (*Kair Segent*), 7.  
 Silver, imported into Britain from Germany, 5.  
 Simeon, a crusader, 228.  
 Simon, bishop of Worcester, 245, 316.  
 Simon, son of bishop Bloct, dean of Lincoln, his character and fall, 306.  
 Simon de Senlis, earl of Northampton, at the battle of Lincoln, 270; dies, 288.  
 Sion, Mount, 229.  
 Siricius, *Siric*, or *Sigeric*, archbishop of Canterbury, 168; dies, 170.  
 Siward, earl of Northumbria, 194; anecdotes of, 194, 195; his death, 196.  
 Sleaford castle, 266.  
 Slede, a king of Essex, 49.  
 Slede castle, 261, 265.  
 Snotingham. *See* Nottingham.  
 Soliman, a Saracen general, 222.  
 Solinus, quotation from, 18.  
 Somersetshire, 9.  
 Sources of the *Historia Anglorum*, liii-lxi.  
 Southampton, battle near, 139; 168, 169.  
 Spain, the Scots settle there, 15.  
 ....., war in, between Alfonso VI. and the Moslems, 211.  
 ....., successes of the crusaders in, 281.  
 Spalding, abbey of, founded in 1052 as a cell to Croyland by Thorold brother of the Lady Godiva, 165.  
 Sparnum. *See* Epernon.  
 Speon, for Sweon, the *Swedes*, 187.  
 Stafford, 157.  
 Staffordshire, 10.  
 Stamford, battle at, 38; 161, 182, 288.  
 Standard, the, 184, 203.  
 ....., battle of the, 262-5.  
 Steinfordesbrige, Stanford bridge, battle at, 200.  
 Stepen, *Steepe Holms*, 156.  
 Stephen, count of Blois, 219, 222.  
 Stephen of Blois, count of Moretaigne, brother of Theobald, 256; claims the English crown, *ib.*; attends the funeral of Henry I., 258; promises reforms, *ib.*; marches against David of Scotland, *ib.*; comes to terms, 259; reduces Bakentun, Exeter, and the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; is at Brampton near Huntingdon, 260; in Normandy, *ib.*; his son does homage to Louis VI., *ib.*; he returns to England, *ib.*; takes Bedford, *ib.*; marches north

Stephen of Blois—*cont.*

to repel the Scottish invasion, 261; he ravages the Lowlands, 265; treaty, *ib.*; he seizes and imprisons the bishops Roger and Alexander, *ib.*; makes them surrender their castles, 265, 266; banishes bishop Nigel, 267; rapine and disorder prevail everywhere, *ib.*; Stephen lays siege to Lincoln, 268; gives battle to the earls of Chester and Gloucester, 271; evil omens, *ib.*; he is defeated and taken after a gallant resistance, 274; imprisoned at Bristol, 275; put in fetters, *ib.*; is exchanged for Robert of Gloucester, *ib.*; at Wilton, 276; besieges the empress in Oxford, *ib.*; besieges Lincoln without effect, 277; takes Farringdon castle, 278; arrests the Earl of Chester, and makes him surrender his castles, 279; at Lincoln, *ib.*; occupies York, 282; takes and burns Worcester, *ib.*; wishes to crown his son Eustace, 283; his resentment at the refusal of the bishops, 284; never loved the clergy, *ib.*; takes Newbury, and presses the siege of Wallingford, *ib.*; marches against prince Henry, 286; the armies facing each other, *ib.*; deluge of rain, *ib.*; the king returns to London, 287; marches to the relief of Crowmarsh, *ib.*; negotiation for peace, 288; conference with Henry, *ib.*; whom he adopts for his son, 289; they enter London amidst general rejoicing, *ib.*; conference at Oxford, *ib.*; and at Dunstable, 290; he takes Drake and other castles, 291; his death, *ib.*

Stigand, bishop of East Anglia, 192; takes also the see of Winchester, *ib.*; is made primate, 194.

Stonehenge, account of, 12.

Stow Abbey, near Lincoln, 196.

Streneshalh, *Whitby*, abbey of, royal persons buried there, 98.

Stuf, nephew of Cerdic, 47, 50.

Sturemutha, mouth of the *Stour*, 148.

Suain, Swein, Danish king, 169; burns Norwich, 175; enters the Humber, 180; his death, 181.

Suain, Sweyn, son of Godwine, 192, 193.

Sualua, the river Swale, 86.

Suathedi, Swani, the Swedes, 139, 296.

Suevi, the, break into Gaul, 33.

Suffolk, 8, 9, 52.

Surh, now *Soor*, the ancient Tyre, 229.

Surrey, 9.

Sussex, kingdom of, 8; founded, 44; decline, 47; list of the kings, 65; conversion of, 102.

....., county of, 9, 55.

Swanawic, *Swanwich*, 146.

Sweden, the sons of Edm. Ironside, sent there by Canute, 296.

Swein, king of Denmark, 204, 206.

Swithelm, king of Essex, 99.

Sylvester, Pope, 30.

Symmachus, 35.

## T.

Tacitus, the emperor, 27.

Taillefer, the Norman jongleur, story of, 202.

Talamannia, now *Tel Amania*, 228.

Talbot, Geoffrey, rebels against Stephen, 261.

Tamesis, Tamese, the *Thames*, 10, 149, 150, 177, 180.

Tamewrthe, *Tamworth*, 157, 158.

Tamremutha, mouth of the *Tamar*, 170.

Tancred, the crusader, 219, 221; towns in Cilicia granted to him, 222; at Antioch, 225, 227; at Jerusalem, 229.

Tantune, *Taunton*, 112.

Tarsus, 222.

Tatwine, archbishop of Canterbury, 114; dies, 115.

Taxation under Henry I., 237, 240.

Tedbald, Theobald, brother of Ethelfrid, killed, 55.

Tedbald. *See* Theobald.

Tedforde, *Thetford*, 144, 165; burnt, 175; 178.

Temesford, *Tempesford*, 178.

Temple, knights of the, 250, 251, 281.

- Tenet, *Thanet*, isle of, 41, 67, 141, 166 ; battle at, *ib.*, 142.
- Tenerchebrai, *Tenchebrai*, 235.
- Teulf, bishop of Worcester, 245, 316.
- Theobald (abbot of Bec), archbishop of Canterbury, 265 ; intercedes for the imprisoned bishops, 266 ; goes to Rome, 277 ; 282 ; refuses to crown Stephen's son Eustace, 283 ; negotiates a peace between Stephen and Henry, 289 ; on Stephen's death he sends for Henry to come and assume the government, 291 ; worthy of all praise, 314.
- Theobald, count of Blois, grandson of the Conqueror, 339 ; aids Henry I. against the confederates, 240 ; with Henry at Bramton, 243.
- Theodore, archbishop, 61, 63 ; sent by pope Vitalian, 100 ; holds a council at Heathfield, 101, 104 ; dies, 108.
- Theodoricus. *See* Thierry.
- Theodosius, the emperor, 32.
- Theodosius, the younger, 33, 35, 36.
- Thierry, of Alsace, 249 ; lays claim to Flanders, *ib.* ; joins the second crusade, 279.
- Thomas, St., in India, 148.
- Thomas I., archbishop of York, 211, 216 ; dies, 233.
- Thomas II., archbishop of York, 237 ; dies, 238 ; 316.
- Thomas, bishop of East Anglia, 96.
- Thomas, of Laon ; a monster of cruelty, 308 ; his wretched end, 310.
- Thorney, abbey of, founded in 972 by bishop Ethelwold, 165.
- Thule, 6.
- Thurstan, archbishop of York, 238 ; visits Rome, 246, 250 ; raises an army to oppose the Scots, 262 ; 316.
- Tiberius Cæsar, 20.
- Tilaburt, *Tilbury*, 98.
- Tilbeth, Tilberht, bishop of Hexham, 127.
- Tine, the *Tyne*, 206.
- Tinemutha, *Tynemouth*, 129.
- Titilus, son of Uffa, 53.
- Titus, the emperor, 22.
- Tobias, bishop of Rochester, 108 ; dies, 112.
- Torcheseige, *Torksey*, 145.
- Tortosa, in Syria, 229.
- Tostig, son of Earl Godwine, 192 ; Siward's earldom given to him, 196 ; anecdote about his quarrel with Harold, 197 ; exiled, 198 ; makes a descent in the Humber, 199 ; joins Harold Hardrada, 200 ; slain at Stanford bridge, *ib.*
- Totanhale, *Tettenhall*, battle at, 157.
- Trajan, the emperor, 23, 33.
- Trent, the river, 266 ; battle near, 63 ; 87, 98.
- Trinovantum, 18.
- Tripolis, in Syria, 229.
- Trumbert, bishop of Hexham, 101.
- Trumhere, bishop in Mercia, 98.
- Trumwine, bishop among the Picts, 101 ; escapes to Streoneshalch, 106.
- Tuda, bishop of Lindisfarne, 99.
- Tudda. *See* Tuda.
- Tunebrige, *Tunbridge*, 314.
- Turald, abbot of Peterborough, 318.
- Turetil, Thurecytel, his cowardice, 178.
- Turchetel, Thurecytel, a Danish earl, 156.
- Turchil, a Dane, 180 ; banished, 186.
- Turstan, abbot of Glastonbury, 207.
- Turks, the, defeated at Nicæa, 220 ; 223.
- Tuuefingeoestre, *Torksey* ? 87.
- Tynemouth, castle of, 218.
- Tyrel, Walter, 232.

## U.

- Ubba, a Danish leader, 143.
- Uethred, ealdorman of Northumbria, 180 ; deposed, 182.
- Uffa, ancestor of the East Anglian kings, 53.
- Uhter, a Danish viking, 155.
- Uithred, Wihtred, king in Kent, 108, 109 ; dies, 112.
- Ulf, attacked by Canute in Denmark, 187.
- Ulf, bishop of Dorchester, 193.
- Ulixisbona. *See* Lisbon.
- Uundalum, *Oundle*, 110.

Urban II., pope, 207, 219.  
 Usa, the Bedfordshire *Ouse*, 153, 165 ;  
 description of, 178.  
 Usuard de Nulsione, or Musione, Osoars  
 de Mouson, a Crusader, 222.

## V.

Valens, the emperor, 31, 32.  
 Valentinian, the emperor, 31.  
 Valentinian II., murdered at Ravenna, 43.  
 Valerian, the emperor, 27.  
 Valery, St., 215.  
 Vandals, the, 33, 36.  
 Vecta, ancestor of Hengist, 39.  
 Verolamium, *St. Alban's*, 28.  
 Verzelei, *Vercelli*, council of, 193.  
 Vespasian, 21.  
 Vineyards in England, 10.  
 Virgil, quotations from, 19, 142, &c.  
 Vortigern, king, 37 ; marries the daughter  
 of Hengist, 39 ; his death, 40.

## W.

Walden castle, in Essex, surrendered by  
 Mandeville, 276.  
 Waledene. *See* Walden.  
 Waleram, count of Mellent, quarrels with  
 Henry I., 245 ; taken by William de  
 Tankerville, *ib.* ; at the battle of Lincoln,  
 270 ; his character, *ib.* ; 282.  
 Walerici, St., Castellum. *See* Valery, St.  
 ..... portus, *St. Valery*, 199.  
 Wales ; subdued by William I., 210 ; in-  
 vaded by William II., 218, 230 ; by  
 Henry I., 238, 243.  
 ..... North, 196.

Wales—*cont.*  
 ..... three dioceses in, 10 ; desolate  
 state of, *ib.*  
 Walesdune, Vallium Dunæ, 192.  
 Walingeford. *See* Wallingford.  
 Walkeline, bishop of Winchester, 211,  
 315 ; dies, 231.  
 Walker, Walchere, bishop of Durham,  
 killed, 207.  
 Wallia, Walia. *See* Wales.  
 Wallingford ; 176, 180 ; the empress es-  
 caped thither, 276, 279 ; hard pressed by  
 Stephen, 284 ; relieved, 287.  
 Walo, or Gualo, a poet, 250, note.  
 Walter, abbot of Ramsey, 317.  
 Walter, archdeacon of Leicester, 302.  
 Walter (archdeacon of Leicester ?) ; let-  
 ter *De Contemptu* addressed to him,  
 297 ; his death, 319 ; his elegy, 320.  
 Walter Calenius, archdeacon of Oxford,  
 302.  
 Walter Espech, 264.  
 Waltheof, son of earl Siward, 195 ; joins  
 the Yorkshire insurgents, 204 ; submits  
 to the king, 205 ; engages in the East  
 Anglian plot, 206 ; executed, *ib.*  
 Wandali, the Wends ? 139, 187.  
 Wantsamu, the river *Wensome*, 68.  
 Wardebirh, 157.  
 Warham, *Wareham*, 167, 168.  
 Warram, *Warham*, in Norfolk, near Wal-  
 singham, 238.  
 Warwickshire, 10.  
 Watling Street, 12, 180.  
 Webhard, king in Kent, 108.  
 Weeced, Weecedport, *Watchet*, 156, 168  
 170.  
 Wellehare, *Whalley*, battle at, 131.  
 Welsh, the, 268, 273 ; rise against Egbert,  
 133.  
 Werham, *Wareham*, 146.  
 Wessex, kingdom of, 8 ; founded by  
 Cerdic, 47, 54 ; lists of its kings, 65,  
 135, 171 ; conversion of, 93.  
 Westminster, St. Peter's church at, conse-  
 crated, 198 ; William I. crowned at, 204.  
 Westminster Hall, opened by William  
 Rufus, 231.

Whitherne, bishops of *See*—

Fridwald.

Witwine.

Edelbert.

Baldulf.

Wic. *See* Ipswich.

Wiccii, the people of Worcestershire, 77.

Wicingi (Wilcinges), vikings, various reading for *Hibernenses*, 231.

Wicstan, Weohstan, ealdorman of Wilts, 131.

Wicta, grandfather of Hengist, 39.

Widgils, father of Hengist, 39.

Wido. *See* Guido.

Wienbeorne, Wembury, battle-at, 141.

Wighard, sent to Rome to be consecrated; dies there, 61.

Wight, Isle of, 7, 21, 38, 50; occupied by Wulfhere, 61; given to Æthelwath, *ib.*; the people converted by St. Wilfrid, 102; conquered by Cedwalla, 103; Danes in, 170, 175, 177; Ethelred goes to, 180; plundered by Godwine, 194.

Wilaf, Wiglaf, viceroy of Mercia, 133.

Wilfaresdune, near Catterick, 95.

Wilfrid, St., bishop in Northumbria, 100; converts the South Saxons, 102; and the people of Wight, *ib.*; dies at Oundle, 110.

William the Bastard, succeeds his father duke Robert, 188; 192; reduces Maine, 196; his grievances against Harold, 199; supposed speech to his men before battle of Hastings, 200; his tactics, 203; crowned at Westminster, 204; devastates Yorkshire, 205; reduces Isle of Ely, *ib.*; receives Malcolm's homage, *ib.*; his danger at Gerberoi, 206; invades Wales, 207; appoints a commission of inquiry, *ib.*; compilation of Domesday Book, 208; obliges all men to do homage, *ib.*; dies, *ib.*; his last raid in France, burns Mantes, 209; his character, *ib.*; verses on, 213.

William Rufus, 206; succeeds his father, 211; rising against put down, 214, 215; his promises, 214; rebuilds Carlisle,

William Rufus—*cont.*

216; appoints St. Anselm to the primacy, *ib.*; his quarrels with Robert Curthose, 217; campaign in Normandy, *ib.*; marches to Newcastle, 218; captures Robert Mowbray, *ib.*; settles Normandy, 230; invades Wales, *ib.*; engaged in building Westminster Hall, *ib.*; sends Edgar Atheling to Scotland, *ib.*; opens the Hall, 231; his witty sayings, *ib.*; conquers Maine, *ib.*; killed by Walter Tyrel, 232; his character, *ib.*; buried at Winchester, 233.

William, son of Henry I., 239; drowned, 242, 304; his vanity and luxury, 303.

William, brother of Henry II., 297.

William, son of Robert duke of Normandy, 239; at Brenville, 241; made count of Flanders, 247; resists count Thierry, 249, 305; mortally wounded, 250, 305; verses on, 250.

William Longue-Épée, duke of Normandy, 161.

William, St., the treasurer, archbishop of York, 316.

William of Curbuil, archbishop of Canterbury, 245; visits Rome, 246; holds a synod, 247, 250; his simplicity, 251; 253; supports Stephen, 256, 258; deserves no praise, 314.

William, bishop of Durham, 316.

William de St. Carilef, bishop of Durham, 211; joins the rising against William II., 214; banished, 215; killed (William named by mistake for Walchere), 316.

William Giffard, bishop of Winchester, 233; dies, 250; 315.

William, bishop of Norwich, 316.

William, bishop of Thetford, 211.

William of Bayeux, archdeacon of Lincoln, 302.

William, archdeacon of Northampton, 302.

William earl of Albemarle, 264; character imputed to him, 270.

William Bainard, 237.

William Crispin, 238; at Brenville, 241 (note).

William of Eu, 218.

- William Fitz Osbern, a Norman, 199; killed, 205.
- William of Grantmaison, 226; his cowardice during the second siege of Antioch, *ib.*
- William of Kahaines, makes Stephen prisoner at Lincoln, 274.
- William Malet, 237.
- William Martel, 276; gives up Sherborne castle, *ib.*
- William of Montpellier, crusader, 227.
- William of Moretil, 235 (note); made prisoner at Tenchebrai, 236; blinded by order of Henry I., 255.
- William the Picard, a crusader, 229.
- William Piperel, earl of Nottingham, 264.
- William, brother of Tancred, a crusader, killed, 222.
- William de Tankerville, 245.
- William earl of Warrenne, son of Stephen, 297.
- William, for Wido Tursellus, 226, note a.
- William of Ypres, 273; escapes from the field of Lincoln, 274; holds Kent for Stephen, 275; aids Henry of Winchester, *ib.*
- Wilton, capital of Wessex, 8; its nunnery, *ib.*; 175; battle at, 145.
- Wiltshire, 9.
- Winburnham, *Wimborne*, 145, 152.
- Wincenhale, *Finchale*, council at, 129.
- Winchester, 8, 127, 141; sacked by the Danes, 142; Danes hanged at, 152; 159, 164, 176, 180, 188, 190, 192, 206, 211, 232, 233, 245, 247; royal meeting at, 289.
- ....., see of, 9; founded, 93.
- Winchester, bishops of. *See*—
- Hedde.
- Daniel.
- Edelwold or Ethelwold, St.
- Stigand.
- Walkeline.
- William Giffard.
- Henry of Blois.
- Windleshores, *Windsor*, 194 note, 197, 218, 230, 236; the new buildings, 237; 243, 244, 247.
- Wine, a bishop in Wessex, 94; his simony, *ib.*
- Winwed, the river, battle at, 97.
- Wipandune, *Wimbledon*, 52.
- Wipha, son of Crida, 54.
- Wipped, a Jute, 43.
- Wippedfleet, victory at, 43.
- Wirengewic, *Warwick*, 157.
- Wirus, the *Wear*, 105.
- Witgar, Wihtgar, nephew of Cerdic, 47, 50; dies, *ib.*
- Witsand, *Wissant*, near Boulogne, 218.
- Witwine, or Pyhtwine, bishop of Whitherne, 125, 126.
- Wingham, in Essex, 155.
- Wlencing, son of Ella, 43.
- Wlnod. *See* Wulstan.
- Woden, heroic ancestor of Hengist, 39 and of Ida, 50; and of Ella, 51; and of Penda, 57.
- Wodnesbirne, *Wednesbury*, 54.
- Wonebirih, Wodnesbeorge, *Wanborough*? 111.
- Woodstock, 244, 247.
- Worcester, Wigornia, see of, 10.
- Worcester, bishops of. *See*—
- Wulstan, St.
- Samson.
- Teulf.
- Simon.
- Worcestershire, 10.
- Wulfhard, an ealdorman, 129.
- Wulfhere, king of Mercia, 60; battle with Escwine, 62; dies, *ib.*; dislodges Oswi from the Mercian throne, 98; sends Jaruman into Essex, 100; persuades Edilwalch to become a Christian, 102.
- Wulfketel, ealdorman of Norfolk, 175, 177.
- Wulfred, archbishop of Canterbury, 132.
- Wulfrie, or Walfrie, the anchorite of Haslebury, in Somersetshire, xxix.
- Wuluod, Wulfnoth, the child, 176.
- Wulstan, archbishop of York, 163.
- Wulstan, St., bishop of Worcester, 211; defends the city against the rebels, 214.

## Y.

- York, 9, 29; submits to Ethelfled, 158.  
 ....., see of, 10; Pope Gregory's intentions respecting it, 70; its claim to jurisdiction over Lindsey, 212, 216; dissension with Canterbury, 238 (*note*).  
 ....., attacked by Hinguar and Ubba, 143; 159, 182, 198; battle at, 200; Harold's banquet at, *ib.*, 204; occupied by Stephen, 282.  
 ....., archbishops of. See—  
     Paulinus.  
     Wilfrid, St.  
     Chad, St. (Ceadda).  
     Edbert.  
     Enbald.

York, archbishops of—*cont.*

Wulstan.  
 Oswald, St.  
 Eadwulf or Ealdulf.  
 Thomas I.  
 Gerard.  
 Thomas II.  
 Thurstan.  
 William, St.

Yorkshire, 10.

Yrcingafeldas, *Forest of Dean* ? 155.

## Z.

Zephaila, Kephalia in the *Gesta Francorum*, now *Djebail* (?), 228.



LONDON:  
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.  
[B 890.—750.—9/79.]

**ENGLAND.**

---

**CATALOGUE**

**OF**

**RECORD PUBLICATIONS**

**ON SALE**

**BY**

**Messrs. Longman & Co., and Messrs. Trübner & Co., London ;  
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London ;  
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London ;  
Messrs. A. & C. Black, and Messrs. Douglas and Foulis,  
Edinburgh ;  
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.**

# CATALOGUE.

## CONTENTS.

	Page
CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c. - - - - -	2
CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES - - - - -	9
PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c. - - - - -	27
WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY - - - - -	31
SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS - - - - -	33
IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS - - - - -	34

## CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price 15s.* each Volume or Part.]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few Persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls :—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM ; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I.  
*Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, ELIZABETH, and JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I. and II.), and MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN, (Vols. III.-XII.). 1856-1872.

Vol. I.—1547-1580.	Vol. VII.—Addenda, 1566-1579.
Vol. II.—1581-1590.	Vol. VIII.—1603-1610.
Vol. III.—1591-1594.	Vol. IX.—1611-1618.
Vol. IV.—1595-1597.	Vol. X.—1619-1623.
Vol. V.—1598-1601.	Vol. XI.—1623-1625, with Ad-
Vol. VI.—1601-1603, with Addenda, 1547-1565.	denda, 1603-1625.
	Vol. XII.—Addenda, 1580-1625.

These Calendars render accessible to investigation a large and important mass of historical materials. The Northern Rebellion of 1566-67; the plots of the Catholic fugitives in the Low Countries; the numerous designs against Queen Elizabeth and in favour of a Catholic succession; the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke; the rise of the Duke of Buckingham, &c. Numerous other subjects are illustrated by these Papers, few of which have been previously known.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. I.-XII.); *by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A., and WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vol. XIII.) and *by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A., (Vols. XIV.-XV.) 1858-1877.

Vol. I.—1625-1626.	Vol. IX.—1635-1636.
Vol. II.—1627-1628.	Vol. X.—1636-1637.
Vol. III.—1628-1629.	Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. IV.—1629-1631.	Vol. XII.—1637-1638.
Vol. V.—1631-1633.	Vol. XIII.—1638-1639.
Vol. VI.—1633-1634.	Vol. XIV.—1639.
Vol. VII.—1634-1635.	Vol. XV.—1639-1640.
Vol. VIII.—1635.	

This Calendar presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers relative to the history of the period to which it refers. Many of them have been hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1875-1878.

Vol. I.—1649-1650.	Vol. IV.—1651-1652.
Vol. II.—1650.	Vol. V.—1652-1653.
Vol. III.—1651.	

This Calendar is in continuation of those during the reigns from Edward VI. to Charles I., and contains a mass of new information.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860-1866.

Vol. I.—1660-1661.	Vol. V.—1665-1666.
Vol. II.—1661-1662.	Vol. VI.—1666-1667.
Vol. III.—1663-1664.	Vol. VII.—1667.
Vol. IV.—1664-1665.	

Seven volumes of this Calendar, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq., 1878-1879.

Vol. I.—1760 (25 Oct.)-1765. | Vol. II.—1766-1769.

These are the first two volumes of the modern series of Domestic Papers, commencing with the accession of George III.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.

These two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland). 1875-1879.

Vol. I.—1171-1251.

Vol. III.—1285-1292.

Vol. II.—1252-1284.

These volumes contain a Calendar of all documents relating to Ireland, preserved in the Public Record Office, London; the work is to be continued to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860-1877.

Vol. I.—1509-1573.

Vol. III.—1586-1588.

Vol. II.—1574-1585.

The above have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. 1872-1877.

Vol. I.—1603-1606.

Vol. III.—1608-1610.

Vol. II.—1606-1608.

Vol. IV.—1611-1614.

This series is in continuation of the Irish State Papers commencing with the reign of Henry VIII.; but, for the reign of James I., the Papers are not confined to those in the Public Record Office, London.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860-1878.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574-1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1617-1621.

Vol. IV.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1622-1624.

These volumes include an analysis of early Colonial Papers in the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record

Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A.,* Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862-1876.

Vol. I.—1509-1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.

Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519-1523.

Vol. IV.—Introduction.

Vol. IV., Part 1.—1524-1526.

Vol. IV., Part 2.—1526-1528.

Vol. IV., Part 3.—1529-1530.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI.**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547-1553. *Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq.,* of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553-1558. *Edited by W. B. TURNBULL, Esq.,* of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A.,* of University College, Durham, (Vols. I.-VII.), and ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law, (Vols. VIII.-X.) 1863-1876.

Vol. I.—1558-1559.

Vol. II.—1559-1560.

Vol. III.—1560-1561.

Vol. IV.—1561-1562.

Vol. V.—1562.

Vol. VI.—1563.

Vol. VII.—1564-1565.

Vol. VIII.—1566-1568.

Vol. IX.—1569-1571.

Vol. X.—1572-1574.

These volumes contain a Calendar of the Foreign Correspondence during the early portion of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. They illustrate not only the external but also the domestic affairs of Foreign Countries during that period.

**CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS**, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq.* 1868-1879.

Vol. I.—1557-1696.

Vol. II.—1697-1702.

Vol. III.—1702-1707.

Vol. IV.—1708-1714.

The above Papers connected with the affairs of the Treasury comprise petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State,

grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c. They illustrate civil and military events, finance, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

**CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS**, preserved in the Lambeth Library. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A.*, Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and **WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq.** 1867-1873.

Vol. I.—1515-1574.

Vol. II.—1575-1588.

Vol. III.—1589-1600.

Vol. IV.—1601-1603.

Vol. V.—Book of Howth; Miscellaneous.

Vol. VI.—1603-1624.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland, deposited in the Lambeth Library, are unique, and of great importance. The Calendar cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history.

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS**, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by G. A. BERGENROTH.* 1862-1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485-1509.

Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509-1525.

Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. Mr. Bergenroth also visited Madrid, and examined the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS**, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS.* 1873-1879.

Vol. III., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1525-1526.

Vol. III., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.—1527-1529.

Vol. IV., Part 1.—Hen. VIII.—1529-1530.

Upon the death of Mr. Bergenroth, Don Pascual de Gayangos was appointed to continue the Calendar of the Spanish State Papers. He has pursued a similar plan to that of his predecessor, but has been able to add much valuable matter from Brussels and Vienna, with which Mr. Bergenroth was unacquainted.

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS**, relating to **ENGLISH AFFAIRS**, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by RAWDON BROWN, Esq.* 1864-1877.

Vol. I.—1202-1509.

Vol. II.—1509-1519.

Vol. III.—1520-1526.

Vol. IV.—1527-1533.

Vol. V.—1534-1554.

Vol. VI., Part I.—1555-1556.

Mr. Rawdon Brown's researches have brought to light a number of valuable documents relating to various periods of English history; his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

**SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FÆDERA.** *By Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L.*, Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. I.—Will. I.—Edw. III.; 1066-1377. Vol. II.—Ric. II.—Chas. II.; 1377-1654. 1869-1873.

The "Fædera," or "Rymer's Fædera," is a collection of miscellaneous documents illustrative of the History of Great Britain and Ireland, from the Norman

Conquest to the reign of Charles II. Several editions of the "Fœdera" have been published, and the present Syllabus was undertaken to make the contents of this great National Work more generally known.

**REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. Price 2s. 6d.**

**REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. Price 2s. 6d.**

---

*In the Press.*

**SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA. By Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. Vol. III.—Appendix and Index.**

**CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield. Vol. V.—1531-1532.**

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. Edited by W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. V.—America and West Indies, 1661-1670.**

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. Edited by the Rev. C. W. RUSSELL, D.D., and JOHN P. PRENDERGAST, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. V.—1615-1625.**

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. Edited by RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. VI., Part II.—1556-1558.**

**CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, DURING THE COMMONWEALTH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. VI.—1653, &c.**

---

*In Progress.*

- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. VI.—East Indies, 1625, &c. Vol. VII.—America and West Indies, 1671, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ALLAN JAMES CROSBY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. XI.—1575, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XVI.—1640.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. IV.—1588, &c.
- CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. Vol. V.—1714, &c.
- CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* DON PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS. Vol. IV., Part 2.—Hen. VIII.
- CALENDAR OF HOME OFFICE PAPERS OF THE REIGN OF GEORGE III., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* RICHARD ARTHUR ROBERTS, Esq., Barrister-at-Law. Vol. III.—1770, &c.
- CALENDAR OF DOCUMENTS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, London. *Edited by* HENRY SAVAGE SWEETMAN, Esq., B.A., Trinity College, Dublin, Barrister-at-Law (Ireland). Vol. IV.—1293, &c.
-

## THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

---

[ROYAL 8vo. half-bound. *Price* 10s. each Volume or Part.]

---

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. **THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND**, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by the Rev. F. O. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.* 1858.

Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. **CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.* 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is printed for the first time.

3. **LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR**. I.—*La Estoire de Saint Aedward le Rei*. II.—*Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris*. III.—*Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit*. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.* 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Allanor, Queen of Henry III., and probably written in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. **MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA**; scilicet, I.—*Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam*. II.—*Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ*. III.—*Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ*. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* 1858.

This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. **FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO** Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.* 1858.

This work derives its principal value from being the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. When written the disputes of the school-

men had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The work gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. **THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ;** by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for in such a work as this ; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true ; and the chronicle is valuable as a reflection of the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this metrical version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. **JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS,** *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. **HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS,** by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. **EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS) : Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1868.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially

of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1366 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of this volume are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhams Liber Metricus de Henrico V. Edited by CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III. Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. Edited by Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and

comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. **A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. **THE "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., OF ROGER BACON.** *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiae*."

16. **BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA; 449-1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. **BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales.** *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "*The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales*," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. **A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. 1399-1404.** *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. **THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY.** By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "*Repressor*" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born

about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. *ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. Edited by the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.*

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout, though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. *THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V., VI., and VII. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861–1877.*

These volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1188, the second in 1185–6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the *Topographia* of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about the year 1188 and may be regarded rather

as a great epic than a sober relation of acts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ*: and Vol. VII., the lives of S. Remigius and S. Hugh.

22. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND.** Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Dépôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. **THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES.** Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In this edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. **LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. **DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066-1200. Vol. III.; 1200-1327. *By* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862-1871.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not

under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages; the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. **ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III.** Vol. I., 1216-1235. Vol. II., 1236-1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862-1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. **CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI**.—1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272-1381; Vol. II., 1381-1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELowe ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1296; 1307-1324; 1392-1406. 4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA; Vol. I., 793-1290; Vol. II., 1290-1349; Vol. III., 1349-1411. 5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI MONASTERII S. ALBANI, UT VIDETUR, ANNALES; Vols. I. and II. 6. REGISTRA QUORUNDAM ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, QUI SÆCULO XV<sup>mo</sup> FLORUERE; Vol. I., REGISTRUM ABBATIS JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, ABBATIS MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, ITERUM SUSCEPTÆ; ROBERTO BLAKENEY, CAPELLANO, QUONDAM ADESCRIPTUM: Vol. II., REGISTRA JOHANNIS WHETHAMSTEDE, WILLELMI ALBON, ET WILLELMI WALINGFORDE, ABBATUM MONASTERII SANCTI ALBANI, CUM APPENDICE, CONTINENTE QUASDAM EPISTOLAS, A JOHANNES WHETHAMSTEDE CONSCRIPTAS. 7. YPODIGMA NEUSTRIÆ, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, QUONDAM MONACHO MONASTERII S. ALBANI, CONSCRIPTUM. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Cambridge and Oxford; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1876.

In the first two volumes is a History of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., by Thomas Walsingham, Precentor of St. Albans, from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, attributed to William Rishanger, who lived in the reign of Edward I., from the Cotton MS. Faustina B. IX. in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219-231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cotton MS. Claudius E. III., fols. 306-331: an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol, 1291-1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., also attributed to William Rishanger, but on no sufficient ground: a short Chronicle of English History, 1292 to 1300,

by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a short Chronicle, Willelmi Nishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi, Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with *Annales Regum Angliæ*, probably by the same hand: and fragments of three Chronicles of English History, 1285 to 1807.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Annals of Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, and a continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henry de Blaneforde, both from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : a full Chronicle of English History, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and an account of the Benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the same Library.

The fifth, sixth, and seventh volumes contain a history of the Abbots of St. Albans, 793 to 1411, mainly compiled by Thomas Walsingham, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum: with a Continuation, from the closing pages of Parker MS. VII., in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

The eighth and ninth volumes, in continuation of the Annals, contain a Chronicle, probably by John Amundesham, a monk of St. Albans.

The tenth and eleventh volumes relate especially to the acts and proceedings of Abbots Whethamstede, Albon, and Wallingford, and may be considered as a memorial of the chief historical and domestic events during those periods.

The twelfth volume contains a compendious History of England to the reign of Henry V., and of Normandy in early times, also by Thomas Walsingham, and dedicated to Henry V. The compiler has often substituted other authorities in place of those consulted in the preparation of his larger work.

29. **CHRONICON ABBATLE EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMIE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418.** Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. **RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ.** Vol. I., 447-871. Vol. II., 872-1066. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863-1869.

The compiler, Richard of Cirencester, was a monk of Westminster, 1355-1400. In 1391 he obtained a licence to make a pilgrimage to Rome. His history, in four books, extends from 447 to 1066. He announces his intention of continuing it, but there is no evidence that he completed any more. This chronicle gives many charters in favour of Westminster Abbey, and a very full account of the lives and miracles of the saints, especially of Edward the Confessor, whose reign occupies the fourth book. A treatise on the Coronation, by William of Sudbury, a monk of Westminster, fills book iii. c. 3. It was on this author that C. J. Bertram fathered his forgery, *De Situ Britannia*, in 1747.

31. **YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.** Years 20-21, 21-22, 30-31, 32-33, and 33-35. Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1879.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. **NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449-1450.**—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conférences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. **HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRIÆ.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.* 1863-1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester, the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. **ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ.** *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century. In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities." Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century. The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. **LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1864-1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. **ANNALES MONASTICI.** Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066-1282; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519-1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1-1291. Vol. III.:—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1-1297; Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia 1042-

1432. Vol. IV. :—*Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016–1347*; *Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066–1289*; *Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1–1377*. Vol. V. :—*Index and Glossary*. Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are ten in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. *MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS*. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. *CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST*. Vol. I. :—*ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI*. Vol. II. :—*EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSES*; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. *RECUEIL DES CRONIKES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE*, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. I. Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. Edited by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864–1868.

40. *A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND*, by JOHN DE WAVRIN. Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) Edited and translated by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition

Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruuthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. **POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN**, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Vols. III., IV., V., and VI. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, B.D., Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge. 1865-1876.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. **LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE E LE LIVRE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE**. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livre de Reis de Engleterre." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. **CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406**. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866-1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. **MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR**. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067-1253. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866-1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also

written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the "Historia Major." The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. **LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455-1023.** *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements, which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. **CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the EARLIEST TIMES to 1135; with a SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150.** *Edited, with a Translation, by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are, the invasions of foreigners, and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. **THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I. Vols. I. and II.** *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1866-1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. **THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, or, THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN.** *Edited, with a Translation, by* JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. **GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169-1192; known**

under the name of **BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A.,* Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. **MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD** (in Two Parts). *Edited by the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A.,* Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

This work will supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. **CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDENE**. Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A.,* Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868–1871.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (see No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree; showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

52. **WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS MONACHI DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI QUINQUE**. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq.,* of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1870.

William of Malmesbury's "*Gesta Pontificum*" is the principal foundation of English Ecclesiastical Biography, down to the year 1122. The manuscript which has been followed in this Edition is supposed by Mr. Hamilton to be the author's autograph, containing his latest additions and amendments.

53. **HISTORIC AND MUNICIPAL DOCUMENTS OF IRELAND, FROM THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN, &c. 1172–1320**. *Edited by JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., F.S.A.,* Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland. 1870.

A collection of original documents, elucidating mainly the history and condition of the municipal, middle, and trading classes under or in relation with the rule of England in Ireland,—a subject hitherto in almost total obscurity. Extending over the first hundred and fifty years of the Anglo-Norman settlement, the series includes charters, municipal laws and regulations, rolls of names of citizens and members of merchant-guilds, lists of commodities with their rates, correspondence, illustrations of relations between ecclesiastics and laity; together with many documents exhibiting the state of Ireland during the presence there of the Scots under Robert and Edward Bruce.

54. **THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, FROM 1014 TO 1590**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited, with a Translation, by WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.* 1871.

The original of this chronicle has passed under various names. The title of "*Annals of Loch Cé*" was given to it by Professor O'Curry, on the ground that it was transcribed for Brian Mac Dermot, an Irish chieftain, who resided on the island in Loch Cé, in the county of Roscommon. It adds much to the materials for the civil and ecclesiastical history of Ireland; and contains many curious references to English and foreign affairs, not noticed in any other chronicle.

55. **MONUMENTA JURIDICA. THE BLACK BOOK OF THE ADMIRALTY, WITH APPENDICES.** Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1871-1876.

This book contains the ancient ordinances and laws relating to the navy, and was probably compiled for the use of the Lord High Admiral of England. Selden calls it the "jewel of the Admiralty Records." Prynne ascribes to the Black Book the same authority in the Admiralty as the Black and Red Books have in the Court of Exchequer, and most English writers on maritime law recognize its importance.

56. **MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VI. :—OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., AND BISHOP OF BATH AND WELLS.** *Edited, from a MS. in the Archiepiscopal Library at Lambeth, with an Appendix of Illustrative Documents, by the* Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Vicar of Ringwood, late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Vols. I. and II. 1872.

These curious volumes are of a miscellaneous character, and were probably compiled under the immediate direction of Bekynton before he had attained to the Episcopate. They contain many of the Bishop's own letters, and several written by him in the King's name; also letters to himself while Royal Secretary, and others addressed to the King. This work elucidates some points in the history of the nation during the first half of the fifteenth century.

57. **MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS, MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI, CHRONICA MAJORA.** Vol. I. The Creation to A.D. 1066. Vol. II. A.D. 1067 to A.D. 1216. Vol. III. A.D. 1216 to A.D. 1239. Vol. IV. A.D. 1240 to A.D. 1247. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registrar of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge. 1872-1877.

This work contains the "Chronica Majora" of Matthew Paris, one of the most valuable and frequently consulted of the ancient English Chronicles. It is published from its commencement, for the first time. The editions by Archbishop Parker, and William Wats, severally begin at the Norman Conquest.

58. **MEMORIALE FRATRIS WALTERI DE COVENTRIA.—THE HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS OF WALTER OF COVENTRY.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the MS. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1872-1873.

This work, now printed in full for the first time, has long been a *desideratum* by Historical Scholars. The first portion, however, is not of much importance, being only a compilation from earlier writers. The part relating to the first quarter of the thirteenth century is the most valuable and interesting.

59. **THE ANGLO-LATIN SATIRICAL POETS AND EPIGRAMMATISTS OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY.** Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Corresponding Member of the National Institute of France (Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres). 1872.

The Poems contained in these volumes have long been known and appreciated as the best satires of the age in which their authors flourished, and were deservedly popular during the 13th and 14th centuries.

60. **MATERIALS FOR A HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VII., FROM ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by the* Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A., one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools. 1873-1877.

These volumes are valuable as illustrating the acts and proceedings of Henry VII. on ascending the throne, and shadow out the policy he afterwards adopted.

61. **HISTORICAL PAPERS AND LETTERS FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS.** *Edited by* JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1873.

The documents in this volume illustrate, for the most part, the general history of the north of England, particularly in its relation to Scotland.

62. **REGISTRUM PALATINUM DUNELMENSE. THE REGISTER OF RICHARD DE KELLAWE, LORD PALATINE AND BISHOP OF DURHAM; 1311-1316.** Vols. I., II., III., and IV. *Edited by* Sir THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1873-1878.

Bishop Kellawe's Register contains the proceedings of his prelacy, both lay and ecclesiastical, and is the earliest Register of the Palatinate of Durham.

63. **MEMORIALS OF SAINT DUNSTAN ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.** *Edited, from various MSS., by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1874.

This volume contains several lives of Archbishop Dunstan, one of the most celebrated Primates of Canterbury. They open various points of Historical and Literary interest, without which our knowledge of the period would be more incomplete than it is at present.

64. **CHRONICON ANGLIÆ, AB ANNO DOMINI 1328 USQUE AD ANNUM 1388, AUCTORE MONACHO QUODAM SANCTI ALBANI.** *Edited by* EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, Esq., Barrister-at-Law, and Assistant-Keeper of the Manuscripts in the British Museum. 1874.

This chronicle gives a circumstantial history of the close of the reign of Edward III. which has hitherto been considered lost.

65. **THÓMAS SAGA ERKIBYSKUPS. A LIFE OF ARCHBISHOP THOMAS BECKET, IN ICELANDIC.** Vol. I. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary, by* M. EIRÍKR MAGNÚSSON, Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge. 1875.

This work is derived from the Life of Becket written by Benedict of Peterborough, and apparently supplies the missing portions in Benedict's biography.

66. **RADULPHI DE COGGESHALL CHRONICON ANGLICANUM.** *Edited by* the REV. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A. 1875.

This volume contains the "Chronicon Anglicanum," by Ralph of Coggeshall, the "Libellus de Expugnacione Terræ Sanctæ per Saladinum," usually ascribed to the same author, and other pieces of an interesting character.

67. **MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF THOMAS BECKET, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY.** Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES CRAIGIE ROBERTSON, M.A., Canon of Canterbury. 1875-1877.

This Publication will comprise all contemporary materials for the history of Archbishop Thomas Becket. The first volume contains the life of that celebrated man, and the miracles after his death, by William, a monk of Canterbury. The second, the life by Benedict of Peterborough; John of Salisbury; Alan of Tewkesbury; and Edward Grim. The third, the life by William Fitzstephen; and Herbert of Bosham.

68. **RADULFI DE DICETO DECANI LUNDONIENSIS OPERA HISTORICA. THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF MASTER RALPH DE DICETO, DEAN OF LONDON.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited, from the Original Manuscripts, by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1876.

The Historical Works of Ralph de Diceto are some of the most valuable materials for British History. The Abbreviationes Chronicorum extend from the Creation to 1147, and the Ymagines Historiarum to 1201.

69. ROLL OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE KING'S COUNCIL IN IRELAND, FOR A PORTION OF THE 16TH YEAR OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD II. 1392-93. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B. 1877.

The Roll printed in this volume throws considerable light on the History of Ireland at a period when little is known of it, and seems to be the only document of the kind extant.

70. HENRICI DE BRACON DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUETUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ. LIBRI QUINQUE IN VARIOS TRACTATUS DISTINCTI. AD DIVERSORUM ET VETUSTISSIMORUM CODICUM COLLATIONEM TYPIS VULGATI. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L. 1878-1879.

This is a new edition of Bracton's celebrated work, collated with MSS. in the British Museum; the Libraries of Lincoln's Inn, Middle Temple, and Gray's Inn; Bodleian Library, Oxford; the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris; &c.

71. THE HISTORIANS OF THE CHURCH OF YORK, AND ITS ARCHBISHOPS. Vol. I. *Edited by* JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society. 1879.

This will form a complete "Corpus Historicum Eboracense," a work very much needed, and of great value to the Historical Inquirer.

72. REGISTRUM MALMESBURIENSE. THE REGISTER OF MALMESBURY ABBEY; PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE. Vol. I. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield. 1879.

This work throws light upon many curious points of history, and illustrates the growth of society, the distribution and cultivation of land, the relations of landlord and tenant, and national history and customs.

73. THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF GERVASE OF CANTERBURY. Vol. I. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., AND RICHARD I., BY GERVASE, THE MONK OF CANTERBURY. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c. 1879.

The Historical Works of Gervase of Canterbury are of great importance as regards the questions of Church and State, during the period in which he wrote. This work was printed by Twysden, in the "Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores X.," more than two centuries ago. The present edition has received critical examination and illustration.

74. HENRICI ARCHIDIACONI HUNTENDUNENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM. THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH, BY HENRY, ARCHDEACON OF HUNTINGDON, from A.C. 55 to A.D. 1154, in Eight Books. *Edited by* THOMAS ARNOLD, M.A., of University College, Oxford. 1879.

Henry of Huntingdon's work was first printed by Sir Henry Savile, in 1596, in his "Scriptores post Bedam," and reprinted at Frankfort in 1601. Both editions are very rare and inaccurate. The first five books of the History were published in 1848 in the "Monumenta Historica Britannica," which is out of print. The present volume contains the whole of the manuscript of Huntingdon's History in eight books, collated with a manuscript lately discovered at Paris.

### *In the Press.*

CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER. *Edited by* WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.

- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* Sir GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, D.C.L., Oxon., and M. GUDBRAND VIGFUSSON, M.A.
- THOMAS SAGA ERKIBYSKUPS. A LIFE OF ARCHBISHOP THOMAS BECKET, IN ICELANDIC. Vol. II. *Edited, with English Translation, Notes, and Glossary, by* M. EIRÍKE MAGNÚSSON, M.A., Sub-Librarian of the University Library, Cambridge.
- POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. VII. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, D.D., Norrisian Professor of Divinity, Vicar of St. Edward's, Fellow of St. Catharine's College, and late Fellow of Magdalene College, Cambridge.
- RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.
- MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS, MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI, CHRONICA MAJORA. Vol. V. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, D.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Registry of the University, and Vicar of Great St. Mary's, Cambridge.
- LESTORIE DES ENGLIS SOLUM GEFREI GAIMAR. *Edited by* SIR THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.
- MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF THOMAS BECKET, ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY. Vol. IV. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES CRAIGIE ROBERTSON, M.A., Canon of Canterbury.
- HENRICI DE BRACON DE LEGIBUS ET CONSUEUDINIBUS ANGLIÆ. LIBRI QUINQUE IN VARIOS TRACTATUS DISTINCTI. AD DIVERSORUM ET VETUSTISSIMORUM CODICUM COLLATIONEM TYPIS VULGATI. Vol. III. *Edited by* SIR TRAVERS TWISS, Q.C., D.C.L.
- REGISTRUM MALMESBURIENSE. THE REGISTER OF MALMESBURY ABBEY; PRESERVED IN THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE. Vol. II. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Preacher at the Rolls, and Rector of Toppesfield.
- THE HISTORICAL WORKS OF GERVASE OF CANTERBURY. Vol. II. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF STEPHEN, HENRY II., AND RICHARD I., BY GERVASE, THE MONK OF CANTERBURY. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, D.D.; Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's, London; Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford; &c.

---

### *In Progress.*

- DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. IV.; 1327, &c. *By* SIR THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, D.C.L., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.
- REGISTRUM EPISTOLARUM FRATRIS JOHANNIS PECKHAM, ARCHIEPISCOPI CANTUARIENSIS. *Edited, from MS. in All Souls' College, Oxford, by* CHARLES TRICE MARTIN, Esq., B.A.
- THE HISTORIANS OF THE CHURCH OF YORK, AND ITS ARCHBISHOPS. Vol. II. *Edited by* JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and Secretary of the Surtees Society.
- YEAR BOOKS, 11—16 Edward III. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.
-

PUBLICATIONS  
OF  
THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

---

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARI ABBREVIATIO.** Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 Vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM.** Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: Vol. 3, *price* 21s.; Vol. 4, *price* 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS.** Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM.** Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, Vol. 3). *Price* 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS.** *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, Vol. 4). *Price* 21s.
- STATUTES OF THE REALM.** *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHEY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 Vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31s. 6d. each; except the Indices, *price* 30s. each.
- VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus.** *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817—1834), boards. *Price* 25s. each.  
\* \* The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.
- ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI.** 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Vol. 2, folio (1819), boards. *Price* 21s.
- FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c. ; or, RYMER'S FÆDERA,** New Edition, folio. Vol. 3, Part 2, 1361—1377 (1830) : Vol. 4, 1377—1383 (1869). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. Vol. 3, Part 2, *price* 21s.; Vol. 4, *price* 6s.
- DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c.** Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings, to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31s. 6d.; Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21s.

**CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH ; with Examples of earlier Proceedings from Richard II.** *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21s. each.

**PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm.** *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21s. ; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21s. ; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42s.

**ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI.** 2 Vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81s., cloth ; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63s. ; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

**PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND.** 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 Vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98s. ; or separately, 14s. each.

**ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI.** 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

\*.\* The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9s.

**ROTULI CURIE REGIS.** Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28s.

**ROTULI NORMANNIE IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI.** 1200—1205 ; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12s. 6d.

**ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis.** *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18s.

**EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS.** Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32s. ; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14s. ; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

**FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM ; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIE IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS.** 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 Vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11s. ; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8s. 6d. ; Vol. 2, *price* 2s. 6d.

**ANCIENT CALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER ; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository.** *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 Vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42s.

**DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England ; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer.** *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18s.

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216.  
*Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1837), cloth.  
*Price* 30s.

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 Vol. folio (1837), boards. *Price* 8s.

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 Vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirt to Cnut, with a Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from 7th to 10th century; and Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, continued in force. With a Translation of the Welsh. Also, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Glossary, &c. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 Vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44s. Or, 2 Vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36s.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE, 2, 3, 4 HEN. II., 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4s. 6d.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE, 1 RIC. I., 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 Vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45s. 6d.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 Vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 10s. 6d.

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. Folio (1814—1875). *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. Vol. 1, *price* 42s. Vols. 5 and 6 (in three Parts), *price* 21s. each Part; Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, *price* 10s. 6d. each Volume; Vol. 12 (Index), *price* 63s. Or, complete, 12 Volumes in 13, *price* 12l. 12s.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.

**THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII).** 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.

**ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM**, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25s.

**ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER**, James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21s.

**ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER**, Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 Vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

**HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS.** *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 Vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12s.

**HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** Henry VIII.—Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 Vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40s.

**STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH:** with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 Vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5l. 15s. 6d.; or separately, *price* 10s. 6d. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

## WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

**DOMESDAY BOOK**, or the **GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR**, 1086; fac-simile of the Part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 Parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861-1863) boards. Price 4s. 6d. to 1l. 1s. each Part, according to size; or, bound in 2 Vols., 18l. (*The edition in two volumes is out of print.*)

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England\* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free-man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late king; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

\* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

**FAC-SIMILES of NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, from WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR to QUEEN ANNE**, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey. *Price*, each Part, with translations and notes, double foolscap folio, 16s.

Part I. (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.). 1865.

Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.). 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth). 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne). 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

---

*Public Record Office,  
October 1879.*

# SCOTLAND.

---

## CATALOGUE OF SCOTCH RECORD PUBLICATIONS

PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF  
THE LORD CLERK REGISTER OF SCOTLAND.

---

*On Sale by—*

MESSRS. LONGMAN & Co., AND MESSRS. TRÜBNER & Co., LONDON;  
MESSRS. JAMES PARKER & Co., OXFORD AND LONDON;  
MESSRS. MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE AND LONDON;  
MESSRS. A. & C. BLACK, AND MESSRS. DOUGLAS & FOULIS,  
EDINBURGH;  
AND MR. A. THOM, DUBLIN.

---

CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS, AND OTHER EARLY MEMORIALS OF  
SCOTTISH HISTORY. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867). *Edited by*  
WILLIAM F. SKENE, LL.D. *Price 10s.*

LEDGER OF ANDREW HALYBURTON, CONSERVATOR OF THE PRIVILEGES OF  
THE SCOTCH NATION IN THE NETHERLANDS (1492–1503); TOGETHER  
WITH THE BOOKS OF CUSTOMS AND VALUATION OF MERCHANDISES IN  
SCOTLAND. *Edited by* COSMO INNES. Royal 8vo., half bound (1867).  
*Price 10s.*

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE HISTORY OF SCOTLAND FROM THE DEATH  
OF KING ALEXANDER THE THIRD TO THE ACCESSION OF ROBERT  
BRUCE, from original and authentic copies in London, Paris, Brussels,  
Lille, and Ghent. In 2 Vols, royal 8vo., half bound (1870). *Edited by*  
Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON. *Price 10s. each.*

ACCOUNTS OF THE LORD HIGH TREASURER OF SCOTLAND. Vol. 1, A.D.  
1473–1498. *Edited by* THOMAS DICKSON. 1877. *Price 10s.*

REGISTER OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND. *Edited and arranged by*  
J. H. BURTON, LL.D. Vol. 1, 1545–1569. Vol. 2, 1569–1578. 1877.  
*Price 15s. each.*

ROTULI SCACCARII REGUM SCOTORUM. THE EXCHEQUER ROLLS OF SCOT-  
LAND. Vol. 1, A.D. 1264–1359. Vol. 2, A.D. 1359–1379. *Edited by*  
JOHN STUART, LL.D., and GEORGE BURNETT, Lyon King of Arms.  
1878. *Price 10s. each.*

FAC-SIMILES OF THE NATIONAL MSS. OF SCOTLAND. (*Out of print.*)  
Parts I, II., and III. *Price 21s. each.*

---

*Stationery Office,*  
*1st January 1879.*

# IRELAND.

---

## CATALOGUE OF IRISH RECORD PUBLICATIONS.

---

*On Sale by—*

MESSRS. LONGMAN & Co., AND MESSRS. TRÜBNER & Co., LONDON;  
MESSRS. JAMES PARKER & Co., OXFORD AND LONDON;  
MESSRS. MACMILLAN & Co., CAMBRIDGE AND LONDON;  
MESSRS. A. & C. BLACK, AND MESSRS. DOUGLAS & FOULIS,  
EDINBURGH;  
AND MR. A. THOM, DUBLIN.

---

CALENDAR OF THE PATENT AND CLOSE ROLLS OF CHANCERY IN IRELAND.  
HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI., MARY, AND ELIZABETH. *Edited by*  
JAMES MORRIN. Royal 8vo. (1861-3). Vols. 1, 2, and 3. *Price* 11s.  
each.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF IRELAND.  
Seuchus Mor. (1865-1873.) Vols. 1, 2, and 3. *Price* 10s. each.

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS OF IRELAND. *Edited by* JOHN  
T. GILBERT, F.S.A., M.R.I.A. Parts I., II., III. (in the press),  
IV. (in progress). *Price* 42s. each.

This work is intended to form a comprehensive Palæographic Series for Ireland. It will furnish characteristic specimens of the documents which have come down from each of the classes which, in past ages, formed principal elements in the population of Ireland, or exercised an influence in her affairs. With these reproductions will be combined fac-similes of writings connected with eminent personages or transactions of importance in the annals of the country to the end of the reign of Queen Anne.

The specimens are reproduced as nearly as possible in accordance with the originals, in dimensions, colouring, and general appearance. Characteristic examples of styles of writing and caligraphic ornamentation are, so far as practicable, associated with subjects of historic and linguistic interest. Descriptions of the various manuscripts are given by the Editor in the Introduction. The contents of the specimens are fully elucidated and printed in the original languages opposite to the Fac-similes—line for line—without contractions—thus facilitating reference and aiding effectively those interested in palæographic studies.

Part I. contains upwards of seventy coloured specimens, commencing with the earliest Irish MSS. extant.

Part II. extends from the Twelfth Century to A.D. 1299, and contains ninety specimens in colours.

In Part III.—now in the Press—the Work will be carried down to the end of the reign of Henry VIII.

(This work is sold also by Letts, Son, & Co., 33, King William Street; E. Stanford, Charing Cross; J. Wyld, Charing Cross; B. Quaritch, 15, Piccadilly; W. & A. K. Johnston, Edinburgh; and Hodges, Foster & Co., Dublin.

---

Stationery Office,  
1st January 1879.

742  
1/3







